Introduction To Physical Oceanography

Robert H. Stewart
Department of Oceanography
Texas A & M University

Contents

Preface

This book is written for upper-division undergraduates and new graduate students in meteorology, ocean engineering, and oceanography. Because these students have a diverse background, I have emphasized ideas and concepts with a minimum of mathematical material.

Acknowledgements
I have taught from the book for several years, and I thank the many students who have pointed out poorly written sections, conflicting notation, and other errors. I also thank Professor Fred Schlemmer at Texas A&M Galveston who, after using the book for his classes, has provided extesive comments about the material.

Of course, I accept responsibility for all mistakes in the book. Please send me your comments and suggestions for improvement.

Figures in the book came from many sources. I particularly wish to thank Link Ji for many global maps, and colleagues at the University of Texas Center for Space Research.

I especially thank NASA's Jet Propulsion Laboratory and the Topex/Poseidon Project for their support of the book through contract 960887 and 1205046.

Chapter 1

A Voyage of Discovery

The role of the ocean on weather and climate is often discussed in the news. Who has not heard of El Niño and changing weather patterns, the Atlantic hurricane season and storm surges. Yet, what exactly is the role of the ocean? And, why do we care?

1.1 Why study the Physics of the Ocean?

The answer depends on our interests, which devolves from our use of the oceans. Three broad themes are important:

1. The oceans are a source of food. Hence we may be interested in processes which influence the sea just as farmers are interested in the weather and climate. The ocean not only has weather such as temperature changes and currents, but the oceanic weather fertilizes the sea. The atmospheric weather seldom fertilizes fields except for the small amount of nitrogen fixed by lightening.
2. The oceans are used by man. We build structures on the shore or just offshore; we use the oceans for transport; we obtain oil and gas below the ocean; and we use the oceans for recreation, swimming, boating, fishing, surfing, and diving. Hence we are interested in processes that influence these activities, especially waves, winds, currents, and temperature.
3. The oceans influence the atmospheric weather and climate. The oceans influence the distribution of rainfall, droughts, floods, regional climate, and the development of storms, hurricanes, and typhoons. Hence we are interested in air-sea interactions, espcially the fluxes of heat and water across the sea surface, the transport of heat by the oceans, and the influence of the ocean on climate and weather patterns.

These themes influence our selection of topics to study. The topics then determine what we measure, how the measurements are made, and the geographic areas of interest. Some processes are local, such as the breaking of waves on a beach, some are regional, such as the influence of the North Pacific on Alaskan weather, and some are global, such as the influence of the oceans on changing climate and global warming. If indeed, these reasons for the study of the ocean are important, lets begin a voyage of discovery. Any voyage needs a destination. What is ours?

1.2 Goals

At the most basic level, I hope you, the students who are reading this text, will become aware of some of the major conceptual schemes (or theories) that form the foundation of physical oceanography, how they were arrived at, and why they are widely accepted, how oceanographers achieve order out of a random ocean, and the role of experiment in oceanography (to paraphrase Shamos, 1995: p. 89).

More particularly, I expect you will be able to describe physical processes influencing the oceans and coastal regions: the interaction of the ocean with the atmosphere, and the distribution of oceanic winds, currents, heat fluxes, and water masses. The text emphasizes ideas rather than mathematical techniques. We will try to answer such questions as:

1. What is the basis of our understanding of physics of the ocean?
   - (a) What are the physical properties of sea water?
   - (b) What are the important thermodynamic and dynamic processes influencing the ocean?
   - (c) What equations describe the processes and how were they derived?
   - (d) What approximations were used in the derivation?
   - (e) Do the equations have useful solutions?
   - (f) How well do the solutions describe the process? That is, what is the experimental basis for the theories?
   - (g) Which processes are poorly understood? Which are well understood?
2. What are the sources of information about physical variables?
   - (a) What instruments are used for measuring each variable?
   - (b) What are their accuracy and limitations?
   - (c) What historic data exist?
   - (d) What platforms are used? Satellites, ships, drifters, moorings?
3. What processes are important? Some important process we will study include:
   - (a) Heat storage and transport in the oceans.
   - (b) The exchange of heat with the atmosphere and the role of the ocean in climate.
   - (c) Wind and thermal forcing of the surface mixed layer.
   - (d) The wind-driven circulation including the Ekman circulation, Ekman pumping of the deeper circulation, and upwelling.
   - (e) The dynamics of ocean currents, including geostrophic currents and the role of vorticity.

(f) The formation of water types and masses.
(g) The thermohaline circulation of the ocean.
(h) Equatorial dynamics and El Niño.
(i) The observed circulation of the ocean plus the Gulf of Mexico.
(j) Numerical models of the circulation.
(k) Waves in the ocean including surface waves, inertial oscillations, tides, and tsunamis.
(l) Waves in shallow water, coastal processes, and tide predictions.

4. What are the major currents and water masses in the ocean, what governs their distribution, and how does the ocean interact with the atmosphere?

1.3 Organization

Before beginning a voyage, we usually try to learn about the places we will visit. We look at maps and we consult travel guides. In this book, our guide will be the papers and books published by oceanographers. We begin with a brief overview of what is known about the oceans. We then proceed to a description of the ocean basins, for the shape of the seas influences the physical processes in the water. Next, we study the external forces, wind and heat, acting on the ocean, and the ocean's response. As we proceed, I bring in theory and observations as necessary.

By the time we reach chapter 7, we will need to understand the equations describing dynamical response of the oceans. So we consider the equations of motion, the influence of Earth's rotation, and viscosity. This leads to a study of wind-driven ocean currents, the geostrophic approximation, and the usefulness of conservation of vorticity.

Toward the end, we consider some particular examples: the deep circulation, the equatorial ocean and El Niño, and the circulation of particular areas of the oceans. Next we look at the role of numerical models in describing the ocean. At the end, we study coastal processes, waves, tides, wave and tidal forecasting, tsunamis, and storm surges.

1.4 The Big Picture

As we study the ocean, I hope you will notice that we use theory, observations, and numerical models to describe ocean dynamics. *Neither is sufficient by itself.*

1. Ocean processes are nonlinear and turbulent, and the theory of non-linear, turbulent flow in complex basins is not well developed. Theories used for describing the ocean are much simplified approximations to reality.

2. Observations are sparse in time and space. They provide a rough description of the time-averaged flow, but many processes in many regions are poorly observed.

3. Numerical models include much-more-realistic theoretical ideas, they can help interpolate oceanic observations in time and space, and they are used to forecast climate change, currents, and waves. Nonetheless, the numerical equations are approximations to the continuous analytic equations

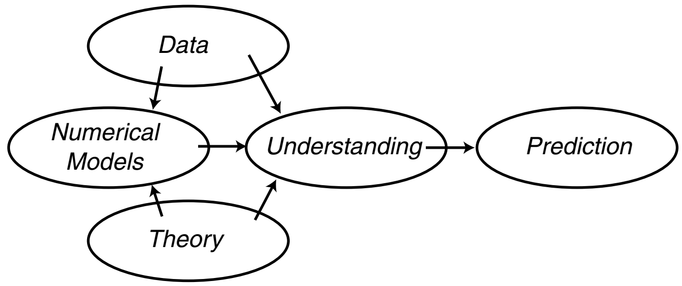


Figure 1.1 Data, numerical models, and theory are all necessary to understand the ocean. Eventually, an understanding of the ocean-atmosphere-land system will lead to predictions of future states of the system.

that describe fluid flow, they contain no information about flow between grid points, and they cannot yet be used to describe fully the turbulent flow seen in the ocean.

By combining theory and observations in numerical models we avoid some of the difficulties associated with each approach used separately (figure 1.1). Contiued refinements of the combined approach are leading to ever-more-precise descriptions of the ocean. The ultimate goal is to know the ocean well enough to predict the future changes in the environment, including climate change or the response of fisheries to overfishing.

The combination of theory, observations, and computer models is relatively new. Three decades of exponential growth in computing power has made available desktop computers capable of simulating important physical processes and oceanic dynamics.

> All of us who are involved in the sciences know that the computer has become an essential tool for research ... scientific computation has reached the point where it is on a par with laboratory experiment and mathematical theory as a tool for reserch in science and engineering—Langer (1999).

The combination of theory, observations, and computer models also implies an new way of doing oceanography. In the past, an oceanographer would devise a theory, collect data to test the theory, and publish the results. Now, the tasks have become so specialized that few can do it all. Few excel in theory, collecting data, and numerical simulations. Instead, the work is done more and more by teams of scientists and engineers.

1.5 Further Reading

If you know little about the ocean and oceanography, I suggest you begin by reading MacLeish's book, especially his Chapter 4 on "Reading the Ocean." In my opinion, it is the best overall, non-technical, description of how oceanographers came to understand the ocean.

You may also benefit from reading pertinent chapters from any introductory oceanographic textbook. Those by Gross, Pinet, or Thurman are especially useful. The three texts produced by the Open University provide a slightly more advanced treatment.

Gross, M. Grant and Elizabeth Gross (1996) *Oceanography—A View of Earth 7th Edition.* Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice Hall.

MacLeish, William (1989) *The Gulf Stream: Encounters With the Blue God.* Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company.

Pinet, Paul R. (1992) *Oceanography—An Introduction to the Planet.* Saint Paul: West Publishing Company.

Open University (1989) *Ocean Circulation.* Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Open University (1989) *Seawater: Its Composition, Properties and Behaviour.* Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Open University (1989) *Waves, Tides and Shallow-Water Processes.* Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Thurman, Harold V. (1994) *Introductory Oceanography.* Columbus: Charles E. Merrill Publishing Company.

Chapter 2

The Historical Setting

Our knowledge of oceanic currents, winds, waves, and tides goes back thousands of years. Polynesian navigators traded over long distances in the Pacific as early as 4000 BC (Service, 1996); Pytheas explored the Atlantic from Italy to Norway in 325 BC; Arabic traders used their knowledge of the reversing winds and currents in the Indian Ocean to establish trade routes to China in the Middle Ages and later to Zanzibar on the African coast; and the connection between tides and the sun and moon was described in the Samaveda of the Indian Vedic period extending from 2000 to 1400 BC (Pugh, 1987). Those oceanographers who tend to accept as true only that which has been measured by instruments, have much to learn from those who earned their living on the ocean.

Modern European knowledge of the ocean began with voyages of discovery by Bartholomew Dias (1487–1488), Christopher Columbus (1492–1494), Vasco da Gama (1497–1499), Ferdinand Magellan (1519–1522), and many others. They laid the foundation for global trade routes stretching from Spain to the Philippines in the early 16th century. The routes were based on a good working knowledge of trade winds, the westerlies, and western boundary currents in the Atlantic and Pacific (Couper, 1983: 192–193).

The modern explorers were soon followed by scientific voyages of discovery led by (among many others) James Cook (1728–1779) on the *Endeavour*, *Resolution*, and *Adventure*, Charles Darwin (1809–1882) on the *Beagle*, Sir James Clark Ross and Sir John Ross who surveyed the Arctic and Antarctic regions from the *Victory*, the *Isabella*, and the *Erebus*, and Edward Forbes (1815–1854) who studied the vertical distribution of life in the oceans. Others collected oceanic observations and produced useful charts, including Edmond Halley who charted the trade winds and monsoons and Benjamin Franklin who charted the Gulf Stream.

2.1 Definitions

The long history of the study of the ocean has led to the development of various, specialized disciplines each with its own interests and vocabulary. The more important disciplines include:

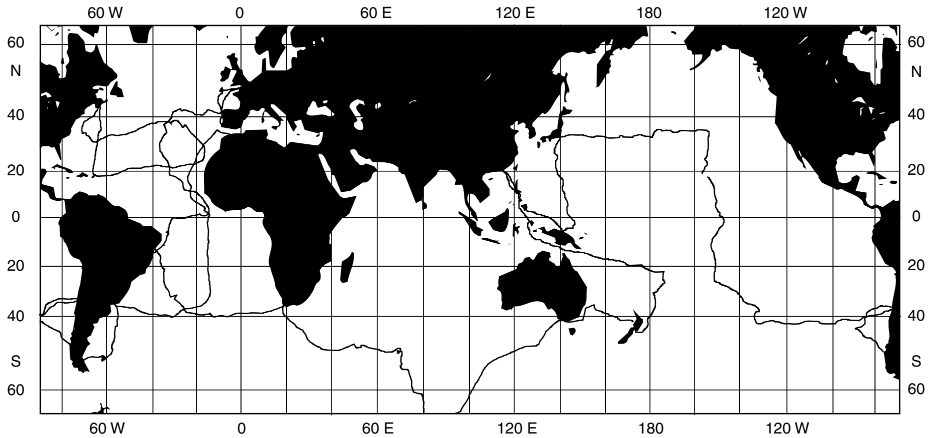


Figure 2.1 Example from the era of deep-sea exploration: Track of H.M.S. *Challanger* during the British Challanger Expedition (From Wust, 1964).

Oceanography is the study of the ocean, with emphasis on its character as an environment. The goal is to obtain a description sufficiently quantitative to be used for predicting the future with some certainty.

Geophysics is the study of the physics of the Earth.

Physical Oceanography is the study of physical properties and dynamics of the oceans. The primary interests are the interaction of the ocean with the atmosphere, the oceanic heat budget, water mass formation, currents, and coastal dynamics. Physical Oceanography is considered by many to be a subdiscipline of geophysics.

Geophysical Fluid Dynamics is the study of the dynamics of fluid motion on scales influenced by the rotation of the Earth. Meteorology and oceanography use geophysical fluid dynamics to calculate planetary flow fields.

Hydrography is the preparation of nautical charts, including charts of ocean depths, currents, internal density field of the ocean, and tides.

2.2 Eras of Oceanographic Exploration

The exploration of the sea can be divided, somewhat arbitrarily, into various eras (Wust, 1964). I have extended his divisions through the end of the 20th century.

1. Era of Surface Oceanography: Earliest times to 1873. The era is characterized by systematic collection of mariners' observations of winds, currents, waves, temperature, and other phenomena observable from the deck of sailing ships. Notable examples include Halley's charts of the trade winds, Franklin's map of the Gulf Stream, and Matthew Fontaine Maury's *Physical Geography for the Sea*.
2. Era of Deep-Sea Exploration: 1873–1914. Characterized by wide ranging oceanographic expeditions to survey surface and subsurface conditions near colonial claims. The major example is the *Challenger* Expedition (Figure 2.1), but also the *Gazelle* and *Fram* Expeditions.

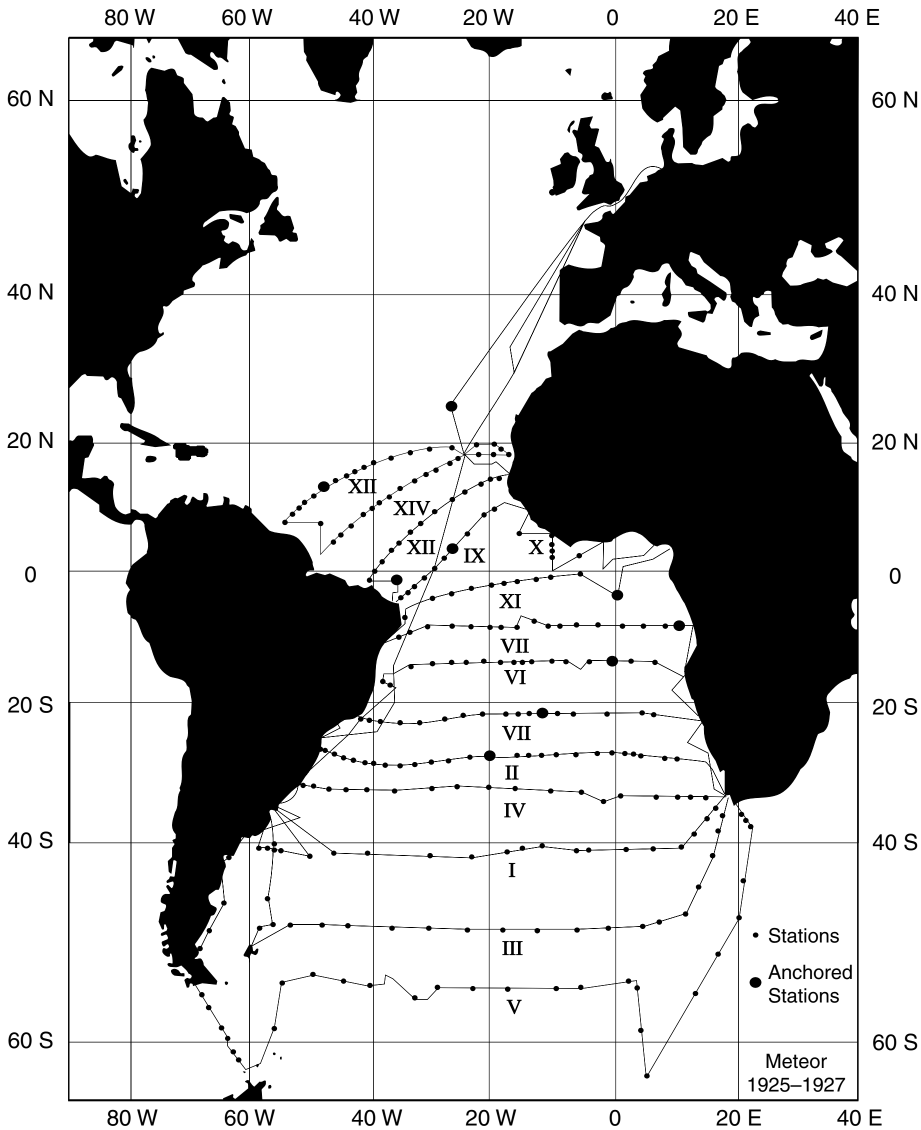


Figure 2.2 Example of a survey from the era of national systematic surveys. Track of the R/V *Meteor* during the German Meteor Expedition (Redrawn from Wust, 1964).

3. Era of National Systematic and National Surveys: 1925–1940. Characterized by detailed surveys of colonial areas. Examples include *Meteor* surveys of Atlantic (Figure 2.2), and and the *Discovery* Expeditions.

4. Era of New Methods: 1947–1956. Characterized by long surveys using new instruments (Figure 2.3). Examples include seismic surveys of the Atlantic by *Vema* leading to Heezen's physiographic diagram of the sea floor.

Figure 2.3 Example from the era of new methods. The cruises of the R/V *Atlantis* out of Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution (From Wust, 1964).

5. Era of International Cooperation: 1957–1970. Characterized by multinational surveys of oceans. Examples include the Atlantic Polar Front Program, the NORPAC cruises, and the International Geophysical Year cruises (Figure 2.4).

6. Era of Large Experiments: 1970–1978 Characterized by multiship studies of oceanic processes. Examples include MODE, POLYMODE, and NORPAX, and the JASIN experiment; plus the International Decade of Ocean Exploration.

7. Era of Satellites: 1978–1995. Characterized by global surveys of oceanic processes from space. Examples include Seasat, NOAA 6–10, NIMBUS–7, Geosat, Topex/Poseidon, and ERS–1 & 2.

8. Era of Global Synthesis: 1995– Characterized by global determination of oceanic processes using ship and space data in numerical models. Examples include the World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE) (Figure 2.5) and Topex/ Poseidon (Fig 2.6), SeaWiFS and Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (JGOFS).

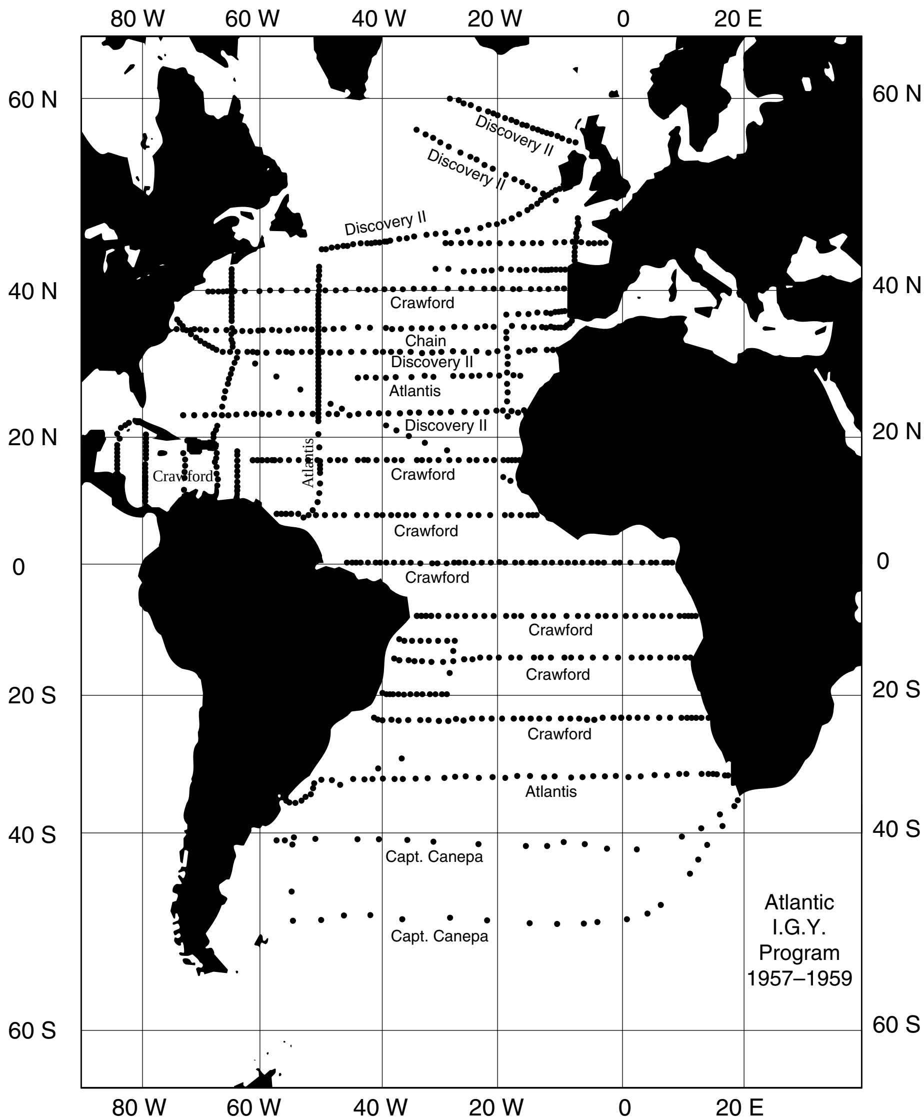


Figure 2.4 Example from the era of international cooperation . Sections measured by the International Geophysical Year Atlantic Program 1957-1959 (From Wust, 1964).

2.3 Milestones in the Understanding of the Ocean

Before describing our present understanding of the ocean, it is useful to look back at the ever increasing knowledge beginning with the first scientific investigations of the 17th century. Note that progress was slow. First came very simple observations of far reaching importance, by scientists who probably did not consider themselves oceanographers, if the term even existed. Later came more detailed descriptions and oceanographic experiments by scientists who specialized in the study of the ocean.

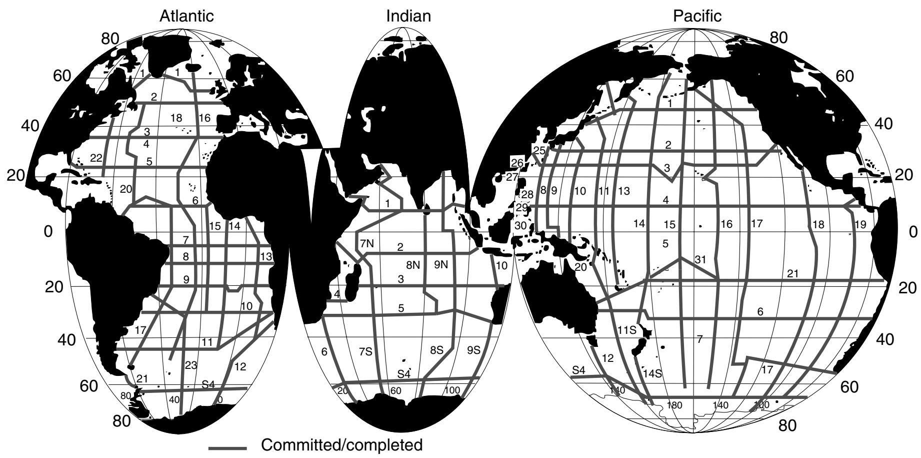


Figure 2.5 World Ocean Circulation Experiment: Tracks of research ships making a one-time global survey of the oceans of the world.

1685 Edmond Halley investigated the oceanic wind systems and currents, publishing "An Historical Account of the Trade Winds, and Monsoons, observable in the Seas between and near the Tropicks, with an attempt to assign the Physical cause of the said Winds" *Philosophical Transactions*, 16: 153-168.

1735 George Hadley published his theory for the trade winds based on conservation of angular momentum in "Concerning the Cause of the General Trade-Winds" *Philosophical Transactions*, 39: 58-62.

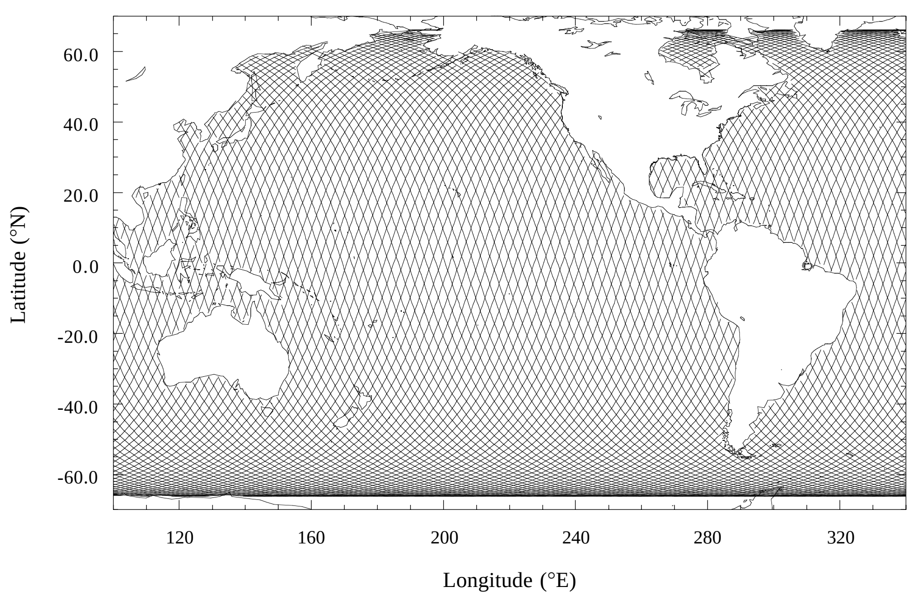


Figure 2.6 Example from the era of satellites. Topex/Poseidon tracks in the Pacific Ocean.

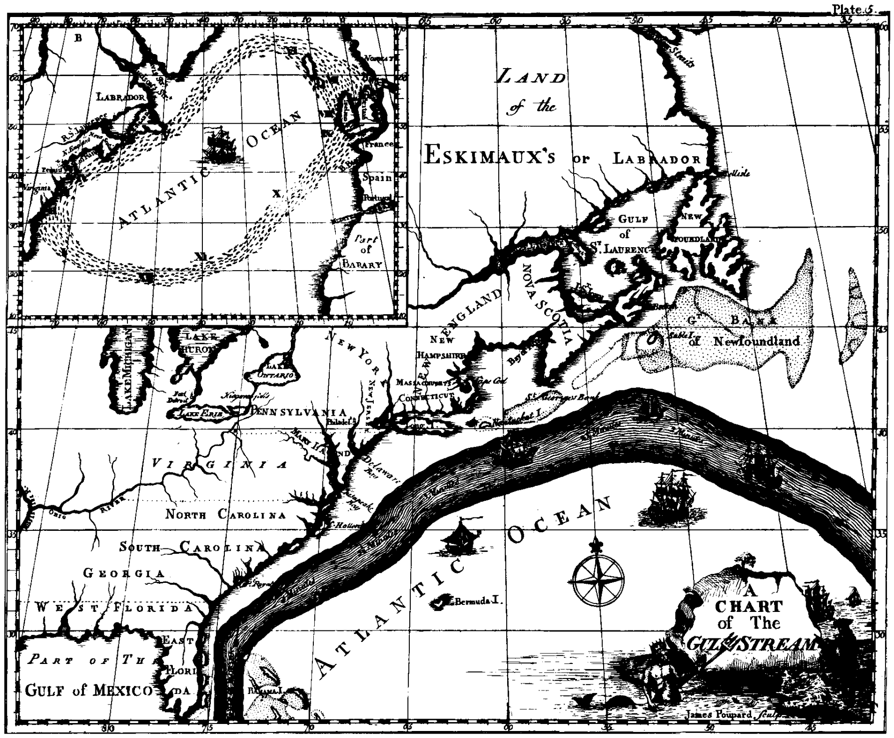


Figure 2.7 The Franklin-Folger map of the Gulf Stream published in 1769.

1751 Henri Ellis made the first deep soundings of temperature in the tropics, finding cold water below a warm surface layer, indicating the water came from the polar regions.

1770 Benjamin Franklin, as postmaster, collected information about ships sailing between New England and England, and made the first map of the Gulf Stream (Figure 2.7).

1775 Laplace's published his theory of tides.

1800 Count Rumford proposed a meridional circulation sinking near the poles and rising near the Equator.

1847 Matthew Fontain Maury published his first chart of winds and currents based on ships logs. Maury established the practice of international exchange of environmental data, trading logbooks for maps and charts derived from the data.

1855 *Physical Geography of the Sea* published by Maury.

1872–1876 Challenger Expedition began the first systematic study of the biology, chemistry, and physics of the oceans of the world.

1881 Samuel Langley invented the bolometer for measuring radiant heat. Later, he published "Researches on Solar Heat" *Prof. Pap. Signal Service* 15: 242 pp.

1885 Pillsbury's made direct measurements of currents in the Florida Current using current meters deployed from a ship moored in the stream.

1910–1913 Vilhelm Bjerknes published *Dynamic Meteorology and Hydrography* which laid the foundation of geophysical fluid dynamics. In it he developed the idea of fronts, the dynamic meter, geostrophic flow, air-sea interaction, and cyclones.

1912 Founding of the Marine Biological Laboratory of the University of California which became the Scripps Institution of Oceanography.

1930 Founding of the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution.

1942 Publication of *The Oceans* by Sverdrup, Johnson, and Fleming, the first comprehensive survey of oceanographic knowledge.

Post WW 2 Founding of oceanography departments at state universities, including Oregon State, Texas A&M University, University of Miami, and University of Rhode Island, and the founding of national ocean laboratories such as the various Institutes of Oceanographic Science.

1947–1950 Sverdrup, Stommel, and Munk publish their theories of the wind-driven circulation of the ocean. Together the three papers lay the foundation for our understanding of the ocean's circulation.

1949 Start of California Cooperative Fisheries Investigation of the California Current.

1952 Cromwell and Montgomery rediscover the Equatorial Undercurrent in the Pacific.

1955 Bruce Hamon and Neil Brown develop the CTD for measuring conductivity and temperature as a function of depth in the ocean.

196x Sippican Corporation invents the Expendable BathyThermograph XBT now perhaps the most widely used oceanographic instrument.

1969 Kirk Bryan and Michael Cox develop the first numerical model of the oceanic circulation.

1978 NASA launches the first oceanographic satellite, Seasat. The satellite was used to developed techniques used by a generation of remotes sensing satellites.

1979–1981 Terry Joyce, Rob Pinkel, Lloyd Regier, F. Rowe and J. W. Young develop techniques leading to the acoustic-doppler current profiler for measuring ocean-surface currents from moving ships, an instrument widely used in oceanography.

1992 Russ Davis and Doug Webb invent the autonomous drifter that continuously measures currents at depths to 2 km.

1992 NASA and CNES develop and launch Topex/Poseidon, a satellite that maps ocean surface currents, waves, and tides every ten days.

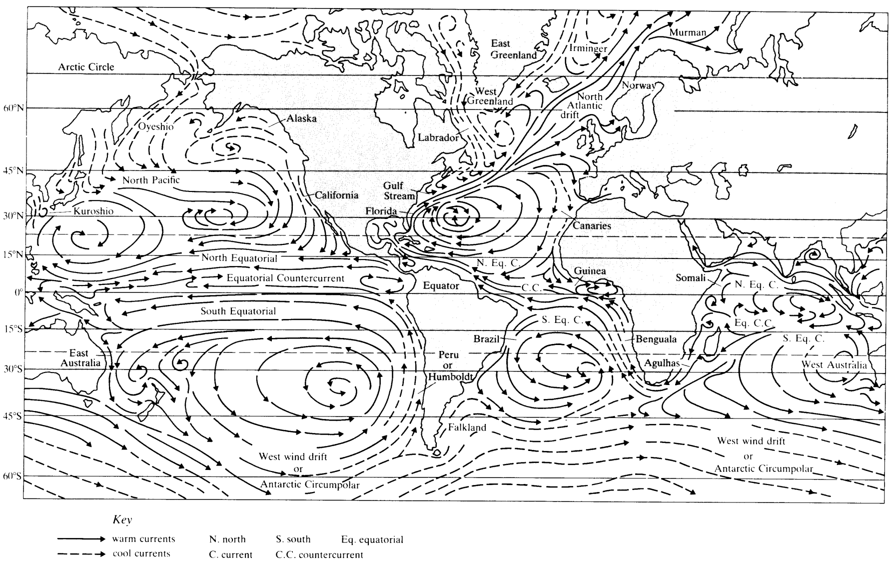


Figure 2.8 The time-averaged, surface circulation of the ocean deduced from nearly a century of oceanographic expeditions (From Tolmazin, 1985).

More information on the history of physical oceanography can be found in Appendix A of W.S. von Arx's *An Introduction to Physical Oceanography.*

Data collected from the centuries of oceanic expeditions have been used to describe the ocean. Most of the work went toward describing the steady state of the ocean, its currents from top to bottom, and its interaction with the atmosphere. The basic description was mostly complete by the early 1970s. Figure 2.8 shows an example from that time, the surface circulation of the ocean. More recent work has sought to document the variability of oceanic processes, and to provide a description of the ocean sufficient to predict annual and interannual variability.

2.4 Evolution of some Theoretical Ideas

A theoretical understanding of oceanic processes is based on classical physics coupled with an evolving understanding of choatic systems in mathematics and the application to the theory of turbulence. The dates given below are approximate.

19th Century Development of analytic hydrodynamics with friction. Bjerkness develops geostrophic method widely used in meteorology and oceanography. (1898).

1925–40 Development of theories for turbulence based on aerodynamics and mixing-length ideas. Work of Prandtl and von Karmen.

1940–1970 Refinement of theories for turbulence based on statistical correlations and the idea of isotropic homogeneous turbulence. Books by Batchelor (1967), Hinze (1975), and others.

1970– Numerical investigations of turbulent geophysical fluid dynamics based on high-speed digital computers.

1985– Mechanics of chaotic processes. The application to hydrodynamics is just beginning. Most motion in the atmosphere and ocean may be inherently unpredictable.

2.5 The Role of Observations in Oceanography

The brief tour of theoretical ideas suggests that observations are essential for understanding the oceans. The theory of flow of a convecting, wind-forced, turbulent fluid in a rotating coordinate system has never been sufficiently well known that important features of the oceanic circulation could be predicted before they were observed. In almost all cases, oceanographers resort to observations to understand oceanic processes.

At first glance, we might think that the numerous expeditions mounted since 1873 would give a good description of the oceans. The results are indeed impressive. Hundreds of expeditions have extended into all oceans. Yet, much of the ocean is poorly explored.

By the year 2000, most areas of the ocean will have been sampled from top to bottom only once. Some areas, such as the Atlantic, will have been sampled three times: during the International Geophysical Year in 1959, during the Geochemical Sections cruises in the early 1970s, and during the World Ocean Circulation Experiment from 1991 to 1996. All areas will be undersampled. This is the sampling problem (See Box). Our samples of the ocean are insufficient to describe the ocean well enough to predict its variability and its response to changing forcing. *Lack of sufficient samples is the largest source of error in our understanding of the ocean.*

2.6 Selecting Oceanic Data Sets

Much existing oceanic data have been organized into large data sets. For example, satellite data are processed and distributed by groups working with NASA. Data from ships have been collected and organized by other groups. Oceanographers now rely more and more such collections of data produced by others.

The use of others data produced by others introduces problems: i) How accurate are the data in the set? ii) What are the limitations of the data set? And, iii) How does the set compare with other similar sets? Anyone who uses public or private data sets is wise to obtain answers such questions.

If you plan to use data from others, here are some guidelines.

1. *Use well documented data sets.* Does the documentation completely describe the sources of the original measurements, all steps used to process the data, and all criteria used to exclude data? Does the data set include version numbers to identify changes to the set?

2. *Use validated data.* Has accuracy of data been well documented? Was accuracy determined by comparing with different measurements of the same variable? Was validation global or regional?

3. *Use sets that have been used by others and referenced in scientific papers.* Some data sets are widely used for good reason. Those who produced the sets used them in their own published work and others trust the data.

4. *Conversely, don't use a data set just because it is handy.* Can you document the source of the set? For example, many versions of the 5-minute bathymetric data set are widely available. Some date back to the first sets produced by the U.S. Defense Mapping Agency, others are from the ETOPO-5 set. Don't rely on a colleague's statement about the source. Find the documentation. If it is missing, find another data set.

2.7 Design of Oceanographic Experiments

Observations are essential for oceanography, yet observations are expensive because ship time and satellites are expensive. As a result, oceanographic experiments must be carefully planned. While the design of experiments may not fit well within an historical chapter, perhaps the topic merits a few brief comments because it is seldom mentioned in oceanographic textbooks, although it is prominently described in texts for other scientific fields. The design of experiments is particularly important because poorly planned experiments lead to ambiguous results, they may measure the wrong variables, or they may produce completely useless data.

The first and most important aspect of the design of any experiment is to determine *why* you wish to make a measurement before deciding how you will make the measurement or what you will measure.

1. What is the purpose of the observations? Do you wish to test hypotheses or describe processes?

2. What accuracy is required of the observation?

3. What temporal and spatial resolution is required? What is the duration of measurements?

Consider, for example, how the purpose of the measurement changes how you might measure salinity or temperature as a function of depth:

1. If the purpose is to describe water masses in an ocean basin, then measurements with 20–50 m vertical spacing and 50–300 km horizontal spacing, repeated once per 20–50 years in deep water are required.

2. If the purpose is to describe vertical mixing in the ocean, then 0.5–1.0 mm vertical spacing and 50–1000 km spacing between locations repeated once per hour for many days may be required.

2.8 Accuracy, Precision, and Linearity

While we are on the topic of experiments, now is a good time to introduce three concepts needed throughout the book when we discuss experiments: precision, accuracy, and linearity of a measurement.

Accuracy is the difference between the measured value and the true value.

Precision is the difference among repeated measurements.

Sampling Error

Sampling error is caused by a set of samples not representing the population of the variable being measured. A population is the set of all possible measurements; and a sample is the sampled subset of the population. We assume each measurement is perfectly accurate.

To determine if a measurement has a sampling error, it is necessary i) to specify the population, and ii) to determine if the samples represent the population. Both conditions are necessary.

Consider a program to measure the annual-mean sea-surface temperature of the ocean to determine if global warming is occuring. In this example, the population is the set of all possible measurements of surface temperature, in all regions in all months. If the sample mean is to equal the true mean, the samples must be uniformly distributed throughout the year and over all the area of the ocean, and sufficiently dense to include all important variability in time and space. This is difficult. Ships avoid stormy regions such as high latitudes in winter, so ship sample tend not to represent the population of surface temperatures. Satellites may not sample uniformly throughout the daily cycle, and they may not observe temperature at high latitudes in winter because of persistent clouds, although they tend to sample uniformly in space and throughout the year in most regions. If daily variability is small, the satellite samples will be more representative of the population than the ship samples.

From the above, it should be clear that the accuracy of a sample depends on the space-time distribution of the signal to be measured. In addition, sampling aliases the signal. Sampled data cannot be used to estimate the variability between samples.

Because sampling errors dominate most oceanic measurements, many instruments may be over designed for climate studies. For example, the required accuracy for scatterometer measurements of wind is smaller than the uncertainty in monthly mean values of wind at a point in the ocean.

In defining sampling error, we must clearly distinguish between instrument errors and sampling errors. Instrument errors are due to the inaccuracy of the instrument. Sampling errors are due to a failure to make a measurement. Consider the example above: the determination of mean sea-surface temperature. If the measurements are made by thermometers on ships, each measurement has a small error because thermometers are not perfect. This is an instrument error. If the ships avoids high latitudes in winter, the absence of measurements at high latitude in winter is a sampling error.

Meteorologists designing the Tropical Rainfall Mapping Mission have been investigating the sampling error in measurements of rain. Their results are general and may be applied to other variables. For a general description of the problem see North & Nakamoto (1989). For an application to scatterometer measurements of winds see Zeng and Levy (1995).

The distinction between accuracy and precision is usually illustrated by the simple example of firing a rifle at a target. Accuracy is the average distance from the center of the target to the hits on the target; precision is the average distance between the hits. Thus, ten rifle shots could be clustered within a circle 10 cm in diameter with the center of the cluster located 20 cm from the center of the target. The accuracy is then 20 cm, and the precision is roughly 5 cm.

Linearity requires that the output of an instrument be a linear function of the input. Nonlinear devices rectify variability to a constant value; so a non-linear response leads to wrong mean values. Non-linearity can be as important as accuracy. For example, let

$$
\begin{aligned}
Output &= Input + 0.1(Input)^2 \\
Input &= a \sin \omega t
\end{aligned}
$$

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
Output &= a \sin \omega t + 0.1\,(a \sin \omega t)^2 \\
Output &= Input + \frac{0.1}{2} a^2 - \frac{0.1}{2} a^2 \cos 2\omega t
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that the mean value of the input is zero, yet the output of this non-linear instrument has a mean value of $0.05a^2$ plus a small term at twice the input frequency. In general, if *input* has frequencies ω_1 and ω_2, then *output* of a non-linear instrument has frequencies $\omega_1 \pm \omega_2$. Linearity of an instrument is especially important when the instrument must measure the mean value of a turbulent variable. For example, we require linear current meters when measuring currents near the sea surface where wind and waves produce a large variability in the current.

Sensitivity to other variables of interest. Errors may be correlated with other variables of the problem. For example, measurements of conductivity are sensitive to temperature; and errors in the measurement of temperature in salinometers leads to errors in the measured values of conductivity or salinity.

2.9 Important Concepts

From the above, I hope you have learned:

1. The ocean is not well known. What we know is based on data collected from only a little more than a century of oceanographic expeditions supplemented with satellite data collected since 1978.
2. The basic description of the ocean is sufficient for describing the time-averaged mean circulation of the ocean, and recent work is beginning to describe the variability.
3. Observations are essential for understanding the ocean. Few processes have been predicted from theory before they were observed.
4. Oceanographers rely more and more on large data sets produced by others. The sets have errors and limitations which you must understand before using the them.

5. The planning of experiments is at least as important as conducting the experiment.
6. Sampling errors arise when the observations, the samples, are not representative of the process being studied. Sampling errors are the largest source of error in oceanography.

Chapter 3

The Physical Setting

Earth is a prolate ellipsoid, an ellipse of rotation, with an equatorial radius of $R_e = 6,378.1349$ km (West, 1982) which is slightly greater than the polar radius of $R_p = 6,356.7497$ km. The small equatorial bulge is due to Earth's rotation.

Distances on Earth are measured in many different units, the most common are degrees of latitude or longitude, meters, miles, and nautical miles. *Latitude* is the angle between the local vertical and the equatorial plane. A meridian is the intersection at Earth's surface of a plane perpendicular to the equatorial plane and passing through Earth's axis of rotation. *Longitude* is the angle between the standard meridian and any other meridian, where the standard meridian is that which passes through a point at the Royal Observatory at Greenwich, England. Thus longitude is measured east or west of Greenwich.

A degree of latitude is not the same length as a degree of longitude except at the equator. Latitude is measured along great circles with radius R, where R is the mean radius of Earth. Longitude is measured along circles with radius $R \cos\varphi$, where φ is latitude. Thus 1° latitude = 111 km; and 1° longitude $= 111 \cos\varphi$ km. For careful work, remember that Earth is not a sphere, and latitude varies slightly with distance from the equator. The values listed here are close enough for our discussions of the oceans.

Because distance in degrees of longitude is not constant, oceanographers measure distance on maps using degrees of latitude.

Nautical miles and meters are connected historically to the size of Earth. Gabriel Mouton, who was vicar of St. Paul's Church in Lyons, France, proposed in 1670 a decimal system of measurement based on the length of an arc that is one minute of a great circle of Earth. This eventually became the nautical mile. Mouton's decimal system eventually became the metric system based on a different unit of length, the meter, which was originally intended to be one ten-millionth the distance from the Equator to the pole along the Paris meridian. Although the tie between nautical miles, meters, and Earth's radius was soon abandoned because it was not practical, the approximations are still useful. For example, the polar circumference of Earth is approximately $2\pi R_e = 40,075$ km. Therefore one ten-thousandth of a quadrant is 1.0019 m. Similarly, a nautical

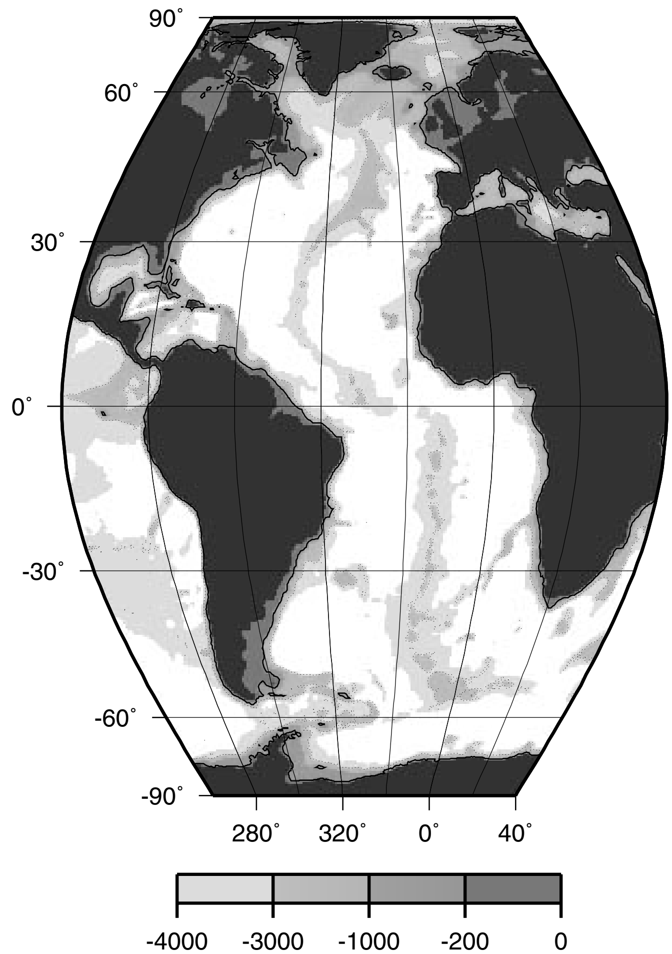


Figure 3.1 The Atlantic Ocean viewed with an Eckert VI equal-area projection. Depths, in meters, are from the ETOPO 30′ data set. The 200 m contour outlines continental shelves.

mile should be $2\pi R_e/(360 \times 60) = 1.855$ km, which is very close to the official definition of the *international nautical mile*: 1 nm $\equiv$ 1.852 km.

3.1 Oceans and Seas

There are only three oceans by international definition: the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans (International Hydrographic Bureau, 1953). The seas, which are part of the ocean, are defined in several ways, and we will consider two.

The Atlantic Ocean extends northward from Antarctica and includes all of the Arctic Sea, the European Mediterranean, and the American Mediterranean more commonly known as the Caribbean sea (Figure 3.1). The boundary between the Atlantic and Indian Oceans is the meridian of Cape Agulhas (20°E). The boundary between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans is the line forming the shortest distance from Cape Horn to the South Shetland Islands. In the north,

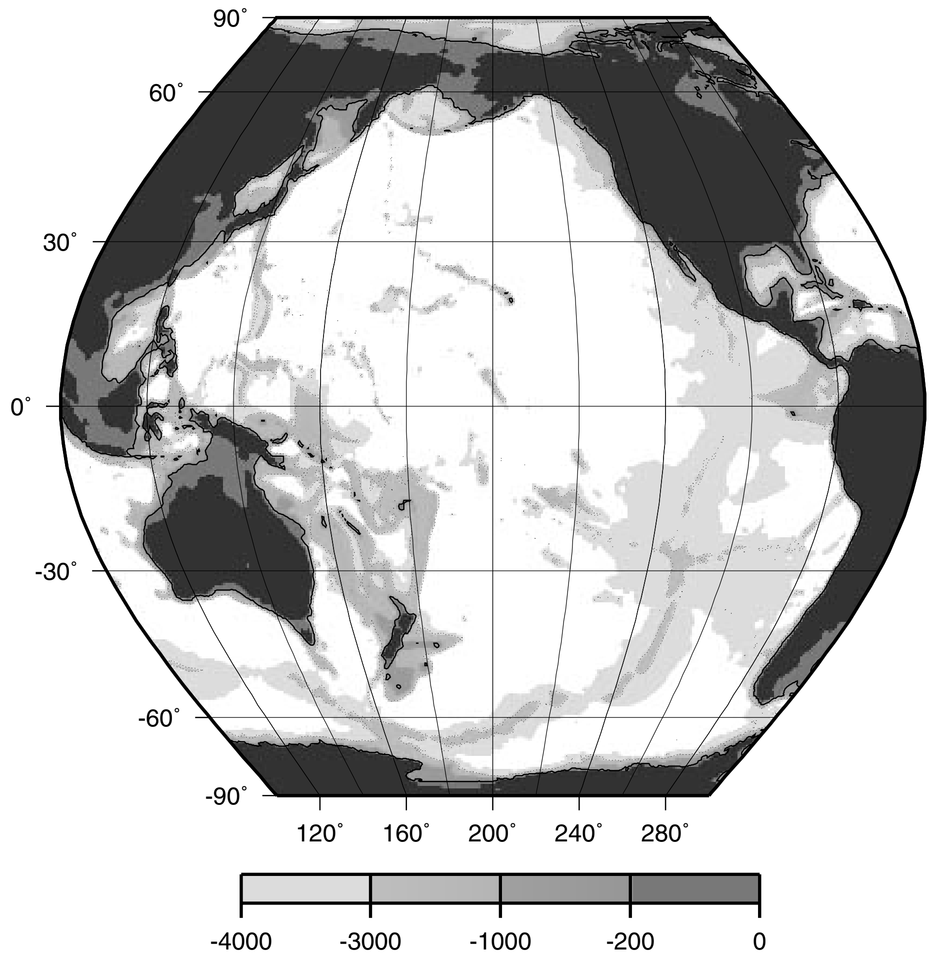


Figure 3.2 The Pacific Ocean viewed with an Eckert VI equal-area projection. Depths, in meters, are from the ETOPO 30′ data set. The 200 m contour outlines continental shelves.

the Arctic Sea is part of the Atlantic Ocean, and the Bering Strait is the boundary between the Atlantic and Pacific.

The Pacific Ocean extends northward from Antarctica to the Bering Strait (Figure 3.2). The boundary between the Pacific and Indian Oceans follows the line from the Malay Peninsula through Sumatra, Java, Timor, Australia at Cape Londonderry, and Tasmania. From Tasmania to Antarctica it is the meridian of South East Cape on Tasmania 147°E.

The Indian Ocean extends from Antarctica to the continent of Asia including the Red Sea and Persian Gulf (Figure 3.3). Some authors use the name Southern Ocean to describe the ocean surrounding Antarctica.

Mediterranean Seas are mostly surrounded by land. By this definition, the Arctic and Caribbean Seas are both Mediterranean Seas, the Arctic Mediterranean and the Caribbean Mediterranean.

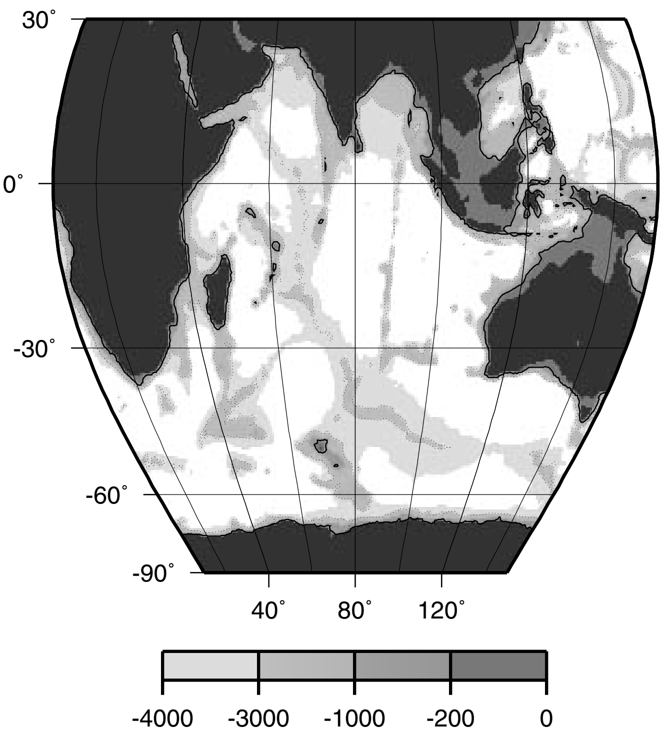


Figure 3.3 The Indian Ocean viewed with an Eckert VI equal-area projection. Depths, in meters, are from the ETOPO 30′ data set. The 200 m contour outlines continental shelves.

Marginal Seas are defined by only an indentation in the coast. The Arabian Sea and South China Sea are marginal seas.

3.2 Dimensions of the Oceans

The oceans and adjacent seas cover 70.8% of the surface of the Earth, which amounts to 361,254,000 km^2. The areas of the oceans vary considerably (Table 3.1), and the Pacific is the largest.

Oceanic dimensions range from around 1500 km for the minimum width of the Atlantic to more than 13,000 km for the north-south extent of the Atlantic and the width of the Pacific. Typical depths are only 3–4 km. So horizontal dimensions of ocean basins are 1,000 times greater than the vertical dimension. A scale model of the Pacific, the size of an 8.5×11 in sheet of paper, would have dimensions similar to the paper: a width of 10,000 km scales to 10 in, and a depth of 3 km scales to 0.003 in, the typical thickness of a piece of paper.

Table 3.1 Surface Area of the Oceans †

Pacific Ocean	181.34×10^6 km^2
Indian Ocean	74.12×10^6 km^2
Atlantic Ocean	106.57×10^6 km^2

† From Menard and Smith (1966)

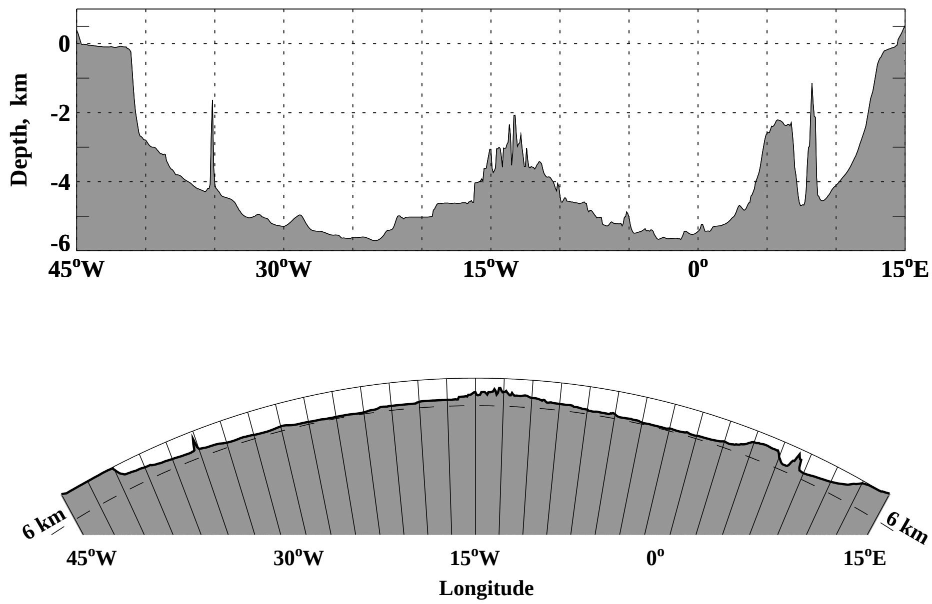


Figure 3.4 Cross-section of the South Atlantic along 25°S showing the continental shelf offshore of South America, a seamount near 35°W, the mid-Atlantic Ridge near 14°W, the Walvis Ridge near 6°E, and the narrow continental shelf off South Africa. **Upper** Vertical exaggeration of 180:1. **Lower** Vertical exaggeration of 30:1. If shown with true aspect ratio, the plot would be the thickness of the line at the sea surface in the lower plot.

Because the oceans are so thin, cross-sectional plots of ocean basins must have a greatly exaggerated vertical scale to be useful. Typical plots have a vertical scale that is 200 times the horizontal scale (Figure 3.4). This exaggeration distorts our view of the ocean. The edges of the ocean basins, the continental slopes, are not steep cliffs as shown in the figure at 41°W and 12°E. Rather, they are gentle slopes dropping down 1 meter for every 20 meters in the horizontal.

The small ratio of depth to width of ocean basins has dynamical implications. Vertical velocities must be much smaller than horizontal velocities. Even over distances of a few hundred kilometers, the vertical velocity must be on order 1% of the horizontal velocity. We will use this information later to simplify the equations of motion.

At first glance, the relatively small value of vertical velocities seems to have little influence on dynamics until we begin to think about turbulence. Three dimensional turbulence is very different than two-dimensional turbulence. In two dimensions, vortex lines must always be vertical, and there can be little vortex stretching. In three dimensions, vortex stretching plays a fundamental role in turbulence.

3.3 Bathymetric Features

Earth's crust is divided into two types: regions of thin dense crust with thickness of about 10 km, the oceanic crust; and regions of thick light crust with thickness of about 40 km, the continental crust. The deep, lighter continental crust floats

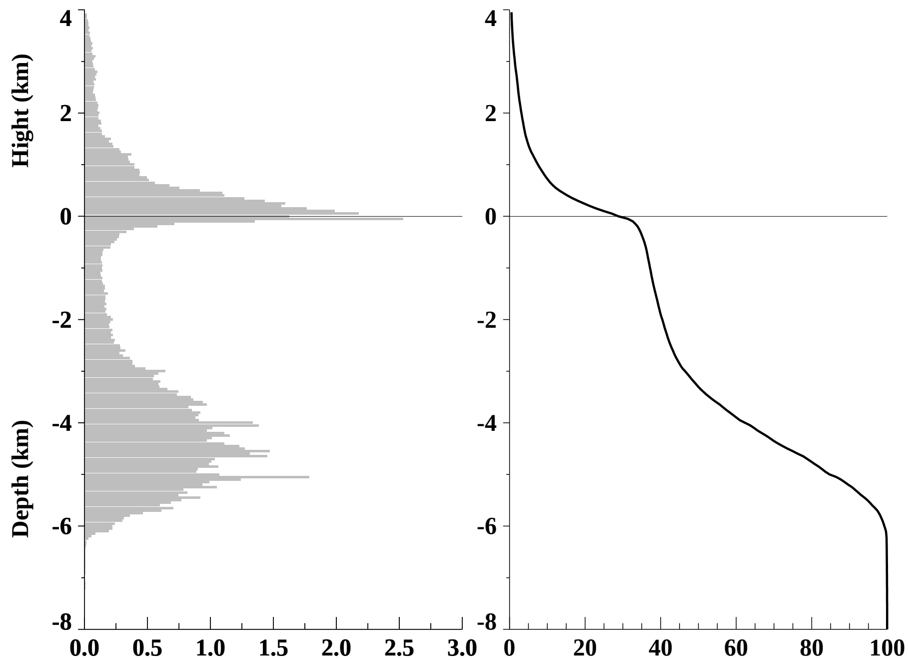


Figure 3.5 **Left** Histogram of elevations of land and depth of the sea floor as percentage of area of the Earth, in 50 m intervals showing the clear distinction between continents and sea floor. **Right** Cumulative frequency curve of height, the hypsographic curve. The curves are calculated from the ETOPO 30′ data set.

higher on the denser mantle than does the oceanic crust, and the mean height of the crust relative to sea level has two distinct values: continents have a mean elevation of 1114 m; oceans have a mean depth of -3432 m (Figure 3.5).

The volume of the water in the oceans exceeds the volume of the ocean basins, and some water spills over on to the low lying areas of the continents. These shallow seas are the continental shelves. Some, such as the South China Sea, are more than 1100 km wide. Most are relatively shallow, with typical depths of 50–100 m. A few of the more important shelves are: the East China Sea, the Bering Sea, the North Sea, the Grand Banks, the Patagonian Shelf, the Arafura Sea and Gulf of Carpentaria, and the Siberian Shelf. The shallow seas help dissipate tides, they are often areas of high biological productivity, and they are usually included in the exclusive economic zone of adjacent countries.

The crust is broken into large plates that move relative to each other. New crust is created at the mid-ocean ridges, and old crust is lost at trenches. The relative motion of crust, due to plate tectonics, produces the distinctive features of the sea floor sketched in Figure 3.6, include mid-ocean ridges, trenches, island arcs, basins, and sea mounts.

The names of the subsea features have been defined by the International Hydrographic Bureau (1953), and the following definitions are taken from Dietrich et al. (1980).

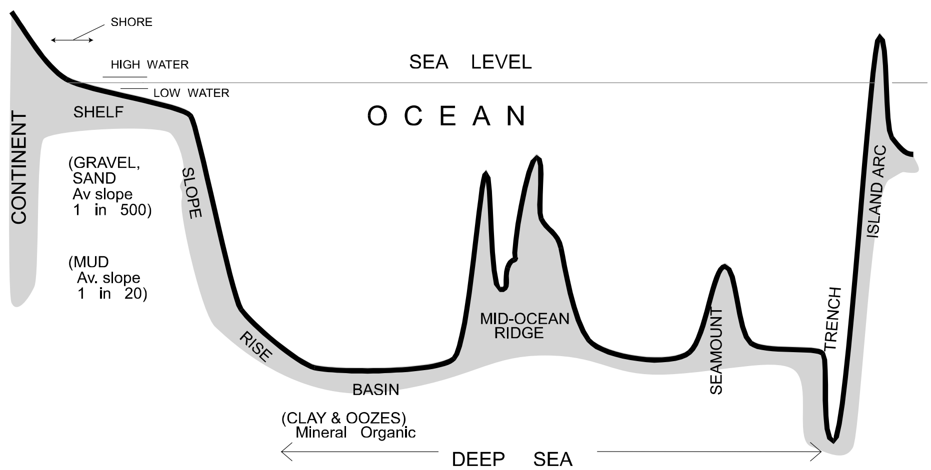


Figure 3.6 Schematic section through the ocean showing principal features of the sea floor. Note that the slope of the sea floor is greatly exaggerated in the figure.

Basins are depressions of the sea floor more or less equidimensional in form and of variable extent.

Canyon are relatively narrow, deep depressions with steep slopes, the bottoms of which grade continuously downward.

Continental (or island) shelfs are zones adjacent to a continent (or around an island) and extending from the low-water line to the depth at which there is usually a marked increase of slope to greater depth. (Figure 3.7)

Continental (or island) slopes are the declivities seaward from the shelf edge into greater depth.

Plains are flat, gently sloping or nearly level regions of the sea floor, *e.g.* an abyssal plain.

Ridges are long, narrow elevations of the sea floor with steep sides and irregular topography.

Seamounts are isolated or comparatively isolated elevations rising 1000 m or more from the sea floor and of limited extent across the summit (Figure 3.8).

Sills are the low parts of the ridges separating ocean basins from one another or from the adjacent sea floor.

Trenches are long, narrow, and deep depressions of the sea floor, with relatively steep sides (Figure 3.9).

Subsea features have important influences on the ocean circulation. Ridges separate deep waters of the oceans into distinct basins separated by sills. Water deeper than a sill cannot move from one basin to another. Tens of thousands of isolated peaks, seamounts, are scattered throughout the ocean basins. They interrupt ocean currents, and produce turbulence leading to vertical mixing of water in the ocean.

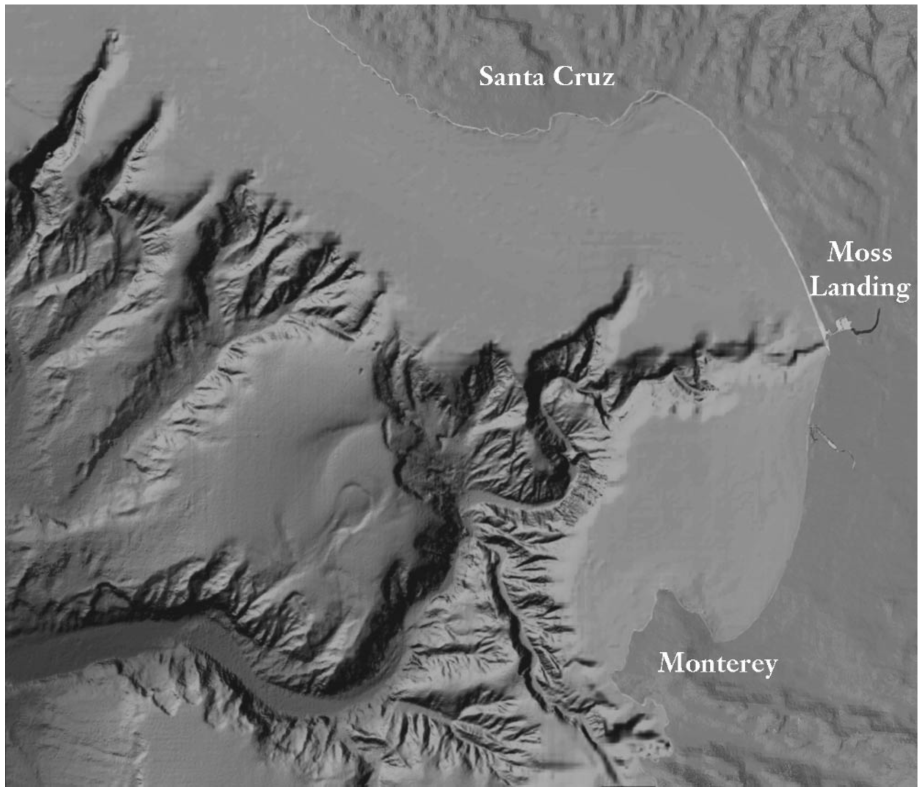


Figure 3.7 An example of a continental shelf, the shelf offshore of Monterey California showing the Monterey and other canyons. Canyons are are common on shelfs, often extending across the shelf and down the continental slope to deep water. Figure copyright Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute (MBARI).

3.4 Measuring the Depth of the Ocean

The depth of the ocean is usually measured two ways: 1) using acoustic echo-sounders on ships, or 2) using data from satellite altimeters.

Echo Sounders Most maps of the ocean are based on measurements made by echo sounders. The instrument transmits a burst of 10–30 kHz sound and listens for the echo from the sea floor. The time interval between transmission of the pulse and reception of the echo, when multiplied by the velocity of sound, gives twice the depth of the ocean (Figure 3.10).

The first transatlantic echo soundings were made by the U.S. Navy Destroyer *Stewart* in 1922. This was quickly followed by the first systematic survey of a ocean basin, made by the German research and survey ship *Meteor* during its expedition to the South Atlantic from 1925 to 1927. Since then, oceanographic and naval ships have operated echo sounders almost continuously while at sea. Millions of miles of ship-track data recorded on paper have been digitized to produce data bases used to make maps. The tracks are not well distributed. Tracks tend to be far apart in the southern hemisphere, even near Australia (Figure

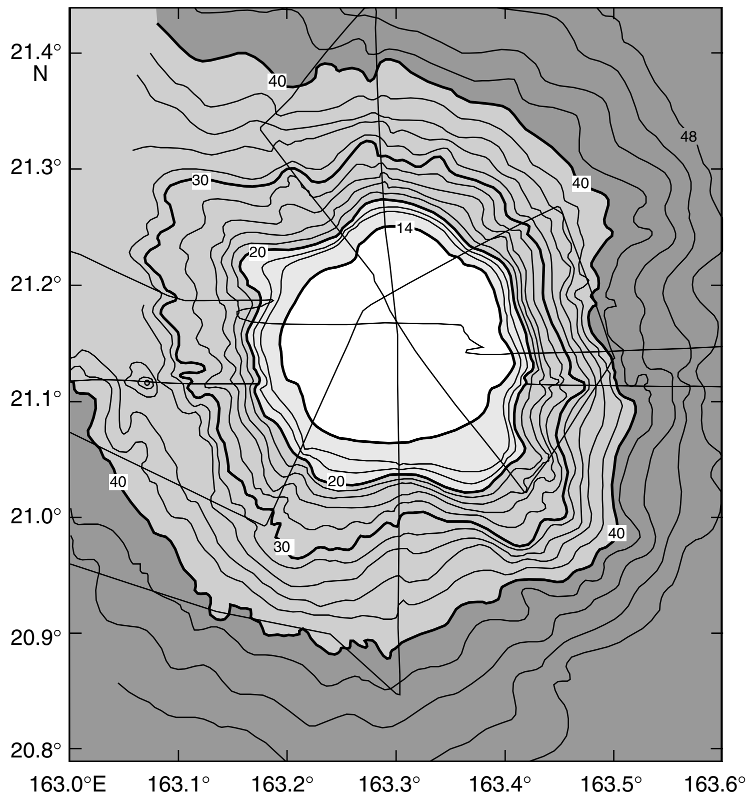


Figure 3.8 An example of a seamount, the Wilde Guyot. A guyot is a seamount with a flat top created by wave action when the seamount extended above sea level. As the seamount is carried by plate motion, it gradually sinks deeper below sea level. The depth was contoured from echo sounder data collected along the ship track (thin straight lines) supplemented with side-scan sonar data. Depths are in units of 100 m.

3.11) and closer together in well mapped areas such as the North Atlantic.

Depths measured by echo sounders are useful, but they do have errors:

1. Sound speed varies by ±4% in different regions of the ocean. Tables of the mean sound speed are used to correct depth measurements to an accuracy of around ±1%. See §3.6 for more on sound in the ocean.
2. Echoes may come from shallower depths off to the side of the ship rather from directly below the ship. This can introduce small errors in some hilly regions.
3. Ship positions were poorly known before the introduction of satellite navigation techniques in the 1960s. Ship positions could be in error by tens of kilometers, especially in cloudy regions where accurate celestial fixes could not be obtained.
4. Schools of marine zooplankton or fish were sometimes mistaken for shallow water, leading to false seamounts and shoals on some bathymetric charts. This error is reduced by remapping questionable features.

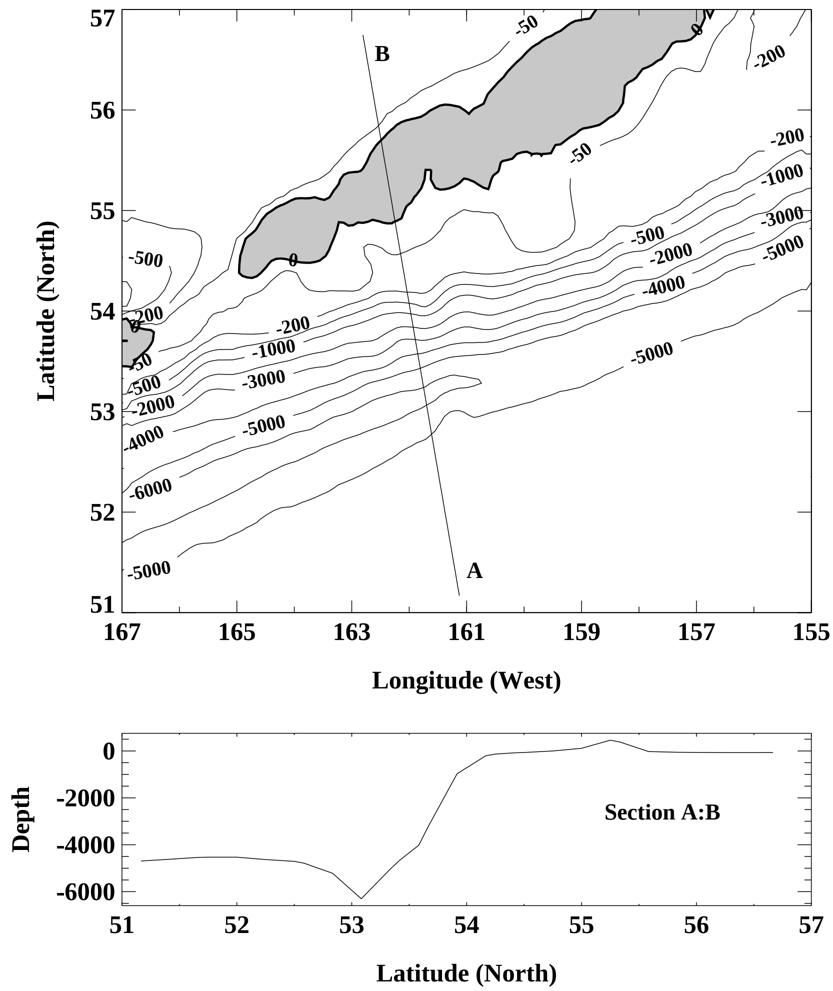


Figure 3.9 An example of a trench, the Aleutian Trench; an island arc, the Aleutian Islands; and a continental shelf, the Bering Sea. The island arc is composed of volcanos produced when oceanic crust carried deep into a trench melts and rises to the surface. **Top:** Map of the Aleutian region of the North Pacific. **Bottom:** Cross-section through the region.

5. Some oceanic areas as large as 500 km on a side have never been mapped by echo sounders (Figure 3.11). This creates significant gaps in knowledge of the oceanic depths.

Satellite Altimetry Gaps in our knowledge of ocean depths between ship tracks have now been filled by satellite-altimeter data. Altimeters profile the shape of the sea surface, and it's shape is very similar to the shape of the sea floor. To see this, we must first consider how gravity influences sea level.

The Relationship Between Sea Level and the Ocean's Depth Excess mass at the seafloor, for example the mass of a seamount, increases local gravity because the mass of the seamount is larger than the mass of water it displaces, rocks

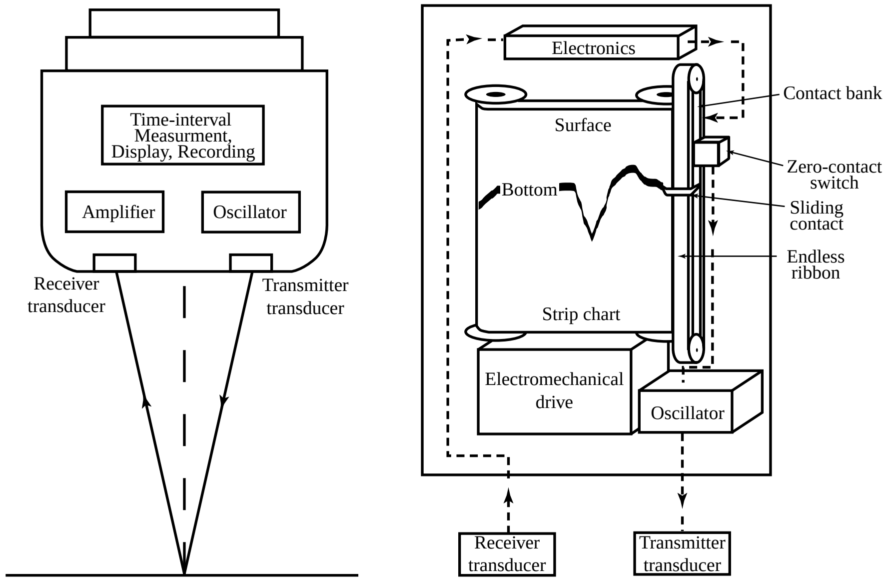


Figure 3.10 **Left:** Echo sounders measure depth of the ocean by transmitting pulses of sound and observing the time required to receive the echo from the bottom. **Right:** The time is recorded by a spark burning a mark on a slowly moving roll of paper. (From Dietrich, et al. 1980)

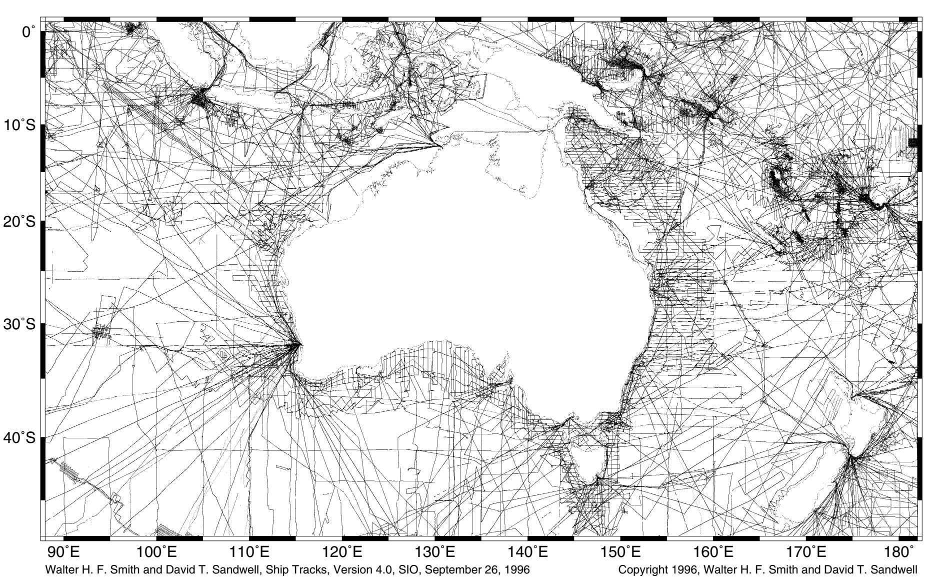


Figure 3.11 Locations of echo-sounder data used for mapping the ocean near Australia. Note the large areas where depths have not been measured from ships. (From Sandwell)

being more than three times denser than water. The excess mass increases local gravity, which attracts water toward the seamount. This changes the shape of the sea surface (Figure 3.12).

Let's make the concept more exact. To a very good approximation, the sea surface is a particular *level surface* called the *geoid* (see box). By definition a level surface is everywhere perpendicular to gravity. In particular, it must be perpendicular to the local vertical determined by a plumb line, which is a line from which a weight is suspended. Thus the plumb line is perpendicular to the local level surface, and it is used to determine the orientation of the level surface, especially by surveyors on land.

The excess mass of the seamount attracts the plumb line's weight, causing the plumb line to point a little toward the seamount instead of toward Earth's center of mass. Because the sea surface must be perpendicular to gravity, it must have a slight bulge above a seamount as shown in the figure. If there were no bulge, the sea surface would not be perpendicular to gravity. Typical seamounts produce a bulge that is 1–20 m high over distances of 100–200 kilometers. Of course, this bulge is too small to be seen from a ship, but it is easily measured by an altimeter. Oceanic trenches have a deficit of mass, and they produce a depression of the sea surface.

The correspondence between the shape of the sea surface and the depth of the water is not exact. It depends on the strength of the seafloor and the age of the seafloor feature. If a seamount floats on the seafloor like ice on water, the gravitational signal is much weaker than it would be if the seamount rested on the seafloor like ice resting on a table top. As a result, the relationship between gravity and bathymetry varies from region to region.

Depths measured by acoustic echo sounders are used to determine the regional relationships. Hence, altimetery is used to interpolate between acoustic echo sounder measurements (Smith and Sandwell, 1994). Using this technique, the ocean's depth can be calculated with an accuracy of ± 100 m.

Satellite-altimeter systems Now lets see how altimeters can measure the shape of the sea surface. Satellite altimeter systems include a radar to measure the height of the satellite above the sea surface and a tracking system to determine the height of the satellite in geocentric coordinates. The system measures the height of the sea surface relative to the center of mass of the Earth (Figure 3.13). This gives the shape of the sea surface.

Many altimetric satellites have flown in space. All have had sufficient accuracy to observe the marine geoid and the influence of bathymetric features on the geoid. Typical accuracy varied from a few meters for GEOSAT to ± 0.05 m for Topex/Poseidon. The most useful satellites include Seasat (1978), GEOSAT (1985–1988), ERS–1 (1991–1996), ERS–2 (1995–), and Topex/Poseidon (1992–). Seasat, ERS–1, and ERS–2 also carried instruments to measure winds, waves, and other processes. GEOSAT and Topex/Poseidon are primarily altimetric satellites.

Satellite Altimeter Maps of the Bathymetry Seasat, GEOSAT, ERS–1, and ERS–2 were operated in orbits designed to map the marine geoid. Their orbits had ground tracks spaced 3–10 km apart, which is sufficient to map the geoid. The first measurements, which were made by GEOSAT, were classified by the

The Geoid

The level surface corresponding to the surface of an ocean at rest is a special surface, the *geoid*. To a first approximation, the geoid is an ellipsoid that corresponds to the surface of a rotating, homogeneous fluid in solid-body rotation, which means that the fluid has no internal flow. To a second approximation, the geoid differs from the ellipsoid because of local variations in gravity. The deviations are called *geoid undulations*. The maximum amplitude of the undulations is roughly ±60 m. To a third approximation, the geoid deviates from the sea surface because the ocean is not at rest. The deviation of sea level from the geoid is defined to be the *topography*. The definition is identical to the definition for land topography, for example the heights given on a topographic map.

The ocean's topography is caused by tides and ocean surface currents, and we will return to their influence in chapters 10 and 18. The maximum amplitude of the topography is roughly ±1 m, so it is small compared to the geoid undulations.

Geoid undulations are caused by local variations in gravity, which are due to the uneven distribution of mass at the sea floor. Seamounts have an excess of mass due to their density and they produce an upward bulge in the geoid (see below). Trenches have a deficiency of mass, and they produce a downward deflection of the geoid. Thus the geoid is closely related to bathymetry; and maps of the oceanic geoid have a remarkable resemblance to the bathymetry.

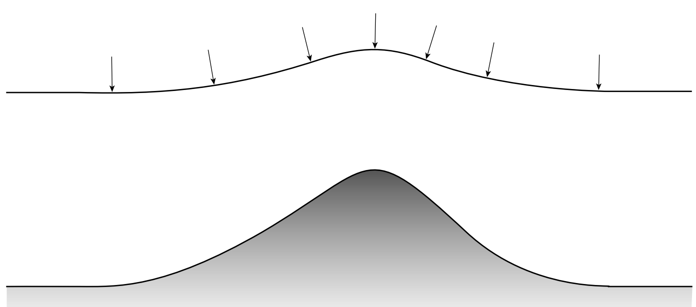


Figure 3.12 Seamounts are more dense than sea water, and they increase local gravity causing a plumb line at the sea surface (arrows) to be deflected toward the seamount. Because the surface of an ocean at rest must be perpendicular to gravity, the sea surface and the local geoid must have a slight bulge as shown. Such bulges are easily measured by satellite altimeters. As a result, satellite altimeter data can be used to map the sea floor. Note, the bulge at the sea surface is greatly exaggerated, a two-kilometer high seamount would produce a bulge of approximately 10 m.

US Navy, and they were not released to scientists outside the Navy. By 1996 however, the geoid had been mapped by the Europeans and the Navy released all the GEOSAT data. By combining data from all altimetric satellites, the small errors due to ocean currents and tides have been reduced, and maps of the geoid with ±3 km spatial resolution have been produced.

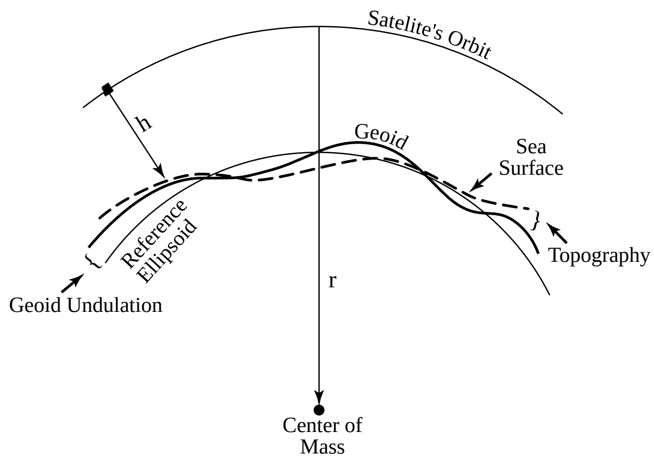


Figure 3.13 A satellite altimeter measures the height of the satellite above the sea surface. When this is subtracted from the height r of the satellite's orbit, the difference is sea level relative to the center of the Earth. The shape of the surface is due to variations in gravity, which produce the geoid undulations, and to ocean currents which produce the oceanic topography, the departure of the sea surface from the geoid. The reference ellipsoid is the best smooth approximation to the geoid. (From Stewart, 1985).

3.5 Bathymetric Charts and Data Sets

Most available echo-sounder data have been digitized and plotted to make bathymetric charts. Data have been further processed and edited to produce digital data sets which are widely distributed in CD-ROM format. These data have been supplemented with data from altimetric satellites to produce maps of the sea floor with spatial resolution approaching 3 km.

The British Oceanographic Data Centre publishes the General Bathymetric Chart of the Oceans (GEBCO) Digital Atlas on behalf of the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission of UNESCO and the International Hydrographic Organization. The atlas consists primarily of the location of bathymetric contours, coastlines, and tracklines from the GEBCO 5th Edition published at a scale of 1:10 million. The original contours were drawn by hand based on digitized echo-sounder data plotted on base maps.

The U.S. National Geophysical Data Center publishes the ETOPO-5 CD-ROM containing values of digital oceanic depths from echo sounders and land heights from surveys interpolated to a 5-minute (5-nautical mile) grid. Much of the data were originally compiled by the U.S. Defense Mapping Agency, the U.S. Navy Oceanographic Office, and the U.S. National Ocean Service. Although the map has values on a 5-minute grid, data used to make the map are much more sparse, especially in the southern ocean, where distances between ship tracks can exceed 500 km in some regions. The same data set and CD-ROM is contains values smoothed and interpolated to a 30-minute grid.

Sandwell and Smith of the Scripps Institution of Oceanography distribute a digital bathymetric atlas of the oceans based on measurements of the height of the sea surface made from GEOSAT and ERS–1 altimeters and echo-sounder data. This map has a spatial resolution of 3–4 km and a vertical accuracy of

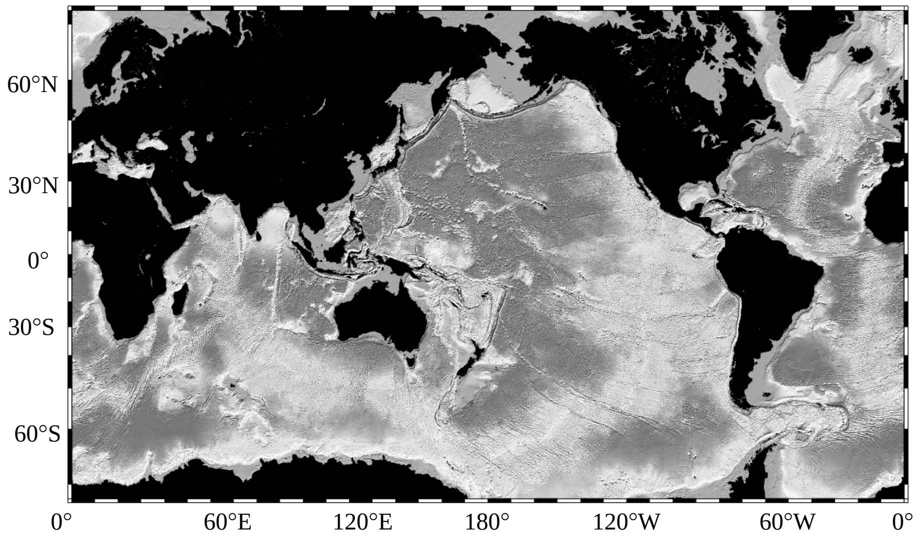


Figure 3.14 The bathymetry of the ocean with 3 km resolution produced from satellite altimeter observations of the shape of the sea surface (From Smith and Sandwell).

±100 m (Smith and Sandwell, 1997). The US National Geophysical Data Center combined the Sandwell and Smith data with land elevations to produce a global map with 2 minute spatial resolution. These maps shows much more detail than the ETOPO-5 map because the satellite data fill in the regions between ship tracks (Figure 3.14).

National governments publish coastal and harbor maps. In the USA, the NOAA National Ocean Service publishes nautical charts useful for navigation of ships in harbors and offshore waters.

3.6 Sound in the Ocean

Sound provides the only convenient means for transmitting information over great distances in the ocean, and it is the only signal that can be used for the remotely sensing of the ocean below a depth of a few tens of meters. Sound is used to measure the properties of the sea floor, the depth of the ocean, temperature, and currents. Whales and other ocean animals use sound to navigate, communicate over great distances, and to find food.

Sound Speed The sound speed in the ocean varies with temperature, salinity, and pressure (MacKenzie, 1981; Munk *et al.* 1995: 33):

$$\begin{aligned} C = {} & 1448.96 + 4.591\,T - 0.05304\,T^2 + 0.0002374\,T^3 + 0.0160\,Z \\ & + (1.340 - 0.01025\,T)(S-35) + 1.675 \times 10^{-7}\,Z - 7.139 \times 10^{-13}\,T\,Z^3 \end{aligned} \tag{3.1}$$

where C is speed in m/s, T is temperature in Celsius, S is salinity in practical salinity units (see Chapter 6 for a definition of salinity), and Z is depth in meters. The equation has an accuracy of about 0.1 m/s (Dushaw, *et al.* 1993). Other

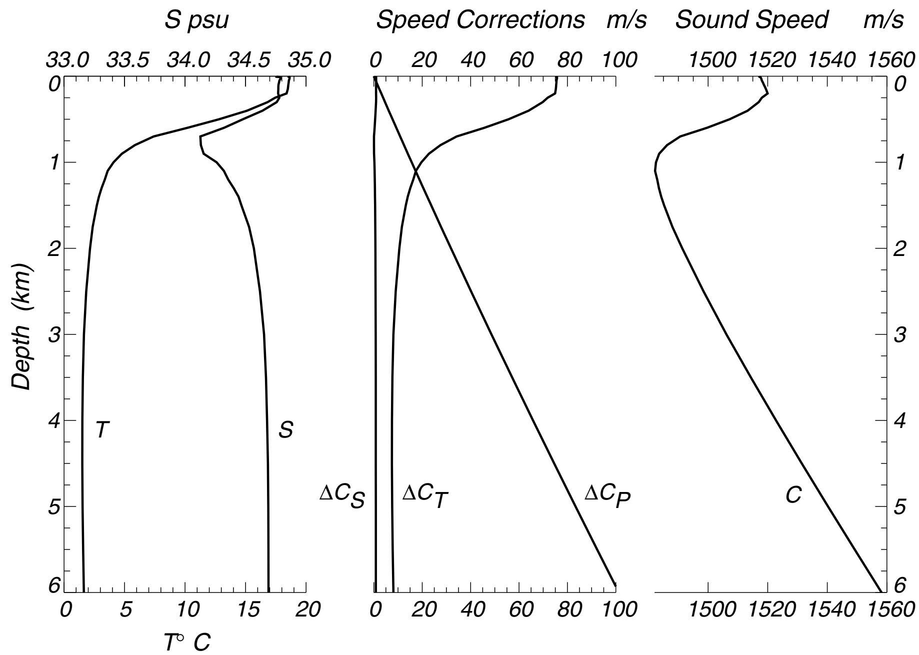


Figure 3.15 Processes producing the sound channel in the ocean. **Left:** Temperature T and salinity S measured as a function of depth during the R.V. *Hakuho Maru* cruise KH-87-1, station JT, on 28 January 1987 at Lat 33°52.90′ N, Long 141°55.80′ E in the North Pacific. **Center:** Variations in sound speed due to variations in temperature, salinity, and depth. **Right:** Sound speed as a function of depth showing the velocity minimum near 1 km depth which defines the sound channel in the ocean. (Data from JPOTS Editorial Panel, 1991).

sound-speed equations have been widely used, especially an equation proposed by Wilson (1960) which has been widely used by the U.S. Navy.

For typical oceanic conditions, C varies within a small range, typically within 1450 m/s to 1550 m/s (Fig. 3.13). Using (3.1), we can calculate the sensitivity of C to changes of temperature, depth, and salinity typical of the ocean. The approximate values are: 40 m/s per 10°C rise of temperature, 16 m/s per 1000 m increase in depth, and 1.5 m/s per 1 psu increase in salinity. Thus the primary causes of variability of sound speed is temperature and depth (pressure). Variations of salinity are too small to have much influence.

If we plot sound speed as a function of depth, we find that the speed usually has a minimum at a depth around 1000 m (Figure 3.16). The depth of minimum speed is called the *sound channel*. It occurs in all oceans, and it usually reaches the surface at very high latitudes.

The sound channel has great practical importance. Refraction allows sound produced at this depth to propagate to great distances. Sound rays that begin to travel out of the channel are refracted back toward the center of the channel. Rays propagating upward at small angles to the horizontal are bent downward, and rays propagating downward at small angles to the horizontal are bent upward (Figure 3.16). Typical depths of the channel vary from 10 m to 1200 m depending on geographical area.

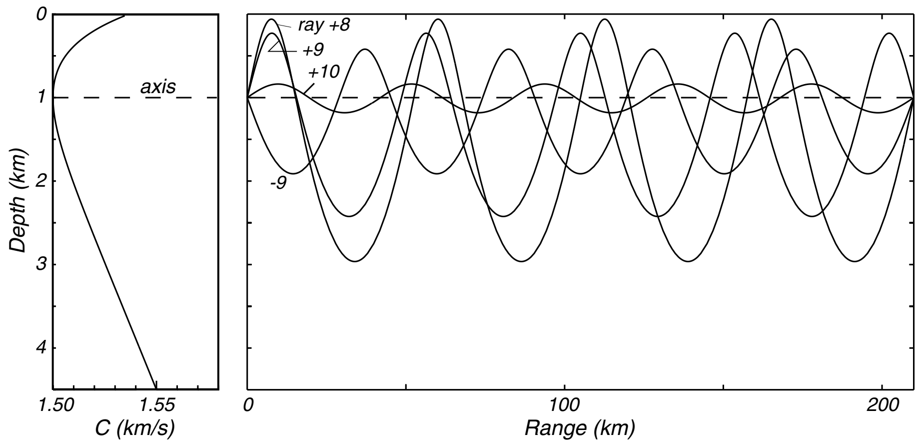


Figure 3.16 Ray paths of sound in the ocean for a source near the axis of the sound channel. (From Munk *et al.* 1995)

Absorption of Sound Absorption of sound per unit distance depends on the intensity I of the sound:

$$dI = -kI_0\,dx \tag{3.2}$$

where I_0 is the intensity before absorption and k is an absorption coefficient which depends on frequency of the sound. The equation has the solution:

$$I = I_0 \exp(-kx) \tag{3.3}$$

Typical values of k (in decibels dB per kilometer) are: 0.08 dB/km at 1000 Hz; and 50 dB/km at 100,000 Hz. Decibels are calculated from: $dB = 10\log(I/I_0)$. where I_0 is the original acoustic power, I is the acoustic power after absorption.

For example, at a range of 1 km a 1000 Hz signal is attenuated by only 1.8%: $I = 0.982I_0$. At a range of 1 km a 100,000 Hz signal is reduced to $I = 10^{-5}I_0$. In particular the 30,000 Hz signal used by typical echo sounders to map the ocean's depth are little attenuated going from the surface to the bottom and back.

Very low frequency sounds in the sound channel, those with frequencies below 500 Hz have been detected at distances of megameters. In 1960 15-Hz sounds from explosive charges detonated in the sound channel off Perth Australia were heard in the sound channel near Bermuda, nearly halfway around the world. Later experiment showed that 57-Hz signals transmitted in the sound channel near Heard Island (75°E, 53°S) could be heard at Bemuda in the Atlantic and at Monterey, California in the Pacific (Munk *et al.* 1994).

Use of Sound Because low frequency sound can be heard at great distances, the US Navy, in the 1950s placed arrays of microphones on the seafloor in deep and shallow water and connected them to shore stations. The Sound Surveillance System SOSUS, although designed to track submarines, has found many other uses. It has been used to listen to and track whales up to 1,700 km away, and to find the location of subsea volcanic eruptions.

3.7 Important Concepts

1. If the oceans were scaled down to a width of 8 inches they would have depths about the same as the thickness of a piece of paper. As a result, the velocity field in the ocean is nearly 2-dimensional. Vertical velocities are much smaller than horizontal velocities.
2. There are only three official oceans.
3. The volume of ocean water exceeds the capacity of the ocean basins, and the oceans overflow onto the continents creating continental shelves.
4. The depths of the ocean are mapped by echo sounders which measure the time required for a sound pulse to travel from the surface to the bottom and back. Depths measured by ship-based echo sounders have been used to produce maps of the sea floor. The maps have poor spatial resolution in some regions because the regions were seldom visited by ships and ship tracks are far apart.
5. The depths of the ocean are also measured by satellite altimeter systems which profile the shape of the sea surface. The local shape of the surface is influenced by changes in gravity due to subsea features. Recent maps based on satellite altimeter measurements of the shape of the sea surface combined with ship data have depth accuracy of ± 100 m and spatial resolutions of ± 3 km.
6. Typical sound speed in the ocean is 1480 m/s. Speed depends primarily on temperature, less on pressure, and very little on salinity. The variability of sound speed as a function of pressure and temperature produces a horizontal sound channel in the ocean. Sound in the channel can travel great distances; and low-frequency sounds below 500 Hz can travel halfway around the world provided the path is not interrupted by land.

Chapter 4

Atmospheric Influences

The sun and the atmosphere drive directly or indirectly almost all dynamical processes in the ocean. Geothermal heating of the oceans from below barely influences the deep layers in the ocean. The dominant external sources and sinks of energy are sunlight, evaporation, infrared emissions from the sea surface, and sensible heating of the sea by warm or cold winds. Winds drive the ocean's surface circulation down to depths of around a kilometer. Deep mixing drives to some extent the deeper currents in the ocean.

The oceans, in turn, help drive the atmospheric circulation. The uneven distribution of heat loss and gain by the ocean leads to winds in the atmosphere. Sunlight warms the tropical oceans, which evaporate, transferring heat in the form of moisture to the atmosphere. Winds and ocean currents carry heat poleward, where it is lost to space. In some regions, cold dry air blows over warm water further extracting heat from the ocean.

The response of the ocean to the atmosphere is not passive because oceanic processes help drive the atmospheric circulation. To understand ocean dynamics, we must consider the ocean and the atmosphere as a coupled dynamic system. In this chapter we will look at the exchange of heat and water between the atmosphere and the ocean. Later, we will explore the influence of the wind on the ocean and the exchange of momentum leading to wind-driven ocean currents.

4.1 The Earth in Space

The Earth's orbit about the sun is nearly circular at a mean distance of 1.5×10^8 km. The eccentricity of the orbit is small, 0.0168. Thus Earth is 103.4% further from the Sun at aphelion than at perihelion, the time of closest approach to the sun. Perihelion occurred on 3 January in 1995, and it slowly changes by about 20 minutes per year. Earth's axis of rotation is inclined 23.45° to the plane of earth's orbit around the sun (Figure 4.1). The orientation is such that the sun is directly overhead at the Equator on the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, which occur on or about 21 March and 21 September each year.

The latitudes of 23.45° North and South are the Tropics of Cancer and

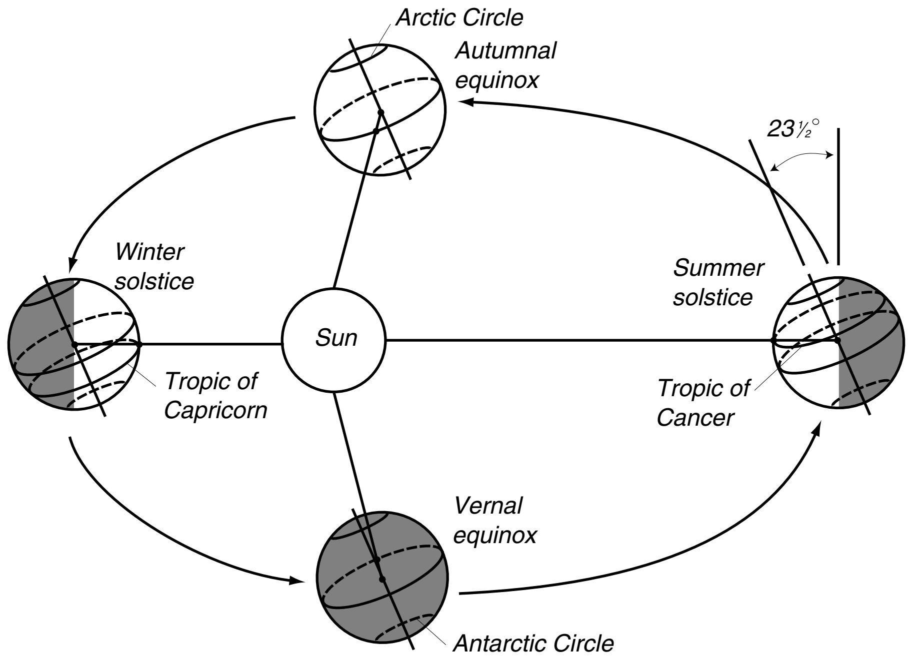


Figure 4.1 The Earth in space. The ellipticity of Earth's orbit around the sun and the tilt of Earth's axis of rotation relative to the plane of Earth orbit leads to an unequal distribution of heating and to the seasons.

Capricorn respectively. The tropics lie equatorward of these latitudes. As a result of the eccentricity of earth's orbit, maximum solar insolation averaged over the surface of the earth occurs in early January each year. As a result of the inclination of earth's axis of rotation, the maximum insolation at any location in the northern hemisphere occurs in the summer, around 21 June. Maximum insolation in the southern hemisphere occurs in December.

If the insolation were rapidly and efficiently redistributed over Earth, maximum temperature would occur in January. Conversely, if heat were poorly redistributed, maximum temperature in the northern hemisphere would occur in summer. The two processes are 180° out of phase in the northern hemisphere; but because the Earth's climate system is non-linear, it can phase lock to either frequency. Hence, which will dominate? Recent work by Thomson (1995) shows that either process can dominate in some regions for some times.

4.2 Atmospheric Wind Systems

Figure 4.2 shows the distribution of sea-level winds and pressure averaged over the year 1989. The map shows strong winds from the west between 40° to 60° latitude, the roaring forties, weak winds in the subtropics near 30° latitude, trade winds from the east in the tropics, and weaker winds from the east along the Equator. The strength and direction of winds in the atmosphere is the result of uneven distribution of solar heating and continental land masses and the circulation of winds in a vertical plane in the atmosphere.

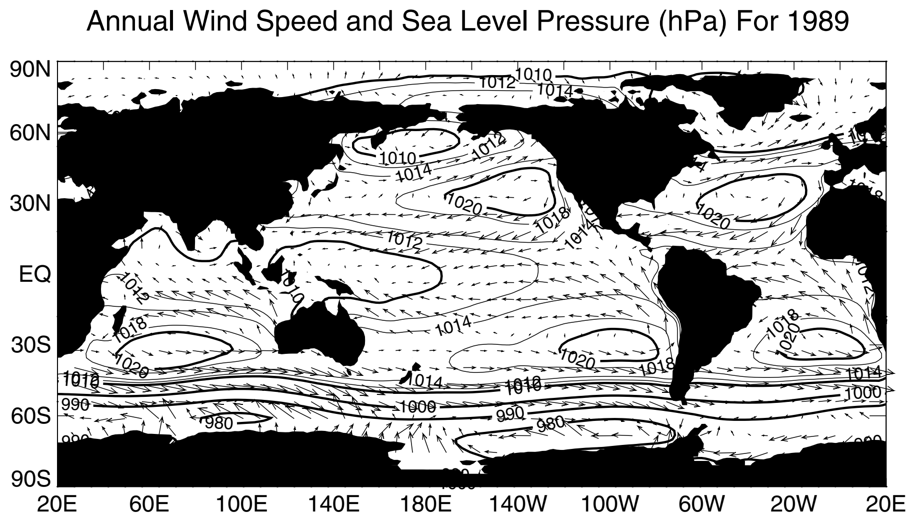


Figure 4.2 Map of mean annual wind velocity calculated from Trenberth (1990) and sea-level pressure for 1989 from the NASA Goddard Space Flight Center's Data Assimilation Office (Schubert et al. 1995).

The mean value of winds over the ocean is (Wentz et al. 1984):

$$U_{10} = 7.4 \text{ m/s} \tag{4.1}$$

Each component of the wind vector has a Gaussian distribution with zero mean, so the magnitude of the wind vector has a Rayleigh distribution (Freilich, 1997).

A simple cartoon (Figure 4.3) shows distribution of winds in the atmosphere, including equatorial convection, trade winds in the tropics, and westerly winds at higher latitudes. The distribution of surface winds strongly influences the properties of the upper ocean.

The simple picture of the winds changes somewhat with the seasons. The largest changes are in the Indian Ocean and the western Pacific Ocean (Figure 4.4). Both regions are strongly influenced by the Asian monsoon. In winter, the cold air mass over Siberia creates a region of high pressure at the surface, and cold air blows southeastward across Japan and on across the hot Kuroshio, extracting heat from the ocean. In summer, the thermal low over Tibet draws warm, moist air from the Indian Ocean leading to the rainy season over India.

4.3 The Planetary Boundary Layer

The atmosphere immediately above the ocean is influenced by the turbulent drag of the wind on the sea surface and the fluxes of heat through the surface. This layer of the atmosphere that is closely coupled to the surface is the *atmospheric boundary layer*. The thickness of the layer Z_i varies from a few tens of meters for weak winds blowing over water colder than the air to around a kilometer for stronger winds blowing over water warmer than the air. The structure of the layer influences the exchange of momentum and heat between the surface and the atmosphere. (See Dabberdt et al. 1993 for a review of the subject.)

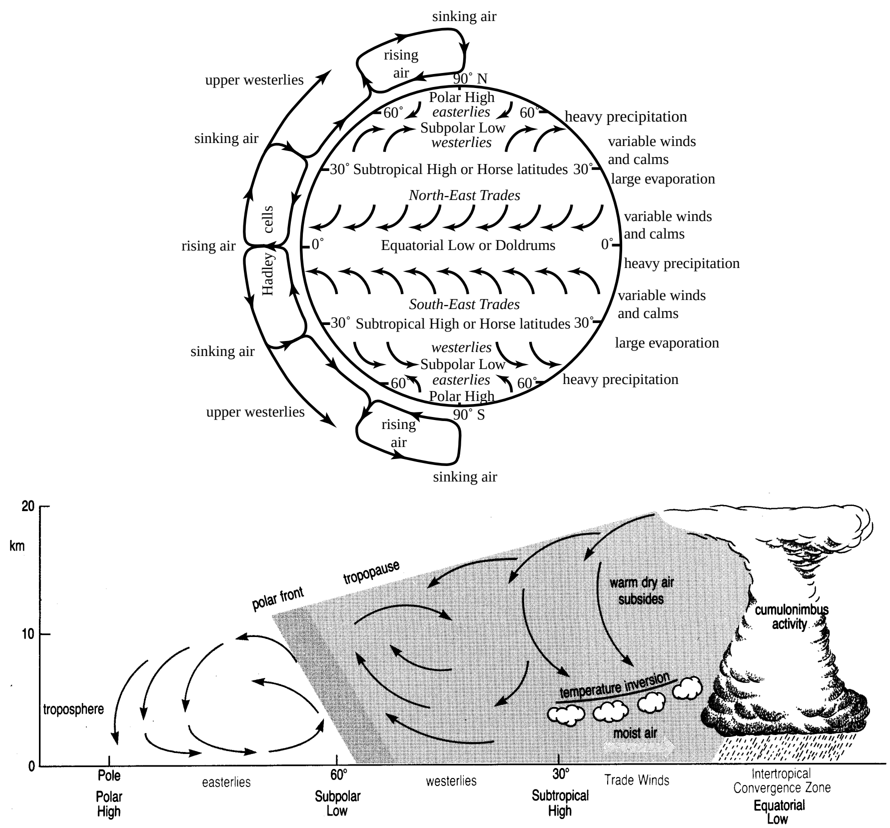


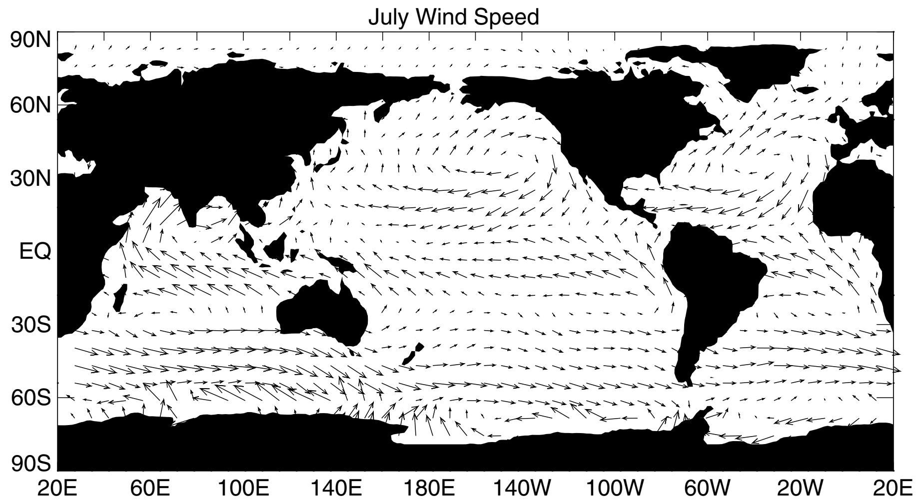
Figure 4.3 Simplified schematic of Earth's atmospheric circulation driven by solar heating in the tropics and cooling at high latitudes. **Upper:** The meridional cells in the atmosphere and the influence of Earth's rotation on the winds. **Bottom:** Cross-section through the atmosphere showing the two major cells of meridional circulation. From The Open University (1989a).

The lowest part of the atmospheric boundary layer is the surface layer. Within this layer, which has thickness of $\approx 0.1Z_i$, the vertical fluxes of heat and momentum are nearly constant. Concentrations of the quantities varies logarithmically with height.

Wind speed varies as the logarithm of height within the surface layer for neutral stability. See "The Turbulent Boundary Layer Over a Flat Plate" in Chapter 8. Hence, the height of a wind measurement is important. Usually, winds are reported as the value of wind at a height 10 m above the sea, given by U_{10}.

4.4 Measurement of Wind

Wind at sea has been measured for centuries. Maury (1847) was the first to systematically collect and map wind reports. Recently, the US National Atmospheric and Oceanic Administration NOAA has collected, edited, and digitized millions of observations going back over a century. The resulting *Combined*



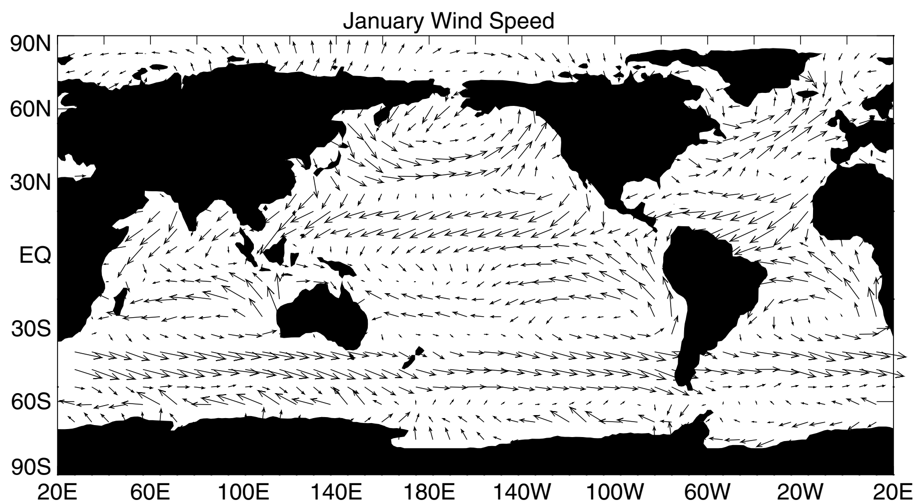


Figure 4.4 Mean, sea-surface winds for July and January calculated by Trenberth's (1990) data set calculated from the ECMWF reanalyses of weather data from 1980 to 1989.

Ocean, Atmosphere Data Set COADS is widely used for studying atmospheric forcing of the ocean.

Our knowledge of winds at the sea surface come from many types of instruments or observations. Here are the more important sources, listed in a crude order of importance to the historical record:

Beaufort Scale By far the most common source of wind data have been reports of speed based on the Beaufort scale. Even in 1990, 60% of winds reported from the North Atlantic used the Beaufort scale. The scale is based on features, such as foam coverage and wave shape, seen by an observer on a ship, that are influenced by wind speed (Table 4.1).

Table 4.1 Beaufort Wind Scale and State of the Sea

Beaufort Number	Descriptive term	m/s	Appearance of the Sea
0	Calm	0	Sea like a mirror.
1	Light Air	1.2	Ripples with appearance of scales; no foam crests.
2	Light Breeze	2.8	Small wavelets; crests of glassy appearance, not breaking.
3	Gentle breeze	4.9	Large wavelets; crests begin to break; scattered whitecaps.
4	Moderate breeze	7.7	Small waves, becoming longer; numerous whitecaps.
5	Fresh breeze	10.5	Moderate waves, taking longer to form; many whitecaps; some spray.
6	Strong breeze	13.1	Large waves forming; whitecaps everywhere; more spray.
7	Near gale	15.8	Sea heaps up; white foam from breaking waves begins to be blown into streaks.
8	Gale	18.8	Moderately high waves of greater length; edges of crests begin to break into spindrift; foam is blown in well-marked streaks.
9	Strong gale	22.1	High waves; sea begins to roll; dense streaks of foam; spray may reduce visibility.
10	Storm	25.9	Very high waves with overhanging crests; sea takes white appearance as foam is blown in very dense streaks; rolling is heavy and visibility reduced.
11	Violent storm	30.2	Exceptionally high waves; sea covered with white foam patches; visibility still more reduced.
12	Hurricane	35.2	Air is filled with foam; sea completely white with driving spray; visibility greatly reduced.

From Kent and Taylor (1997)

The scale was originally proposed by Admiral Sir F. Beaufort in 1806 to give the force of the wind on a ship's sails. It was adopted by the British Admiralty in 1838 and it soon came into general use.

The International Meteorological Committee adopted the force scale for international use in 1874. In 1926 they adopted a revised scale giving the wind speed at a height of 6 meters corresponding to the Beaufort Number. The scale was revised again in 1946 to extend the scale to higher wind speeds and to give the equivalent wind speed at a height of 10 meters. The 1946 scale was based on the empirical equation $U_{10} = 0.836B^{3/2}$, where B = Beaufort Number and U_{10} is the wind speed in meters per second at a height of 10 meters (List, 1966). More recently, various groups have revised the Beaufort scale by comparing Beaufort force with ship measurements of winds. Kent and Taylor (1997) compared the various revisions of the scale with winds measured by ships having anemometers at known heights. Their recommended values are given in Table 4.1.

Observers on ships usually report weather observations, including Beaufort force, four times per day, at midnight (0000Z), 0600Z, noon (1200Z), and 1800Z Greenwich Mean Time. The reports are coded and reported by radio to national meteorological agencies. The reports have important errors:

1. Ships are unevenly distributed over the ocean. Ships tend to avoid high

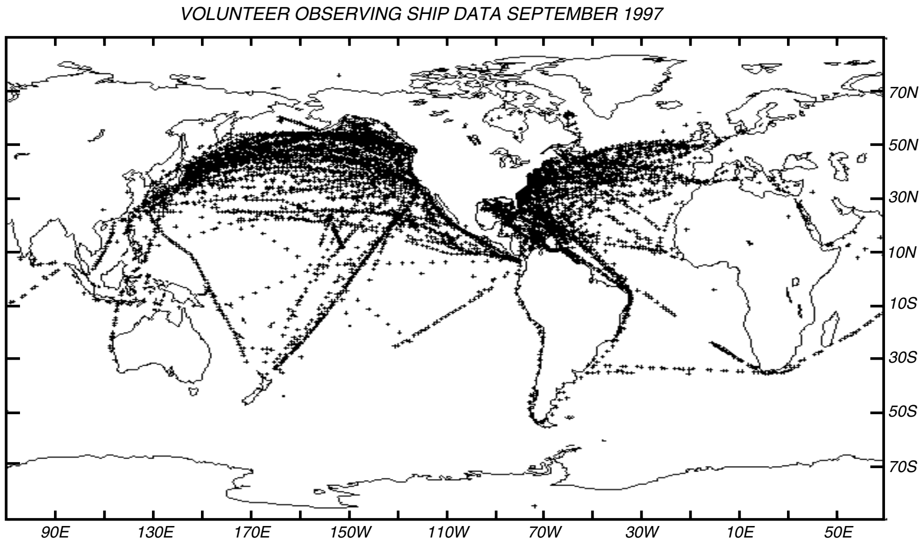


Figure 4.5 Location of surface observations made from volunteer observing ships and reported to national meteorological agencies. (From NOAA, National Ocean Service)

latitudes in winter and hurricanes in summer, and few ships cross the southern hemisphere (Figure 4.5).

2. Observers may fail to take care in observing oceanic conditions on which the Beaufort scale is based.
3. The coding of the data may have errors, which can result in the reports having the wrong location. See Figure 4.5 which shows ship positions in the Sahara Desert.
4. Overall, the accuracy is probably no better than around 10%.

Scatterometers Observations of winds at sea are coming more and more from instruments on satellites, and scatterometers are the most common source of the observations. The scatterometer is a instrument very much like a radar that measures the scatter of centimeter-wavelength radio waves from small, centimeter-wavelength waves on the sea surface. The area of the sea covered by small waves, and their amplitude depends on wind speed and direction. The scatterometer measures scatter from 2–3 directons, from which wind speed and direction are calculated. Because the instrument cannot distinguish winds blowing from right to left relative to the radio beam from winds blowing from left to right, the observation of direction is ambiguous. The ambiguity can be removed with a few surface observations or by using the data with numerical weather models. For example, wind must blow counterclockwise around lows in the northern hemisphere and clockwise around lows in the southern hemisphere.

The scatterometers on ERS-1 and ERS-2 have made global measurements of winds from space since 1991. The NASA scatterometer on ADEOS measured winds for a six-month period beginning November 1996 and ending with the premature failure of the satellite.

Freilich and Dunbar (1999) report that, overall, the NASA scatterometer on ADEOS measured wind speed with an accuracy of ±1.3 m/s. For wind speed exceeding 6 m/s, fewer than 3% of the wind values had a significant ambiguity error. For those winds with no ambiguity error, the error in wind direction was ±17°. Spatial resolution was 25 km. The errors in calculated velocity are due to lack of knowledge of scatter vs wind speed, the unknown influence of surface films, and sampling error (Figure 4.6).

Special Sensor Microwave SSM/I Another satellite instrument that is widely used for measuring wind speed is the Special-Sensor Microwave/Imager (SSM/I) carried since 1987 on the satellites of the U.S. Defense Meteorological Satellite Program in orbits similar to the NOAA polar-orbiting meteorological satellites. The instrument measures the microwave radiation emitted from the sea at an angle near 60° from the vertical. The emission is is a function of wind speed, water vapor in the atmosphere, and the amount of water in cloud drops. By observing several frequencies simultaneously, data from the instrument are used for calculating the surface wind speed. As with the scatterometer, the wind direction is ambiguous, and the ambiguity is removed using surface observations or by using the data with numerical weather models.

Winds measured by the instrument have an accuracy of ± 2 m/s in speed. When combined with ECMWF 1000 mb wind analyses, wind direction can be calculated with an accuracy of ±22° (Atlas, Hoffman, and Bloom, 1993). Global, gridded data are available since July 1987 on a 2.5° longitude by 2.0° latitude grid every 6 hours (Atlas et al, 1996).

Anemometers on Ships The next most common source of winds reported to meteorological agencies come from observers reading the output of an anemometers on ships. The output of the anemometer is read four times a day at the standard Greenwich times and reported via radio to meteorological agencies. These reports also have important errors:

1. The reports are sparse in time and space. Very few ships report anemometer winds.
2. Anemometer may never be calibrated after installation.
3. The observer usually observes the output of the anemometer for a few seconds, and thus the observation is an instantaneous value of wind speed and direction rather than an average over several minutes to an hour. Remember that winds can be gusty, and the observation can have errors of 10–30%.
4. The observations are reported by coded radio messages, and the message can have coding errors. Such errors cause ship winds to be reported from over land as shown in Figure 4.4.

Calibrated Anemometers on Ships Few ships carry calibrated anamometers. Those that do tend to be commercial ships participating in the Volunteer Observing Ship program. These ships are met in port by scientists who check the instruments and replace them if necessary, and who collect the data measured at sea. Errors are due to airflow about the ship and incorrect correction for ship motion. The best accuracy is about ±2 m/s.

Calibrated Anemometers on Weather Buoys The most accurate measurements of winds at sea are made by calibrated anemometers on moored weather buoys. Unfortunately there are few such buoys, perhaps only a hundred scattered around the world. Some, such as Tropical Atmosphere Ocean TAO array in the tropical Pacific provide data from remote areas rarely visited by ships, but most tend to be located just offshore of coastal areas. NOAA operates buoys offshore of the United States and the TAO array in the Pacific. Data from the coastal buoys are averaged for 8 minutes before the hour, and the observations are transmitted to shore via satellite links.

Accuracy is limited by the short duration of the observation and by the accuracy of the anemometer. The best accuracy of anemometers on buoys operated by the US National Data Buoy Center is the greater of ±1 m/s or 10% for wind speed and ±10° for wind direction (Beardsley et al. 1997).

Surface Analysis from Numerical General Circulation Models Satellites, ships, and buoys measure winds at various locations and times of the day. If you wish to use the observations to calculate monthly averaged winds over the sea, then the observations can be averaged and gridded. If you wish to use wind data in numerical models of the ocean's currents, then the data will be less useful. You are faced with a very common problem: How to take all observations made in a one-day period and determine the winds over the ocean on say a fixed grid each day?

The best source of gridded winds over the ocean is the output from numerical models of the atmospheric circulation. The strategy used to produce the gridded winds is called *sequential estimation techniques* or *data assimilation*. "Measurements are used to prepare initial conditions for the model, which is then integrated forward in time until further measurements are available. The model is thereupon re-initialized" (Bennett, 1992: 67). Usually, all available measurements are used, including surface observations made from meteorological stations on land, ship and buoy reports of pressure and temperature, and meteorological satellite data. The model interpolates the measurements to produce the initial conditions consistent with previous and present observations.

1. The surface fluxes from the European Centre for Medium-range Weather Forecasts ECMWF are perhaps the most widely used fluxes for surface forcing of the ocean. Surface winds and fluxes are calculated every six hours on a $1^\circ \times 1^\circ$ grid from an explicit boundary-layer model. The fluxes include not only wind stress but also heat fluxes discused in the next chapter. Calculated values are archived on a 2.5°grid.

2. Accuracy of northern-hemisphere winds calculated by the ECMWF is relatively good. Freilich and Dunbar (1999) estimated that the accuracy for wind speed at 10 meters is ±1.5 m/s after removing 0.9% of the values (which were more than three standard deviations from the value reported

by anemometers on buoys), and ±18° for direction. The speed was only 90% of the wind speed observed by buoys in the analysis area.

3. Accuracy in the southern hemisphere is not as good as in the northern hemisphere, but accuracy is improving. The use of scatterometer winds from ADEOS, ERS-1 and 2 have made significant improvements.

Daley (1991) describes the strategies and techniques in considerable detail.

Other surface-analysis data sets of special use in oceanography include: 1) the Planetary Boundary-Layer Data set from the U.S. Navy's Fleet Numerical Oceanography Center FNOC; and 2) surface wind maps for the tropics produced at Florida State University (Goldenberg and O'Brien, 1981).

Reanalyzed Output from Numerical General Circulation Models The output from numerical models of the atmospheric circulation has been available for decades. Throughout this period, the models have been constantly changed as meteorologists strive to obtain ever more accurate forecasts. The calculated fluxes are therefore not consistent in time. The changes can be larger than the interannual variability of the fluxes (White, 1996). To minimize this problem, meteorological agencies have taken all measurements for long periods and reanalyzed them using the best numerical models now available to produce a uniform, internally-consistent, surface analysis.

The reanalyzed data sets are now being used to study oceanic and atmospheric dynamics. The surface analysis data sets are used only for problems that require up-to-date information. For example, if you are designing an offshore structure, you will probably use decades of reanalyzed data; if you are operating an offshore structure, you will watch the surface analysis and forecasts put out every six hours by meteorological agencies.

Because reanalysed data sets have been made available only recently, their accuracy is not yet firmly established. We do know however that the data sets are more accurate in the northern hemisphere because more surface observations are available from the northern hemisphere. To obtain estimates of their accuracy, various teams are intercomparing output from various reanalyses; and their conclusions will soon be available.

Sources of Reanalyzed Data Analysed surface flux data are available from national meteorological centers operating numerical weather prediction models.

1. The U.S. National Centers for Environmental Predictions, working with the National Center for Atmospheric Research, the NCEP/NCAR reanalysis, have reanalysed 40 years of weather data from 1958 to 1998 using the 25 January 1995 version of their forecast model. The reanalysis period will be extended backward to include the 1948–1957 period; and it is being extended forward to include all date up to the present with about a six month delay in producing data sets. The reanalysis uses surface and ship observations plus sounder data from satellites. Reanalysed products are available every six hours on a T62 grid having 192×94 grid points with a spatial resolution of 209 km and with 24 vertical levels. Important subsets

of the reanalysed data, including surface fluxes, are available on CD–ROM (Kalnay et al. 1996; Kistler et al. 1999).

2. The European Centre for Medium-range Weather Forecasts ECMWF have reanalysed 17 years of weather data from 1979 to 1993. The reanalysis uses mostly the same surface, ship and satellite data used by the NCEP/NCAR reanalysis. The European Centre is extending the reanalysis to cover a 40-year period from 1957–1997. Spatial resolution will be 83 km; temporal resolution will be 6 hours. The reanalysis will use most available satellite data sets, including data from the ERS-1 and ERS-2 satellites and SSM/I. The analysis will include an ocean-wave model and it will calculate ocean wave heights.

3. The Data Assimilation Office at NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center has completed a reanalysis for the period 1 March 1980 to 13 December 1993 later extended to February 1995. The analysed data are available every six hours on a $2^\circ \times 2.5^\circ$(91 × 144 point) grid with 20 vertical levels. The analysis uses the NCEP real-time in-situ observations plus TOVS data from the NOAA meteorological satellites and cloud-drift winds (Schubert, Rood, and Pfaendtner, 1993). The analysis places special emphasis on the assimilation of satellite data using the Goddard Earth Observing System general circulation model.

4.5 The Sampling Problem in Scatterometry

Monthly maps of surface winds made from satellite scatterometer observations of the ocean frequently show bands parallel to the satellite track. Zeng and Levy (1995) used data from the scatterometer on the ERS–1 satellite and found that the bands are due to sampling errors. The satellite observed areas on the sea surface 8-12 times per month (Figure 4.6), and the distribution of samples was not uniform. Sometimes the satellite missed storms winds. An example is shown in the figure. A weak storm passed through regions A & B in the Pacific between 11 and 18 September 1992 as shown in panel (a) of the figure. The satellite observed storm winds in A on 15 and 18 September, but it did not observe storm winds in region B. As a result, the monthly mean value of wind speed calculated from the satellite data at B differed by 6 m/s from the mean value at A. Further analysis of ERS–1 scatterometer data showed that monthly mean valuse of wind speed calculated from the data have a sampling error of 1-2 m/s in mid-latitudes.

4.6 Wind Stress

The wind, by itself, is usually not very interesting. Often we are much more interested in the force of the wind, or the work done by the wind. The horizontal force of the wind on the sea surface is called the *wind stress*. Put another way, it is the vertical transfer of horizontal momentum. Thus momentum is transferred from the atmosphere to the ocean by wind stress.

Wind stress T is calculated from:

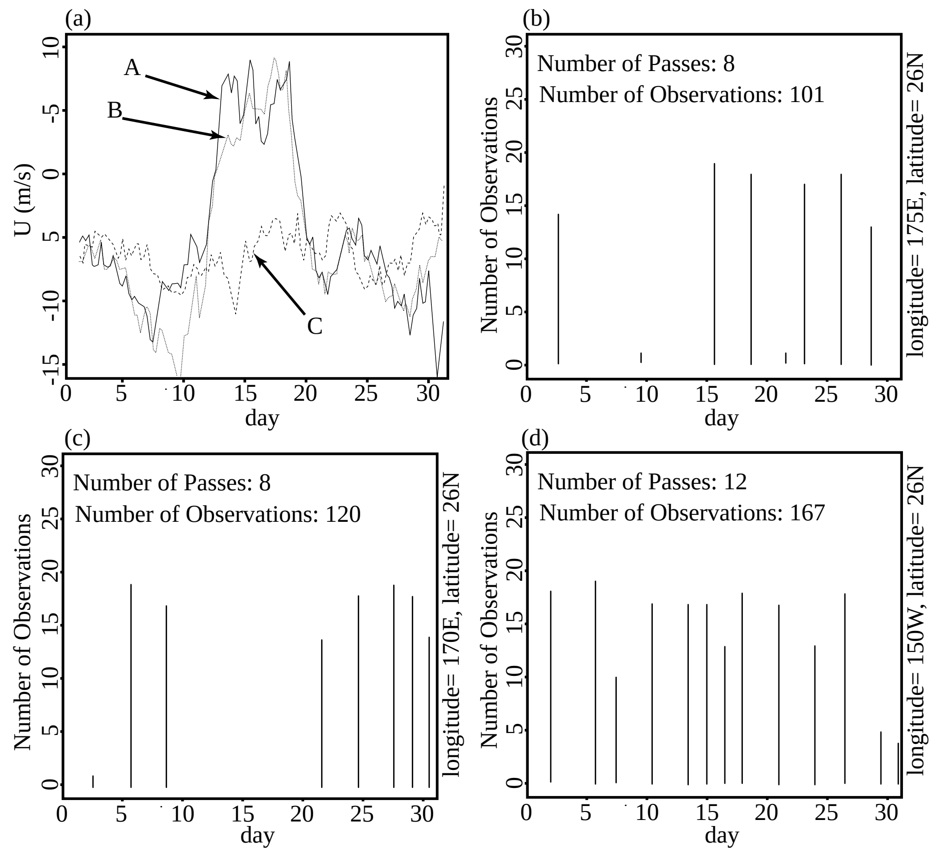


Figure 4.6 **(a)** Time series of ECMWF zonal winds (in meters per second) at nearby regions A and B during September 1992. Point C is in another region of the Pacific. **(b)** Number of ERS–1 observations in the 1°by 1°box centered at A versus time. **(c)** Same as (b) except at point B. **(d)** Same as (b) except at point C. A and B are in and just outside a strong band in the map of wind speed; C is in a region with no banding. (From Zeng & Levy, 1995).

$$T = \rho\, C_D U_{10}^2 \tag{4.2}$$

where ρ is the density of air, U_{10} is wind speed at 10 meters, and C_D is the *drag coefficient*. C_D is measured using the techniques described in §5.6. Fast response instruments measure wind fluctuations within 10–20 m of the sea surface, from which T is directly calculated. The correlation of T with U_{10}^2 gives C_D (figure 4.7). The coefficient can also be directly calculated from measurements of fluctuations of the horizontal velocity using a technique, called the *dissipation method*. The technique is complicated, and its description is beyond the scope of this book.

Various measurements of C_D have been published based on careful measurements of turbulence in the marine boundary layer. Trenberth et al. (1989) and Harrison (1989) discuss the accuracy of an effective drag coefficient relating wind

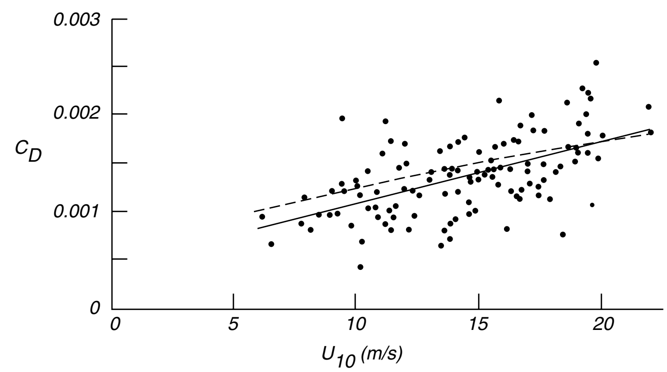


Figure 4.7 Observations of the drag coefficient as a function of wind speed U_{10} ten meters above the sea. The solid line is $1000\,C_D = 0.44 + 0.063 U_{10}$ proposed by Smith (1980) and the dashed line follows from Charnock (1955). From Smith, 1980.

stress to wind velocity on a global scale. Perhaps the most recently published value is that of Yelland and Taylor (1996), who give:

$$1000\,C_D = 0.29 + \frac{3.1}{U_{10}} + \frac{7.7}{U_{10}^2} \qquad (3 \le U_{10} \le 6 \text{ m/s}) \tag{4.3a}$$

$$1000\,C_D = 0.60 + 0.070\,U_{10} \qquad (6 \le U_{10} \le 26 \text{ m/s}) \tag{4.3b}$$

for neutrally stable boundary layer. Other valuse are listed in their table 1 and in figure 4.7.

Useful monthly maps of oceanic wind stress suitable for studies of the ocean circulation have been published by Trenberth et al. (1989) who used analysed wind fields from ECMWF to produce maps with 2.5° resolution, and by Hellerman and Rosenstein (1983) who used 35 million observations made from surface ships between 1870 and 1976 to produce maps with 2° resolution.

4.7 Important Concepts

1. Sunlight is the primary energy source driving the atmosphere and oceans.
2. There is a boundary layer at the bottom of the atmosphere where wind speed decreases with height, and in which fluxes of heat and momentum are constant in the lower 10–20 meters.
3. Wind is measured many different ways. The most common are from observations made at sea of the Beaufort force of the wind. Wind is measured from space using scatterometers and microwave radiometers. The output from atmospheric circulation models is perhaps the most useful source of global wind velocity.
4. The flux of momentum from the atmosphere to the ocean, the wind stress, is calculated from wind speed using a drag coefficient.

Chapter 5

The Oceanic Heat Budget

About half the sunlight reaching Earth is absorbed by the oceans and land, where it is temporarily stored near the surface. Only about a fifth of the available sunlight is directly absorbed by the atmosphere. Of the heat stored by the ocean, part is released to the atmosphere, mostly by evaporation and infrared radiation. The remainder is transported by currents to other areas especially high latitudes in winter. Solar radiation stored in the ocean is therefore available to ameliorate Earth's climate. The transport of heat is not steady, and significant changes in heat transport, particularly in the Atlantic, may have been important for the development of the ice ages. For these reasons, oceanic heat budgets and transports are important for understanding Earth's climate and its short and long term variability.

5.1 The Oceanic Heat Budget

Changes in heat stored in the upper layers of the ocean result from a local imbalance between input and output of heat through the sea surface. The flux of heat to deeper layers is usually much smaller than the flux through the surface. Advection out of the area will be described later, and it too tends to be small, provided the box covers a large enough area. Globally, the flux must balance, otherwise the oceans as a whole would warm or cool.

The sum of the changes in heat fluxes into or out of a volume of water is the *heat budget*. The major terms in the budget at the sea surface are:

1. *Insolation* Q_{SW}, the flux of sunlight into the sea;
2. *Net Infrared Radiation* Q_{LW}, net flux of infrared radiation from the sea;
3. *Sensible Heat Flux* Q_S, the flux of heat through the surface due to conduction;
4. *Latent Heat Flux* Q_L, the flux of heat carried by evaporated water; and
5. *Advection* Q_V, heat carried by currents.

Conservation of heat requires:

$$Q_T = Q_{SW} + Q_{LW} + Q_S + Q_L + Q_V \tag{5.1}$$

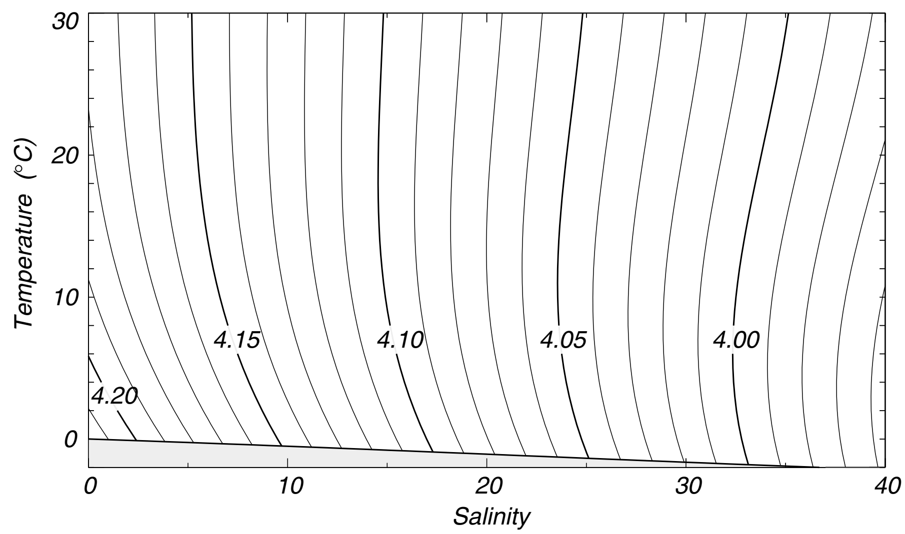


Figure 5.1 Specific heat of sea water at atmospheric pressure C_p in joules per gram per degree Celsius as a function of temperature in Celsius and salinity, calculated from the empirical formula given by Millero *et al.* (1973) using algorithms in Fofonoff and Millard (1983). The lower line is the freezing point of salt water.

where Q_T is the resultant heat gain or loss. Units for heat fluxes are watts/m^2. The product of flux times surface area times time is energy in joules. The change in temperature ΔT of the water is related to change in energy ΔE through:

$$\Delta E = C_p \, m \, \Delta T \tag{5.2}$$

where m is the mass of water being warmed or cooled, and C_p is the specific heat of sea water at constant pressure.

$$C_p \approx 4.0 \times 10^3 \text{ J} \cdot \text{kg}^{-1} \cdot {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1} \tag{5.3}$$

Thus, 4,000 Joules of energy are required to heat 1.0 kilogram of sea water by 1.0°C (Figure 5.1).

Importance of the Ocean in Earth's Heat Budget To understand the importance of the ocean in Earth's heat budget, let's make a simple comparison of the heat stored in the ocean with heat stored on land during an annual cycle. During the cycle, heat is stored in summer and released in the winter. The point is to show that the oceans store and release much more heat than the land.

To begin, we use (5.3) and the heat capacity of soil and rocks

$$C_{p(rock)} = 800 \text{ J} \cdot \text{kg}^{-1} \cdot {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1} \tag{5.4}$$

to obtain $C_{p(rock)} \approx 0.2 \, C_{p(water)}$.

The volume of water which exchanges heat with the atmosphere on a seasonal cycle is 100 m^3 per square meter of surface, i.e. that mass from the surface to a depth of 100 meters. The density of water is 1000 kg/m^3, and the mass in contact with the atmosphere is density × volume = $m_{water} = 100,000$ kg. The volume of land which exchanges heat with the atmosphere on a seasonal cycle is 1 m^3. Because the density of rock is 3,000 kg/m^3, the mass of the soil and rock in contact with the atmosphere is 3,000 kg.

The seasonal heat storage values for the ocean and land are therefore:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta E_{oceans} &= C_{p(water)}\, m_{water}\, \Delta T && \Delta T = 10°\text{C} \\
&= (4000)(10^5)(10°)\ \text{Joules} \\
&= 4.0 \times 10^9\ \text{Joules} \\
\Delta E_{land} &= C_{p(rock)}\, m_{rock}\, \Delta T && \Delta T = 20°\text{C} \\
&= (800)(3000)(20°)\ \text{Joules} \\
&= 4.8 \times 10^7\ \text{Joules} \\
\frac{\Delta E_{oceans}}{\Delta E_{land}} &= 100
\end{aligned}$$

where ΔT is the typical change in temperature from summer to winter.

The large storage of heat in the ocean compared with the land has important consequences. The seasonal range of air temperatures on land increases with distance from the ocean, and it can exceed 40°C in the center of continents, reaching 60°C in Siberia. Typical range of temperature over the ocean and along coasts is less than 10°C. The variability of water temperatures is still smaller (see figure 6.5).

5.2 Heat-Budget Terms

Let's look at the factors influencing each term in the heat budget.

Factors Influencing Insolation Incoming solar radiation is primarily determined by latitude, season, time of day, and cloudiness. The polar regions are heated less than the tropics, areas in winter are heated less than the same area in summer, areas in early morning are heated less than the same area at noon, and cloudy days have less sun than sunny days.

The following factors are important:

1. The height of the sun above the horizon, which depends on latitude, season, and time of day. Don't forget, there is no insolation at night!
2. The length of day, which depends on latitude and season.
3. The cross-sectional area of the surface absorbing sunlight, which depends on height of the sun above the horizon.
4. Attenuation, which depends on:
    - Path length through the atmosphere, which varies as $\csc\varphi$, where φ is angle of the sun above the horizon.
    - Clouds, which absorb and scatter radiation.
    - Gas molecules which absorb radiation in some bands. H_2O, O_3, and CO_2 are all important.

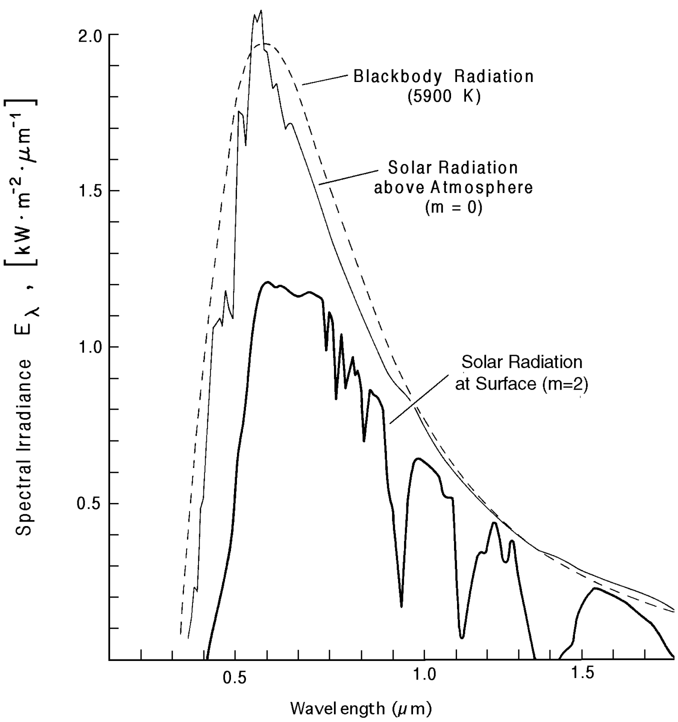


Figure 5.2 Insolation (spectral irradiance) of sunlight at top of the atmosphere and at the sea surface on a clear day. The dashed line is the best-fitting curve of blackbody radiation the size and distance of the sun. The number of standard atmospheric masses is designated by m. Thus $m = 2$ is applicable for sunlight when the sun is 30°above the horizon. (From Stewart, 1985).

- Aerosols which scatter and absorb radiation. Both volcanic and marine aerosols are important.
- Dust, which scatters radiation, especially Saharan dust over the Atlantic.

5. Reflectivity of the surface, which depends on solar elevation angle and roughness of sea surface.

Solar inclination and cloudiness dominate. Absorption by ozone and water vapor are much weaker.

Figure 5.2 shows insolation above the atmosphere, and at the surface on a clear day with the sun 30°above the horizon. Figure 5.3 gives the insolation at the sea surface for a cloud-free atmosphere, including loss by reflection at the surface and absorption by clear air.

The average annual value for insolation is in the range:

$$30 \text{ W/m}^2 < Q_{SW} < 260 \text{ W/m}^2 \tag{5.5}$$

Factors Influencing Infrared Flux The sea surface radiates as a blackbody having the same the temperature as the water, which is roughly 290 K. The

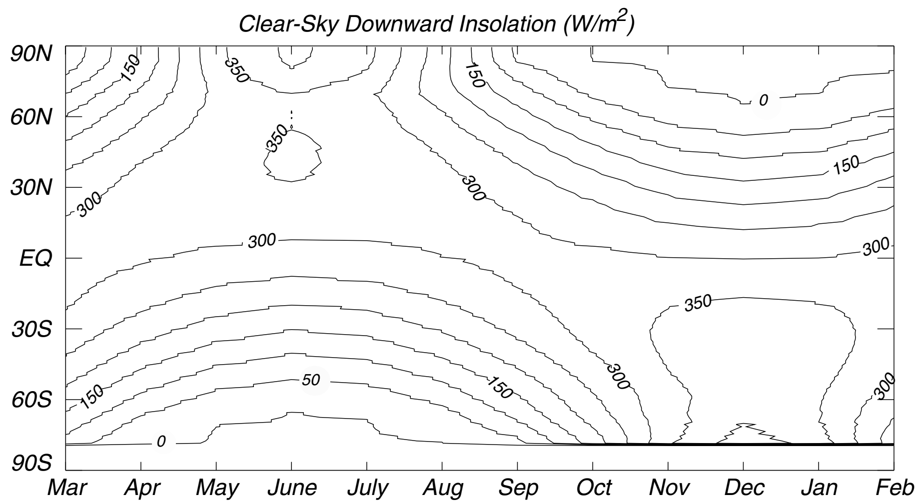


Figure 5.3 Monthly average of clear-sky, downward flux of sunlight through the sea surface in W/m^2 during 1989 calculated by the Satellite Data Analysis Center at the NASA Langley Research Center (Darnell et al. 1992) using data from the International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project.

distribution of radiation as a function of wavelength is given by the Planck's equation. Sea water at 290 K radiates most strongly at wavelengths near 10 μm. These wavelengths are strongly absorbed by clouds, and somewhat by water vapor. A plot of atmospheric transmittance as a function of wavelength for a clear atmosphere but with varying amounts of water vapor (Figure 5.4) shows that the atmosphere has various windows with high transmittance.

The transmittance on a cloud-free day through the window from 8 μm to 13 μm is determined mostly by water vapor. Absorption in other bands, such as those at 3.5 μm to 4.0 μm depends on CO_2 concentration in the atmosphere. As the concentration of CO_2 increases, these windows close and more radiation is trapped by the atmosphere.

Because the atmosphere is mostly transparent to incoming sunlight, and somewhat opaque to outgoing infrared radiation, the atmosphere traps radiation, keeping Earth's surface 33°warmer than it would be in the absence of an atmosphere but in thermal equilibrium with space. The atmosphere acts like the panes of glass on a greenhouse, and the effect is known as the *greenhouse effect*. See Hartmann (1994: 24–26) for a simple discussion of the radiative balance of a planet. CO_2, water vapor, methane, and ozone are all important greenhouse gasses.

The net infrared flux depends on:

1. The clarity of the atmospheric window, which depends on:
   - Clouds thickness. The thicker the cloud deck, the less heat escapes to space.
   - Cloud height, which determines the temperature at which the cloud radiates heat back to the ocean. The rate is proportional to T^4,

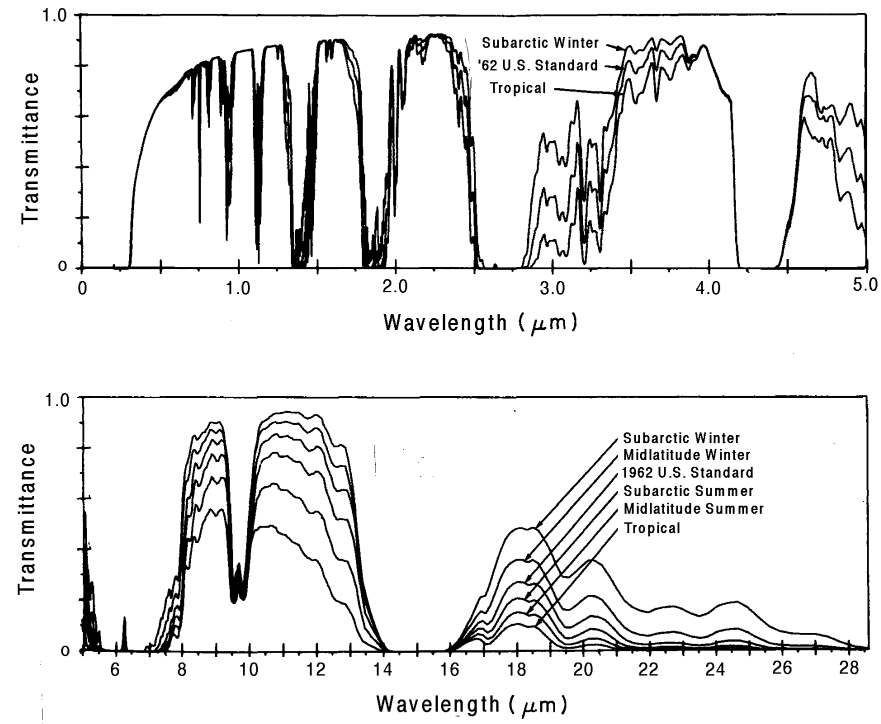


Figure 5.4 Atmospheric transmittance for a vertical path to space from sea level for six model atmospheres with very clear, 23 *km*, visibility, including the influence of molecular and aerosol scattering. Notice how water vapor modulates the transparency of the 10-14 μm atmospheric window, hence it modulates Q_{LW}, which is a maximum at these wavelengths. (From Selby and McClatchey, 1975).

where T is the temperature of the radiating body in Kelvins. High clouds are colder than low clouds.

- Atmospheric water-vapor content. The more humid the atmosphere the less heat escapes to space.

2. Water Temperature. The hotter the water the more heat is radiated. Again, radiation depends of T^4.

3. Ice and snow cover. Ice emits as a black body, but it cools much faster than open water. Ice-covered seas are insulated from the atmosphere.

Changes in water vapor and clouds are more important for determining back radiation than are changes in surface temperature. Hot tropical regions lose less heat than cold polar regions. The temperature range from poles to equator is 0°C < T < 25°C or 273K < T < 298K and the ratio of maximum to minimum temperature in Kelvins is 298/273 = 1.092. Raised to the fourth power this is 1.42. Thus there is a 42% increase in emitted radiation from pole to equator. Over the same distance water vapor can change the net emitted radiance by 200%.

The average annual value for net infrared flux is in the narrow range:

$$-60 \text{ W/m}^2 < Q_{LW} < -30 \text{ W/m}^2 \tag{5.6}$$

Factors Influencing Latent-Heat Flux Latent heat flux is influenced primarily by wind speed and relative humidity. High winds and dry air evaporate much more water than weak winds with relative humidity near 100%. In polar regions, evaporation from ice covered oceans is much less than from open water. Open water is often much warmer than the air, hence saturated air near the water surface has much higher water content than air higher in the atmospheric boundary layer. In the arctic, most of the heat lost from the sea is through leads (ice-free areas). Hence the percent open water is very important for the arctic heat budget.

The average annual value for latent-heat flux is in the range:

$$-130 \text{ W/m}^2 < Q_L < -10 \text{ W/m}^2 \tag{5.7}$$

Factors Influencing Sensible-Heat Flux Sensible heat flux is influenced primarily by wind speed and air-sea temperature difference. High winds and large temperature differences cause high fluxes. Think of this as a wind-chill factor for the oceans.

The average annual value for sensible-heat flux is in the range:

$$-42 \text{ W/m}^2 < Q_S < -2 \text{ W/m}^2 \tag{5.8}$$

5.3 Direct Calculation of Fluxes

Before we can describe the geographical distribution of fluxes into and out of the ocean, we need to know how they are measured or calculated.

Gust-Probe Measurements of Turbulent Fluxes There is only one accurate method for calculating fluxes of sensible and latent heat and momentum at the sea surface: from direct measurement of turbulent quantities in the atmospheric boundary layer made by gust probes on low-flying aircraft or offshore platforms. Very few such measurements have been made. They are expensive, and they cannot be used to calculate heat fluxes averaged over many days or large areas. The gust-probe measurements are used only to calibrate other methods of calculating fluxes.

1. Measurements must be made in the surface layer of the atmospheric boundary layer (See §4.3), usually within 30 m of the sea surface, because fluxes are independent of height in this layer.

2. Measurements must be made by fast-response instruments (gust probes) able to make several observations per second on a tower, or every meter from a plane.

3. Measurements include the horizontal and vertical components of the wind, the humidity, and the air temperature.

Table 5.1 Notation Describing Fluxes

Symbol	Variable	Value and Units
C_p	Specific heat capacity of air	$1030\ \mathrm{J \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot K^{-1}}$
C_D	Drag coefficient (see 4.3)	$(0.60 + 0.070\, U_{10}) \times 10^{-3}$
C_L	Latent heat transfer coefficient	1.2×10^{-3}
C_S	Sensible heat transfer coefficient	1.0×10^{-3}
L_E	Latent heat of evaporation	2.5×10^{6} J/kg
q	Specific humidity of air	kg (water vapor)/kg (air)
q_a	Specific humidity of air 10 m above the sea	kg (water vapor)/kg (air)
q_s	Specific humidity of air at the sea surface	kg (water vapor)/kg (air)
Q_S	Sensible heat flux	W/m^2
Q_L	Latent heat flux	W/m^2
T_a	Temperature of the air 10 m above the sea	K or °C
T_s	Sea-surface temperature	K or °C
t'	Temperature fluctuation	$^\circ C$
u'	Horizontal component of fluctuation of wind	m/s
u_*	Friction velocity	m/s
U_{10}	Wind speed at 10 m above the sea	m/s
w'	Vertical component of wind fluctuation	m/s
ρ	Density of air	1.5 kg/m^3
T	Vector wind stress	Pa

Fluxes are calculated from the correlation of vertical wind and horizontal wind, humidity, or temperature: Each type of flux is calculated from different measured variables, u', w', t', and q':

$$T = \langle \rho\, u' w' \rangle = \rho\, \langle u' w' \rangle \equiv \rho\, u_*^2 \tag{5.9a}$$

$$Q_S = C_p\, \langle \rho\, w' t' \rangle = \rho\, C_p\, \langle w' t' \rangle \tag{5.9b}$$

$$Q_L = L_E\, \langle w' q' \rangle \tag{5.9c}$$

where the brackets denotes time or space averages, and the notation is given in Table 5.1. Note that *specific humidity* mentioned in the table is the mass of water vapor per unit mass of air.

Radiometer Measurements of Radiative Fluxes Radiometers on ships, offshore platforms, and even small islands are used to make direct measurements of radiative fluxes. Wideband radiometers sensitive to radiation from 0.3 μm to 50 μm can measure incoming solar and infrared radiation with an accuacy of around 3% provided they are well calibrated and maintained. Other, specialized radiometers can measure the incoming solar radiation, the downward infrared radiation, and the upward infrared radiation. Usually, however the upward infrared radiation is calculated from the measured surface temperature of the sea. This is more accurate than measuring the radiation.

Radiometer errors are due to salt spray and rime on the aperture, failure to keep the instrument horizontal, and variations in heat loss due to wind on the instrument (Hinzpeter, 1980).

5.4 Indirect Calculation of Fluxes: Bulk Formulas

The use of gust-probes is very expensive, and radiometers must be carefully maintained. Neither can be used to obtain long-term, global values of fluxes. To calculate these fluxes from practical measurements, we use observed correlations between fluxes and variables that can be measured globally.

For fluxes of sensible and latent heat and momentum, the correlations are called *bulk formulas*. They are:

$$T = \rho\, C_D\, U_{10}^2 \tag{5.10a}$$

$$Q_S = \rho\, C_p\, C_S\, U_{10}\, (T_s - T_a) \tag{5.10b}$$

$$Q_L = \rho\, L_E\, C_L\, U_{10}\, (q_s - q_a) \tag{5.10c}$$

Air temperature T_a is measured using thermometers on ships. It cannot be estimated from space using satellite instruments. T_s is measured using thermometers on ships or from space using infrared radiometers such as the AVHRR.

The specific humidity of air is the mass in kilograms of water vapor in a kilogram of air. The specific humidity of air at 10 m above the sea surface q_a is calculated from measurements of relative humidity made from ships. Gill (1982: pp: 39–41, 43–44, & 605–607) describes equations relating water vapor pressure, vapor density, and specific heat capacity of wet air. The specific humidity at the sea surface q_s is calculated from T_s assuming the air at the surface is saturated with water vapor. U_{10} is measured or calculated using the instruments or techniques described in Chapter 4.

The coefficients C_D, C_S and C_L are calculated by correlating direct measurements of fluxes made by gust probes with the variables in the bulk formulas. Smith (1998) investigated the accuracy of published values for the coefficients, and the values for C_S and C_L in table 5.1 are his suggested values. Smith (1998) also gives fluxes as a function of observed variables in tabular form. Liu, Katsaros, and Businger (1979) discuss alternate bulk formulas. Note that wind stress is a vector with magnitude and direction. It is parallel to the surface in the direction of the wind.

The problem now becomes: How to calculate the fluxes across the sea surface required for studies of ocean dynamics? The fluxes include: 1) stress; 2) solar heating; 3) evaporation; 4) net infrared radiation; 5) rain; 5) sensible heat; and 6) others such as CO_2 and particles (which produce marine aerosols). Furthermore, the fluxes must be accurate. We need an accuracy of approximately ± 15 W/m^2. This is equivalent to the flux of heat which would warm or cool a column of water 100 m deep by roughly 1°C in one year. Table 5.2 lists typical accuracies of fluxes measured globally from space. Now, let's look at each variable.

Wind Speed and Stress Stress is calculated from wind observations made from ships at sea and from scatterometers in space as described in the last chapter. Beaufort observations give mean wind velocity and wind stress, and scatterometers measurements yield global maps of day to day variability of the winds used to produce maps of monthly-mean wind stress. The two largest

Table 5.2 Accuracy of Wind and Fluxes Observed Globally From Space

Variable	Accuracy	Comments
Wind Speed	±1.5 m/s	Instrument Error
	±1.5 m/s	Sampling Error (Monthly Average)
Wind Stess	±10 %	Drag Coefficient Error
	±14 Pa	Assuming 10 m/s Wind Speed
Insolation	±5 %	Monthly Average
	±15 W/m^2	Monthly Average
	±10 %	Daily Average
Rain Rate	±50 %	
Rainfall	±10 %	$5^\circ \times 5^\circ$ area for TRMM
Net Long Wave Radiation	±4–8 %	Daily Average
	±15–27 W/m^2	
Latent Heat Flux	±35 W/m^2	Daily Average
	±15 W/m^2	Monthly Average

sources of error are: 1) lack of sufficient measurements of wind in time and space (sampling error); and 2) uncertainty in C_D (Chelton and Freilich, 1985).

Insolation Insolation is calculated from cloud observations made from ships and from visible-light radiometers on meteorological satellites. Satellite measurements are far more accurate than the ship data because it's very hard to estimate cloudiness from below the clouds. Satellite measurements processed by the International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project ISCCP are the basis for maps of insolation and its variability from month to month (Darnell et al. 1988; Rossow and Schiffer 1991).

The basic idea behind the calculation of insolation is very simple. Sunlight at the top of the atmosphere is accurately known from the solar constant, latitude, longitude, and time. Sunlight is either reflected back to space by clouds, or it eventually reaches the sea surface. Only a small and nearly constant fraction is absorbed in the atmosphere. Thus insolation is calculated from:

$$\text{Insolation} = S(1 - A) - C$$

where $S = 1365$ W/m^2 is the solar constant, A is albedo, the ratio of incident to reflected sunlight, and C is a constant which includes absorption by ozone and other atmospheric gases and by cloud droplets. Insolation is calculated from cloud data (which also includes reflection from aerosols) collected from instruments such as the AVHRR on meteorological satellites. Ozone and gas absorption are calculated from from known distributions of the gases in the atmosphere. Q_{SW} is calculated from satellite data with an accuracy of 5–7%.

Recent work by Cess et al. (1995) and Ramanathan et al. (1995) suggest that the simple idea may be wrong, and that atmospheric absorption is a function of cloudiness. Schmetz (1989) gives a good review of the technique, and Taylor (1990) describes some of the relationships between satellite observations and terms in the radiation budget.

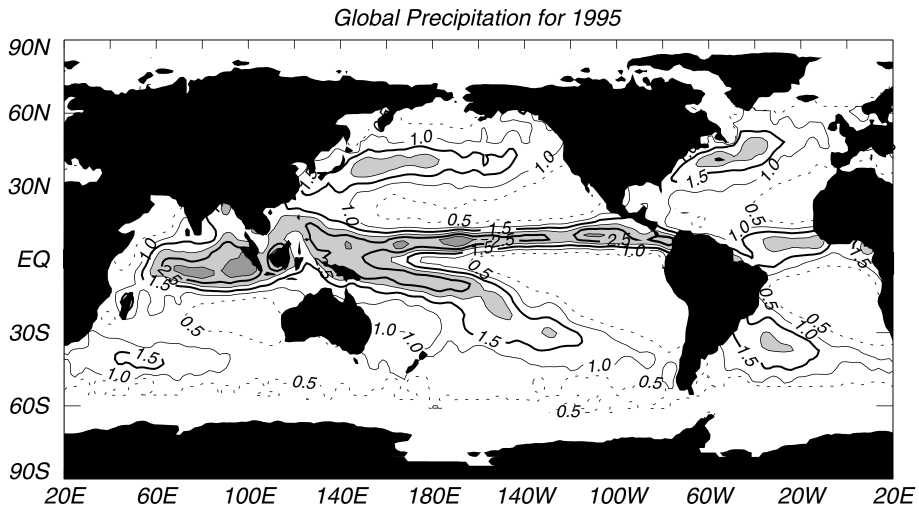


Figure 5.5 Rainfall in m/year calculated from data compiled by the Global Precipitation Climatology Project at NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center using data from rain gauges, infrared radiometers on geosynchronous meteorological satellites, and the SSM–I. Contour interval is 0.5 m/yr, light shaded areas exceed 2 m/yr, heavy shaded areas exceed 3 m/yr.

Errors come from lack of knowledge of the angular distribution of sunlight reflected from clouds and the surface and the daily variability of insolation, which is needed when data from polar-orbiting satellites are used for calculating insolation (See Salby et al. 1991).

Water Flux (Rainfall) Rain rate is another variable that is very difficult to measure from ships. Rain collected from gauges at different locations on ships and from gauges on nearby docks all differ by more than a factor of two. Rain at sea falls mostly horizontally because of wind, and the ship's superstructure distorts the paths of raindrops. Rain in many areas falls mostly as drizzle, and it is difficulty to detect and measure.

The most accurate measurements of rain rate in the tropics (±35°) are calculated from microwave radiometer and radar observations of rain at several frequencies using instruments on the Tropical Rain Measuring Mission TRMM launched in 1997. Rain for other times and latitudes can be calculated accurately by combining microwave data with infrared observations of the height of cloud tops and with raingauge data (Figure 5.5). Rain is also calculated from the reanalyses of the output from numerical weather forecast models (Schubert, Rood, and Pfaendtner, 1993), from ship observations (Petty, 1995), and from combining ship and satellite observations with output from numerical weather-prediction models (Xie and Arkin, 1997).

The largest source of error is due to conversion of rain rate to cumulative rainfall, a sampling error. Rain is very rare, it is log-normally distributed, and most rain comes from a few storms. Satellites tend to miss storms, and data must be averaged over areas up to 5° on a side to obtain useful values of rainfall. Errors also arise when the raining area doesn't fill the radiometer's beam.

Net Long-Wave Radiation Net Long-wave radiation is not easily calculated because it depends on the height and thickness of clouds, and the vertical distribution of water vapor in the atmosphere. It can be calculated by numerical weather-prediction models or from observations of the vertical structure of the atmosphere from atmospheric sounders. The net flux is:

$$F = \langle e \rangle [F_d - S\,T^4] \tag{5.11}$$

where $\langle e \rangle$ is the average emissivity of the surface, F_d is downward flux calculated from satellite, microwave-radiometer data or numerical models, T is sea-surface temperature, and S is the Stefan-Boltzmann constant. The first term is the downward radiation from the atmosphere absorbed by the ocean. Frouin, Gautier, and Morcrette (1988) describe how F_d can be calculated. The second term is the radiation emitted from the ocean. Both terms are large, and the net flux is the difference between two large quantities (see figure 5.6).

Schluessel et al. (1995) estimated the accuracy of monthly averaged values is ± 5–15 W/m^2. Improvements will come from more data, which reduces sampling error, and from a better understanding of daily cloud variability. Note, however, that the flux tends to be relatively constant over space and time; so much-improved accuracy may not be necessary.

Latent Heat Flux Latent heat flux is calculated from ship observations of relative humidity, water temperature, and wind speed using the bulk formula. Latent heat fluxes are also calculated by numerical weather models or from the COADS data set described below. The fluxes are difficult to calculate from space because satellite instruments are not very sensitive to water vapor close to the sea. Liu (1988) however showed that monthly averages of surface humidity are correlated with monthly averages of water vapor in the column of air extending from the surface to space. This is easily measured from space; and Liu used monthly averages of microwave-radiometer observations of wind speed, water vapor in the air column, and water temperature to calculate latent heat fluxes with an accuracy of ± 35 W/m^2. Later, Schulz et al (1997) used AVHRR measurements of sea-surface temperature together with SSM/I measurements of water vapor and wind, to calculate latent heat flux with an accuracy of ± 30 W/m^2 or ± 15 W/m^2 for monthly averages.

Sensible Heat Flux Sensible heat flux is calculated from observations of air-sea temperature difference and wind speed made from ships, or from the output of numerical weather models. Sensible fluxes are small almost everywhere except offshore of the east coasts of continents in winter when cold, Arctic air masses extract heat from warm, western, boundary currents. In these areas, numerical models give perhaps the best value of the fluxes. Historical ship report give the long-term mean values of the fluxes.

5.5 Global Data Sets for Fluxes

Ship and satellite data have been processed to produce global maps of fluxes. Observations from ship measurements made over the past 150 years yield maps of the long-term mean values of the fluxes, especially in the northern hemisphere. Ship data, however, are sparse in time and space, and they are increasingly supplemented by data from space. Space data give the variability of some of the fluxes. Output from numerical weather models is also used. The most useful maps are perhaps those that result from combining level 3 and 4 satellite data sets and observations from ships, using numerical weather models. Let's look first at the sources of data, then at a few of the more widely used data sets.

Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set Data collected from observers on ships are the richest source of marine information. Slutz et al. (1985) describing their efforts to collect, edit, summarize, and publish all marine observations write:

> Since 1854, ships of many countries have been taking regular observations of local weather, sea surface temperature, and many other characteristics near the boundary between the ocean and the atmosphere. The observations by one such ship-of-opportunity at one time and place, usually incidental to its voyage, make up a marine report. In later years fixed research vessels, buoys, and other devices have contributed data. Marine reports have been collected, often in machine-readable form, by various agencies and countries. That vast collection of data, spanning the global oceans from the mid-nineteenth century to date, is the historical ocean-atmosphere record.

These marine reports have now been edited and published as the *Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set* COADS (Woodruf et al. 1987) available through the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

The first COADS release includes 70 million reports of marine surface conditions collected by observers on merchant ships from 1854–1979. A second release of data is based on reports from 1980–1986. The data set include fully quality-controlled (trimmed) reports and summaries. Each of the 70 million unique reports contains 28 elements of weather, position, etc., as well as flags indicating which observations were statistically trimmed. Here, statistically trimmed means outliers were removed from the data set. The summaries included in the data set give 14 statistics, such as the median and mean, for each of eight observed variables: air and sea surface temperatures, wind velocity, sea-level pressure, humidity, and cloudiness, plus 11 derived variables.

The data set consists of an easily-used data base at three principal resolutions: 1) individual reports, 2) year-month summaries of the individual reports in 2° latitude by 2° longitude boxes, and 3) decade-month summaries.

Duplicate reports judged inferior by a first quality control process designed by the National Climatic Data Center NCDC were eliminated or flagged, and "untrimmed" monthly and decadal summaries were computed for acceptable data within each 2° latitude by 2° longitude grid. Tighter, median-smoothed limits were used as criteria for statistical rejection of apparent outliers from the data used for separate sets of *trimmed* monthly and decadal summaries. Individual observations were retained in report form but flagged during this second quality control process if they fell outside 2.8 or 3.5 estimated standard-deviations about the smoothed median applicable to their 2° latitude by 2° longitude box, month, and 56–, 40–, or 30–year period (*i.e.*, 1854–1990, 1910–1949, or 1950–1979).

The data are most useful in the northern hemisphere, especially the North Atlantic. Data are sparse in the southern hemisphere and they are not reliable south of 30° S. Gleckler and Weare (1997) analyzed the accuracy of the COADS data for calculating global maps and zonal averages of the fluxes from 55°N to 40°S. They found that systematic errors dominated the zonal means. Zonal averages of insolation were uncertain by about 10%, ranging from ± 10 W/m^2 in high latitudes to ± 25 W/m^2 in the tropics. Long wave fluxes were uncertain by about ± 7 W/m^2. Latent heat flux uncertainties ranged from ± 10 W/m^2 in some areas of the northern oceans to ± 30 W/m^2 in the western tropical oceans to ± 50 W/m^2 in western boundary currents. Sensible heat flux uncertainties tend to be around $\pm 5 - 10$ W/m^2.

Josey et al (1999) compared averaged fluxes calculated from COADS with fluxes calculated from observations made by carefully calibrated instruments on some ships and buoys. They found that mean flux into the oceans, when averaged over all the seas surface had errors of ± 30 W/m^2. Errors vary seasonally and by region, and global corrections proposed by DaSilva, Young, and Levitus (1995) shown in figure 5.7 may not be useful.

Satellite Data Raw data are available from the many satellite projects. Mostly, these data must be further processed to be useful. Various levels of processed data from satellite projects are recognized (Table 5.3):

Table 5.3 Levels of Processed Satellite Data

Level	Level of Processing
Level 1	Unprocessed data from the satellite in engineering units (volts)
Level 2	Data processed into geophysical units (wind speed) at the time and place the satellite instrument made the observation
Level 3	Level 2 data interpolated to fixed coordinates in time and space
Level 4	Level 3 data averaged in time and space or further processed

Data are available from the instruments on operational meteorological satellites including:

1. NOAA series of polar-orbiting, meteorological satellites;
2. Defense Meteorological Satellite Program DMSP polar-orbiting satellites, which carry the Special Sensor Microwave/ Imager (SSM/I);
3. Geostationary meteorological satellites operated by NOAA (GOES), Japan (GMS) and the European Space Agency (METEOSATS).

Data are also available from instruments on experimental satellites such as:

1. Nimbus-7, Earth Radiation Budget Instruments;
2. Earth Radiation Budget Satellite, Earth Radiation Budget Experiment;
3. The European Space Agency's ERS–1 & 2;
4. The Japanese ADvanced Earth Observing System (ADEOS).

Data from satellites are collected, processed, and archived by government organizations. Archived data are further processed to produce useful flux data sets.

International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project Ship-based observations of insolation and clouds are being supplemented and replaced more and more by data from space. The International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project is an ambitious project to collect observations of clouds made by dozens of meteorological satellites from 1985 to 1995, to calibrate the the satellite data, to calculate cloud cover using carefully verified techniques, and to calculate surface insolation (Rossow and Schiffer, 1991). The clouds were observed with visible-light instruments on polar-orbiting and geostationary satellites.

Global Precipitation Climatology Project uses three sources of data to calculate rain rate (Huffman, et al. 1995, 1997):

1. Infrared observations of the height of cumulus clouds from GOES satellites. The basic idea is that the more rain produced by cumulus clouds, the higher the cloud top, and the colder the top appears in the infrared. Thus rain rate at the base of the clouds is related to infrared temperature.
2. Measurements by rain gauges on islands and land.
3. Radio-frequency emissions from from water droplets in the atmosphere observed by the SSM–I.

Accuracy is about 1 mm/day. Data from the project are available on a 2.5° latitude by 2.5° longitude grid from July 1987 to December 1995 from the Global Land Ocean Precipitation Analysis at the NASA Goddard Space Flight Center.

Xie and Arkin (1997) produced a 17-year data set based on seven types of satellite and rain-gauge data combined with the output from the NCEP/NCAR reanalysed data from numerical weather models. The data set has the same spatial and temporal resolution as the Huffman data set.

Reanalyzed Data From Numerical Weather Models Surface heat fluxes have been calculated from weather data using numerical weather models by various renalysis projects described on page 48 of the last chapter. The fluxes are consistent with atmospheric dynamics, they are global, and they are available for many years on a uniform grid. For example, the NCAR/NCEP reanalyzed data are available on a CD-ROM including daily averages of wind stress, sensible and latent heat fluxes, net long and short wave fluxes, near-surface temperature, and precipitation. Data on tape include values every six hours.

The reanalysed data sets are just becoming available, and their accuracy is still uncertain. Recent studies (WCRP, 1998) suggest:

1. The fluxes are biased because they were calculated using numerical models optimized to produce accurate weather forecasts. The time-mean values of the fluxes may not be as accurate as the time-mean values calculated directly from ship observations.
2. The fluxes are probably more accurate in the northern hemisphere where ship ship observations are most common.

3. The fluxes have zonal means that differ significantly from the same zonal means calculated from COADS data. The differences can exceed 40 W/m^2.
4. The atmospheric models do not require that the net heat flux averaged over time and Earth's surface be zero. The ECMWF data set averaged over fifteen years gives a net flux of 8 W/m^2 into the ocean.

Thus reanalysed fluxes are most useful for forcing ocean, general-circulation models needing actual heat fluxes and wind stress. COADS data are most useful for calculating time-mean fluxes except perhaps in the southern hemisphere.

Data From Numerical Weather Models Some projects require flux data a few hours after after observations are collected. The surface analysis from numerical weather models is a good source for this type of data.

5.6 Geographic Distribution of Terms in the Heat Budget

Various groups have used ship and satellite data together with numerical models of the atmospheric circulation to calculate globally averaged values of the terms for Earth's heat budget. The values give an overall view of the importance of the various terms (Figure 5.6). Notice that insolation balances infrared radiation at the top of the atmosphere. At the surface, latent heat flux and net infrared radiation tend to balance insolation, and sensible heat flux is small.

Note that only 20% of insolation reaching Earth is absorbed directly by the atmosphere while 49% is absorbed by the ocean and land. What then warms the atmosphere and drives the atmospheric circulation shown in figure 4.3? The answer is rain and infrared radiation from the ocean absorbed by the moist tropical atmosphere. Here's what happens. Sunlight warms the tropical oceans

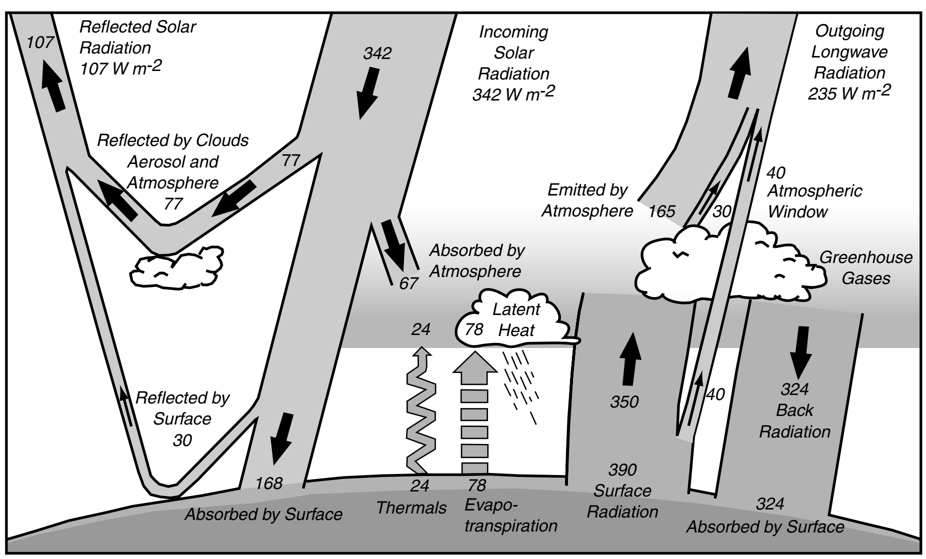


Figure 5.6 The mean annual radiation and heat balance of the earth.
From Houghton et al. (1996: 58), which used data from Kiehl and Trenberth (1996).

which must evaporate water to keep from warming up. It also radiates heat to the atmosphere, but the net radiation term is smaller than the evaporative term. Trade winds carry the heat in the form of water vapor to the tropical convergence zone where it falls as rain. Rain releases the latent heat evaporated from the sea, and it heats the air in cumulus rain clouds by as much as 125 W/m^2 averaged over a six-year period (See figure 14.1).

At first it may seem strange that rain heats the air, after all, we are familiar with summertime thunderstorms cooling the air at ground level. The cool air from thunderstorms is due to downdrafts. Higher in the cumulus cloud, heat released by rain warms the mid-levels of the atmosphere causing air to rise rapidly in the storm. Thunderstorms are large heat engines converting the energy of latent heat into kinetic energy of winds.

The zonal average of the oceanic heat-budget terms (Figure 5.7) shows that insolation is greatest in the tropics, that evaporation balances insolation, and that sensible heat flux is small. *Zonal average* is an average along lones of constant latitude. Note that the terms in figure 5.7 don't sum to zero. The areal-weighted integral of the curve for total heat flux is not zero. Because the

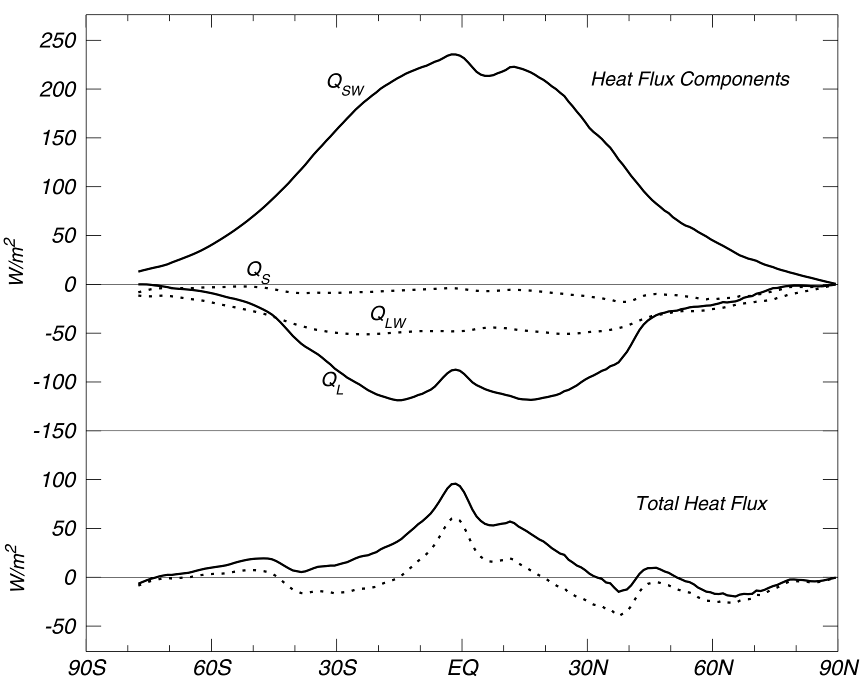


Figure 5.7 **Upper:** Zonal averages of heat transfer to the ocean by insolation Q_{SW}, and loss by infrared radiation Q_{LW}, sensible heat flux Q_S, and latent heat flux Q_L, calculated by DaSilva, Young, and Levitus (1995) using the COADS data set. **Lower:** Net heat flux through the sea surface calculated from the data above (solid line) and net heat flux constrained to give heat and fresh-water transports by the ocean that match independent calculations of these trasports. The area under the lower curves ought to be zero, but it is 16 W/m^2 for the unconstrained case and -3 W/m^2 for the constrained case.

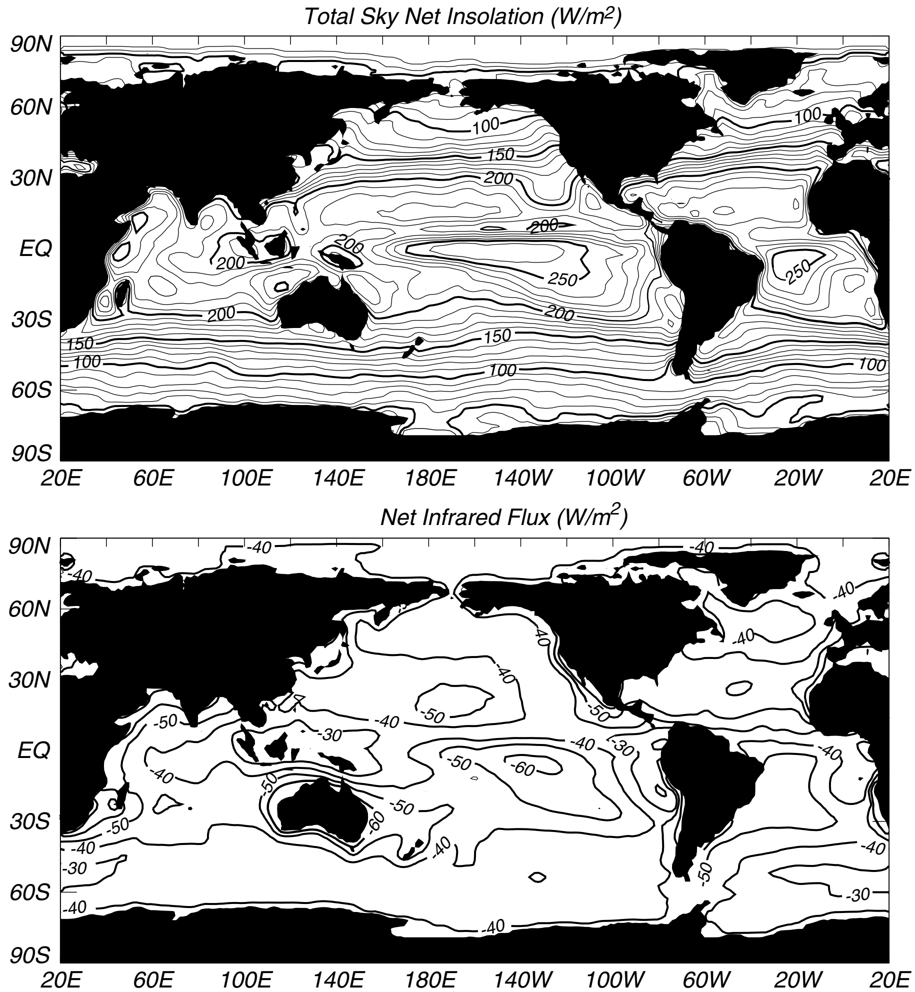


Figure 5.8 Annual-mean insolation Q_{SW} (**top**) and infrared radiation Q_{LW} (**bottom**) through the sea surface during 1989 calculated by the Satellite Data Analysis Center at the NASA Langley Research Center (Darnell et al., 1992) using data from the International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project. Units are W/m^2, contour interval is 10 W/m^2.

net heat flux into the oceans averaged over several years must be less than a few watts per square meter, the non-zero value must be due to errors in the various terms in the heat budget.

Errors in the heat budget terms can be reduced by using additional information. For example, we know roughly how much heat and fresh water are transported by the oceans and atmosphere, and the known values for the transports can be used to constrain the calculations of net heat fluxes (Figure 5.7). The constrained fluxes show that the ocean gains heat in the tropics and loses heat at high latitudes.

Maps of the regional distribution of fluxes give clues to the processes pro-

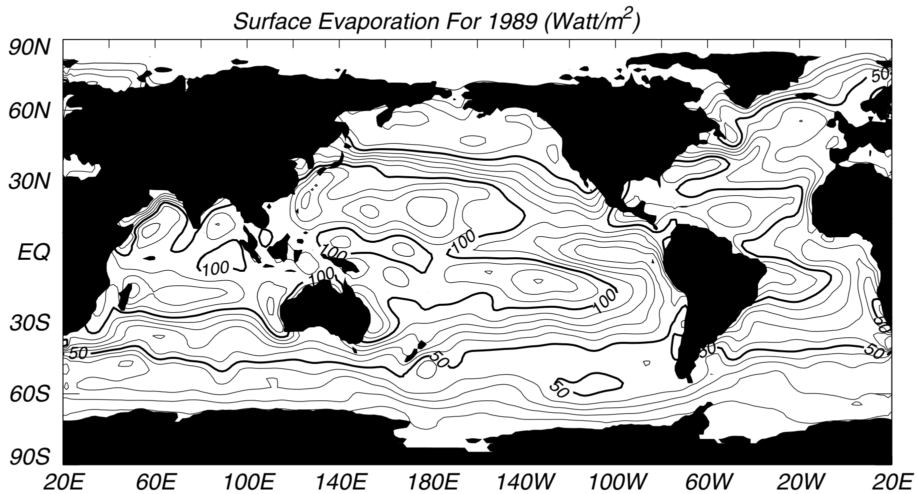


Figure 5.9 Annual-mean latent heat flux from the sea surface Q_L in W/m^2 during 1989 calculated from data compiled by the Data Assimilation Office of NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center using reanalysed output from the ECMWF numerical weather prediction model. Contour interval is 10 W/m^2.

ducing the fluxes. Net downward short-wave radiation (insolation) at the sea surface (Figure 5.8 top) shows that the large flux into the tropical region is modulated by the distribution of clouds, and that heating is everywhere positive. The net infrared heat flux (Figure 5.8 bottom) is largest in regions with the least clouds, such as the central gyres and the eastern central Pacific. The net infrared flux is everywhere negative. Latent heat fluxes (Figure 5.9) are dominated by evaporation in the trade wind regions and the offshore flow of cold air masses behind cold fronts in winter offshore of Japan and North America. Sensible heat fluxes (Figure 5.10 top) are dominated by cold air blowing off continents. The net heating gain (Figure 5.10 bottom) is largest in equatorial regions and net heat loss is largest downwind on Asia and North America.

5.7 Meridional Heat Transport

Overall, Earth gains heat at the top of the tropical atmosphere, and it loses heat at the top of the polar atmosphere. The atmospheric and oceanic circulation together must transport heat from low to high latitudes to balance the gains and losses. This north-south transport is called the *meridional transport.*

How much heat is carried by the ocean and how much by the atmosphere? The sum of the meridional heat transport by the ocean and atmosphere together is calculated accurately from the divergence of the zonal average of the heat budget measured at the top of the atmosphere by satellites. To make the calculation, we assume steady state transports over many years so that any long-term net heat gain or loss through the top of the atmosphere must be balanced by a meridional transport and not by heat storage in the ocean or atmosphere. So let's start at the top of the atmosphere.

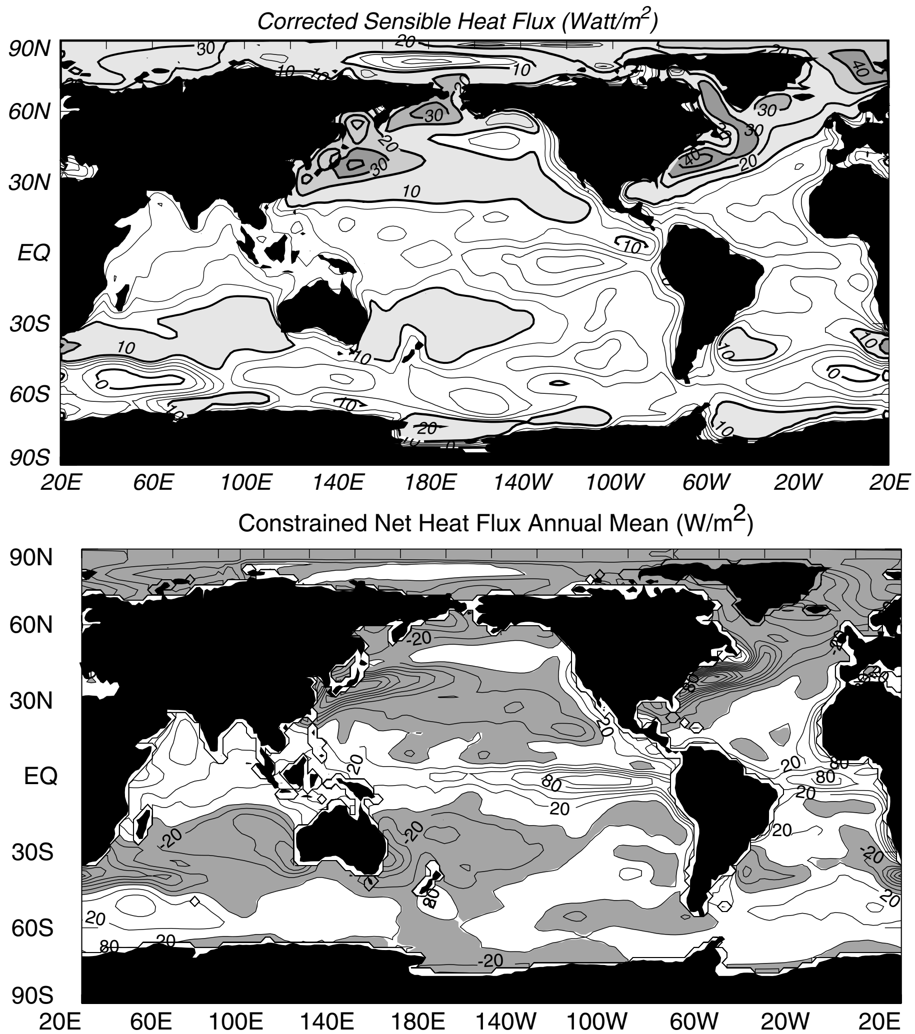


Figure 5.10 Annual-mean upward sensible heat flux Q_S **Top** and constrained, net, downward heat flux **Bottom** through the sea surface in W/m^2 calculated by DaSilva, Young, and Levitus (1995) using the COADS data set from 1945 to 1989. Contour interval is 2 W/m^2 (top) and 20 W/m^2 (bottom).

Heat Budget at the top of the Atmosphere Heat flux through the top of the atmosphere is measured with useful accuracy using radiometers on satellites.

1. Insolation is calculated from the solar constant and observations of reflected sunlight made by meteorological satellites and by special satellites such as the Earth Radiation Budget Experiment Satellite.

2. Back radiation is measured by infrared radiometers on the satellites.

3. The difference between insolation and net infrared radiation is the net heat flux across the top of the atmosphere.

Errors arise from calibration of instruments, and from inaccurate information about the angular distribution of reflected and emitted radiation. Satellite instruments tend to measure radiation propagating vertically upward, not radiation at large angles from vertical, and radiation at these angles is usually calculated not measured.

The sum of the meridional heat transported by the atmosphere and the oceans is calculated from the top of the atmosphere budget. First average the satellite observations in the zonal direction, to obtain a zonal average of the heat flux at the top of the atmosphere. Then calculate the meridional derivative of the zonal mean flux to calculate the north-south flux divergence. The divergence must be balanced by the heat transport by the atmosphere and the ocean across each latitude band.

Oceanic Heat Transport Oceanic heat transport are calculated three ways:

1. *Surface Flux Method* uses measurements of wind, insolation, air, and sea temperature, cloudiness, and bulk formulas to estimate the heat flux through the sea surface. Then the fluxes are integrated to obtain the zonal average of the heat flux (Figure 5.7). Finally, the meridional derivative of the net flux gives the flux divergence, which must be balanced by heat transport in the ocean.
2. *Direct Method* uses measured values of current velocity and temperature from top to bottom along a zonal section spanning an ocean basin. The values are used to calculate the flux from the product of northward velocity and heat content derived from the temperature measurement.
3. *Residual Method* uses atmospheric observations or the output of numerical models of the atmospheric circulation to calculate the heat transport in the atmosphere. This is the direct method applied to the atmosphere. The atmospheric transport is subtracted from the total meridional transport calculated from the top-of-the-atmosphere heat flux to obtain the oceanic contribution as a residual (Figure 5.11).

Oceanic heat transports calculated from the various methods were summarized by Charnock (1989), Talley (1984) and Trenberth and Solomon (1994). They found that it is difficult to calculate oceanic heat transport acurately by any method, and that errors were probably larger than estimated by the earlier studies. The most recent calculations, such as those shown in Figure 5.11, are now in better agreement and the error bars shown in the figure are realistic.

5.8 Meridional Fresh Water Transport

The Earth's water budget is dominated by evaporation and precipitation over the ocean. Baumgartner and Reichel (1975) report that 86% of global evaporation and 78% of global precipitation occur over the ocean. A map of the net evaporation (Figure 5.12) shows that evaporation exceeds a meter per year in the trade wind regimes in the eastern parts of the oceans.

The transport of fresh water by the ocean can be calculated in the same ways heat transports are calculated, with similar uncertainties (Figure 5.13).

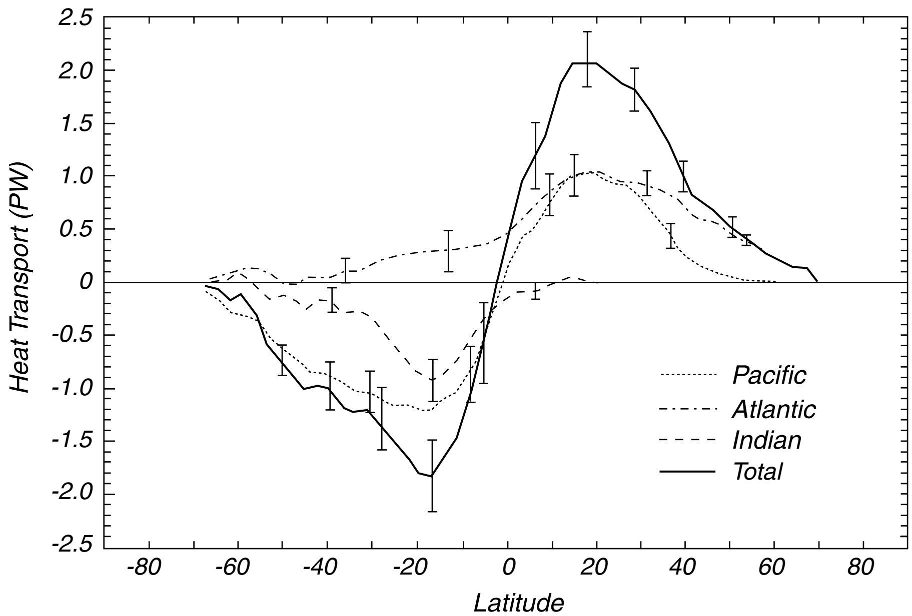


Figure 5.11 Northward heat transport for 1988 in each ocean and the total transport summed over all oceans calculated by the residual method using atmospheric heat transport from ECMWF and top of the atmnosphere heat fluxes from the Earth Radiation Budget Experiment satellite. From Houghton et al. (1996: 212), which used data from Trenberth and Solomon (1994).

Knowledge of water fluxes and transports is important for understanding the global hydrological cycle, ocean dynamics, and global climate. For example, the variability of fresh water fluxes may have played an important role in the ice

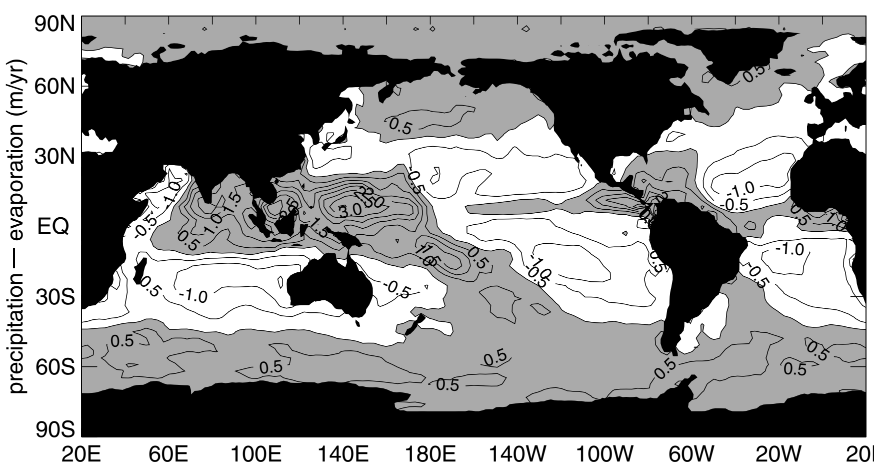


Figure 5.12 Precipitation minus evaporation in meters per year calculated from global rainfall by the Global Precipitation Climatology Project and latent heat flux calculated by the Data Assimilation Office, both at NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center. Precipitation exceeds evaporation in the shaded regions, contour interval is 0.5 m.

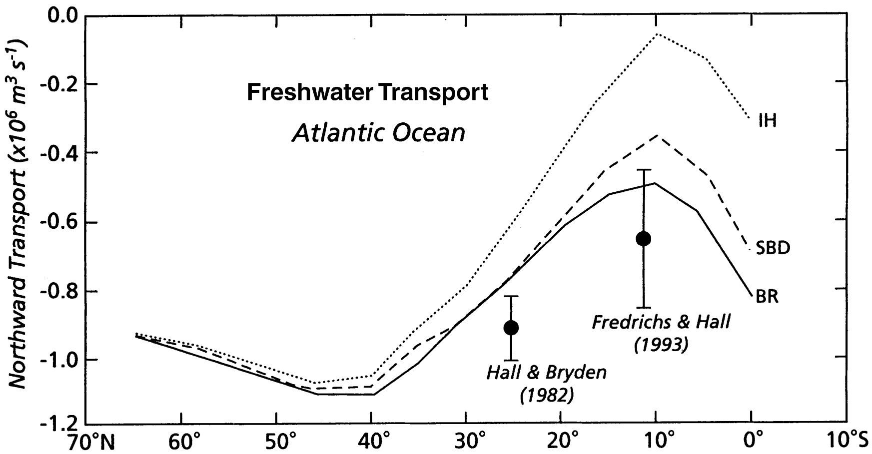


Figure 5.13 Meridional transport of fresh water by the Atlantic from three surface-flux calculations: BR—Baumgartner and Reichel (1975); SBD—Schmitt et al. (1989); and IH—Isemer and Hasse's (1987) evaporation estimates combined with Dorman and Bourke's (1981) precipitation values. Also shown are direct measurements at 24°N by Hall and Bryden (1982) and 11°N by Friedrichs and Hall (1993). All are summed relative to an estimated Arctic southward export due to the Bering Strait throughflow and the water budget of the Arctic itself. From Schmitt (1994).

ages as discussed in §13.3.

5.9 Variations in Solar Constant

We have assumed so far that the solar constant, the output of light and heat from the sun, is steady. Recent evidence based on variability of sunspots and faculae (bright spots) shows that the output varied by ±0.2% over centuries (Lean, Beer, and Bradley, 1995), and that this variability is correlated with changes in global mean temperature of Earth's surface of ±0.4°C. (Figure 5.14). In addition, White and Cayun (1998) found a small 12 yr, 22 yr, and longer-period variations of sea-surface temperature measured by bathythermographs and ship-board thermometers over the past century. The observed response of Earth to solar variability is about that calculated from numerical models of the coupled ocean-atmosphere climate system. Many other changes in climate and weather have been attributed to solar variability. The correlations are somewhat controversial, and much more information can be found in Hoyt and Schatten's (1997) book on the subject.

5.10 Important Concepts

1. Sunlight is absorbed primarily in the tropical ocean. The amount of sunlight is modulated by season, latitude, time of day, and cloud cover.

2. Most of the heat absorbed by the oceans in the tropics is released as water vapor which heats the atmosphere when water is condenses as rain. Most of the rain falls in the tropical convergence zones, lesser amounts fall in mid-latitudes near the polar front.

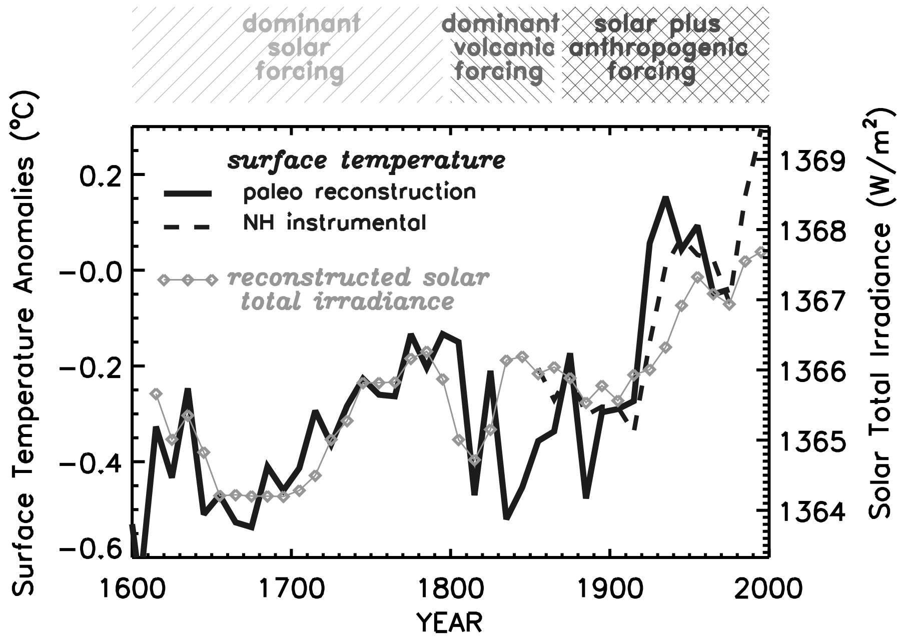


Figure 5.14 Changes in solar constant (total solar irradiance) and global mean temperature of Earth's surface over the past 400 years. Except for a period of enhanced volcanic activity in the early 19th century, surface temperature is well correlated with solar variability (From Lean, personal communication).

3. Heat released by rain and absorbed infrared radiation from the ocean are the primary drivers for the atmospheric circulation.
4. The net heat flux from the oceans is largest in mid-latitudes and offshore of Japan and New England.
5. Heat fluxes can be measured directly using fast response instruments on low-flying aircraft, but this is not useful for estimating heat budgets of the ocean.
6. Heat fluxes through large regions of the sea surface can be estimated from bulk formula. Seasonal, regional, and global maps of fluxes are available based on ship and satellite observations.
7. The most widely used data sets for studying heat fluxes are the Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set and the reanalysis of meteorological data by numerical weather prediction models.
8. The oceans transport about one-half of the heat needed to warm higher latitudes, the atmosphere transports the other half.
9. Solar output is not constant, and the observed small variations in output of heat and light from the sun seem to produce the changes in global temperature observed over the past 400 years.

Chapter 6

Temperature, Salinity, and Density

Insolation, evaporation, and rain influence the distribution of temperature and salinity at the ocean's surface. Changes in temperature and salinity lead to changes in the density of water at the surface, which can lead to convection and changes in the deeper circulation of the ocean. Once surface waters sink into the deeper ocean, they retain a distinctive relationship between temperature and salinity which helps oceanographers determine the source regions for subsurface water. In addition, changes in density lead to pressure changes inside the ocean and to changes in currents, which are driven by pressure gradients. For all these resons, we need to know the distribution of temperature, salinity, and density in the ocean.

Before discussing the distribution of temperature and salinity, let's first define what we mean by the terms, especially salinity.

6.1 Definition of Salinity

At the simplest level, salinity is the total amount of dissolved material in grams in one kilogram of sea water. Thus salinity is a dimensionless quantity. It has no units. The variability of dissolved salt is very small, and we must be very careful to define salinity in ways that are accurate and practical. To better understand the need for accuracy, look at figure 6.1. Notice that the range of salinity for most of the ocean's water is from 34.60 to 34.80 parts per thousand ($^\circ/_{\circ\circ}$), which is 200 parts per million. The variability in the deep North Pacific is even smaller, about 20 parts per million. If we want to classify water with different salinities, we need definitions and instruments accurate to about one part per million. Notice that the range of temperature is much larger, about 1°C, and temperature is easier to measure.

Writing a practical definition with useful accuracy is difficult (see Lewis, 1980, for the details), and various definitions have been used.

Physical Properties of Water

Water molecules are asymmetrical, and this has important consequences.

1. The electric charge is asymmetrical, causing strong attraction between molecules, resulting in:
   - High melting temperature.
   - High boiling point.
   - High heat of vaporization.
   - High surface tension.
2. The molecule has a large dipole moment, resulting in:
   - High dielectric constant.
   - Great power for dissolving inorganic chemicals, which leads to high salinity and conductivity of sea water.
3. The high conductivity causes:
   - Rapid electrolysis of metals in sea water, causing rapid corrosion.
   - The motion of sea water in Earth's magnetic field creates a potential. Measurements of the potential can be used for measuring the velocity of oceanic currents.
4. Water molecules pack together either in tetrahedral structures or in spherical, close-packing, structures of ice.
   - The properties of the tetrahedral structure, which is more common at higher temperatures, is superimposed on the properties of the ice structure, which is more common at lower temperatures.
   - The conflict between these two structures leads to the parabolic shape of water properties as a function of temperature (Fig. 6.2).
5. Tetrahedral packing is denser than the spherical close packing of ice .
   - The maximum density of pure water is above the freezing point.
   - Ice is less dense than water.
   - The maximum density of sea water, however, is at freezing.

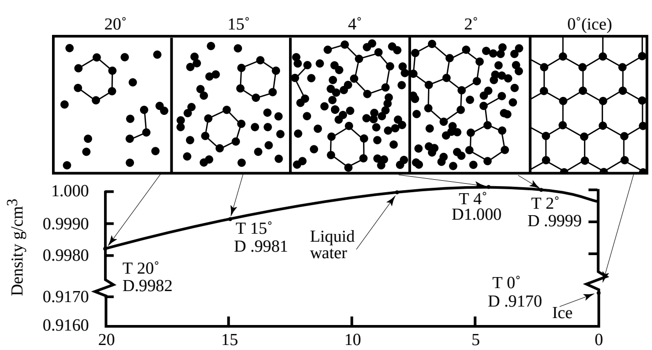


Figure 6.2 The shape of the water and ice molecules determines the density. The ice molecule is packed in a lattice that takes more volume than water molecules. Hence water expands on freezing. From Thurman (1985).

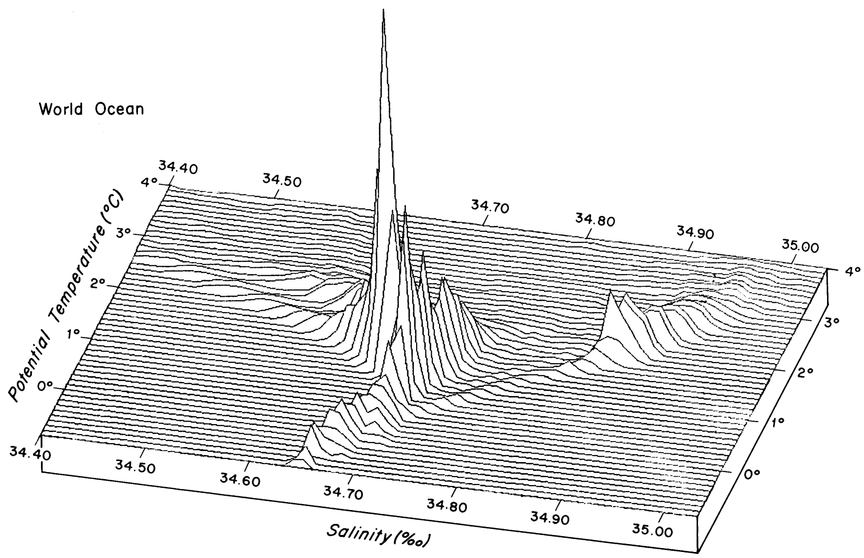


Figure 6.1 Histogram of temperature and salinity of ocean water colder than 4°C. Height is proportional to volume. Height of highest peak corresponds to a volume of 26 million cubic kilometers per bivariate class of 0.1°C and 0.01 ($^\circ/_{\circ\circ}$). From Worthington (1981).

A Simple Definition Originally salinity was defined to be the "Total amount of dissolved material in grams in one kilogram of sea water." This is not useful because the dissolved material is almost impossible to measure in practice. For example, how do we measure volatile material like gasses? Nor can we evaporate sea-water to dryness because chlorides are lost in the last stages of drying (Sverdrup, Johnson, and Fleming, 1942: 50).

A More Complete Definition To avoid these difficulties, the International Council for the Exploration of the Sea set up a commission in 1889 which recommended that salinity be defined as the "Total amount of solid materials in grams dissolved in one kilogram of sea water when all the carbonate has been converted to oxide, the bromine and iodine replaced by chlorine and all organic matter completely oxidized." The definition was published in 1902. *This is useful but difficult to use routinely.*

Salinity Based on Chlorinity Because the above definition was difficult to implement in practice, because salinity is directly proportional to the amount of chlorine in sea water, and because chlorine can be measured accurately by a simple chemical analysis, salinity S was redefined using chlorinity:

$$S\,(^\circ/_{\circ\circ}) = 0.03 + 1.805\,Cl\,(^\circ/_{\circ\circ}) \tag{6.1}$$

where *chlorinity* Cl is defined as "the mass of silver required to precipitate completely the halogens in 0.328 523 4 kg of the sea-water sample."

As more and more accurate measurements were made, (6.1) turned out to be too inaccurate. In 1964 UNESCO and other international organizations appointed a Joint Panel on Oceanographic Tables and Standards to produce a more accurate definition. The Joint Panel recommended in 1966 (Wooster, Lee, and Dietrich, 1969) that salinity and clorinity be related using:

$$S\,(\,^\circ/_{\circ\circ}) = 1.806\,55\,Cl\,(\,^\circ/_{\circ\circ}) \tag{6.2}$$

This is the same as (6.1) for $S = 35$.

Salinity Based on Conductivity At the same time (6.2) was adopted, oceanographers had began using conductivity meters to measure salinity. The meters were very precise and relatively easy to use compared with the chemical techniques used to measure chlorinity. As a result, the Joint Panel also recommended that salinity be related to conductivity of sea water using:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= -\,0.089\,96 + 28.297\,29\,R_{15} + 12.808\,32\,R_{15}^2 \\ &\quad -\,10.678\,69\,R_{15}^3 + 5.986\,24\,R_{15}^4 - 1.323\,11\,R_{15}^5 && (6.3a) \\ R_{15} &= C(S,15,0)/C(35,15,0) && (6.3b) \end{aligned}$$

where $C(S,15,0)$ is the conductivity of the sea-water sample at 15°C and atmospheric pressure, having a salinity S derived from (6.4), and $C(35,15,0)$ is the conductivity of standard "Copenhagen" sea water. Millero (1996) points out that (6.3) is not a new definition of salinity, it merely gives chlorinity as a function of conductivity of seawater relative to standard seawater.

Practical Salinity Scale of 1978 By the early 1970s, accurate conductivity meters could be deployed from ships to measure conductivity at depth. The need to re-evaluate the salinity scale led the Joint Panel to recommend in 1978 that salinity be defined using only conductivity, breaking the link with chlorinity. All water samples with the same conductivity ratio have the same salinity.

The *Practical Salinity Scale of 1978* is now the official definition:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= 0.0080 - 0.1692\,R_T^{1/2} + 25.3851\,R_T + 14.0941\,R_T^{3/2} \\ &\quad -\,7.0261\,R_T^2 + 2.7081\,R_T^{5/2} + \Delta S && (6.4a) \\ R_T &= C(S,T,0)/C(KCl,T,0) && (6.4b) \\ \Delta S &= \left[\frac{(T-15)}{1+0.0162\,(T-15)}\right] + 0.0005 - 0.0056\,R_T^{1/2} - 0.0066\,R_T \\ &\quad -\,0.0375\,R_T^{3/2} + 0.636\,R_T^2 - 0.0144\,R_T^{5/2} && (6.4c) \\ 2 &\le S\ \le 42 \end{aligned}$$

where $C(S,T,0)$ is the conductivity of the sea-water sample at temperature T and standard atmospheric pressure, and $C(KCl,T,0)$ is the conductivity of the standard potassium chloride (KCl) solution at temperature T and standard atmospheric pressure. The standard KCl solution contains a mass of 32.435 6 grams of KCl in a mass of 1.000 000 kg of solution. An extension of (6.4) gives salinity at any pressure (see Millero 1996: 72).

Table 6.1 Major Constituents of Sea Water

	Ion		Atoms
55.3%	Chlorine	55.3%	Chlorine
30.8%	Sodium	30.8%	Sodium
7.7%	Sulfate	3.7%	Magnesium
3.7%	Magnesium	2.6%	Sulfur
1.2%	Calcium	1.2%	Calcium
1.1%	Potassium	1.1%	Potassium

Comments The various definitions of salinity work well because the ratios of the various ions in sea water are nearly independent of salinity and location in the ocean (Table 6.1). Only very fresh waters, such as are found in estuaries, have significantly different ratios. The result is based on Dittmar's (1884) chemical analysis of 77 samples of sea water collected by the *Challenger* Expedition and further studies by Carritt and Carpenter (1958).

> The importance of this result cannot be over emphasized, as upon it depends the validity of the chlorinity: salinity: density relationships and, hence, the accuracy of all conclusions based on the distribution of density where the latter is determined by chemical or indirect physical methods such as electrical conductivity. . . —Sverdrup, Johnson, Fleming (1942).

The relationship between conductivity and salinity has an accuracy of around ± 0.003 in salinity. The very small error is caused by variations in constituents such as SiO_2 which cause small changes in density but no change in conductivity.

Instruments for measuring salinity are calibrated using Normal Standard Seawater (P-series). The standard water is made from large samples of water from the north Atlantic carefully diluted to $S = 35$ which is distributed in 275ml sealed glass ampoules. Each is labelled for its conductivity ratio and salinity according to the Practical Salinity Scale 1978 and distributed worldwide by Ocean Scientific International in England since 1989. Each sample is carefully calibrated using the standard KCl solution.

6.2 Definition of Temperature

Many physical processes depend on temperature; and a few can be used to define absolute temperature T. The unit of T is the kelvin, which has the symbol K. The fundamental processes used for defining an absolute temperature scale over the range of temperatures found in the ocean include (Soulen and Fogle, 1997): 1) the gas laws relating pressure to temperature of an ideal gas with corrections for the density of the gas; and 2) the voltage noise of a resistance R.

The measurement of temperature using an absolute scale is difficult and the measurement is usually made by national standards laboratories. The absolute measurements are used to define a practical temperature scale based on the temperature of a few fixed points and interpolating devices which are calibrated at the fixed points.

For temperatures commonly found in the ocean, the interpolating device is a platinum-resistance thermometer. It consists of a loosely wound, strain-free, pure

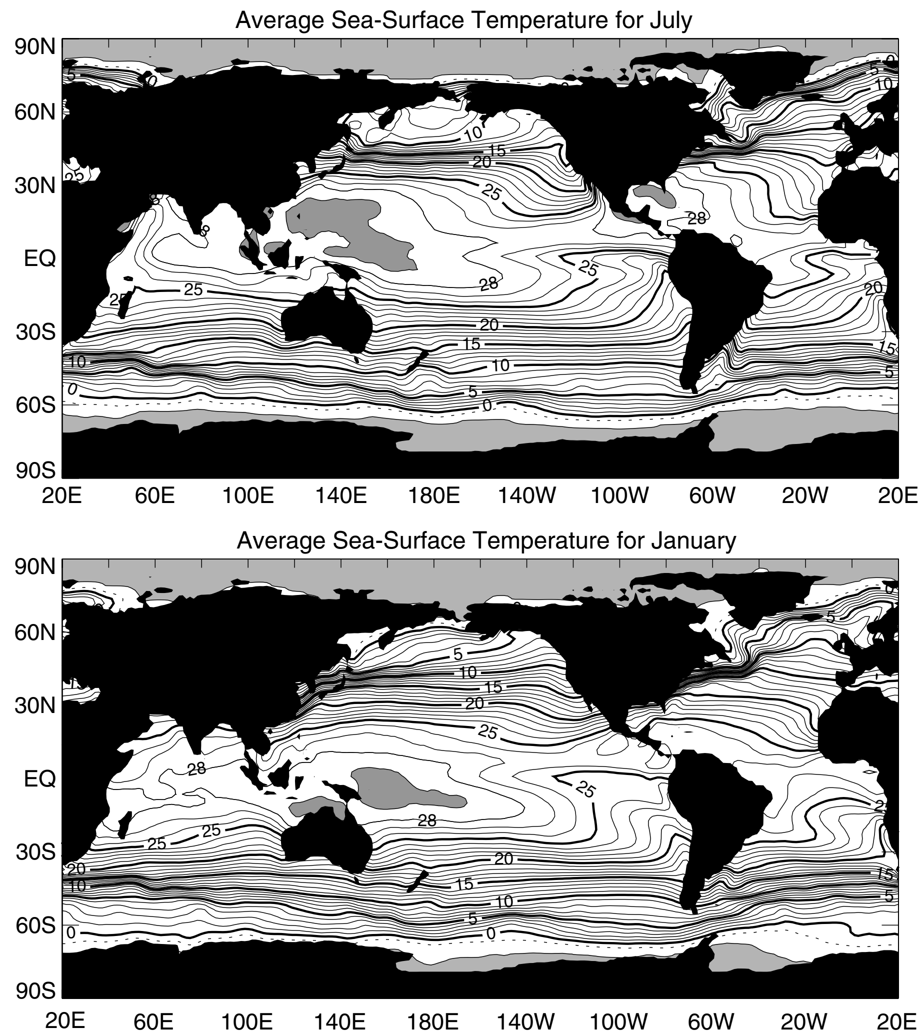


Figure 6.3 Mean sea-surface temperature calculated from the optimal interpolation technique (Reynolds and Smith, 1995) using ship reports and AVHRR measurements of temperature. Contour interval is 1°C with heavy contours every 5°C. Shaded areas exceed 29°C.

platinum wire whose resistance is a function of temperature. It is calibrated at fixed points between the triple point of equilibrium hydrogen at 13.8033 K and the freezing point of silver at 961.78 K, including the triple point of water at 0.060°C, the melting point of Gallium at 29.7646°C, and the freezing point of Indium at 156.5985°C (Preston-Thomas, 1990). The triple point of water is the temperature at which ice, water, and water vapor are in equilibrium. The temperature scale in kelvin T is related to the temperature scale in degrees Celsius $t/°\text{C}$ by:

$$t\ [°\text{C}] = T\ [\text{K}] - 273.15 \tag{6.5}$$

The practical temperature scale was revised in 1887, 1927, 1948, 1968, and 1990 as more accurate determinations of absolute temperature become accepted. The most recent scale is the International Temperature Scale of 1990 (ITS-90). It differs slightly from the International Practical Temperature Scale of 1968 IPTS-68. At 0°C they are the same, and above 0°C ITS-90 is slightly cooler. $t_{90} - t_{68} = -0.002$ at 10°C, -0.005 at 20°C, -0.007 at 30°C and -0.010 at 40°C.

Notice that while oceanographers use thermometers calibrated with an accuracy of a millidegree, which is 0.001°C, the temperature scale itself has uncertainties of a few millidegreees.

6.3 Geographical Distribution of Surface Temperature and Salinity

The distribution of temperature at the sea surface tends to be *zonal*, that is, it is independent of longitude (Figure 6.3). Warmest water is near the equator, coldest water is near the poles. The deviations from zonal are small. Equatorward of 40°, cooler waters tend to be on the eastern side of the basin. North of this latitude, cooler waters tend to be on the western side.

The *anomalies* of sea-surface temperature, the deviation from a long term average, are small, less than 1.5°C except in the equatorial Pacific where the deviations can be 3°C (Figure 6.4).

The annual range of sea-surface temperature is highest at mid-latitudes, especially on the western side of the ocean (Figure 6.5). In the west, cold air blows off the continents in winter and cools the ocean. The cooling dominates the heat budget. In the tropics the temperature range is mostly less than 2°C.

The distribution of sea-surface salinity also tends to be zonal. The saltiest waters are at mid-latitudes where evaporation is high. Less salty waters are near

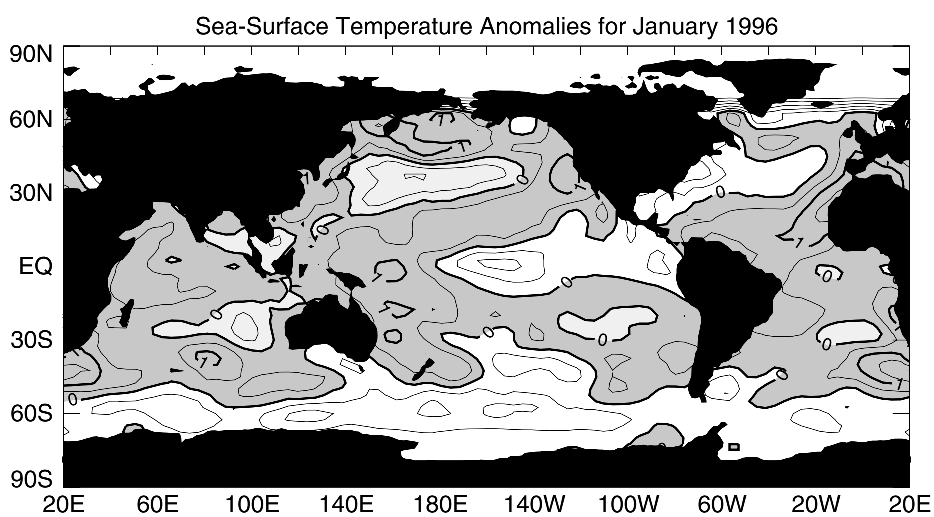


Figure 6.4 Sea-surface temperature anomaly for January 1995 relative to mean temperature shown in figure 6.3 using data published by Reynolds and Smith (1995) in the *Climate Diagnostics Bulletin* for February 1995. Contour interval is 1°C; shaded areas are positive.

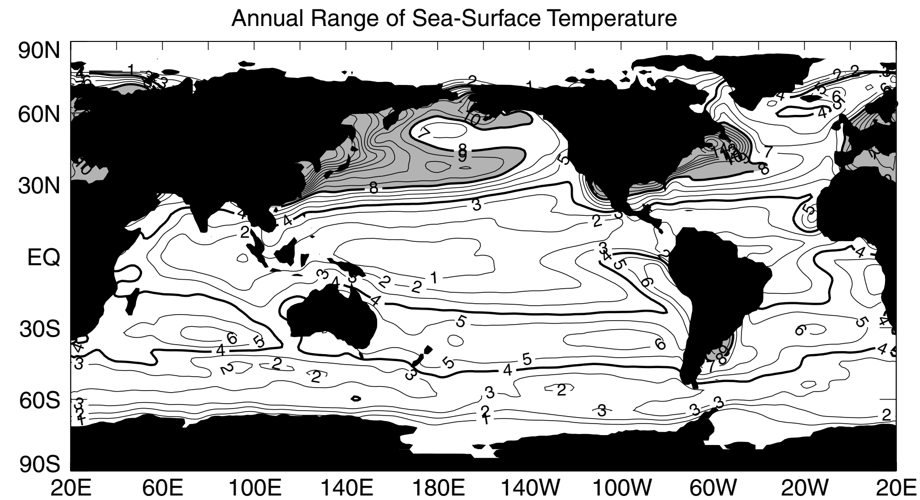


Figure 6.5 Annual range of sea-surface temperature in °C calculated from the Reynolds and Smith (1995) mean sea-surface temperature data set. Contour interval is 1°C with heavy contours at 4°C and 8°C. Shaded areas exceed 8°C.

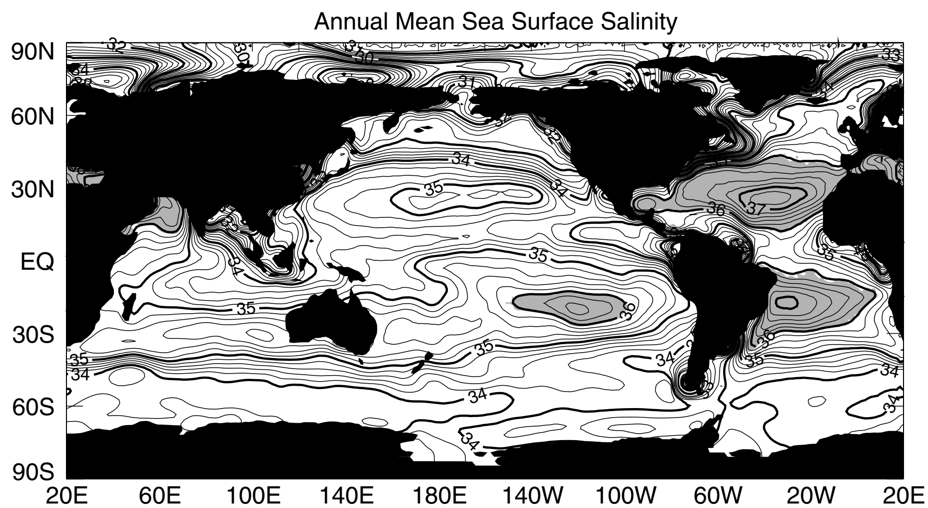


Figure 6.6 Mean sea-surface salinity. Contour interval is 0.25 psu. Shaded areas exceed 36 psu. (From Levitus, 1982).

the equator where rain freshens the surface water, and at high latitudes where melted sea ice freshens the surface waters (Figure 6.6). The zonal (east-west) average of salinity shows a close correlation between salinity and evaporation minus precipitation plus river input (Figure 6.7).

Because many large rivers drain into the Atlantic and the Arctic Sea, why is the Atlantic saltier than the Pacific? Broecker (1997) showed that 0.32 Sv of the water evaporated from the Atlantic does not fall as rain on land. Instead, it is carried by winds into the Pacific (Figure 6.8). Broecker points out that the quantity is small, equivalent to a little more than the flow in the Amazon River,

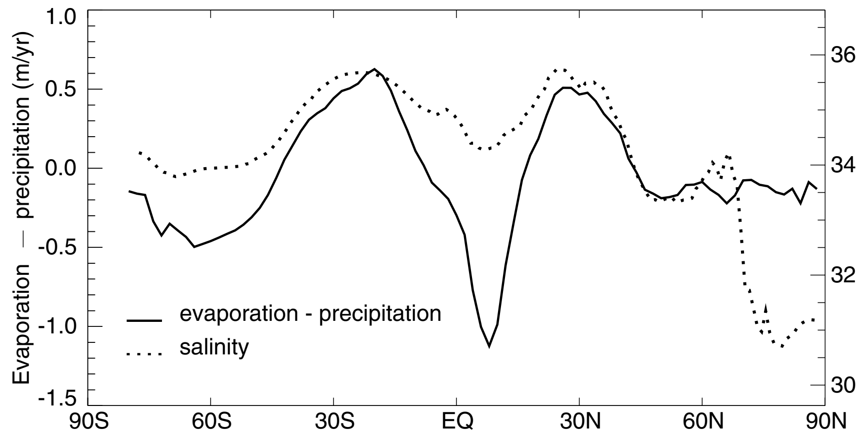


Figure 6.7 Zonal average of sea-surface salinity calculated for all oceans from Levitus (1982) and the difference between evaporation and precipitation ($E - P$) calculated from data shown in Figure 5.14.

but "were this flux not compensated by an exchange of more salty Atlantic waters for less salty Pacific waters, the salinity of the entire Atlantic would rise about 1 gram per liter per millennium."

Mean Temperature and Salinity of the Ocean The mean temperature of the ocean's waters is: T = 3.5°C; and the mean salinity is S = 34.7. The distribution about the mean is small: 50% of the water is in the range:

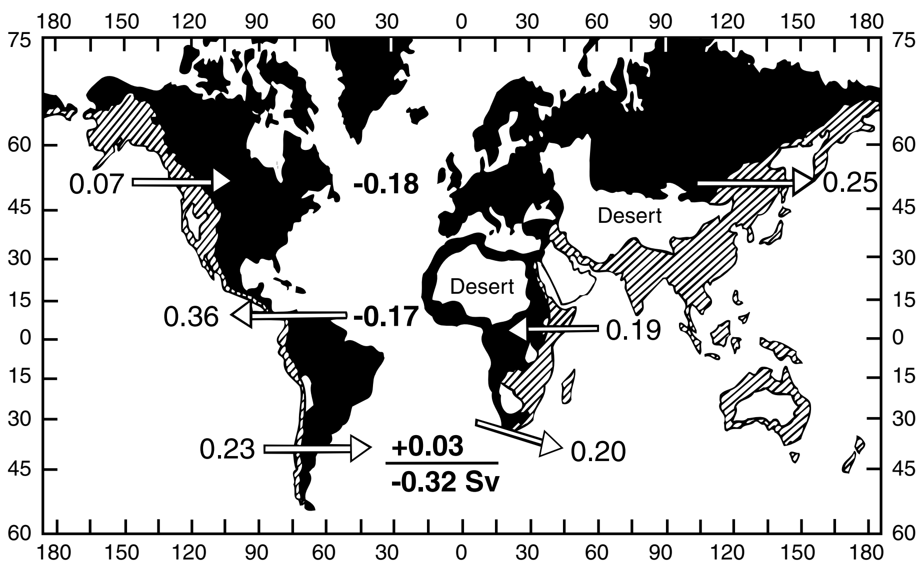


Figure 6.8 Water transported by the atmosphere into and out of the Atlantic. Basins draining into the Atlantic are black, deserts are white, and other drainage basins are shaded. Arrows give direction of water transport by the atmosphere, and values are in Sverdrups. Bold numbers give the net transport for the Atlantic. Averall, the Atlantic loses 0.32 Sv, an amount approximately equal to the flow in the Amazon River. From Broecker (1997).

$$1.3°\text{C} < T < 3.8°\text{C}$$
$$34.6 < S < 34.8$$

6.4 The Oceanic Mixed Layer

Wind blowing on the ocean stirs the upper layers leading to a thin *mixed layer* at the sea surface having constant temperature and salinity from the surface down to a depth where the values differ from those at the surface. The magnitude of the difference is arbitrary, but typically the temperature at the bottom of the layer must be no more than 0.02–0.1° colder than at the surface. Note that the both temperature and salinity must be constant in the mixed layer. We will see later that mean velocity can vary with depth in the mixed layer.

The mixed layer is roughly 10–200 m thick over most of the tropical and mid-latitude belts (Figure 6.9 upper). The mixed layer also tends to be saltier than the deeper layers except at high latitudes (Figure 6.9 lower). Below the mixed layer, water temperature rapidly decreases with depth. The range of depths where the rate of change, the gradient of temperature, is large is called the *thermocline*. Because density is closely related to temperature, the thermocline also tends to be the layer where density gradient is greatest, the *pyncocline*.

The depth and temperature of the mixed layer varies from day to day and from season to season in response to two processes:

1. Heat fluxes through the surface heat and cool the surface waters. Changes in temperature change the density contrast between the mixed layer and deeper waters. The greater the contrast, the more work is needed to mix the layer downward and visa versa.
2. Turbulence in the mixed layer provides the mechanical work necessary to mix heat downward. The turbulence depends on the wind speed and on the intensity of breaking waves. Turbulence mixes water in the layer, and it mixes the water in the layer with water in the thermocline.

The mid-latitude mixed layer is thinnest in late summer when winds are weak, and sunlight warms the surface layer. At times, the heating is so strong, and the winds so weak, that the layer is only a few meters thick. In Fall, early storms mix the heat down into the ocean thickening the mixed layer, but little heat is lost. In Winter, heat is lost, and the mixed layer continues to thicken, becoming thickest in late winter. In Spring, winds weaken, sunlight increases, and a new mixed layer forms (Figure 6.10).

The mixed layer rarely extends below two hundred meters. Below the upper two hundred meters is a permanent thermocline that merges with the cold, deep waters of the ocean's interior.

6.5 Potential Temperature, Potential Density, and Sigma

As water sinks and flows into the deep ocean, it can move far from its original source at the surface. To trace the movement of water in the deep ocean, we must compare temperature at one depth with temperature at another. This

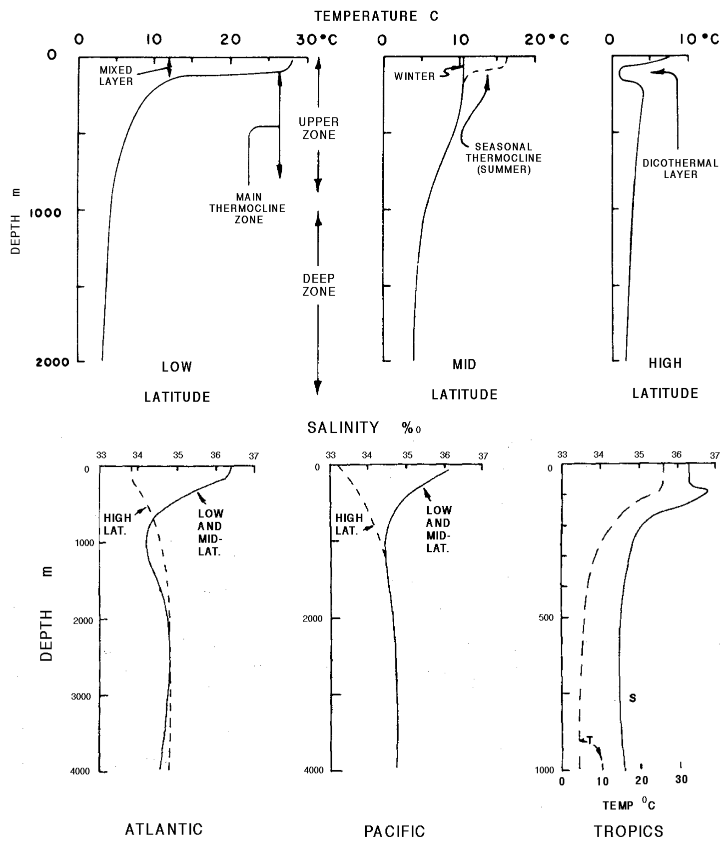


Figure 6.9 **Upper**: Typical mean temperature profiles in the open ocean. **Lower**: Typical mean salinity profiles in the open ocean. (From Pickard and Emery, 1990).

is possible, but difficult. As pressure increases, water is compressed, and the compression does work on the water. This causes the water to warm. To understand the warming, consider a cube containing a fixed mass of water. As the cube sinks, its sides move inward as the cube is compressed. Recalling that work is force times distance, we note that work is the distance the side moves times the force exerted on the side by pressure. The heating is small but noticeable compared with the small changes of the temperature of the adjacent water (Figure 6.11).

Potential Temperature To avoid calculating temperature changes due to compressibility of water, oceanographers (and meteorologists who have the same problem in the atmosphere) use the concept of potential temperature. *Potential temperature* is defined as the temperature of a parcel of water at the sea surface after it has been raised adiabically from some depth in the ocean. Raising the parcel *adiabically* means that it is raised in an insulated container so it does not exchange heat with its surroundings. Of course, the parcel is not actually brought to the surface. Potential temperature is calculated from the

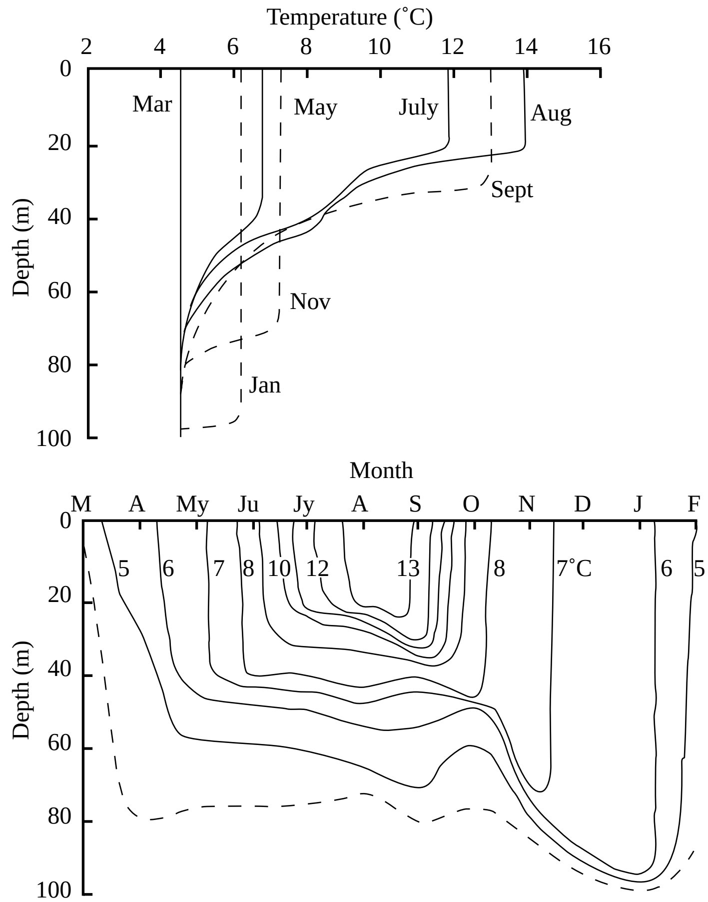


Figure 6.10 Growth and decay of the seasonal thermocline at Ocean Station "Pappa" at 50°N, 145°W in the North Pacific. (From Pickard and Emery, 1990).

temperature in the water at depth, the *in situ* temperature.

Density and sigma-t Density is another important property of sea water. Less dense water floats on more dense water, and if we wish to determine how water can move within the ocean, we need to be able to calculate the density of water with an accuracy of a few parts per million.

Absolute Density of water can only be measured in spacial laboratories, and only with difficulty. The best accuracy is $1 : 2.5 \times 10^5 = 4$ parts per million.

To avoid the difficulty of working with absolute density, oceanographers use density relative to density of pure water. Density $\rho(s, t, p)$ is now defined using Standard Mean Ocean Water of known isotopic composition, assuming saturation of dissolved atmospheric gasses. Here s, t, p refers to salinity, temperature, and pressure.

In practice, density is not measured, it is calculated from *in situ* measurements of pressure, temperature, and conductivity using the equation of state

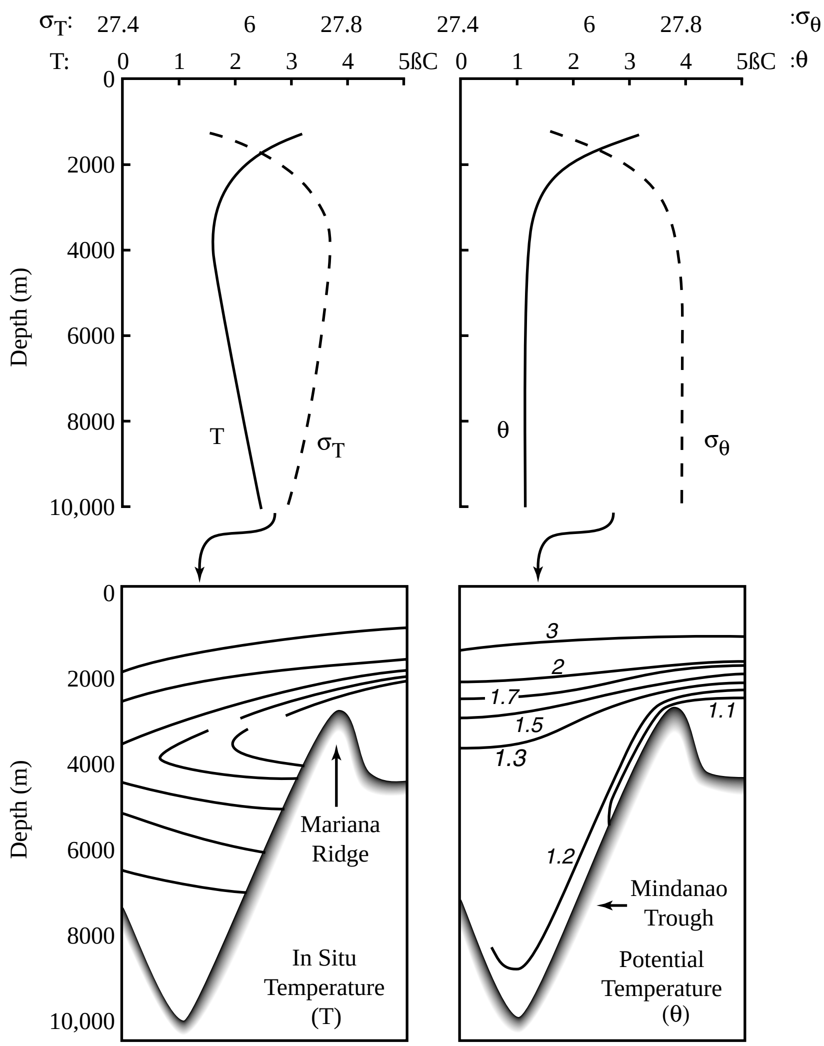


Figure 6.11 Profiles of *in situ* and potential temperature and density in the Mindinao Trench in the Pacific: (a,b) vertical profiles, (c,d) vertical sections. (From Pickard and Emery, 1990).

for sea water. This can be done with an accuracy of two parts per million.

Density of water at the sea surface is typically 1027 kg/m^3. For simplification, physical oceanographers often quote only the last 2 digits of the density, a quantity called the *density anomaly* or *Sigma (s,t,p)*:

$$\sigma(s,t,p) = \rho(s,t,p) - 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3 \tag{6.6}$$

$\sigma(s,t,p)$ is typically 27.00 kg/m^3. The Working Group on Symbols in Oceanography recommends that σ be replaced by γ because σ was originally defined relative to pure water and it was dimensionless. Here, however, we will follow common practice and use σ.

For studies of the surface layers of the ocean, compressibility can be ignored, and a new quantity sigma-t (written σ_t) is used:

$$\sigma_t = \sigma(s, t, 0) \tag{6.7}$$

This is the density anomaly of a water sample when the total pressure on it has been reduced to atmospheric pressure (*i.e.* zero water pressure), but the temperature and salinity are *in situ* values.

Potential Density For studies of processes deeper within the ocean, compressibility cannot be ignored. Because changes in pressure primarily influence the temperature of the water, the influence of pressure can be removed, to a first approximation, by using the *potential density*.

Potential density is the density a parcel of water would have if it were raised adiabatically to the surface. The *potential density anomaly* of such a sample is σ_θ.

$$\sigma_\theta = \sigma(s, \theta, 0) \tag{6.8}$$

Potential density is useful because it removes the primary influence of pressure on density. This allows us to compare density of water samples from different depths. It is also useful because water tends to flow along surfaces of constant potential density.

$\sigma(\theta)$ is not useful for comparing density of water at great depths because the relation between density and temperature and salinity is non-linear. For example, two water samples having the same density but different temperature and salinity at a depth of four kilometers can have noticeably different density when moved adiabatically to the sea surface. Thus the use of $\sigma(\theta)$ can lead to an apparent decrease of density with depth (Figure 6.12) although we know that this is not possible because such a column of water would be unstable.

If samples from great depths are compared, it is better to use sigma values for a depth of 4 km:

$$\sigma_4 = \sigma(s, \theta, 4000) \tag{6.9}$$

where σ_4 is the density of a parcel of water lowered adiabically to a depth of 4 km. In general, oceanographers use σ_n, where n is pressure in decibars divided by 1000.

Equation of state of sea water Density of sea water is rarely measured. *Density is calculated from measurements of temperature, conductivity, or salinity, and pressure using the equation of state of sea water.* The *equation of state* is an equation relating density to temperature, salinity, and pressure.

The equation is derived by fitting curves through laboratory measurements of density as a function of temperature, pressure, and salinity, chlorinity, or conductivity. The International Equation of State (1980) published by the Joint Panel on Oceanographic Tables and Standards (1981) is now used. See also Millero and Poisson (1981) and Millero et al (1980). The equation has an accuracy of 10 parts per million, which is 0.01 units of $\sigma(\theta)$.

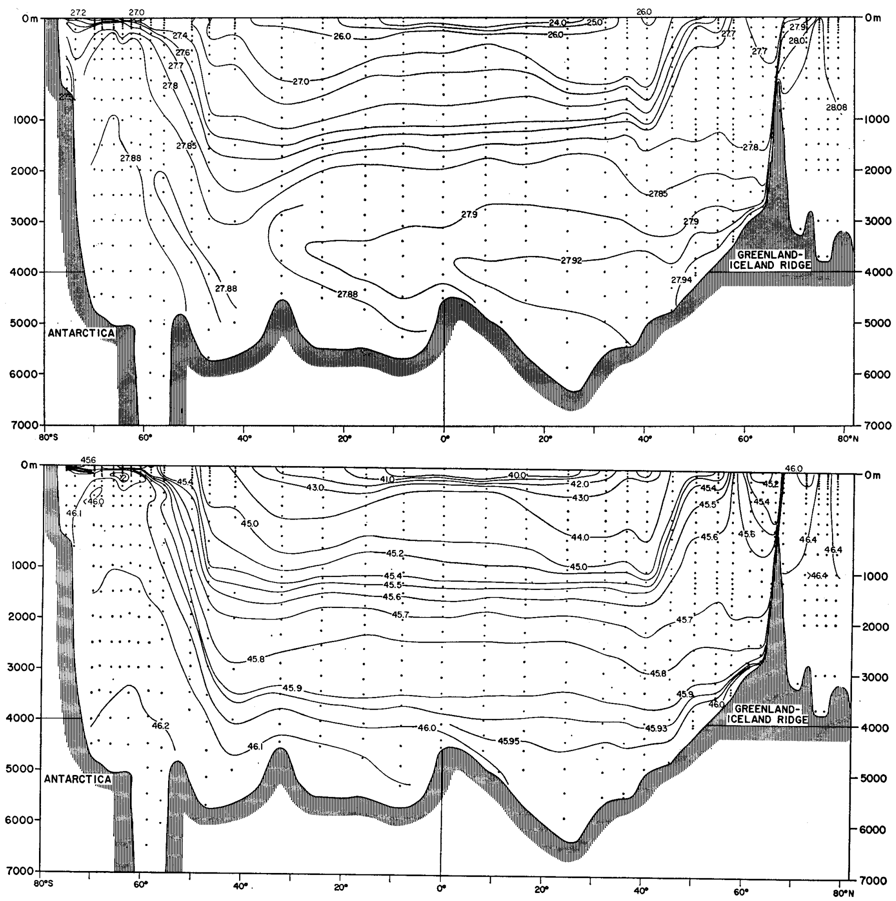


Figure 6.12 Vertical sections of density in the western Atlantic. Depth scale changes at 1000 m depth. Hydrographic stations are noted by dots. **Upper**: Sigma-θ, showing an apparent density inversion below 3,000 m. **Lower**: Sigma(4) showing continuous increase in density with depth. From Lynn and Reid, 1968.

I have not actually written out the equation of state because it consists of three polynomials with 41 constants (JPOTS, 1991).

Accuracy of Temperature, Salinity, and Density If we are to distinguish between different water masses in the ocean, and if the total range of temperature and salinity is as small as the range in Figure 6.1, then we must determine temperature, salinity, and pressure very carefully. We will need an accuracy of a few parts per million.

Such accuracy can be achieved only if all quantities are carefully defined, if all measurements are made with great care, and if all instruments are carefully calibrated. All who use hydrographic data pay careful attention to the directions in the *Processing of Oceanographic Station Data* (JPOTS, 1991) published by UNESCO. The book contains internationally accepted definitions of primary variables such as temperature and salinity and methods for the measuring the primary variables. It also describes accepted methods for calculating quantities derived from primary variables, such as potential temperature, density, and stability. Part of the material in this chapter are based largely on information contained in *Processing of Oceanographic Station Data.*

6.6 Measurement of Temperature

Temperature in the ocean has been measured many ways. Thermistors and mercury thermometers are commonly used on ships and buoys. These are calibrated in the laboratory before being used, and after use if possible, using mercury or platinum thermometers with accuracy traceable to national standards laboratories. Infrared radiometers are used in space to observe the surface temperature of the ocean.

Mercury Thermometer This is the most widely used, non-electronic thermometer. It is used in buckets dropped over the side of a ship to measure the temperature of surface waters, on Nansen bottles to measure subsea temperatures, and in the laboratory to calibrate other thermometers. Accuracy is about $\pm 0.001^\circ$C with careful calibration.

One very important mercury thermometer is the reversing thermometer (Figure 6.13) carried on Nansen bottles, which are described in the next section. It is a thermometer that has a constriction in the mercury capillary that causes the thread of mercury to break at a precisely determined point when the thermometer is turned upside down. The thermometer is lowered deep into the ocean in the normal position; and it is allowed to come to equilibrium with the water. Mercury expands into the capillary, and the amount of mercury in the capillary is proportional to temperature. The thermometer is then flipped upside down, the thread of mercury breaks trapping the mercury in the capilalry, and the thermometer is brought back. The mercury in the capillary of the reversed thermometer is read on deck along with the temperature of a normal thermometer, which gives the temperature at which the reversed thermometer is read. The two readings give the temperature of the water at the depth where the thermometer was reversed.

The reversing thermometer is carried inside a glass tube which protects the thermometer from the ocean's pressure because high pressure can squeeze additional mercury into the capillary. If the thermometer is unprotected, the apparent temperature read on deck is proportional to temperature and pressure at the depth where the thermometer was flipped. A pair of protected and unprotected thermometers gives temperature and pressure of the water at the depth the thermometer was reversed.

Platinum Resistance Thermometer This is the standard for temperature. It is used by national standards laboratories to interpolate between defined points on the practical temperature scale. It is also used on instruments deployed from ships because it can be read electronically with great accuracy.

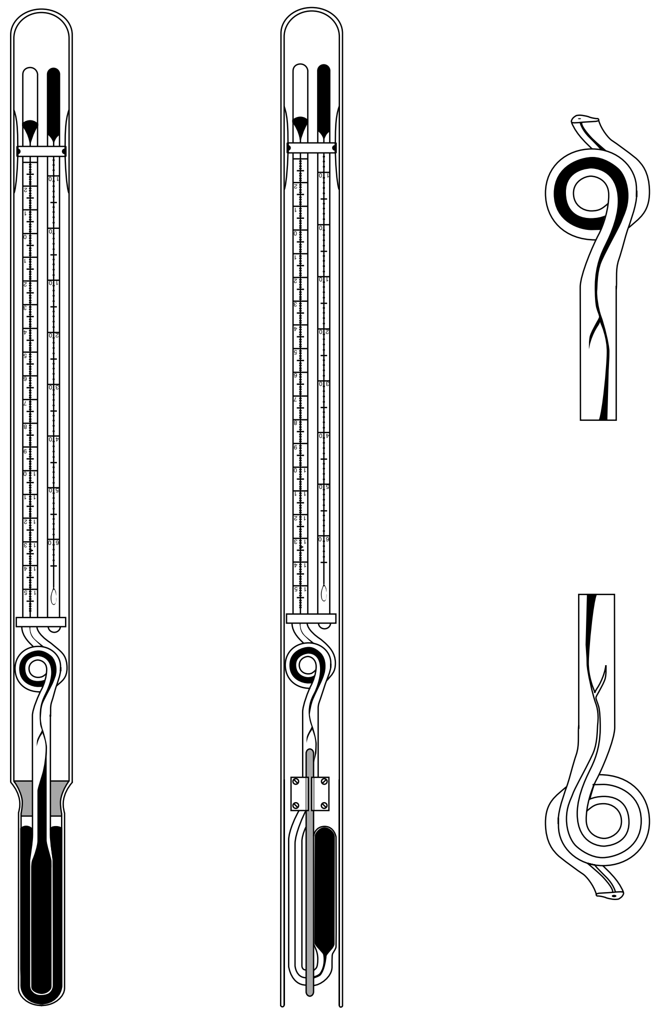


Figure 6.13 **Left**: Protected and unprotected reversing thermometers is set position, before reversal. **Right**: The constricted part of the capillary in set and reversed positions (From von Arx, 1962).

Thermistor A thermistor is a resistor made of semiconductors having resistance that varies rapidly and predictably with temperature. The themistor is widely used on moored instruments and on instruments deployed from ships. It has high resolution and an accuracy of about ±0.001°C when carefully calibrated.

Bucket temperatures The temperature of surface waters have been routinely measured at sea by putting a mercury thermometer into a bucket which is lowered into the water, letting it sit at a depth of about a meter for a few minutes until the thermometer comes to equilibrium, then bringing it aboard and reading the temperature before water in the bucket has time to change temperature. The accuracy is around 0.1°C.

Ship Injection Temperature The temperature of the water drawn into the ship to cool the engines has been recorded routinely for decades, and the observations have been collected in archives. These recorded values of temperature are called injection temperatures. Errors are due to ship's structure warming water before it is recorded. This happens when the temperature recorder is not placed close to the point on the hull where water is brought in. Accuracy is 0.5°–1°C.

Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer The most commonly used instrument to measure sea-surface temperature from space is the Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer AVHRR. The instrument has been carried on all polar-orbiting meteorological satellites operated by NOAA since Tiros-N was launched in 1978.

The instrument was originally designed to measure cloud temperatures and hence cloud height. The instrument had, however, sufficient accuracy and precision that it was soon used to measure regional and global temperature patterns at the sea surface.

The instrument is a radiometer that converts observed radiation into electrical signals. It includes a mirror that scans from side to side across the subsatellite track and reflects radiance from the ground into a telescope, a telescope that focuses the radiance on detectors, detectors sensitive to different wavelengths that convert the radiance at those wavelengths into electrical signals, and electronic circuitry to digitize and store the radiance values. The instruments observes a 2700-km wide swath centered on the subsatellite track. Each observation along the scan is from a pixel that is roughly one kilometer in diameter near the center of the scan and that increases in size with distance from the subsatellite track.

The radiometers measures infrared radiation emitted from the surface in five wavelength bands: three infrared bands: 3.55–3.99 μm, 10.3–11.3 μm, and 11.5–12.5 μm; a near-infrared band at 0.725–1.10 μm; and a visible-light band at 0.55–0.90 μm. All infrared bands include radiation emitted from the sea and from water vapor in the air along the path from the satellite to the ground. The 3.7 μm band is least sensitive to water vapor and other errors, but it works only at night because sunlight has radiance in this band. The two longest wavelength bands at 10.8 μm and 12.0 μm are used to observe sea-surface temperature and water vapor along the path in daylight.

Data with 1-km resolution are transmitted directly to ground stations that view the satellite as it passes the station. This is the Local Area Coverage mode. Data are also averaged to produce observations from 4 $\times$ 4 km pixels. These data are stored on tape recorders and later transmitted to NOAA receiving stations. This is the Global Area Coverage mode.

The swath width is sufficiently wide that the satellite views the entire earth twice per day, at approximately 09:00 AM and 9:00 PM local time. Areas at high latitudes may be observed as often as eight or more times per day.

Errors in the measurement of sea-surface temperature are due to:

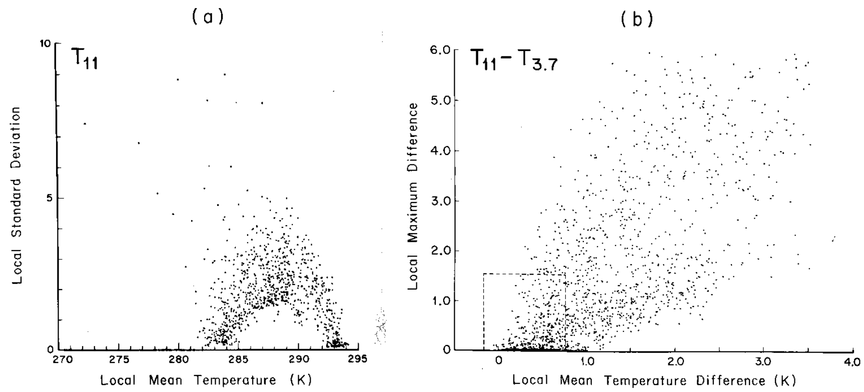


Figure 6.14 The influence of clouds on infrared observations. **Left:** The standard deviation of the radiance from small, partly cloudy areas each containing 64 pixels. The feet of the arch-like distribution of points are the sea-surface and cloud-top temperatures. (After Coakley and Bretherton (1982). **Right:** The maximum difference between local values of $T_{11} - T_{3.7}$ and the local mean values of the same quantity. Values inside the dashed box indicate cloud-free pixels. T_{11} and $T_{3.7}$ are the apparent temperatures at 11.0 and 3.7 μm (data from K. Kelly). From Stewart (1985).

1. Unresolved or undetected clouds: Large, thick clouds are obvious in the images of water temperature Thin clouds such as low stratus and high cirrus produce much small errors that are difficult or almost impossible to detect. Clouds smaller in diameter than 1 km, such as trade-wind cumuli, are also difficult to detect. Special techniques have been developed for detecting small clouds (Figure 6.14).

2. Water vapor, which absorbs part of the energy radiated from the sea surface: Water vapor reduces the apparent temperature of the sea surface. The influence is different in the 10.8 μm and 12.0 μm channels, allowing the difference in the two signals to be used to reduce the error.

3. Aerosols, which absorb infrared radiation. They radiate at temperatures found high in the atmosphere. Stratospheric aerosols generated by volcanic eruptions can lower the observed temperatures by up to a few degrees Celcius, and dust particles carried over the Atlantic from Saharan dust storms can also cause errors.

4. Instrument noise tends to be small, limiting the temperature resolution in local-area images.

5. Skin temperature errors. The infrared radiation seen by the instrument comes from a layer at the sea surface that is only a few micrometers thick. The temperature in this layer is not the same as temperature a meter below the sea surface. They can differ by several degrees when winds are light (Emery and Schussel, 1989).

Maps of temperature processed from Local Area Coverage of cloud-free regions show variations of temperature with a precision of 0.1°C. These maps are useful for observing local phenomena including patterns produced by local currents. Figure 10.17 shows such patterns off the California coast.

Global maps are much more difficult to produce. The U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office receives the global AVHRR data directly from NOAA's National Environmental Satellite, Data and Information Service in near-real time each day. The data are carefully processed to remove the influence of clouds, water vapor, aerosols, and other sources of error. Data are then used to produce global maps between $\pm 70°$ with an accuracy of $\pm 0.6°$C (May et al 1998). The maps of sea-surface temperature are sent to the U.S. Navy and to NOAA's National Centers for Environmental Prediction. In addition, the office produces daily 100-km global and 14-km regional maps of temperature.

Global Maps of Sea-Surface Temperature Global, monthly maps of surface temperature are produced by the National Centers for Environmental Prediction using Reynolds' (1988, 1993, 1994) optimal-interpolation method. The technique blends ship and buoy measurements of sea-surface temperature with AVHRR data processed by the Naval Oceanographic Office in 1° areas for a month. Essentially, AVHRR data are interpolated between buoy and ship reports using previous information about the temperature field. Overall accuracy ranges from approximately $\pm 0.3°$ C in the tropics to $\pm 0.5°$ C near western boundary currents in the northern hemisphere where temperature gradients are large. Maps are available from November 1981. Figures 6.3–6.5 were made by NOAA using Reynolds' technique.

Maps of mean temperature have also been made from COADS data. The data are poorly distributed in time and space except for some areas of the northern hemisphere. In addition, Reynolds and Smith (1994) found that ship temperature data had errors twice as large as temperature errors in data from buoys and AVHRR. Thus, space data processed by Reynolds are more accurate, and better distributed than COADS.

Anomalies of sea-surface temperature are calculated using mean sea-surface temperature from the period 1950–1979 calculated from COADS supplemented with four years of satellite data 1982–1985 (Reynolds and Smith, 1995).

6.7 Measurement of Conductivity

Measurements of conductivity can be made using electrodes, but electrodes tend to drift due to electrochemical processes. Remember, two different metals dipped into a conducting solution make a battery.

Measurements are usually made using *induction*. The sea water forms one side of a transformer, and the current induced in the transformer coils depends on conductivity of sea water (Figure 6.15). The technique eliminates electrochemical drifts. The best measurements of salinity from conductivity give salinity with an accuracy of ± 0.005 psu.

Salinity is sometimes measured using chemical titration of the water sample with silver salts. The best measurements of salinity from titration give salinity with an accuracy of ± 0.02 psu.

Instruments for measuring salinity are calibrated using standard seawater.

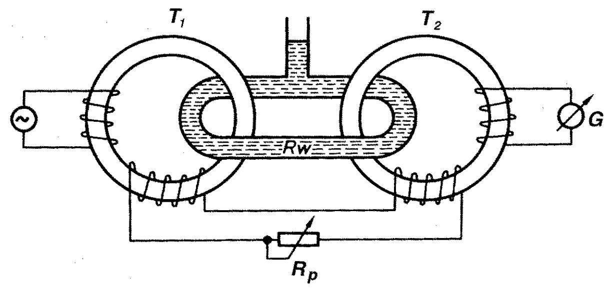


Figure 6.15 The induction method measurement of electrical conductivity uses a sea-water loop which couples two transformer loops T_1 and T_2. The induced voltage in the second loop is proportional to conductivity R_w of the water. From Dietrich et al. 1980.

Long-term studies of accuracy sometimes use data from measurements of deep water masses of known, stable, salinity. For example, Saunders (1986) noted that temperature is very accurately related to salinity for a large volume of water contained in the deep basin of the northwest Atlantic under the Mediterranean outflow. He used the consistency of measurements of temperature and salinity made at many hydrographic stations in the area to estimate the accuracy of temperature, salinity and oxygen measurements. He concluded that the most careful measurements made since 1970 have an accuracy of 0.005 psu for salinity and 0.005°C for temperature. The largest source of salinity error was the error in determination of the standard water used for calibrating the salinity measurements.

Gouretski and Jancke (1995) estimated accuracy of salinity measurements as a function of time. They used high quality measurements from 16,000 hydrographic stations in the south Atlantic from 1912 to 1991 to produce a consistent

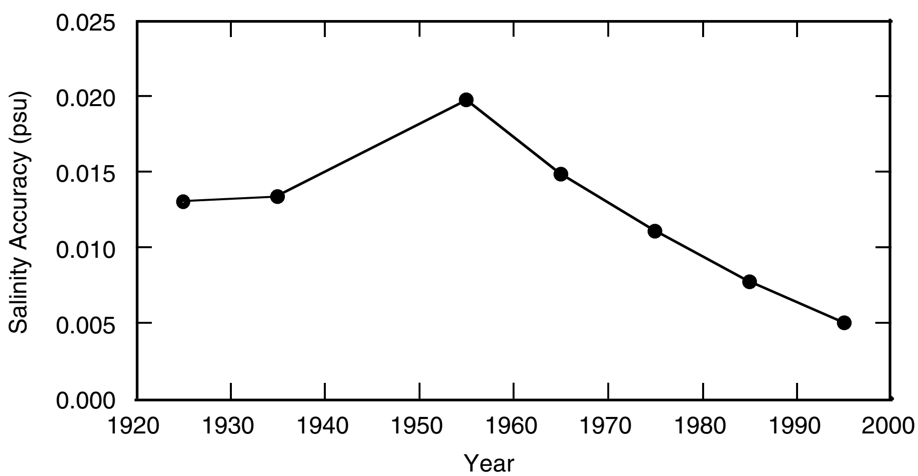


Figure 6.16. Standard deviation of salinity measurements at depths below 1500 m in the South Atlantic from 1920 to 1993. Each point is the average of data collected for the decade centered on the point. The value for 1995 is an estimate of the accuracy of recent measurements. From Table 1 of Gouretski and Jancke (1995).

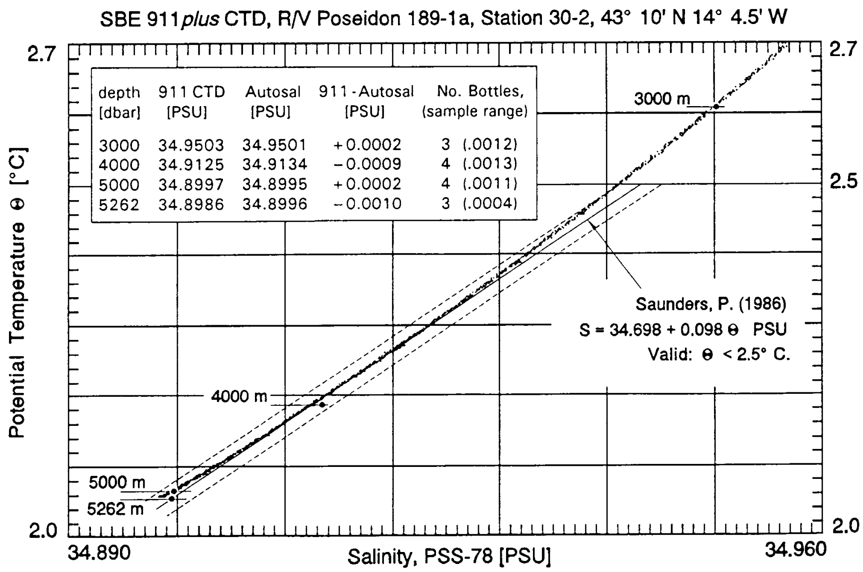


Figure 6.17. Results from a test of a Sea-Bird Electronics 911 Plus CTD made in North Atlantic Deep Water in 1992 (From Sea-Bird Electronics, 1992).

data set. They estimated accuracy by plotting salinity as a function of temperature using all data collected below 1500 m in twelve regions for each decade from 1920 to 1990. For small ranges of temperature, salinity was a linear function of temperature. The accuracy of the salinity measurement was calculated from the standard deviation of the salinity values relative to the best-fitting straight lines through the data. A plot of accuracy as a function of time since 1920 shows consistent improvement in accuracy since 1950 (Figure 6.16). Recent measurements of salinity are the most accurate. The standard deviation of modern salinity data collected from all areas in the South Atlantic from 1970 to 1993 adjusted as described by Gouretski and Jancke (1995) was 0.0033 psu. More recent instruments such as the Sea-Bird Electronics Model 911 Plus have an accuracy of better than 0.005 psu without adjustments. A careful comparison of salinity measured at 43°10'N 14°4.5'W by the 911 Plus with historic data collected by Saunders (1986) gives an accuracy of 0.002 psu (Figure 6.17).

6.8 Measurement of Pressure

Pressure is routinely measured by many different types of instruments. The SI unit of pressure is the pascal (Pa), but oceanographers normally report pressure in decibars (dbar), where:

$$1 \text{ dbar} = 10^4 \text{ Pa} \tag{6.10}$$

because the pressure in decibars is almost exactly equal to the depth in meters. Thus 1000 dbar is the pressure at a depth of about 1000 m.

Strain Gage This is the simplest and cheapest instrument, and it is widely used. Accuracy is about ±1%.

Vibratron Much more accurate measurements of pressure can be made by measuring the natural frequency of a vibrating tungsten wire stretched in a magnetic field between diaphrams closing the ends of a cylinder. Presure distorts the diaphram, which changes the tension on the wire and its frequency. The frequency can be measured from the changing voltage induced as the wire vibrates in the magnetic field. Accuracy is about ±0.1%, or better when temperature controlled. Precision is 100–1000 times better than accuracy. The instrument is useful for detecting small changes in pressure at great depths. Snodgrass (1968) obtained ±0.8 mm precision in 3 km depth.

Quartz crystal Very accurate measurements of pressure can also be made by measuring the natural frequancy of a quartz crystal cut for minimum temperature dependence. The best accuracy is obtained when the temperature of the crystal is held constant. The accuracy is ±0.015%; and precision is ±0.001% resolution (of full-scale values).

Quartz Bourdon Gage has accuracy and stability comparable to quartz crystals. It too is used for long-term measurements of pressure in the deep sea.

6.9 Measurement of Temperature and Salinity with Depth

Temperature, salinity, and pressure are measured as a function of depth using various instruments or techniques, and density is calculated from the measurements.

Bathythermograph (BT) is a mechanical device that measures temperature vs depth on a smoked glass slide. The device was widely used to map the thermal structure of the upper ocean, including the depth of the mixed layer before being replaced by the expendable bethythermograph in the 1970s.

Expendable Bathythermograph (XBT) is an electronic device that measures temperature vs depth using a thermistor on a free-falling streamlined weight. The thermistor is connected to an ohm-meter on the ship by a thin copper wire that is spooled out from the sinking weight and from the moving ship. The XBT is now the most widely used instrument for measuring the thermal structure of the upper ocean. Approximately 65,000 are used each year.

1. Velocity of fall is constant, giving depth accuracy of ±2%.
2. Temperature accuracy is ±0.1°C.
3. Vertical resolution is typically 65 cm.
4. Probes reach to depths of 200 m to 1830 m depending on model.

Nansen Bottles (Figure 6.18) were deployed from ships stopped at hydrographic stations. *Hydrographic stations* are places where oceanographers measure water properties from the surface to some depth, or to the bottom, using instruments lowered from a ship. Usually 20 bottles were attached at intervals of a few tens to hundreds of meters to a wire lowered over the side of the ship. The distribution with depth was selected so that most bottles are in the upper layers of the water column where the rate of change of temperature in the vertical is greatest. A protected reversing thermometer for measuring temperature

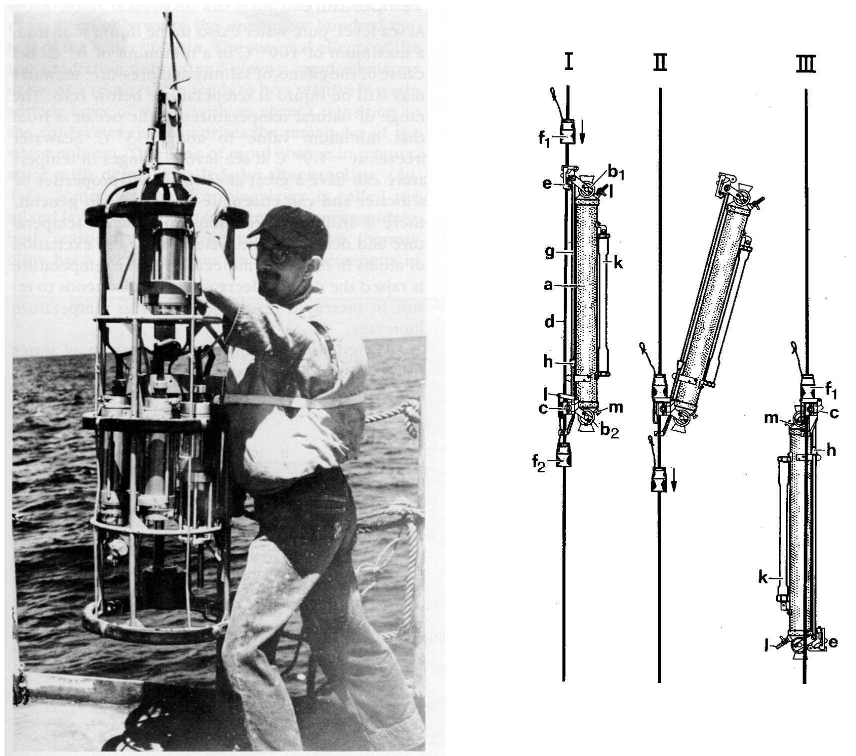


Figure 6.18 **Left** A CTD ready to be lowered over the side of a ship (From Davis, 1987). **Right** Nansen water bottles before (I), during (II), and after (III) reversing. Both instruments are shown at close to the same scale (From Dietrich et al. 1980).

was attached to each bottle along with an unprotected reversing thermometer for measuring depth. The bottle contains a tube with valves on each end to collect sea water at depth. Salinity was determined by laboratory analysis of water sample collected at depth.

After bottles had been attached to the wire and all had been lowered to their selected depths, a lead weight was sent down the wire. The weight tripped a mechanism on each bottle, and the bottle flipped over, reversing the thermometers, shutting the valves and trapping water in the tube, and releasing another weight. When all bottles had been tripped, the string of bottles was recovered. The deployment and retrieval typically took several hours.

CTD Mechanical instruments on Nansen bottles were replaced beginning in the 1960s by an electronic instrument, called a CTD, that measured conductivity, temperature, and depth (Figure 6.18). The measurements are recorded in digital form either within the instrument as it is lowered from a ship or on the ship. Temperature is usually measured by a thermistor; conductivity is measured by induction; pressure is measured by a quartz crystal. Modern instruments have accuracy summarized in Table 6.2.

Table 6.2 Summary of Measurement Accuracy

Variable	Range	Best Accuracy
Temperature	42 °C	± 0.001 °C
Salinity	1 psu	± 0.02 psu by titration
		± 0.005 psu by conductivity
Pressure	10,00 dbar	± 0.65 dbar
Density	2 kg/m^3	± 0.005 kg/m^3
Equation of State		± 0.005 kg/m^3

6.10 Measurements of Mixed-Layer Depth

The depth of the mixed layer is usually calculated from bathythermograph data. But, be careful using only temperature observations because in some areas the constant-temperaure layer may be thicker than the constant-salinity layer. It is better to calculate mixed-layer depth using both temperature and salinity measurements from a CTD.

The depth of the mixed layer can also be calculated from temperatures observed from space, although this is not widely done. This technique is useful for studies of areas seldom visited by ships. It makes use of the thermal inertia of the mixed layer. For example, suppose we calculated the heat flux into or out of an oceanic area, say 5 ° on a side, for a period of a month. The change in heat must produce a change in temperature of the water. The temperature changes is proportional to the volume of water in close contact with the surface. This volume is the area times the mixed-layer depth. Thus, changes in temperature resulting from known changes in heat flux gives the depth of the mixed layer (Yan et al. 1991, 1995). The technique works only to the extent that advection can be neglected. If typical currents are 20 cm/s, which is 20 km/day, we might expect that the technique can be applied only to areas whose horizontal extent exceeds the distance water flows in the time period used in the calculation of heat change, or say roughly 25 days for 5° squares. The technique also assumes that heat advection out of the bottom of the mixed layer can be neglected.

6.11 Light in the ocean and absorption of light

Sunlight in the ocean is important for many reasons: It heats sea water, warming the surface layers; it provides energy required by phytoplankton; it is used for navigation by animals near the surface; and reflected subsurface light is used for mapping chlorophyll concentration from space.

Light in the ocean travels at a velocity equal to the velocity of light in a vacuum divided by the index of refraction (n), which is typically $n = 1.33$. Hence the velocity in water is about 2.25×10^8 m/s. Because light travels slower in water than in air, some light is reflected at the sea surface. For light shining straight down on the sea, the reflectivity is $(n-1)^2/(n+1)^2$. For seawater, the reflectivity is $0.02 = 2\%$. Hence most sunlight reaching the sea surface is transmitted into the sea, little is reflected. This means that sunlight incident on the ocean in the tropics is mostly absorbed below the sea surface, little sunlight is reflected back to the atmosphere.

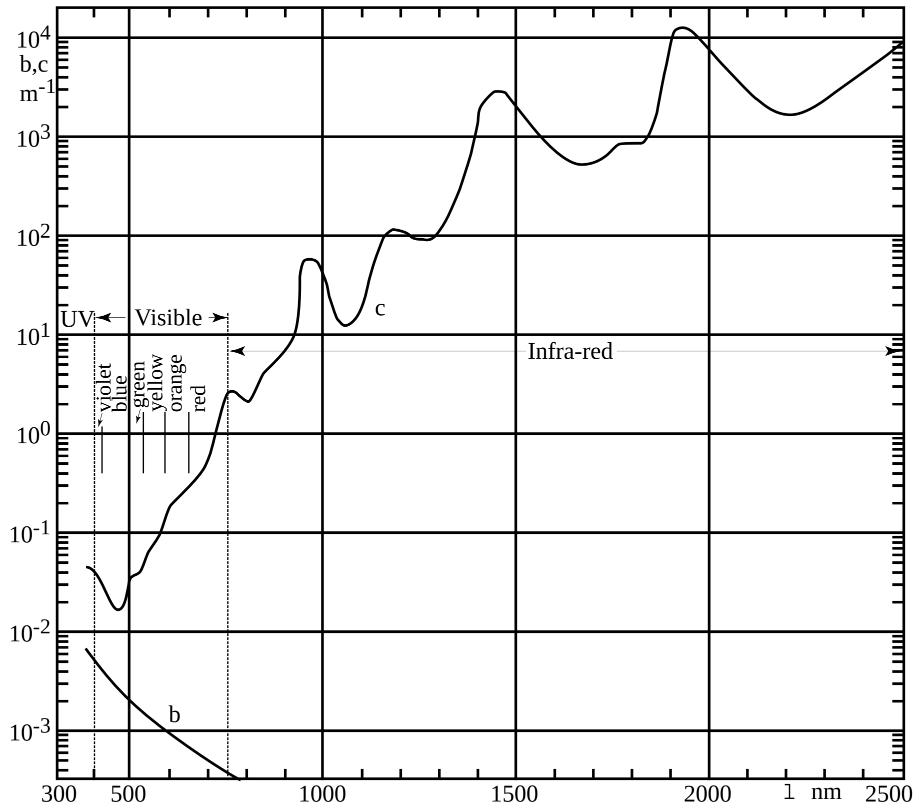


Figure 6.19 Attenuation coefficient c and scattering coefficient b for pure water as a function of wavelength λ of the radiation (From Dietrich, et al. 1980).

The rate at which sunlight is attenuated determines the depth which is lighted and heated by the sun. Attenuation is due to absorption by pigments and scattering by molecules and particles. Attenuation depends on wavelength. Blue light is absorbed least, red light is absorbed most strongly. Attenuation per unit distance is proportional to the radiance or the irradiance of light:

$$\frac{dI}{dx} = -c\,I \tag{6.11}$$

where x is the distance along beam, c is an attenuation coefficient (Figure 6.19), and I is irradiance or irradiance.

Radiance is the power per unit area per solid angle. It is useful for describing the energy in a beam of light coming from a particular direction. Sometimes we want to know how much light reaches some depth in the ocean regardless of which direction it is going. In this case we use *irradiance*, which is the power per unit area of surface.

If the absorption coefficient is constant, the light intensity decreases exponentially with distance.

$$I_2 = I_1\ \exp(-cx) \tag{6.12}$$

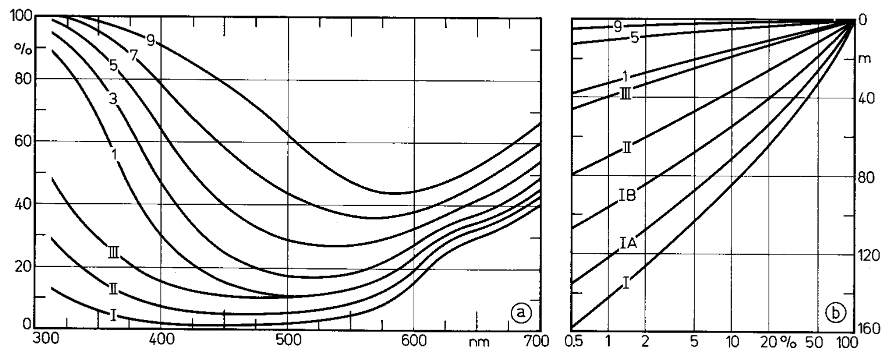


Figure 6.20 **Left:** Attenuation of daylight in the ocean in % per meter as a function of wavelength. I: extremely pure ocean water; II: turbid tropical-subtropical water; III: mid-latitude water; 1-9: coastal waters of increasing turbidity. Incidence angle is 90°for the first three cases, 45°for the other cases. (From Jerlov, 1951). **Right:** Percentage of 465 nm light reaching indicated depths for the same types of water. (From Jerlov, 1968).

where I_1 is the original radiance or irradiance of light, and I_2 is the radiance or irradiance of light after absorption.

Clarity of Ocean Water Sea water in the middle of the ocean is very clear—clearer than distilled water. These waters are a very deep, cobalt, blue—almost black. Thus the strong current which flows northward offshore of Japan carrying very clear water from the central Pacific into higher latitudes is known as the Black Current, or Kuroshio in Japanese. The clearest ocean water is called Type I waters by Jerlov (Figure 6.20). The water is so clear that 10% of the light transmitted below the sea surface reaches a depth of 90 m.

In the subtropics and mid-latitudes closer to the coast, sea water cantains more phytoplankton than the very clear central-ocean waters. Chlorophyll pigments in phytoplankton absorb light, and the plants themselves scatter light. Together, the processes change the color of the ocean as seen by observer looking downward into the sea. Very productive waters, those with high concentrations of phytoplankton, appear blue-green or green (Figure 6.21). On clear days the color can be observed from space. This allows ocean-color scanners, such as those on SeaWiFS, to map the distribution of phytoplankton over large areas.

As the concentration of phytoplankton increases, the depth where sunlight is absorbed in the ocean decreases. The more turbid tropical and mid-latitude waters are classified as type II and III waters by Jerlov (Figure 6.19). Thus the depth where sunlight warms the water depends on the productivity of the waters. This complicates the calculation of solar heating of the mixed layer.

Coastal waters are much less clear than waters offshore. These are the type 1–9 waters shown in figure 6.19. They contain pigments from land, sometimes called gelbstoffe, which just means yellow stuff, muddy water from rivers, and mud stirred up by waves in shallow water. Very little light penetrates more than a few meters into these waters.

Measurement of Chlorophyll from Space The color of the ocean, and hence the chlorophyll concentration in the upper layers of the ocean has been

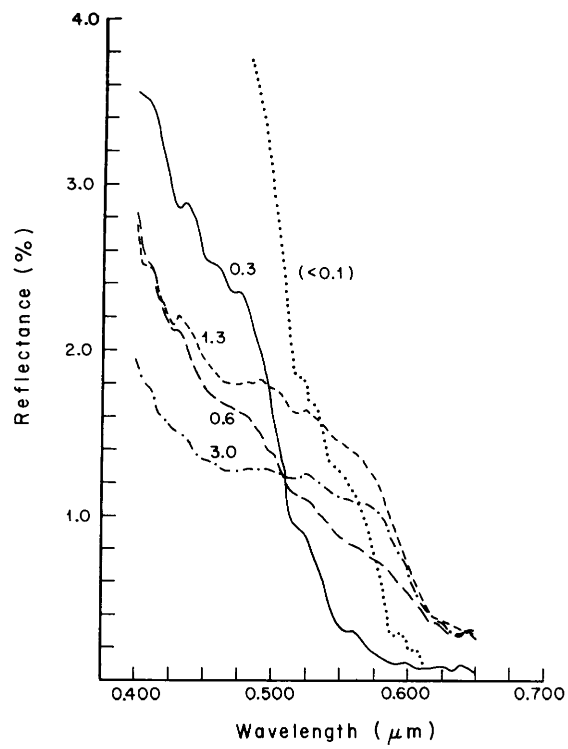


Figure 6.21 Spectral reflectance of sea water observed from an aircraft flying at 305 m over waters of different colors in the Northwest Atlantic. The numerical values are the average chlorophyll concentration in the euphotic (sunlit) zone in units of mg/m^3. The reflectance is for vertically polarized light observed at Brewster's angle of 53°. This angle minimizes reflected skylight and emphasizes the light from below the sea surface (From Clarke, Ewing, and Lorenzen, 1970).

measured by the Coastal Zone Color Scanner carried on the Nimbus-7 satellite launched in 1978 and by the Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor (SeaWiFS) carried on SeaStar, launched in 1997. The latter instrument measures upwelling radiance in eight wavelength bands between 412 nm and 856 nm.

Most of the upwelling radiance seen by the satellite comes from the atmosphere. Only about 10% comes from the sea surface. Both air molecules and aerosols scatter light; and very accurate techniques have been developed to remove the influence of the atmsophere.

The total radiance L_t received by an instrument in space is:

$$L_t(\lambda_i) = t(\lambda_i)L_W(\lambda_i) + L_r(\lambda_i) + L_a(\lambda_i) \tag{6.13}$$

where λ_i is the wavelength of the radiation in the band measured by the instrument, L_W is the radiance leaving the sea surface, L_r is radiance scattered by molecules, called the Rayleigh radiance, L_a is radiance scattered from aerosols, and t is the transmittance of the atmosphere. L_r can be calculated from theory; and L_a can be calculated from the amount of red light received at the instrument because very little red light is reflected from the water. Therefore L_W can be calculated from the radiance measured at the spacecraft.

Chlorophyll concentration in the water column is calculated from the ratio of L_W at two frequencies. Using data from the Coastal Zone Color Scanner, Gordon et al. (1983) proposed

$$C_{13} = 1.1298 \left[\frac{L_W(443)}{L_W(550)}\right]^{-1.71} \tag{6.14a}$$

$$C_{23} = 3.3266 \left[\frac{L_W(520)}{L_W(550)}\right]^{-2.40} \tag{6.14b}$$

where C is the chlorophyll concentration in the surface layers in mg pigment/m^3, and $L_W(443), L_W(520), and L_W(550)$ are the radiances at wavelengths of 443, 520, and 550 nm. C_{13} is used when $C_{13} \leq 1.5$ mg/m^3; otherwise C_{23} is used.

The technique is used to calculate chlorophyll concentration within a factor of 50% over a wide range of concentrations from 0.01 to 10 mg/m^3.

6.12 Important Concepts

1. Density in the ocean is determined by temperature, salinity, and pressure.
2. Density changes in the ocean are very small, and studies of water masses and currents require density with an accuracy of 10 parts per million.
3. Density is not measured, it is calculated from measurements of temperature, salinity, and pressure using the equation of state of sea water.
4. Accurate calculations of density require accurate definitions of temperature and salinity and an accurate equation of state.
5. Salinity is difficult to define and to measure. To avoid the difficulty, oceanographers use conductivity instead of salinity. They measure conductivity and calculate density from temperature, conductivity, and pressure.
6. A mixed layer of constant temperature and salinity is usually found in the top 1–100 meters of the ocean. The depth is determined by wind speed and the flux of heat through the sea surface.
7. To compare temperature and density of water masses at different depths in the ocean, oceanographers use potential temperature and potential density which remove most of the influence of pressure on density.
8. Surface temperature of the ocean was usually measured at sea using bucket or injection temperatures. Global maps of temperature combine these observations with observations of infrared radiance from the sea surface measured by an AVHRR in space.
9. Temperature and conductivity are usually measured digitally as a function of pressure using a CTD. Before 1960–1970 the salinity and temperature were measured at a few depths using Nansen bottles lowered on a line from a ship. The bottles carried reversing thermometers which recorded temperature and depth and they returned a water sample from that depth which was used to determine salinity on board the ship.

10. Light is rapidly absorbed in the ocean. 95% of sunlight is absorbed in the upper 100 m of the clearest sea water. Sunlight rarely penetrates deeper than a few meters in turbid coastal waters.
11. Phytoplankton change the color of sea water, and the change in color can be observed from space. Water color is used to measure phytoplankton concentration from space.

Chapter 7

Some Mathematics: The Equations of Motion

In this chapter we consider the response of a fluid to internal and external forces. This leads to a derivation of some of the basic equations describing ocean dynamics. In the next chapter, we will consider the influence of viscosity, and in chapter 12 we will consider the consequences of vorticity.

Fluid mechanics used in oceanography is based on Newtonian mechanics modified by our evolving understanding of turbulence. Conservation of mass, momentum, angular momentum, and energy lead to particular equations having names that hide their origins (Table 7.1).

Table 7.1 Conservation Laws Leading to Basic Equations of Fluid Motion

Conservation of Mass:	Leads to Continuity Equation.
Conservation of Energy:	Conservation of heat leads to Heat Budgets.
	Conservation of mechanical energy leads to Wave Equation.
Conservation of Momentum:	Leads to Momentum (Navier-Stokes) Eq.
Conservation of Angular Momentum:	Leads to Conservation of Vorticity.

7.1 Dominant Forces for Ocean Dynamics

Only a few forces are important in physical oceanography: gravity, buoyancy due to difference in density of sea water, and wind stress (Table 7.2).Remember that forces are vectors. They have magnitude and direction.

1. *Gravity* is the dominant force. The weight of the water in the ocean produces pressure, and the varying weight of water in different regions of the ocean produces horizontal pressure gradients. Changes in gravity, due to the motion of sun and moon relative to Earth produces tides, tidal currents, and tidal mixing in the interior of the ocean.

2. *Buoyancy* is the upward or downward force acting on a parcel of water that is more or less dense than other water at its level. For example, cold

air blowing over the sea cools surface waters causing them to be more dense than the water beneath. The difference in density results in a force that causes the water to sink.

3. *Wind* blowing across the sea surface transfers horizontal momentum to the sea. The wind drags the water in the direction of the wind, and it creates turbulence that stirs the upper layers of the sea producing the oceanic mixed layer. In addition, wind blowing over ripples on the surface leads to an uneven distribution of pressure over the ripples causing them to grow into waves.
4. *Pseudo-forces* are apparent forces that arise from motion in curvilinear or rotating coordinate systems. Thus, writing the equations for inertial motion in a rotating coordinate system leads to additional force terms called pseudo forces. For example, Newton's first law states that there is no change in motion of a body unless a resultant force acts on it. Yet a body moving at constant velocity seems to change direction when viewed from a rotating coordinate system. The change in direction is attributed to a pseudo-force, the the Coriolis force.
5. *Coriolis Force* is the dominant pseudo-force influencing currents moving in a coordinate system fixed to the Earth.

Table 7.2 Forces in Geophysical Fluid Dynamics

Dominant Forces	
Gravity	Gives rise to pressure forces and tides.
Wind Stress	Forces motion at the sea surface.
Buoyancy	Result from changes in density, leads to convection.
Other Forces	
Atmospheric Pressure	Results in inverted barometer effect.
Seismic	Results in *tsunamis* driven by earthquakes.

Note that the last two forces are much less important than the first three.

7.2 Coordinate System

Coordinate systemsallow us to determine location in theory and practice. Various systems are used depending on the size of the features to be described or mapped. I will refer to the simplest systems; descriptions of other systems can be found in geography and geodesy books.

1. *Cartesian Coordinate System* is the one I will use most commonly in the following chapters. It keeps the discussion as simple as possible. We can describe most processes in Cartesian coordinates without the mathematical complexity of spherical coordinates. The standard convention in geophysical fluid mechanics is x is to the East, y is to the North, and z is up.
2. *f-Plane* is a Cartesian coordinate system in which the Coriolis force is assumed constant. It is useful for describing flow in regions small compared with the radius of the Earth and larger than a few tens of kilometers.

3. *β-plane* is a Cartesian coordinate system in which the Coriolis force is assumed to vary linearly with latitude. It is useful for describing flow over areas as large as ocean basins.

4. *Spherical coordinates* are sometimes used to describe flows that extend over large distances and in numerical calculations of basin and global scale flows.

7.3 Types of Flow in the ocean

Many terms are used for describing the oceans circulation. Here are a few of the more commonly used terms for describing currents and waves.

1. *General Circulation* is the permanent, time-averaged circulation of the ocean.

2. *Meridional Overturning Circulation* also known as the *Thermohaline Circulation* is the circulation, in the meridional plane, driven by density differences.

3. *Wind-Driven Circulation* is the circulation in the upper kilometer of the ocean forced by the wind. The circulation can be caused by local winds or by winds in other regions.

4. *Gyres* are wind-driven cyclonic or anticyclonic currents with dimensions nearly that of ocean basins.

5. *Boundary Currents* are currents flowing parallel to coasts. Two types of boundary currents are important:
   - Western boundary currents on the western edge of the oceans tend to be fast, narrow jets such as the Gulf Stream and Kuroshio.
   - Eastern boundary currents are weak, *e.g.* the California Current.

6. *Squirts* or *Jets* are long narrow currents, with dimensions of a few hundred kilometers, that are nearly perpendicular to west coasts.

7. *Mesoscale Eddies* are turbulent or wave like flows on scales of a few hundred kilometers.

8. *Storm Surges* are changes in sea level driven by storms coming ashore on coasts having wide, shallow, continental shelves such as the Gulf of Mexico and the North Sea.

In addition to flow due to currents, there are many types of oscillatory flows due to waves. Normally, when we think of waves in the ocean, we visualize waves breaking on the beach or the surface waves influencing ships at sea. But many other types of waves occur in the ocean.

1. *Planetary Waves* depend on the rotation of the Earth for a restoring force, and they including Rossby, Kelvin, Equatorial, and Yanai waves.

2. *Surface Waves* sometimes called gravity waves, are the waves that eventually break on the beach. The restoring force is due to the large density contrast between air and water at the sea surface.

3. *Internal Waves* are subsea wave similar in some respects to surface waves. The restoring force is due to vertical density gradients within the sea.
4. *Tsunamis* are long surface waves with periods near 15 minutes driven by earthquakes.
5. *Tidal Currents* are horizontal currents and internal waves driven by the tidal potential.
6. *Shelf Waves* are waves with periods of a few minutes confined to shallow regions near shore. The amplitude of the waves drops off exponentially with distance from shore.

7.4 Conservation of Mass and Salt

Conservation of mass and salt can be used to obtain very useful information about flows in the ocean. For example, suppose we wish to know the net loss of fresh water, evaporation minus precipitation, from the Mediterranean Sea. We could carefully calculate the latent heat flux over the surface, but there are probably too few ship reports for an accurate application of the bulk formula. Or we could carefully measure the mass of water flowing in and out of the sea through the Strait of Gibraltar; but the difference is small and perhaps impossible to measure accurately.

We can, however, calculate the net evaporation knowing the salinity of the flow in S_i and out S_o, together with a rough estimate of the volume of water V_i flowing in, where V_i is a volume flow in units of m^3/s (Figure 7.1).

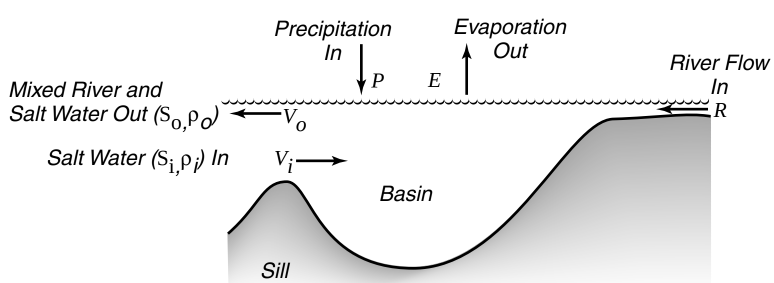


Figure 7.1 Schematic diagram of flow into and out of a basin. From Pickard and Emery, 1990.

The mass flowing in is, by definition, $\rho_i\, V_i$. Conservation of mass requires:

$$\rho_i\, V_i = \rho_o\, V_o \tag{7.1}$$

where, ρ_i, ρ_o are the densities of the water flowing in and out. We can usually assume, with little error, that $\rho_i = \rho_o$.

If there is precipitation P and evaporation E at the surface of the basin and river inflow R, conservation of mass becomes:

$$V_i + R + P = V_o + E \tag{7.2}$$

Solving for (V_o - V_i):

$$V_o - V_i = (R + P) - E \tag{7.3}$$

which states that the net flow of water into the basin must balance precipitation plus river inflow minus evaporation when averaged over a sufficiently long time.

Because salt is not deposited or removed from the sea, conservation of salt requires :

$$\rho_i \, V_i \, S_i = \rho_o \, V_o \, S_o \tag{7.4}$$

Where ρ_i, S_i are the density and salinity of the incoming water, and ρ_o, S_o are density and salinity of the outflow. With little error, we can again assume that $\rho_i = \rho_o$.

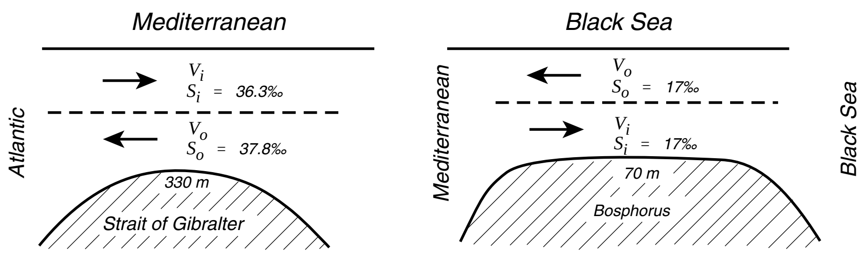


Figure 7.2 Schematic diagram of the flow in and out of: **left:** a salty sea, the Mediterranean Sea; and **right:** a fresher sea, the Black Sea. From Pickard and Emery, 1990.

An Example of Conservation of Mass and Salt Pickard and Emery (1990) in *Descriptive Physical oceanography* applied the theory to flow into the Mediterranean Sea using values for salinity given in Figure 7.2. The incoming volume of water has been estimated to be 1.75×10^6 m^3/s = 1.75 Sv, where Sv = Sverdrup = 10^6 m^3/s is the unit of volume transport used in oceanography. Solving Eq. 7.4 for V_o assuming that $\rho_i = \rho_o$, and using the estimated value of V_i and the measured salinities gives $V_o = 1.68 \times 10^6$ m^3/s. Eq. (7.3) then gives $(R + P - E) = -7 \times 10^4$ m^3/s.

Knowing V_i, we can also calculate a minimum flushing time for replacing water in the sea by incoming water. The minimum flushing time T_m is the volume of the sea divided by the volume of incoming water. The Mediterranean has a volume of around 4×10^6 km^3. Converting 1.75×10^6 m^3/s to km^3/yr we obtain -5.5×10^4 km^3/yr. Then, $T_m = 4 \times 10^6$ km^3/-5.5×10^4 km^3/yr = 70 yr. The actual time depends on mixing within the sea. If the waters are well mixed, the flushing time is close to the minimum time, if they are not well mixed, the flushing time is longer.

Our example of flow into and out of the Mediterranean Sea is an example of a *box model.* A box model replaces large systems, such as the Mediterranean Sea, with boxes. Fluids or chemicals or organisms can move between boxes, and conservation equations are used to constrain the interactions within systems.

7.5 The Total Derivative (D/Dt)

If the number of boxes in a system increases to a very large number as the size of each box shrinks, we eventually approach limits used in differential calculus. For example, if we subdivide the flow of water into boxes a few meters on a side,

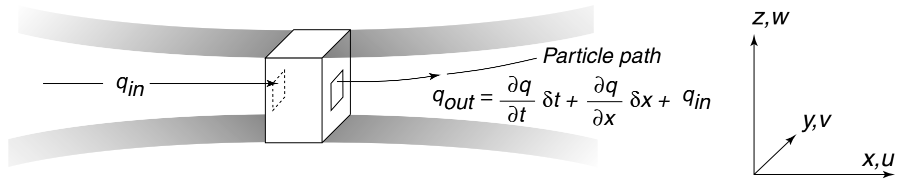


Figure 7.3 Sketch of flow used for deriving the total derivative.

and if we use conservation of mass, momentum, or other properties within each box, we can derive the differential equations governing fluid flow.

Consider the simple example of acceleration of flow in a small box of fluid. The resulting equation is called the *total derivative*. It relates the acceleration of a particle Du/Dt to derivatives of the velocity field at a fixed point in the fluid. We will use the equation to derive the equations for fluid motion from Newton's Second Law which requires calculating the acceleration of a particles passing a fixed point in the fluid.

We begin by considering the flow of a quantity q_{in} into and q_{out} out of the small box sketched in Figure 7.3. If q can change continuously in time and space, the relationship between q_{in} and q_{out} is:

$$q_{out} = q_{in} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial t}\,\delta t + \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}\,\delta x \tag{7.5}$$

The rate of change of the quantity q within the volume is:

$$\frac{Dq}{Dt} = \frac{q_{out} - q_{in}}{\delta t} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial q}{\partial x}\frac{\delta x}{\delta t} \tag{7.6}$$

But $\delta x/\delta t$ is the velocity u; and therefore:

$$\frac{Dq}{Dt} = \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial q}{\partial x}$$

In three dimensions, the total derivative becomes:

$$\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{dt} + u\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + v\frac{\partial}{\partial y} + w\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \tag{7.7a}$$

$$\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{dt} + \mathbf{u}\cdot\nabla(\,) \tag{7.7b}$$

where $\mathbf{u}$ is the vector velocity and ∇ is the operator *del* of vector field theory (See Feynman, Leighton, and Sands 1964: 2–6).

This is an amazing result. The simple transformation of coordinates from one following a particle to one fixed in space converts a simple linear derivative into a non-linear partial derivative. Now let's use the equation to calculate the change of momentum of a parcel of fluid.

7.6 Momentum Equation

Newton's Second Law relates the change of the momentum of a fluid mass due to an applied force. The change is:

$$\frac{D(m\mathbf{v})}{Dt} = \mathbf{F} \tag{7.8}$$

where $\mathbf{F}$ is force, m is mass, and $\mathbf{v}$ is velocity; and where we have emphasized the need to use the total derivative because we are calculating the force on a particle. We can assume that the mass is constant, and (7.8) can be written:

$$\frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{m} = \mathbf{f}_m \tag{7.9}$$

where $\mathbf{f}_m$ is force per unit mass.

Four forces are important: pressure gradients, Coriolis force, gravity, and friction. Without deriving the form of these forces (the derivations are given in the next section), we can write (7.9) in the following form.

$$\frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\nabla\, p - 2\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g} + \mathbf{F_r} \tag{7.10}$$

Acceleration equals the negative pressure gradient minus the Coriolis force plus gravity plus other forces. Here $\mathbf{g}$ is acceleration of gravity, $\mathbf{F_r}$ is friction, and the magnitude Ω of $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ is the *Rotation Rate of Earth*, 2π radians per sidereal day or

$$\boxed{\Omega = 7.292 \times 10^{-5} \text{ radians/s}} \tag{7.11}$$

Momentum Equation in Cartesian coordinates: Expanding the derivative in (7.10) and writing the components in a Cartesian coordinate system gives the *Momentum Equation*:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + w\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = -\,\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + 2\,\Omega\, v\, \sin\varphi + F_x \tag{7.12a}$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + w\,\frac{\partial v}{\partial z} = -\,\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} - 2\,\Omega\, u\, \sin\varphi + F_y \tag{7.12b}$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + w\,\frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = -\,\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + 2\,\Omega\, u\, \cos\varphi - g + F_z \tag{7.12c}$$

where F_i are the components of any frictional force per unit mass, and φ is latitude. In addition, we have assumed that $w << v$, so the $2\,\Omega\, w \cos\varphi$ has been dropped from equation in (7.12a).

Equation (7.12) appears under various names. Leonhard Euler (1707–1783) first wrote out the general form for fluid flow with external forces, and the equation is sometimes called the *Euler equation* or the *acceleration equation*. Louis Marie Henri Navier (1785–1836) added the frictional terms, and so the equation is sometimes called the *Navier-Stokes equation*.

The term $2\,\Omega\, u\, \cos\varphi$ in (7.12c) is small compared with g, and it can be ignored in ocean dynamics. It cannot be ignored, however, for gravity surveys made with gravimeters on moving ships.

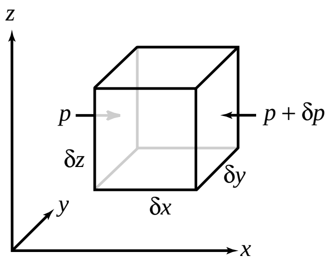


Figure 7.4 Sketch of flow used for deriving the pressure term in the momentum equation.

Derivation of Pressure Term Consider the forces acting on the sides of a small cube of fluid (Figure 7.4). The net force δF_x in the x direction is

$$\delta F_x = p\,\delta y\,\delta z - (p + \delta p)\,\delta y\,\delta z$$
$$\delta F_x = -\delta p\,\delta y\,\delta z$$

But

$$\delta p = \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\delta x$$

and therefore

$$\delta F_x = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\delta x\,\delta y\,\delta z$$
$$\delta F_x = -\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\delta V$$

Dividing by the mass of the fluid δm in the box, the acceleration of the fluid in the x direction is:

$$a_x = \frac{\delta F_x}{\delta m} = -\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\frac{\delta V}{\delta m}$$

$$\boxed{a_x = -\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}} \tag{7.13}$$

The pressure forces and the acceleration due to the pressure forces in the y and z directions are derived in the same way.

The Coriolis Term in the Momentum Equation The Coriolis term exists because we describe currents in a reference frame fixed on Earth. The derivation of the Coriolis terms is not simple. Henry Stommel, the noted oceanographer at the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution even wrote a book on the subject with Dennis Moore (Stommel & Moore, 1989).

Usually, we just state that the force per unit mass, the acceleration of a parcel of fluid in a rotating system, can be written:

$$\mathbf{a}_{fixed} = \left(\frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt}\right)_{fixed} = \left(\frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt}\right)_{rptating} + (2\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{v}) + \boldsymbol{\Omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{R}) \tag{7.14}$$

where $\mathbf{R}$ is the vector distance from the center of Earth, $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ is the angular velocity vector of Earth, and $\mathbf{v}$ is the velocity of the fluid parcel in coordinates fixed to Earth. The term $2\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{v}$ is the Coriolis force, and the term $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{R})$ is the centrifugal acceleration. The latter term is included in gravity (Figure 7.5).

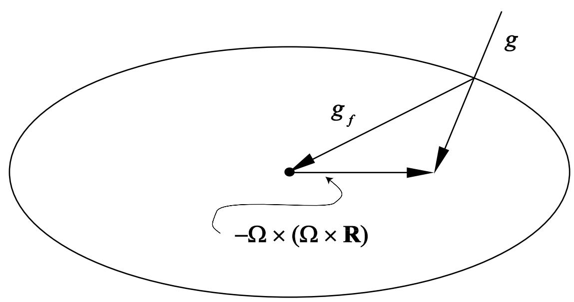


Figure 7.5 Downward acceleration g of a body at rest on Earth's surface is the sum of gravitational acceleration between the body and Earth's mass g_f and the centrifugal acceleration due to Earth's rotation $\Omega \times (\Omega \times R)$. The surface of an ocean at rest must be perpendicular to g, and such a surface is close to an ellipsoid of rotation. Earth's ellipticity is greatly exaggerated here.

The Gravity Term in the Momentum Equation The gravitational attraction of two masses M_1 and m is:

$$\mathbf{F}_g = \frac{G\, M_1\, m}{R^2}$$

where R is the distance between the masses, and G is the gravitational constant. The vector force $\mathbf{F}_g$ is along the line connecting the two mases.

The force per unit mass due to gravity is:

$$\frac{\mathbf{F}_g}{m} = \mathbf{g}_f = \frac{G\, M_E}{R^2} \tag{7.15}$$

where M_E is the mass of Earth. Adding the centrifugal acceleration to (7.15) gives gravity $\mathbf{g}$ (Figure 7.5):

$$\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{g}_f - \boldsymbol{\Omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{R}) \tag{7.16}$$

Note that gravity does not point toward Earth's center of mass. The centrifugal acceleration causes a plumb bob to point at a small angle to the line directed to Earth's center of mass. As a result, Earth's surface including the ocean's surface is not spherical but it is a prolate ellipsoid. A rotating fluid planet has an equatorial bulge.

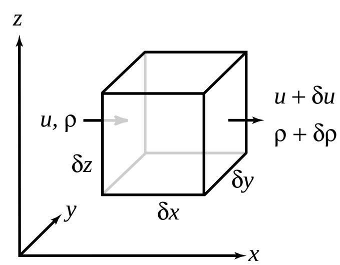


Figure 7.6 Sketch of flow used for deriving the continuity equation.

7.7 Conservation of Mass: The Continuity Equation

Now lets derive the equation for the conservation of mass in a fluid. We begin by writing down the flow of mass into and out of a small box (Figure 7.6).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mass flow in} &= \rho\, u\, \delta z\, \delta y \\ \text{Mass flow out} &= \left(\rho + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x}\delta x\right)\left(u + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\delta x\right)\delta z\, \delta y \\ &= \left(\rho\, u + \rho\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + u\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\,\delta x\right)\delta x\, \delta y\, \delta z \end{aligned}$$

The net change in mass inside the volume must be (mass flow in) − (mass flow out)

$$\text{Change in mass} = \left(\rho\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + u\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\,\delta x\right)\delta x\, \delta y\, \delta z$$

The third term inside the parentheses becomes much smaller than the first two terms as $\delta x \to 0$; and

$$\text{Change in mass} = \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x}\,\delta x\, \delta y\, \delta z$$

In three dimensions:

$$\text{Change in mass} = \left(\frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial x}\right)\delta x\, \delta y\, \delta z$$

The change of mass inside the volume is:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}\,\delta x\, \delta y\, \delta z$$

and conservation of mass requires that the total change of mass be zero:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\rho u)}{\partial x} + \frac{d(\rho v)}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial(\rho w)}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{7.17}$$

This is the *continuity equation* for compressible flow, first derived by Leonhard Euler (1707–1783).

The equation can be put in an alternate form by expanding the derivatives of products and rearranging terms to obtain:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial y} + w\,\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} + \rho\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \rho\,\frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \rho\,\frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = 0$$

The first four terms constitute the total derivative of density $D\rho/Dt$ from (7.7), and we can write (7.17) as:

$$\boxed{\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{D\rho}{Dt} + \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = 0} \tag{7.18}$$

This is the alternate form for the continuity equation for a compressible fluid.

The Boussinesque Approximation Density is nearly constant in the ocean, and Joseph Boussinesque (1842–1929) noted that we can safely assume density is constant except when it is multiplied by g in calculations of pressure in the ocean. The assumption greatly simplifies the equations of motion.

Boussinesque's assumption requires that:

1. Velocities in the ocean must be small compared to the speed of sound c. This ensures that velocity does not change the density. As velocity approaches the speed of sound, the velocity field can produces large changes of density such as shock waves.
2. The phase speed of waves or disturbances must be small compared with c. Sound speed in incompressible flows is infinite, and we must assume the fluid is compressible when discussing sound in the ocean. Thus the approximation is not true for sound. All other waves in the ocean have speeds small compared to sound.
3. The vertical scale of the motion must be small compared with c^2/g, where g is gravity. This ensures that as pressure increases with depth in the ocean, the increase in pressure produces only small changes in density.

The approximations are true for oceanic flows, and they ensure that oceanic flows are incompressible. See Kundu (1990: 79 and 112), Gill (1982: 85), Batchelor (1967: 167), or other texts on fluid dynamics for a more complete description of the approximation.

Compressibility The Boussinesque assumption is equivalent to assuming sea water is incompressible. Now let's see how the assumption simplifies the continuity equation. We define the *coefficient of compressibility*

$$\beta \equiv -\frac{1}{V}\,\frac{\partial V}{\partial p} = -\frac{1}{V}\,\frac{dV}{dt}\bigg/\frac{dp}{dt}$$

where V is volume, and p is pressure. For incompressible flows, $\beta = 0$, and:

$$\frac{1}{V}\,\frac{dV}{dt} = 0$$

because $dp/dt \neq 0$. Remembering that density is mass m per unit volume V, and that mass is constant:

$$\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dt} = -V\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{1}{V}\right) = -\frac{V}{m}\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{m}{V}\right) = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{d\rho}{dt} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{D\rho}{Dt} = 0$$

Therefore (7.18) becomes:

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = 0} \tag{7.19}$$

This is the *Continuity Equation for Incompressible Flows.*

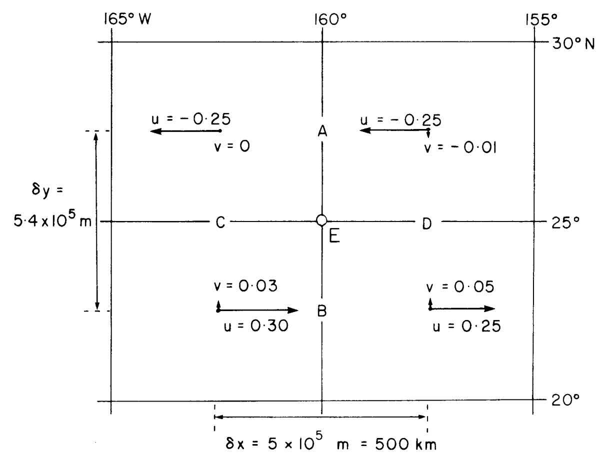


Figure 7.7 An example of using horizontal velocities to calculate vertical velocities using the continuity equation. Speeds are in m/s. (From Pond and Pickard, 1983)

7.8 Calculation of Vertical Velocity Using Continuity

The vertical velocity w is almost always much smaller than the horizontal velocities (u, v), and it is almost always too small to be measured directly. Yet for many reasons, we need to know the vertical velocity. One way out of the problem is to use the continuity equation to calculate the vertical velocity using information about the horizontal velocity field.

Here is an example of the procedure from Pond and Pickard (1983). Using current-meter observations shown in Figure 7.7, we calculate $\partial u/\partial x$ and $\partial v/\partial y$ using finite difference approximation to the derivative. To do this, we first calculate $\partial u/\partial x$ at points A and B, then we average the two to get $\partial u/\partial x$ at E. Similarly, we calculate $\partial v/\partial y$ at C and D and then at E. The arithmetic steps are:

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right|_A = \frac{[-0.25\ -(-0.25)]\,m/s}{5\times 10^5 m} \qquad = 0$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right|_B = \frac{[0.25\ -0.30]\,m/s}{5\times 10^5 m} \qquad = -10\times 10^{-8}/s$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right|_E = \frac{1}{2}\left[\left.\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\right|_A + \left.\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\right|_B\right] m/s \qquad = -5\times 10^{-8}/s$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right|_C = \frac{[0\ -0.03]\,m/s}{5.6\times 10^5 m} \qquad = -5.4\times 10^{-8}/s$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right|_D = \frac{[-0.01\ -0.05]\,m/s}{5\times 10^5 m} \qquad = -12\times 10^{-8}/s$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right|_E = \frac{1}{2}\left[\left.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right|_C + \left.\frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right|_D\right] m/s \qquad = -8.7\times 10^{-8}/s$$

Next we solve (7.19) for $\partial w/\partial z$:

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = -\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right) \tag{7.20}$$

Substituting the values for the horizontal derivatives into (7.8) gives:

$$\left.\frac{\partial w}{\partial z}\right|_E = -\left[\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right] = 13.7\times 10^{-8}/s \tag{7.21}$$

If we have some additional information about the vertical structure of the ocean, we may be able to integrate $\partial w/\partial z$ to calculate the vertical velocity w in the upper layers of the ocean. For example, if the velocities in figure 7.7 are confined to a mixed layer that is 50 meters thick, we obtain:

$$w = \int_{-50m}^{0} \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} dz = -6.8\ \mu\text{m/s} \tag{7.22}$$

This means that the vertical velocity at the bottom of a 50-m thick mixed layer is -6.8 μm/s or 0.58 meters per day. This is a typical vertical velocity in the ocean, but it is far too small to measure directly. Nevertheless, over time it can lead to important changes in the depth of the mixed layer.

7.9 Solutions to the Equations of Motion

We have four equations, the three components of the momentum equation plus the continuity equation, with four unknowns: u, v, w, p. In principle, we ought to be able to solve the set of equations with appropriate boundary conditions.

Note, however, that these are non-linear partial differential equations. Conservation of momentum, when applied to a fluid, converted a simple, first-order, ordinary, differential equation for velocity (Newton's Second Law), which is usually easy to solve, into a non-linear partial differential equation, which is almost impossible to solve.

Boundary Conditions: In fluid mechanics, we generally assume:

1. No velocity normal to a boundary, which means there is no flow through the boundary; and
2. No flow parallel to a solid boundary, which means no slip at the solid boundary.

Solutions We expect that four equations in four unknowns plus boundary conditions give a system of equations that can be solved in principle. In practice, solutions are difficult to find even for the simplest flows. First, as far as I know, there are no exact solutions for the equations with friction. There are very few exact solutions for the equations without friction. Those who are interested in ocean waves might note that one such exact solution is Gerstner's solution for water waves (Lamb, 1945: 251). To solve the equations, we will need drastic simplifications. Even numerical calculations are difficult.

Analytical solutions can be obtained for much simplified forms of the equations of motion. Such solutions are used to study processes in the ocean, including waves. Solutions for oceanic flows with realistic coasts and bathymetric features must be obtained from numerical solutions. In the next few chapters we seek solutions to simplified forms of the equations. In Chapter 16 we will consider numerical solutions.

7.10 Important Concepts

1. Gravity, buoyancy, and wind are the dominant forces acting on the ocean.
2. Earth's rotation produces a pseudo force, the Coriolis force.
3. Conservation laws applied to flow in the ocean lead to equations of motion; conservation of salt, volume and other quantities can lead to deep insights into oceanic flow.
4. The transformation from equations of motion applied to fluid parcels to equations applied at a fixed point in space greatly complicates the equations of motion. The linear, first-order, ordinary differential equations describing Newtonian dynamics of a mass accelerated by a force become nonlinear, partial differential equations of fluid mechanics.
5. Flow in the ocean can be assumed to be incompressible except when describing sound. Density can be assumed to be constant except when density is multiplied by gravity g. The assumption is called the Boussinesq approximation.
6. Conservation of mass leads to the continuity equation, which has an especially simple form for an incompressible fluid.

Chapter 8

Equations of Motion With Viscosity

Throughout most of the interior of the ocean and atmosphere friction is relatively small, and we can safely assume that the flow is frictionless. At the boundaries, friction, in the form of viscosity, becomes important. This thin, viscous layer is called a *boundary layer*. Within the layer, the velocity of the flow slows from values typical of the interior to zero at a solid boundary. If the boundary is not solid, then the boundary layer is a thin layer of rapidly changing velocity whereby velocity on one side of the boundary changes to match the velocity on the other side of the boundary. For example, there is a boundary layer at the bottom of the atmosphere, the planetary boundary layer we described in Chapter 3. In the planetary boundary layer, velocity goes from many meters per second in the free atmosphere to tens of centimeters per second at the sea surface. Below the sea surface, another boundary layer, the Ekman layer described in Chapter 9, matches the flow at the sea surface to the deeper flow inside the ocean.

In this chapter we consider the role of friction in fluid flows, and the stability of the flows to small changes in velocity or density.

8.1 The Influence of Viscosity

In the last chapter we wrote the x–component of the momentum equation for a fluid in the form:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + w\,\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = -\,\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} + 2\,\Omega\,v\,\sin\vartheta + F_x \tag{8.1}$$

where F_x was a frictional force per unit mass. Now we can consider the form of this term if it is due to viscosity.

Molecules in a fluid close to a solid boundary can strike the boundary and transfer momentum to the boundary (Figure 8.1). Molecules further from the boundary collide with molecules that have struck the boundary, further transferring the change in momentum into the interior of the fluid. This transfer of

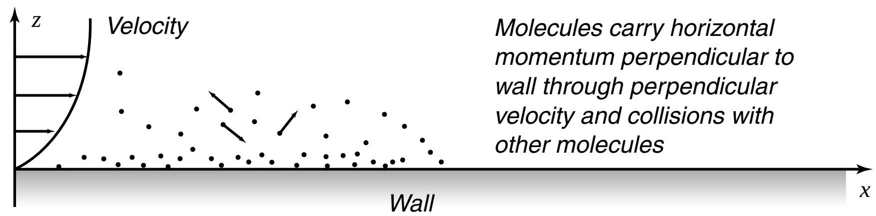


Figure 8.1 Molecules colliding with the wall and with each other transfer momentum from the fluid to the wall, slowing the fluid velocity.

momentum is *molecular viscosity.* Molecules, however, travel only micrometers between collisions, and the process is very inefficient for transferring momentum even a few centimeters. Molecular viscosity is important only within a few millimeters of a boundary.

Molecular viscosity is the ratio of the stress T_x tangential to the boundary of a fluid and the shear of the fluid at the boundary. So the stress has the form:

$$T_x = \rho\nu \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \tag{8.2}$$

where ν is the kinematic molecular viscosity. Typical value of ν for water at 20°C is 10^{-6} m^2/s.

Generalizing (8.2) to three dimensions leads to a stress tensor giving the nine components of stress at a point in the fluid, including pressure, which is a normal stress, and shear stresses. A derivation of the stress tensor is beyond the scope of this book, but you can find the details in Lamb (1945: §328) or Kundu (1990: p. 93). For an incompressible fluid, the frictional force per unit mass in (8.1) takes the from:

$$F_x = \nu \left(\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} \right) \tag{8.3}$$

8.2 Turbulence

If molecular viscosity is important only over distances of a few millimeters, and if it is not important for most oceanic flows, unless of course you are a zooplankter trying to swim in the ocean, how then is the influence of a boundary transferred into the interior of the flow? The answer is: through turbulence.

Turbulence arises from the non-linear terms in the momentum equation ($u\,\partial u/\partial x$, *etc.*). The importance of these terms is given by a non-dimensional number, the Reynolds Number, which is the ratio of the non-linear terms to the viscous terms:

$$\text{Reynolds Number} = \text{Re} = \frac{\text{Non-linear Terms}}{\text{Viscous Terms}} = \frac{\left(u\,\dfrac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)}{\left(\nu\,\dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right)} \approx \frac{U\,\dfrac{U}{L}}{\nu\,\dfrac{U}{L^2}}$$

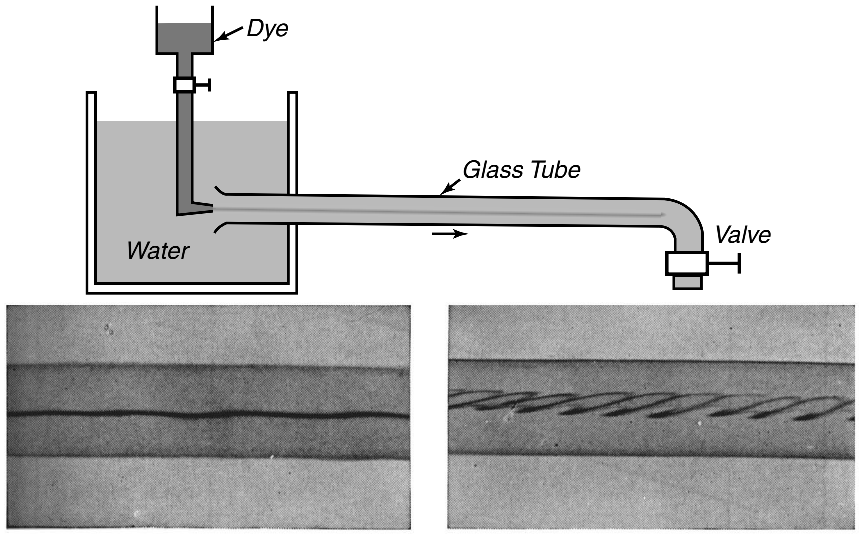


Figure 8.2 **Upper:** Reynolds apparatus for investigating the transition to turbulence in pipe flow. **Lower:** Photographs of near-laminar flow (left) and turbulent flow (right) in a clear pipe much like the one used by Reynolds. (From Binder 1953).

$$\text{Re} = \frac{UL}{\nu} \tag{8.4}$$

where, U is a typical velocity of the flow and L is a typical length describing the flow. You are free to pick whatever U, L might be typical of the flow. For example L can be either a typical cross-stream distance, or an along-stream distance. Typical values in the open ocean are $U = 0.1$ m/s and $L = 1$ megameter, so $Re = 10^{11}$. Because non-linear terms are important if $\text{Re} > 10 - 1000$, they are certainly important in the ocean. The ocean is turbulent.

The Reynolds number is named after Osborne Reynolds (1842–1912) who conducted experiments in the late 19th century to understand turbulence. In one famous experiment (Reynolds 1883), he injected dye into water flowing at various speeds through a tube (Figure 8.2). If the speed was small, the flow was smooth. This is called *laminar flow.* At higher speeds, the flow became irregular and turbulent. The transition occurred at $\text{Re} = VD/\nu \approx 2000$, where V is the average speed in the pipe, and D is the diameter of the pipe.

As Reynolds number increases above some critical value, the flow becomes more and more turbulent. Note that flow pattern is a function of Reynold's number. All flows with the same geometry and the same Reynolds number have the same flow pattern. Thus flow around all circular cylinders, whether 1 mm or 1 m in diameter, look the same as the flow at the top of Figure 8.3 if the Reynolds number is 20. Furthermore, the boundary layer is confined to a very thin layer close to the cylinder, in a layer too thin to show in the figure.

Turbulent Stresses: The Reynolds Stress Those who studied fluid mechanics in the early 20th century hypothesized that parcels of fluid in a turbulent flow played the same role in transferring momentum within the flow that

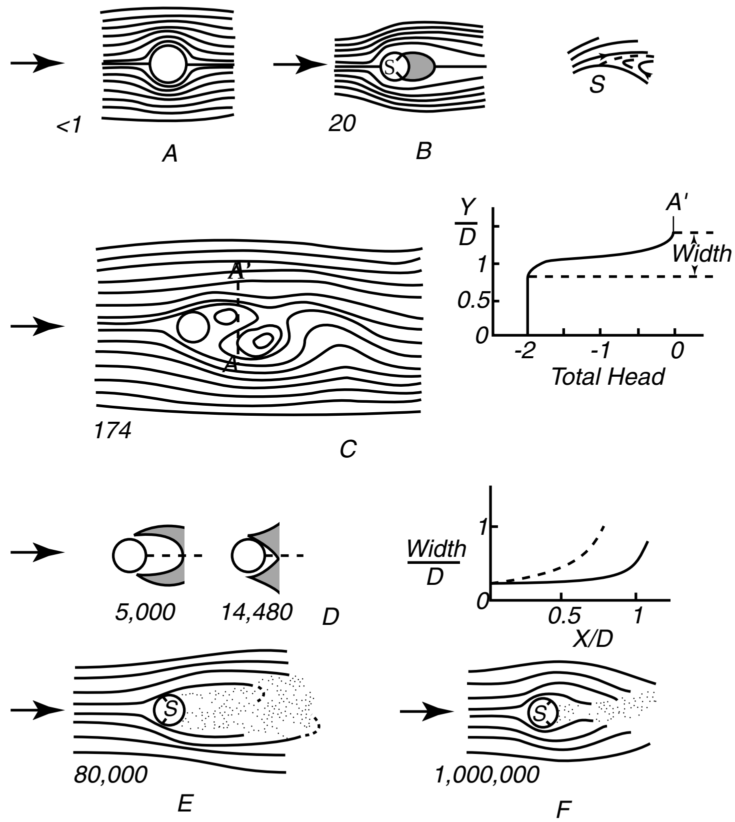


Figure 8.3 Flow past a circular cylinder as a function of Reynolds number between one and a million (From Richardson 1961). The appropriate flows are: A—a toothpick moving at 1 mm/s; B—finger moving at 2 cm/s; F—hand out a car window at 60 mph. All flow at the same Reynolds number has the same streamlines. Flow past a 10 cm diameter cylinder at 1 cm/s looks the same as 10 cm/s flow past a cylinder 1 cm in diameter because in both cases Re = 1000.

molecules played in laminar flow. The work led to the idea of turbulent stresses.

To see how these stresses might arise, consider the momentum equation for a flow with mean and a turbulent components of flow:

$$u = U + u'\,; \quad v = V + v'\,; \quad w = W + w'\,; \quad p = P + p' \tag{8.5}$$

where the mean value U is calculated from a time or space average:

$$\langle u \rangle = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T u(t)\,dt \quad \text{or} \quad \langle u \rangle = \frac{1}{X}\int_0^X u(x)\,dx \tag{8.6}$$

The non-linear terms in the momentum equation can be written:

$$\left\langle (U+u')\frac{\partial(U+u')}{\partial x}\right\rangle = \left\langle U\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\right\rangle + \left\langle U\,\frac{\partial u'}{\partial x}\right\rangle + \left\langle u'\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\right\rangle + \left\langle u'\,\frac{\partial u'}{\partial x}\right\rangle$$

$$\left\langle (U+u')\frac{\partial(U+u')}{\partial x}\right\rangle = \left\langle U\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial x}\right\rangle + \left\langle u'\,\frac{\partial u'}{\partial x}\right\rangle \tag{8.7}$$

The second equation follows from the first because both $\langle U\,\partial u'/\partial x\rangle = 0$ and $\langle u'\,\partial U/\partial x\rangle = 0$, which follow from the definition of U: $\langle U\partial u'/\partial x\rangle = U\partial\langle u'\rangle/\partial x = 0$.

Using (8.7), the continuity equation splits into two equations:

$$\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial W}{\partial x} = 0 \tag{8.8a}$$

$$\frac{\partial u'}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v'}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial w'}{\partial x} = 0 \tag{8.8b}$$

And the x-component of the momentum equation becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + U\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + V\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial y} + W\,\frac{\partial U}{\partial z} = \\ -\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} + 2\Omega V\sin\varphi - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle u'u'\rangle - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\langle u'v'\rangle - \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\langle u'w'\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{8.9}$$

where $2\Omega v'\sin\varphi$ has been dropped because it is small. Thus the turbulent frictional term is

$$F_x = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\langle u'u'\rangle - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\langle u'v'\rangle - \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\langle u'w'\rangle \tag{8.10}$$

The terms $\rho\langle u'u'\rangle$, $\rho\langle u'v'\rangle$, and $\rho\langle u'w'\rangle$ transfer momentum in the x, y, and z directions. For example, the term $\rho\langle u'w'\rangle$ gives the downward transport of eastward momentum across a horizontal plane. Because they transfer momentum, and because they were first derived by Osborne Reynolds, they are called *Reynolds Stresses*.

8.3 Calculation of Reynolds Stress:

The friction terms such as $\partial\langle u'w'\rangle/\partial z$ are virtual stresses (cf. Goldstein, 1965: 69 & 80). We now assume that they play the same role as the viscous terms in the equation of motion. The problem becomes one of obtaining values or functional form for the Reynolds stress. Several approaches are used.

By Analogy with Molecular Viscosity Let's return to the simple example shown in figure 8.1, which shows a boundary layer above a flat plate in the x, y plane. Now let's assume that the flow above the plate is turbulent. This is a very common type of boundary layer flow, and it a type of flow that we will describe various times in later chapters. It can be wind flow above the sea surface or flow at the bottom boundary layer in the ocean or flow in the mixed layer at the sea surface.

For flow above a boundary, we assume that flow is constant in the x, y direction, that the statistical properties of the flow vary only in the z direction, and that the mean flow is steady. Therefore $\partial/\partial t = \partial/\partial x = \partial/\partial y = 0$. The stress term is:

$$T_x = \rho\langle u'w'\rangle, \quad T_y = \rho\langle v'w'\rangle \tag{8.11}$$

and

$$F_x = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial T_x}{\partial z} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\langle u'w'\rangle, \quad F_y = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial T_y}{\partial z} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\langle v'w'\rangle \tag{8.12}$$

We now assume, in analogy with (8.2)

$$T_x = \rho\, A_z\, \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} \tag{8.13a}$$

$$T_y = \rho\, A_z\, \frac{\partial V}{\partial z} \tag{8.13b}$$

where A_z is the *eddy viscosity* which replaces the molecular viscosity ν in (8.2). Then

$$F_x = \frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial T_x}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z \frac{\partial U}{\partial z}\right) \approx A_z \frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial z^2} \tag{8.14a}$$

$$F_y = \frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial T_y}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z \frac{\partial V}{\partial z}\right) \approx A_z \frac{\partial^2 V}{\partial z^2} \tag{8.14b}$$

assuming A_z is either constant or that it varies more slowly in the z direction than $\partial U/\partial z$. Thus, we will assume later that $A_z \approx z$.

With these assumptions, the x and y momentum equations are:

$$\rho f V - \frac{\partial T_x}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{8.15a}$$

$$-\rho f U - \frac{\partial T_y}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{8.15b}$$

where $f = 2\omega \sin\varphi$ is the Coriolis parameter.

The assumption that A_z varies with distance from the boundary works well for describing the flow over flat plates where U is a function of distance z from the plate, and W, the mean velocity perpendicular to the plate is zero (See the box *Turbulent Boundary Layer Over a Flat Plate).* This is the classical approach first described in 1925 by Prandtl, who introduced the concept of a boundary layer, and by others. Here A_z is determined by an empirical fit to data collected in wind tunnels or measured in the surface boundary layer at sea. See Hinze (1975, §5–2 and §7–5) and Goldstein (1965: §80) for more on the theory of turbulence flow near a flat plate.

Assumption (8.13) and the classical theory works well only where friction is much larger than the Coriolis force. This is true for air flow within tens of meters of the sea surface and for water flow within a few meters of the surface. The application of the technique to other flows in the ocean is less clear. For example, the flow in the mixed layer at depths below about ten meters is less well described by the classical turbulent theory. Tennekes and Lumley (1970: 57) write:

> Mixing-length and eddy viscosity models should be used only to generate analytical expressions for the Reynolds stress and mean-velocity

The Turbulent Boundary Layer Over a Flat Plate

The theory for the mean velocity distribution in a turbulent boundary layer over a flat plate was worked out independently by G.I. Taylor (1886–1975), L. Prandtl (1875–1953), and T. von Karman (1818–1963) from 1915 to 1935. Their empirical theory, sometimes called the *mixing-length theory* predicts well the mean velocity profile close to the boundary. Of interest to us, it predicts the mean flow of air above the sea. Here's a simplified version of the theory applied to a smooth surface.

We begin by assuming that the mean flow in the boundary layer is steady and that it varies only in the z direction. Within a few millimeters of the boundary, friction is important and (8.2) has the solution

$$U = \frac{T_x}{\rho\nu}\, z \tag{8.16}$$

and the mean velocity varies linearly with distance above the boundary. Usually (8.16) is written in dimensionless form:

$$\frac{U}{u^*} = \frac{u^* z}{\nu} \tag{8.17}$$

where $u^{*2} \equiv T_x/\rho$ is the *friction velocity.*

Further from the boundary, the flow is turbulent, and molecular friction is not important. In this regime, we can use (8.13), and

$$A_z \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} = u^{*2} \tag{8.18}$$

Prandtl and Taylor assumed that large eddies are more effective in mixing momentum than small eddies, and therefore A_z ought to vary with distance from the wall. Karman assumed that it had the particular functional form $A_z = \kappa z u^*$, where κ is a dimensionless constant. With this assumption, the equation for the mean velocity profile becomes

$$\kappa z u^* \frac{\partial U}{\partial z} = u^{*2} \tag{8.19}$$

Because U is a function only of z, we can write $dU = u^*/(\kappa z)\, dz$, which has the solution

$$U = \frac{u^*}{\kappa} \ln\left(\frac{z}{z_0}\right) \tag{8.20}$$

where z_0 is distance from the boundary at which velocity goes to zero.

For airflow over the sea, $\kappa = 0.4$ and z_o is given by Charnock's (1955) relation $z_0 = 0.0156\, u^{*2}/g$. The mean velocity in the atmospheric boundary layer just above the sea surface described in §4.3 fits well the logarithmic profile of (8.20), as does the mean velocity in the upper few meters of the sea just below the sea surface. Furthermore, using (4.1) in the definition of the friction velocity, then using (8.20) gives Charnock's form of the drag coefficient as a function of wind speed in Figure 4.6.

profile if those are desired for curve fitting purposes in turbulent flows characterized by a single length scale and a single velocity scale. The use of mixing-length theory in turbulent flows whose scaling laws are not known beforehand should be avoided.

Problems with the eddy-viscosity approach:

1. Except in boundary layers a few meters thick, geophysical flows may be influenced by several characteristic scales. For example, in the atmospheric boundary layer above the sea, at least three scales may be important: i) the height above the sea z, ii) the Monin-Obukhov scale L discussed in §4.3, and iii) the typical velocity U divided by the Coriolis parameter U/f.
2. The velocities u', w' are a property of the fluid, while A_z is a property of the *flow*;
3. Eddy viscosity terms are not symmetric:

$$\langle u'v' \rangle = \langle v'u' \rangle \,; \quad \text{but}$$
$$A_x \frac{\partial V}{\partial x} \neq A_y \frac{\partial U}{\partial y}$$

From a Statistical Theory of Turbulence The Reynolds stresses can be calculated from various theories which relate $\langle u'u' \rangle$ to higher order correlations of the form $\langle u'u'u' \rangle$. The problem then becomes: How to calculate the higher order terms? This is the *closure problem* in turbulence. There is no general solution, but the approach leads to useful understanding of some forms of turbulence such as isotropic turbulence downstream of a grid in a wind tunnel (Batchelor 1967). *Isotropic turbulence* is turbulence with statistical properties that are independent of direction.

The approach can be modified somewhat for flow in the ocean. In the idealized case of high Reynolds flow, we can calculate the statistical properties of a flow in thermodynamic equilibrium. Because the actual flow in the ocean is far from equilibrium, we assume it will evolve towards equilibrium. Holloway (1986) provides a good review of this approach, showing how it can be used to derive the influence of turbulence on mixing and heat transports. One interesting result of the work is that zonal mixing ought to be larger than meridional mixing.

Summary The turbulent eddy viscosities A_x, A_y, and A_z cannot be calculated accurately for most oceanic flows.

1. They can be estimated from measurements of turbulent flows. Measurements in the ocean, however, are difficult; and measurements in the lab, although accurate, cannot reach Reynolds numbers of 10^{11} typical of the ocean.
2. The statistical theory of turbulence gives useful insight into the role of turbulence in the ocean, and this is an area of active research.

Some Values for Viscosity

$$\begin{aligned}\nu_{water} &= 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}\\ \nu_{tar\,at\,15^\circ C} &= 10^{6}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}\\ \nu_{glacier\,ice} &= 10^{10}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}\\ A_y &= 10^{4}\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}\end{aligned}$$

8.4 Stability

We saw in the last section that fluid flow with a sufficiently large Reynolds number is turbulent. This is one form of instability. Many other types of instability occur in the in the ocean. Here, let's consider three of the more important ones: i) *static stability* associated with change of density with depth, ii) *dynamic stability* associated with velocity shear, and iii) *double-diffusion* associated with salinity and temperature gradients in the ocean.

Static Stability and the Stability Frequency Consider first static stability. If more dense water lies above less dense water, the fluid is unstable. The more dense water will sink beneath the less dense. Conversely, if less dense water lies above more dense water, the interface between the two is stable. But how stable? We might guess that the larger the density contrast across the interface, the more stable the interface. This is an example of static stability. Static stability is important in any *stratified* flow where density increases with depth; and we need some criterion for determining the importance of the stability.

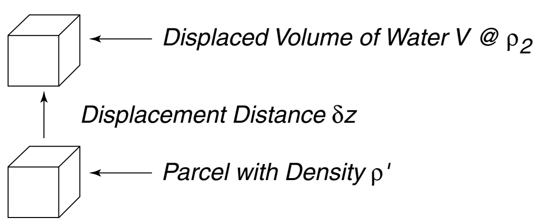


Figure 8.4 Sketch for calculating static stability and stratification frequency.

Consider a parcel of water that is displaced vertically in a stratified fluid (Figure 8.4). The buoyancy force F acting on the displaced parcel is the difference between its weight $Vg\rho'$ and the weight of the surrounding water $Vg\rho_2$, where V is the volume of the parcel:

$$F = V\,g\,(\rho_2 - \rho')$$

The acceleration of the displaced parcel is:

$$a = \frac{F}{m} = \frac{g\,(\rho_2 - \rho')}{\rho'} \tag{8.21}$$

but

$$\rho_2 = \rho + \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{water} \delta z \tag{8.22}$$

$$\rho' = \rho + \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{parcel} \delta z \tag{8.23}$$

Using (8.22) and (8.23) in (8.21), ignoring terms proportional to δz^2, we obtain:

$$a = -\frac{g}{\rho}\left[\left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{water} - \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{parcel}\right]\delta z$$

We define *stability* $\equiv E \equiv -a/g$ for $\delta z = 1$:

$$E = -\frac{1}{\rho}\left[\left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{water} - \left(\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}\right)_{parcel}\right] \tag{8.24}$$

In the upper kilometer of the ocean stability is large, and the first term in (8.24) is much larger than the second. The first term is proportional to the rate of change of density of the water column; the second term is proportional to the compressibility of sea water, which is very small. Neglecting the second term, we can write the *stability equation*:

$$\boxed{E = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z}} \tag{8.25}$$

Recalling that $\rho(S, T, 0) - 1000 = \sigma_t$, we can also write:

$$\boxed{E = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial \sigma_t}{\partial z}} \tag{8.26}$$

The approximation used to derive (8.25) and (8.26) is valid for $E > 50\times10^{-8}$/m. Deep in the ocean, the change in density with depth is so small that we must consider the small change in density of the parcel due to changes in pressure as it is moved vertically. At these depths, a more accurate form of (8.26) is:

$$E = -\frac{1}{\rho}\left[\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial S}\frac{\partial S}{\partial z} + \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial \theta}\left(\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial z} + \Gamma\right)\right] \tag{8.27}$$

$$\Gamma = \left(\frac{\partial \theta}{\partial z}\right)_{parcel}$$

where Γ is the adiabatic temperature gradient. See Sverdrup, Johnson, and Fleming (1942: 416) or Gill (1982: 50) for a more complete derivation.

Stability is defined such that

$$\begin{aligned} E &> 0 \quad \text{Stable} \\ E &= 0 \quad \text{Neutral Stability} \\ E &< 0 \quad \text{Unstable} \end{aligned}$$

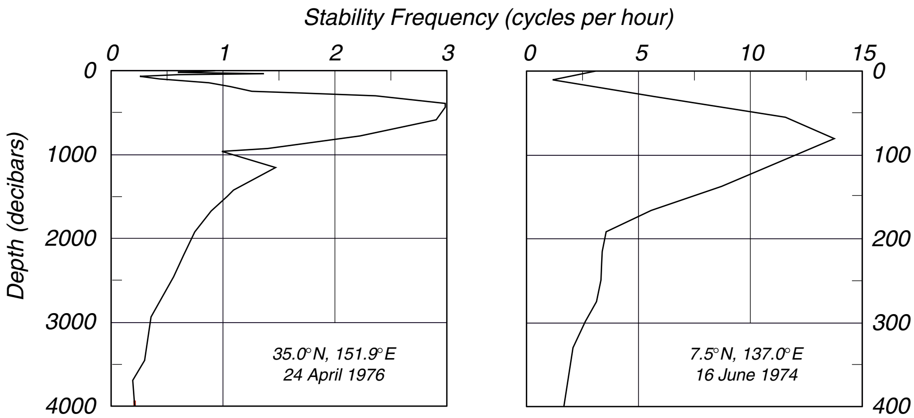


Figure 8.5. Observed stratification frequency in the Pacific. **Left:** Stability of the deep thermocline east of the Kuroshio. **Right:** Stability of a shallow thermocline typical of the tropics. Note the change of scales.

In the upper kilometer of the ocean, $z < 1,000$ m, $E = (100—1000) \times 10^{-8}/\text{m}$, and in deep trenches where $z > 7,000$ m, $E = 1 \times 10^{-8}/\text{m}$.

The influence of stability is usually expressed by a *stability frequency* N:

$$N^2 = -\frac{g}{\rho}\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} \;(\text{radians/s})^2 \tag{8.28}$$

The stability frequency is often called the *Brunt-Vaisala frequency* or the *stratification frequency*. The frequency quantifies the importance of stability, and it is a fundamental variable in the dynamics of stratified flow. In simplest terms, the frequency can be interpreted as the vertical frequency excited by a vertical displacement of a fluid parcel. Thus, it is the maximum frequency of internal waves in the ocean. Typical values of N are a few cycles per hour (Figure 8.5).

Dynamic Stability and Richardson's Number If velocity changes with depth in a stable, stratified flow, then the flow may become unstable if the change in velocity with depth, the *current shear*, is large enough. The simplest example is wind blowing over the ocean. In this case, stability is very large across the sea surface. We might say it is infinite because there is a step discontinuity in ρ, and (8.28) is infinite. Yet, wind blowing on the ocean creates waves, and if the wind is strong enough, the surface becomes unstable and the waves break.

This is an example of *dynamic instability* in which a stable fluid is made unstable by velocity shear. Another example of dynamic instability, the Kelvin-Helmholtz instability, occurs when the density contrast in a sheared flow is much less than at the sea surface, such as in the thermocline or at the top of a stable, atmospheric boundary layer (Figure 8.6).

The relative importance of static stability and dynamic instability is expressed by the *Richardson Number*:

$$\boxed{R_i \equiv \frac{g\,E}{(\partial U/\partial z)^2}} \tag{8.29}$$

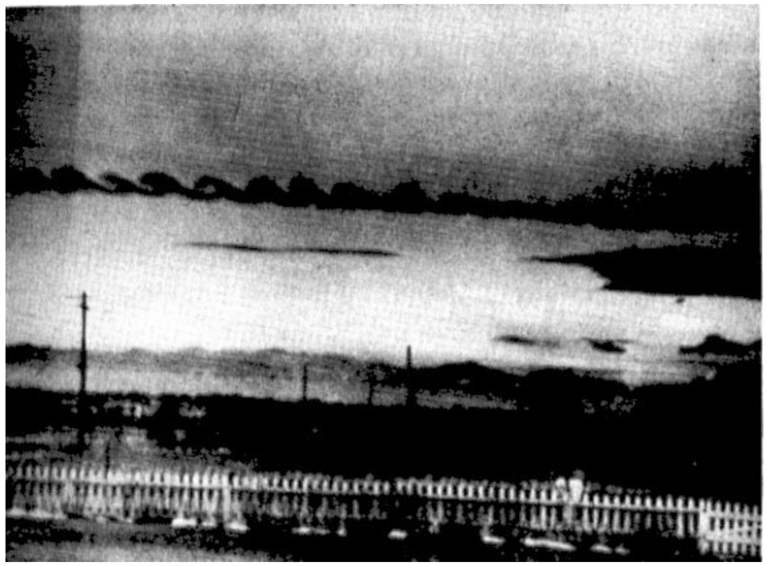


Figure 8.6 Billow clouds showing a Kelvin-Helmholtz instability at the top of a stable atmospheric boundary layer near Denver, Colorado (From Drazin and Reid 1981). Note that the billows become large enough that more dense air overlies less dense air, and the billows collapse into turbulence.

where the numerator is the strength of the static stability, and the denominator is the strength of the velocity shear.

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_i &> 0.25 \quad \text{Stable} \\
R_i &< 0.25 \quad \text{Velocity Shear Enhances Turbulence}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that a small Richarson number is not the only criterion for instability. The Reynolds number must be large and the Richardson number must be less than 0.25 for turbulence. These criteria are met in some oceanic flows. The turbulence mixes fluid in the vertical, leading to a vertical eddy viscosity and eddy diffusivity. Because the ocean tends to be strongly stratified and currents tend to be weak, turbulent mixing is intermittent and rare. Measurements of density as a function of depth rarely show more dense fluid over less dense fluid as seen in the breaking waves in Figure 8.6 (Moum and Caldwell 1985).

Double Diffusion and Salt Fingers In some regions of the ocean, less dense water overlies more dense water, yet the water column is unstable even if there are no currents. The instability occurs because the molecular diffusion of heat is about 100 times faster than the molecular diffusion of salt. The instability was first discovered by Melvin Stern in 1960 who quickly realized its importance in oceanography.

Consider two thin layers a few meters thick separated by a sharp interface (Figure 8.7). If the upper layer is warm and salty, and if the lower is colder and less salty than the upper layer, the interface becomes unstable even if the upper layer is less dense than the lower.

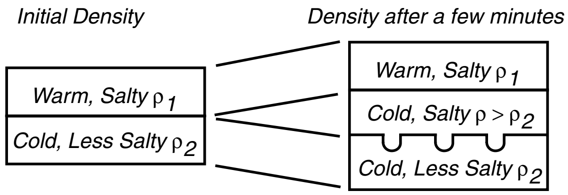


Figure 8.7 **Left:** Initial distribution of density in the vertical. **Right:** After some time, the diffusion of heat leads to a thin unstable layer between the two initially stable layers. The thin unstable layer sinks into the lower layer as salty fingers. The vertical scale in the figures is a few centimeters.

Here's what happens. Heat diffuses across the interface faster than salt, leading to a thin, cold, salty layer between the two initial layers. The cold salty layer is more dense than the cold, less-salty layer below, and the water in the layer sinks. Because the layer is thin, the fluid sinks in fingers 1–5 cm in diameter and 10s of centimeters long, not much different in size and shape from our fingers. This is *salt fingering*. Because two constituents diffuse across the interface, the process is called *double diffusion*.

There are four variations on this theme. Two variables taken two at a time leads to four possible combinations:

1. Warm salty over colder less salty: This process is called *salt fingering*. It occurs in central waters of sub-tropical gyres, western tropical North Atlantic, and the North-east Atlantic beneath the outflow from the Mediterranean Sea. Salt fingering eventually leads to density increasing with depth in a series of steps. Layers of constant-density are separated by thin layers with large changes in density, and the profile of density as a function of depth looks like stair steps. Schmitt et al (1987) observed 5–30 m thick steps in the western, tropical North Atlantic that were coherent over 200–400 km and that lasted for at least eight months.
2. Colder less salty over warm salty: This process is called *diffusive convection*. It is much less common than salt fingering, and it us mostly found at high latitudes. Diffusive convection also leads to a stair step of density as a function of depth. Here's what happens in this case. Double diffusion leads to a thin, warm, less-salty layer at the base of the upper, colder, less-salty layer. The thin layer of water rises and mixes with water in the upper layer. A similar processes occurs in the lower layer where a colder, salty layer forms at the interface. As a result of the convection in the upper and lower layers, the interface is sharpened; and any small gradients of density in either layer are reduced. Neal et al (1969) observed 2–10 m thick layers in the sea beneath the Arctic ice.
3. Cold salty over warmer less salty: Always statically unstable.
4. Warmer less salty over cold salty: Always stable and double diffusion diffuses the interface between the two layers.

Double diffusion mixes ocean water, and it cannot be ignored. Merryfield et al (1999), using a numerical model of the ocean circulation that included double diffusion, found that double-diffusive mixing changed the regional distributions of temperature and salinity although it had little influence on large-scale circulation of the ocean.

8.5 Mixing in the Ocean

Instability in the ocean leads to mixing. Because the ocean has stable stratification and any vertical displacement must work against the buoyancy force, vertical mixing requires more energy than horizontal mixing. The larger the stability frequency the greater the work required for vertical mixing. As a result, horizontal mixing along surfaces of constant density is much larger than vertical mixing across surfaces of constant density. The latter, however, usually called *diapycnal mixing*, is very important because it changes the vertical structure of the ocean, and it controls to a large extent the rate at which deep water eventually reaches the surface in mid and low latitudes.

In the ocean, mixing by turbulent eddies is far more important than mixing by molecular diffusion (Munk 1966). The equation for vertical mixing by eddies of a tracer Θ such as salt or temperature is:

$$\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t} + W\,\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(K_z \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial z}\right) + S \tag{8.30}$$

where K_z is the vertical eddy diffusivity, W is a mean vertical velocity, and S is a source term.

Average Vertical Mixing Average mixing rates in the ocean have been calculated for many years from the distribution of mean properties in the ocean. Munk (1966) considered the important case of the thermocline. He noted that measurements of temperature as a function of depth in the thermocline made decades apart showed the same structure (Figure 8.8). For a steady-state thermocline with no sources or sinks of heat, (8.30) reduces to:

$$W \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} = K_z \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial z^2} \tag{8.31}$$

where T is temperature as a function of depth in the thermocline. The steady-state thermocline requires that the downward mixing of heat by turbulence be balanced by an upward transport of heat by a mean vertical current W.

The equation has the solution:

$$T \approx T_0 \exp(z/H) \tag{8.32}$$

where $H = K_z/W$ is the scale depth of the thermocline, and T_0 is the temperature near the top of the thermocline. Observations of the shape of the deep thermocline are indeed very close to a exponential function. An exponential function fit through the observations of $T(z)$ gives H, from which K_z can be calculated if W is known.

Munk calculated W from the observed vertical distribution of ^{14}C, a radioactive isotope of carbon, to obtain a vertical time scale. In this case, $S =$

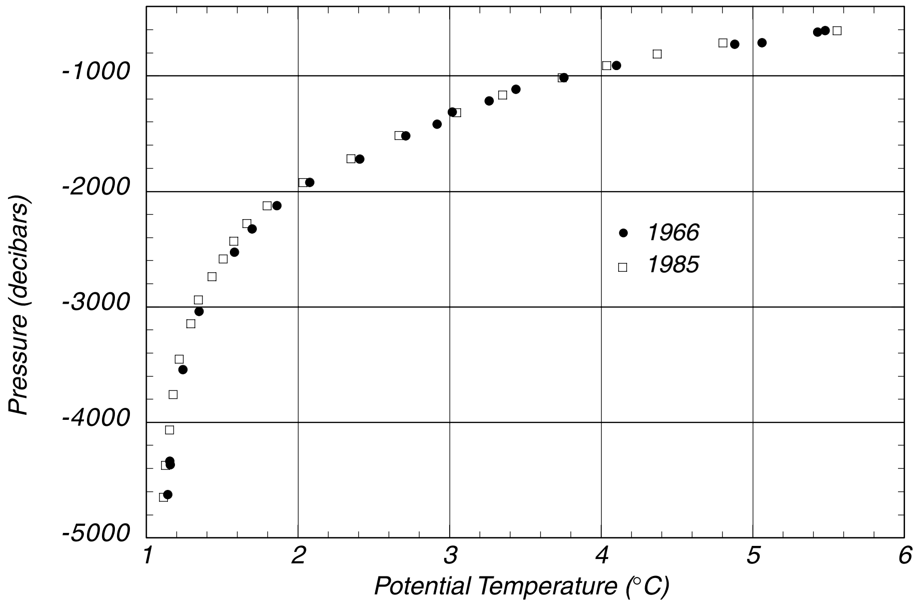


Figure 8.8 Potential temperature measured as a function of depth (pressure) near 24.7°N, 161.4°W in the central North Pacific by the *Yaquina* in 1966 (•), and by the *Thompson* in 1985 (□). Data from *Atlas of Ocean Sections* produced by Swift, Rhines, and Schlitzer.

-1.24×10^{-4} years^{-1}. The length and time scales gave $W = 1.2$ cm/day and

$$\langle K_z \rangle = 1.3 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^2\text{/s} \qquad \text{Average Vertical Eddy Diffusivity} \qquad (8.33)$$

where the brackets denote average eddy diffusivity in the thermocline.

Munk also used W to calculate the average vertical flux of water through the thermocline in the Pacific, and the flux agreed well with the rate of formation of bottom water assuming that bottom water upwells almost everywhere at a constant rate in the Pacific.

Measured Vertical Mixing Direct observations of vertical mixing required the development of techniques for measuring: i) the fine structure of turbulence, including probes able to measure temperature and salinity with a spatial resolution of a few centimeters (Gregg 1991), and ii) the distribution of tracers such as sulpher hexafluoride (SF_6) with concentrations of 10^{-15} mole.

Direct measurements of open-ocean turbulence and the diffusion of SF_6 yield an eddy diffusivity:

$$K_z \approx 1 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^2\text{/s} \qquad \text{Open-Ocean Vertical Eddy Diffusivity} \qquad (8.34)$$

For example, Ledwell, Watson, and Law (1991) injected 139 kg of SF_6 in the Atlantic near 26°N, 29°W 1200 km west of the Canary Islands at a depth of 310 m. They then measured the concentration for five months as it mixed over hundreds of kilometers to obtaine a diapycnal eddy diffusivity of $K_z = 1.1 \pm 0.2 \times 10^{-5}$ m^2/s.

These and other open-ocean experiments indicate that turbulent mixing is driven by breaking internal waves and shear instability at boundaries. Furthermore, mixing by turbulence seems to be more important than double diffusion (Gregg 1987).

The large discrepancy between the mean eddy diffusivity for vertical mixing and the observed values in the open ocean led to further experiments to resolve the difference. Two recent experiments are especially interesting.

1. Polzin et al. (1997) measured the vertical structure of temperature in the Brazil Basin in the South Atlantic. They found $K_z > 10^{-3}$ m^2/s close to the bottom when the water flowed over the western flank of the mid-Atlantic ridge at the eastern edge of the basin.
2. Kunze and Toole (1997) calculated enhanced eddy diffusivity as large as $K = 10^{-3}$ m^2/s above Fieberling Guyot in the Northwest Pacific and smaller diffusivities along the flank of the seamount. Summing the influence over all Pacific seamounts, they found, however, that the mixing near seamounts does not account for Munk's basin-wide average.

The experiments indicate that over seamounts and ridges

$$K_z \approx 10^{-3} \text{ m}^2/\text{s} \qquad \text{Rough Bottom Vertical Eddy Diffusivity} \tag{8.35}$$

The results of these and other experiments show that mixing occurs mostly at oceanic boundaries: along continental slopes, above seamounts and mid-ocean ridges, at fronts, and in the mixed layer at the sea surface.

Measured Horizontal Mizing Eddies mix fluid in the horizontal, and large eddies mix more fluid than small eddies. Eddies range in size from a few meters due to turbulence in the thermocline up to several hunderd kilometers for geostrophic eddies discussed in Chapter 10.

In general, mixing depends on Reynolds number R (Tennekes 1990: p. 11)

$$\frac{K}{\gamma} \approx \frac{K}{\nu} \sim \frac{UL}{\nu} = R \tag{8.36}$$

where γ is the molecular diffusivity of heat. Furthermore, horizontal eddy diffusivities are ten thousand to ten million times larger than the average vertical eddy diffusivity.

Equation (8.35) implies $K_x \sim UL$. This functional form agrees well with Joseph and Sender's (1958) analysis, as reported in (Bowden 1962) of spreading of radioactive tracers, optical turbidity, and Mediterranean Sea water in the North Atlantic. They report

$$\begin{gathered} K_x = PL \\ 10 \text{ km} < L < 1500 \text{ km} \\ P = 0.01 \pm 0.005 \text{ m/s} \end{gathered} \tag{8.37}$$

where L is the distance from the source, and U is a constant.

The horizontal eddy diffusivity (8.36) also agrees well with more recent reports of horizontal diffusivity. Work by Holloway (1986) who used satellite altimeter observations of geostrophic currents, Freeland et al. (1975) who tracked SOFAR underwater floats, McWilliams (1976) and Ledwell et al (1998) who used observations of currents and tracers to find

$$K_x \approx 8 \times 10^2 \text{ m}^2/\text{s} \qquad \text{Geostrophic Horizontal Eddy Diffusivity} \tag{8.38}$$

Using (8.37) and the measured K_x implies eddies with typical scales of 80 km, a value near the size of geostrophic eddies responsible for the mixing.

Ledwell, Watson, and Law (1991) also measured a horizontal eddy diffusivity. They found

$$K_x \approx 1 - 3 \text{ m}^2/\text{s} \qquad \text{Open-Ocean Horizontal Eddy Diffusivity} \tag{8.39}$$

over scales of meters due to turbulence in the thermocline probably driven by breaking internal waves. This value, when used in (8.37) implies typical lengths of 100 m for the small eddies responsible for mixing in this experiment.

Comments

1. Water in the interior of the ocean seems to move along sloping surfaces of constant density with little local mixing until it reaches a boundary where it is mixed vertically. The mixed water then moves back into the open ocean again along surfaces of constant density (Gregg 1985).

   One particular case is particularly noteworthy. When water mixed downward through the base of the mixed layer flows out into the thermocline along surfaces of constant density, the mixing leads to the *ventilated thermocline* model of oceanic density distributions.

2. The observations of mixing in the ocean imply that numerical models of the oceanic circulation should use mixing schemes that have different eddy diffusivities parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of constant density, not parallel and perpendicular to level surfaces of constant z as we used above. Horizontal mixing along surfaces of constant z leads to mixing across layers of constant density because layers of constant density are inclined to the horizontal by about 10^{-3} radians (see §10.7 and figure 10.13). Studies by Danabasoglu, McWilliams, and Gent (1994) show that numerical models using isopycnal and diapycnal mixing leads to much more realistic simulations of the oceanic circulation.

3. The observed mixing in the open ocean away from bundaries is too small to account for the mixing calculated by Munk. Recent work reported at the World Ocean Circulation Experiment Conference on Circulation and Climate 1998 and by Munk and Wunsch (1998) indicate thet the dilemma may be resolved several ways:

   (a) First, separate studies by Gargett, Salmon, and Marotzke show that we must separate the concept of deep convection from that of the meridional overturning circulation (see chapter 13). Deep convection may mix properties not mass. The mass of upwelled water required by Munk may be overestimated, and the vertical mixing needed to balance the upwelling may be smaller than he calculated.

(b) Second, mixing probably takes place along boundaries or in the source regions for thermocline waters (Gnadadesikan, 1999). For example, water at 1200 m in the central North Atlantic could move horizontally to the Gulf Stream, where it mixes with water from 1000 m. The mixed water may then move horizontally back into the central North Atlantic at a depth of 1100 m. Thus water at 1200 m and at 1100 m may reach their position along entirely different paths.

8.6 Important Concepts

1. Friction in the ocean is important only over distances of a few millimeters. For most flows, friction can be ignored.
2. The ocean is turbulent for all flows whose typical dimension exceeds a few centimeters, yet the theory for turbulent flow in the ocean is poorly understood.
3. The influence of turbulence is a function of the Reynolds number of the flow. Flows with the same geometry and Reynolds number have the same streamlines.
4. Oceanographers assume that turbulence influences flows over distances greater than a few centimeters in the same way that molecular viscosity influences flow over much smaller distances.
5. The influence of turbulence leads to Reynolds stress terms in the momentum equation.
6. The influence of static stability in the ocean is expressed as a frequency, the stability frequency. The larger the frequency, the more stable the water column.
7. The influence of shear stability is expressed through the Richardson number. The greater the velocity shear, and the weaker the static stability, the more likely the flow will become turbulent.
8. Molecular diffusion of heat is much faster than the diffusion of salt. This leads to a double-diffusion instability which modifies the density distribution in the water column in many regions of the ocean.
9. Instability in the ocean leads to mixing. Mixing across surfaces of constant density is much smaller than mixing along such surfaces.
10. Calculations of the average eddy diffusivity in the interior of the ocean is much smaller than measured diffusivity.
11. Measurements of eddy diffusivity indicate water is mixed vertically near oceanic boundaries such as above seamounts and mid-ocean ridges. This may explain the small measured values of open-ocean diffusivity.

Chapter 9

Response of the Upper Ocean to Winds

If you have had a chance to travel around the United States, you may have noticed that the climate of the east coast differs considerably from that on the west coast. Why? Why is the climate of Charleston, South Carolina so different from that of San Diego, although both are near 32°N, and both are on or near the ocean? Charleston has 125–150 cm of rain a year, San Diego has 25–50 cm, Charleston has hot summers, San Diego has cool summers. Or why is the climate of San Francisco so different from that of Norfolk, Virginia?

If we look closely at the characteristics of the atmosphere along the two coasts near 32°N, we find more differences that may explain the climate. For example, when the wind blows onshore toward San Diego, it brings a cool, moist, marine, boundary layer a few hundred meters thick capped by much warmer, dry air. On the east coast, when the wind blows onshore, it brings a warm, moist, marine, boundary layer that is much thicker. Convection, which produces rain, is much easier on the east coast than on the west coast. Why then is the atmospheric boundary layer over the water so different on the two coasts? The answer can be found in part by studying the ocean's response to local winds, the subject of this chapter.

9.1 Inertial Motion

To begin our study of currents near the sea surface, let's consider first a very simple solution to the equations of motion, the response of the ocean to an impulse that sets the water in motion. For example, the impulse can be a strong wind blowing for a few hours. The water then moves under the influence of coriolis force and gravity. No other forces act on the water.

Such motion is said to be inertial. The mass of water continues to move due to its inertia. If the water were in space, it would move in a straignt line according to Newton's second law. But on a rotating earth, the motion is much different.

From (7.18) the equations of motion for a frictionless ocean are:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} + 2\Omega v \sin\varphi \tag{9.1a}$$

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} - 2\Omega u \sin\varphi \tag{9.1b}$$

$$\frac{dw}{dt} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + 2\Omega u \cos\varphi - g \tag{9.1c}$$

where p is pressure, $\Omega = 2\,\pi/(\text{sidereal day}) = 7.292 \times 10^{-5}$ rad/s is the rotation of the Earth in fixed coordinates, and φ is latitude. We have also used $F_i = 0$ because the fluid is frictionless.

Let's now look for simple solutions to these equations. To do this we must simplify the momentum equations. First, if only gravity and coriolis force act on the water, there must be no pressure gradient:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = 0$$

Furthermore, we can assume that the vertical velocity is small, $w \ll u,\ v$, so $2\,\Omega\cos\varphi \ll g$, and (9.1) becomes:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = 2\Omega\, v \sin\varphi = f v \tag{9.2a}$$

$$\frac{dv}{dt} = -2\Omega\, u \sin\varphi = -f u \tag{9.2b}$$

where:

$$\boxed{f = 2\,\Omega\, \sin\varphi} \tag{9.3}$$

is the *Coriolis Parameter*.

Equations (9.2) are two coupled, first-order, linear, differential equations which can be solved with standard techniques. If we solve the second equation for u, and insert it into the first equation we obtain:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\frac{1}{f}\frac{d^2 v}{dt^2} = f v$$

Rearranging the equation puts it into a standard form we should recognize, the equation for the harmonic oscillator:

$$\frac{d^2 v}{dt} + f^2 v = 0 \tag{9.4}$$

which has the solution (9.5). This current is called an *inertial corrent* or *inertial oscillation*:

$$\boxed{\begin{gathered} u = V \sin ft \\ v = V\ \cos ft \\ V^2 = u^2 + v^2 \end{gathered}} \tag{9.5}$$

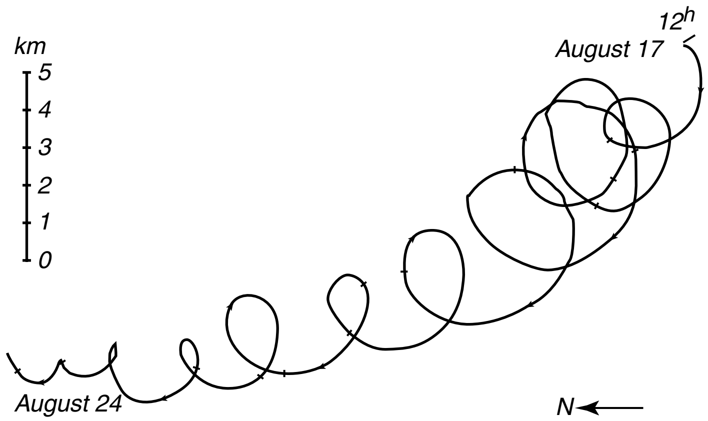


Figure 9.1 Trajectory of a water parcel calculated from current measured from August 17 to August 24, 1933 at 57°49'N and 17°49'E west of Gotland (From Sverdrup, Johnson, and Fleming, 1942).

Notice that (9.5) are the parametric equations for a circle with diameter $D_i = 2V/f$ and period $T_i = (2\pi)/f = T_{sd}/(2\sin\varphi)$ where T_{sd} is a siderial day (Figure 9.1).

T_i is the *inertial period*, and it is one half the time required for the rotation of a local plane on Earth's surface (Table 9.1). The direction of rotation is *anti-cyclonic*: clockwise in the northern hemisphere, counterclockwise in the southern. Notice that at latitudes near 30°, inertial oscillations have periods very close to once-per-day tidal periods, and it is difficult to separate inertial oscillations from tidal currents at these latitudes.

Table 9.1 Inertial Oscillations

Latitude (φ)	T_i (hr)	D (km)
	for V = 20 cm/s	
90°	11.97	2.7
35°	20.87	4.8
10°	68.93	15.8

Inertial currents are the free motion of parcels of water on a rotating plane. They are very common, and they occur everywhere in the ocean. Webster (1968) reviewed many published reports of inertial currents and found that currents have been observed at all depths in the ocean and at all latitudes. The motions are transient and decay in a few days. Oscillations at different depths or at different nearby sites are usually incoherent.

Inertial currents are usually caused by wind, with rapid changes of strong winds producing the largest oscillations. The forcing can be directly through the wind stress, or it can be indirect through non-linear interactions among ocean waves at the sea surface (Hasselmann, 1970). Although we have derived the equations for the oscillation assuming frictionless flow, friction cannot be completely neglected. With time, the oscillations decay into other surface currents. (See, for example, Apel, 1987: §6.3 for more information.)

Table 9.2 Contributions to the Theory of the Wind-Driven Circulation

Fridtjof Nansen	(1898)	Qualitative theory, currents transport water at an angle to the wind.
Vagn Walfrid Ekman	(1902)	Quantitative theory for wind-driven transport at the sea surface.
Harald Sverdrup	(1947)	Theory for wind-driven circulation in the eastern Pacific.
Henry Stommel	(1948)	Theory for westward intensification of wind-driven circulation (western boundary currents).
Walter Munk	(1950)	Quantitative theory for main features of the wind-driven circulation.
Kirk Bryan	(1963)	Numerical models of the oceanic circulation.
Bert Semtner and Robert Chervin	(1988)	Global, eddy-resolving, realistic model of the ocean's circulation.

9.2 Ekman Layer at the Sea Surface

Steady winds blowing on the sea surface produce a thin, horizontal boundary layer, the *Ekman layer*. By thin, I mean a layer that is at most a few-hundred meters thick, which is thin compared with the depth of the water in the deep ocean. A similar boundary layer exists at the bottom of the ocean, the *bottom Ekman layer*, and at the bottom of the atmosphere just above the sea surface, the planetary boundary layer or frictional layer described in §4.3. The Ekman layer is named after Professor Walfrid Ekman, who worked out its dynamics for his doctoral thesis.

Ekman's work was the first of a remarkable series of studies conducted during the first half of the twentieth century that led to an understanding of how winds drive the ocean's circulation (Table 9.1). In this chapter we consider Nansen and Ekman's work. The rest of the story is given in the next chapter and in Chapter 16.

Nansen's Qualitative Arguments Fridtjof Nansen, while drifting on the *Fram*, noticed that wind tended to drive ice at an angle of 20°–40° to the right of the wind in the Arctic, by which he meant that the track of the iceberg was to the right of the wind looking downwind (See figure 9.2). He subsequently worked out the basic balance of forces that must exist when wind tried to push icebergs downwind on a rotating earth.

Nansen argued that three forces must be important:

1. Wind Stress, $\mathbf{W}$;
2. Friction $\mathbf{F}$ (otherwise the iceberg would move as fast as the wind);
3. Coriolis Force, $\mathbf{C}$.

Nansen argued further that the forces must have the following attributes:

1. Drag must be opposite the direction of the ice's velocity;
2. Coriolis force must be perpendicular to the velocity;
3. The forces must balance for steady flow.

$$\mathbf{W} + \mathbf{F} + \mathbf{C} = 0$$

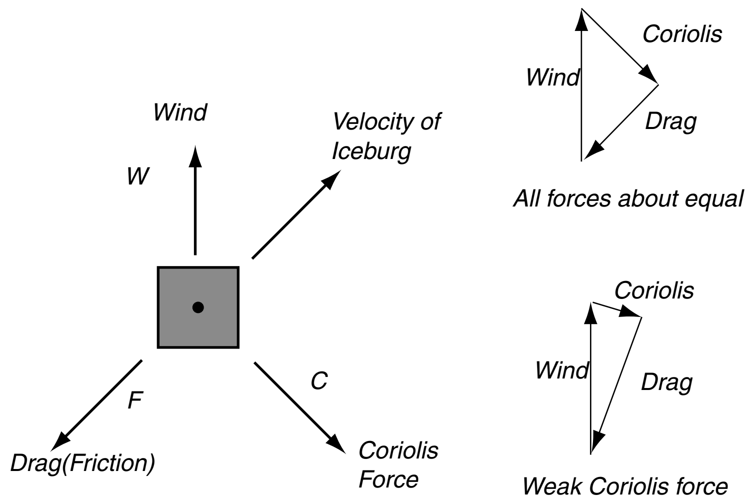


Figure 9.2 The balance of forces acting on an iceberg in a wind on a rotating Earth.

Ekman's Solution When Nansen returned to Stockholm, he asked Vilhelm Bjerknes to let one of Bjerknes' students make a theoretical study of the influence of Earth's rotation on wind-driven currents. Walfrid Ekman was chosen, and he presented the results in his thesis at Uppsala. Ekman later expanded the study to include the influence of continents and differences of density of water (Ekman, 1905). The following follows Ekman's line of reasoning in that paper.

Ekman assumed a steady, homogeneous, horizontal flow with friction on a rotating Earth. Thus horizontal and temporal derivatives are zero:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} = 0 \tag{9.6}$$

Ekman further assumed a constant vertical eddy viscosity of the form (8:13):

$$T_x = \rho_w \, A_z \, \frac{\partial u}{\partial z} \, , \qquad T_y = \rho_w \, A_z \, \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} \tag{9.7}$$

where T_x, T_y are the components of the wind stress in the x, y directions, and ρ_w is the density of sea water.

With these assumptions, and using (9.7) in (8.15), the x and y components of the momentum equation have the simple form:

$$fv + A_z \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{9.8a}$$

$$-fu + A_z \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial z^2} = 0 \tag{9.8b}$$

where f is the Coriolis parameter.

It is easy to verify that the equations (9.9) have solutions:

$$u = V_0 \, \exp(az) \, \sin(\pi/4 - az) \tag{9.9a}$$

$$v = V_0 \, \exp(az) \, \cos(\pi/4 - az) \tag{9.9b}$$

when the wind is blowing to the north ($T = T_y$). The constants are

$$V_0 = \frac{T}{\sqrt{\rho_w^2 \, f \, A_z}} \qquad \text{and} \qquad a = \sqrt{\frac{f}{2A_z}} \tag{9.10}$$

and V_0 is the velocity of the current at the sea surface.

Now let's look at the form of the solutions. At the sea surface $z = 0$, $\exp(z = 0) = 1$, and

$$u(0) = V_0 \cos(\pi/4) \tag{9.11a}$$
$$v(0) = V_0 \sin(\pi/4) \tag{9.11b}$$

The current has a speed of V_0 to the northeast. In general, the surface current is 45° to the right of the wind when looking downwind in the northern hemisphere. The current is 45° to the left of the wind in the southern hemisphere. Below the surface, the velocity decays exponentially with depth (Figure 9.3):

$$\left[u^2(z) + v^2(z)\right]^{1/2} = V_0 \exp(az) \tag{9.12}$$

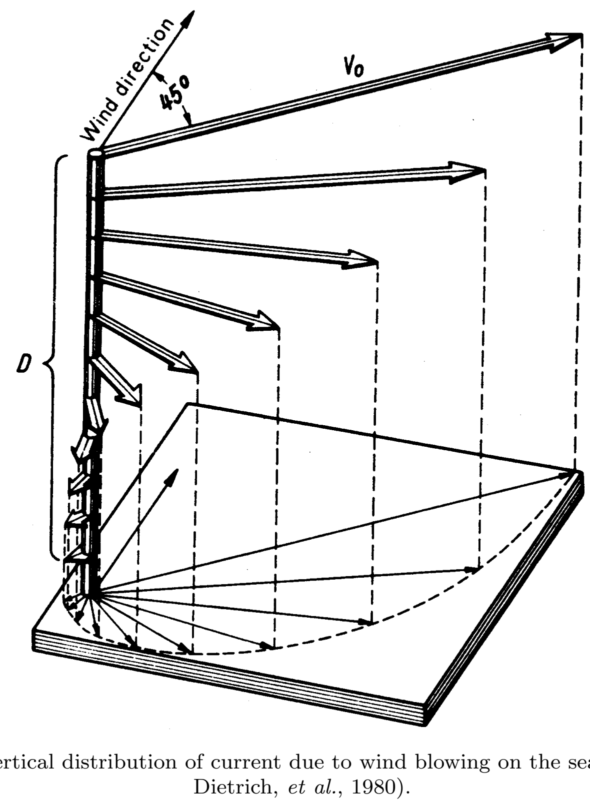


Figure 9.3. Vertical distribution of current due to wind blowing on the sea surface (From Dietrich, *et al.*, 1980).

Evaluation of Ekman's Solution To proceed further, we need values for any two of the free parameters: the velocity at the surface, V_0; the coefficient of eddy viscosity, A_z; or the wind stress T.

The wind stress is well known, and Ekman used the bulk formula (4.2):

$$T = \rho_{air}\, C_D\, U_{10}^2 \tag{9.13}$$

where ρ_{air} is the density of air, C_D is the drag coefficient, and U_{10} is the wind speed at 10 m above the sea. Ekman turned to the literature to obtain values for V_0 as a function of wind speed. He found:

$$V_0 = \frac{0.0127}{\sqrt{\sin|\varphi|}}\, U_{10}, \qquad\qquad |\varphi| \geq 10 \tag{9.14}$$

With this information, he could then calculate the velocity as a function of depth knowing the wind speed U_{10} and wind direction.

Ekman Layer Depth The thickness of the Ekman layer is arbitrary because the Ekman currents decrease exponentially with depth. Ekman proposed that the thickness be the depth D_E at which the current velocity is opposite the velocity at the surface, which occurs at a depth $D_E = \pi/a$, and the *Ekman layer depth* is:

$$\boxed{D_E = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2\, A_z}{f}}} \tag{9.15}$$

Using (9.13) in (9.10), dividing by U_{10}, and using (9.14) and (9.15) gives:

$$D_E = \frac{7.6}{\sqrt{\sin|\varphi|}}\, U_{10} \tag{9.16}$$

in SI units; wind in meters per second gives depth in meters. The constant in (9.16) is based on $\rho_w = 1027$ kg/m^3, $\rho_{air} = 1.25$ kg/m^3, and Ekman's value of $C_D = 2.6 \times 10^{-3}$ for the drag coefficient.

Using (9.16) with typical winds, the depth of the Ekman layer varies from about 10 to 25 meters (Table 9.3), and the velocity of the surface current varies from 2.5% to 1.1% of the wind speed depending on latitude.

Table 9.3 Typical Ekman Depths

	Latitude	
U_{10} [m/s]	15°	45°
5	10 m	6 m
10	20 m	12 m
20	39 m	24 m

The Ekman Number: Coriolis and Frictional Forces The depth of the Ekman layer is closely related to the depth at which frictional force is equal to the Coriolis force in the momentum equation (9.9). The Coriolis force is fu, and the frictional force is $A_z \partial^2 U / \partial z^2$. The ratio of the forces, which is non dimensional, is called the *Ekman Number* E_z:

$$E_z = \frac{\text{Friction Force}}{\text{Coriolis Force}} = \frac{A_z \dfrac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2}}{fu} = \frac{A_z \dfrac{u}{d^2}}{fu}$$

$$\boxed{E_z = \frac{A_z}{f\,d^2}} \tag{9.17}$$

where we have approximated the terms using typical velocities u, and typical depths d. The subscript z is needed because the ocean is stratified and mixing in the vertical is much less than mixing in the horizontal. Note that as depth increases, friction becomes small, and eventually, only the Coriolis force remains.

Solving (9.17) for d gives

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{A_z}{f E_z}} \tag{9.18}$$

which agrees with the functional form (9.15) proposed by Ekman. Equating (9.18) and (9.15) requires $E_z = 1/(2\pi^2) = 0.05$ at the Ekman depth. Thus Ekman chose a depth at which frictional forces are much smaller than the Coriolis force.

Bottom Ekman Layer The Ekman layer at the bottom of the ocean and the atmosphere differs from the layer at the ocean surface. The solution for a bottom layer below a fluid with velocity U in the x-direction is:

$$u = U[1 - \exp(-az)\,\cos\,az] \tag{9.19a}$$

$$v = U\,\exp(-az)\,\sin\,az \tag{9.19b}$$

The velocity goes to zero at the boundary, $u = v = 0$ at $z = 0$. The direction of the flow close to the boundary is 45° to the left of the flow U outside the boundary layer in the northern hemisphere; and the direction of the flow rotates with distance above the boundary (Figure 9.4). The direction of rotation is anticyclonic with distance above the bottom.

Winds above the planetary boundary layer are perpendicular to the pressure gradient in the atmosphere and parallel to lines of constant surface pressure. Winds at the surface are 45° to the left of the winds aloft, and surface currents are 45° to the right of the wind at the surface. Therefore we expect currents at the sea surface to be nearly in the direction of winds above the planetary boundary layer and parallel to lines of constant pressure. Observations of surface drifters in the Pacific tend to confirm the hypothesis (Figure 9.5).

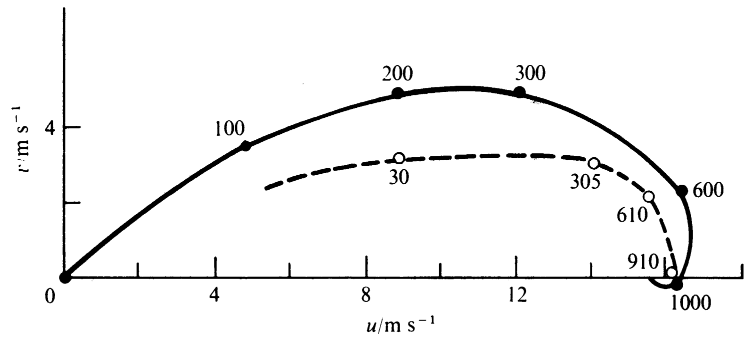


Figure 9.4 Ekman layer for the lowest kilometer in the atmosphere (solid line), together with wind velocity measured by Dobson (1914) - - - . The numbers give height above the surface in meters. The boundary layer at the bottom of the ocean has a similar shape. (From Houghton, 1977).

Examining Ekman's Assumptions Before considering the validity of Ekman's theory for describing flow in the surface boundary layer of the ocean, let's first examine the validity of Ekman's assumptions. He assumed:

1. No boundaries. This is valid away from coasts.
2. Deep water. This is valid if depth $\gg 200$ m.
3. f-plane. This is valid.
4. Steady state. This is valid if wind blows for longer than a pendulum day. Note however that Ekman also calculated a time-dependent solution, as

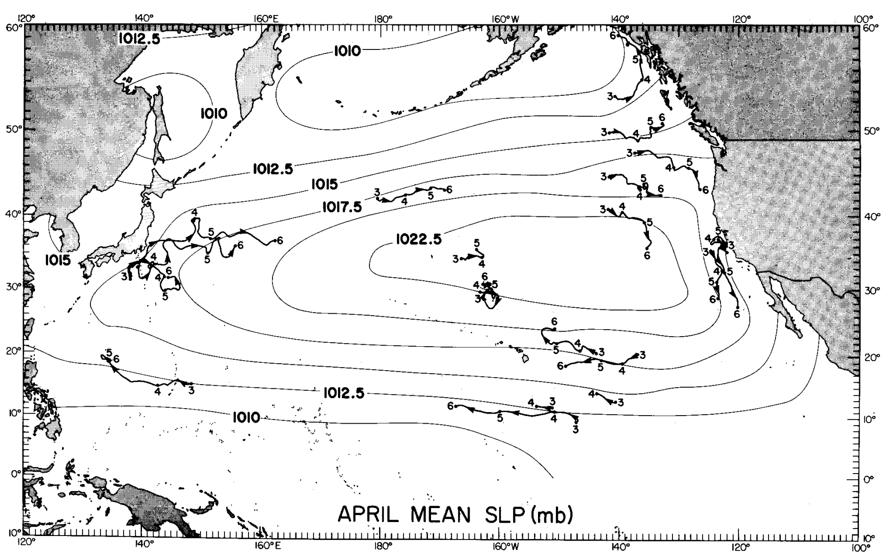


Figure 9.5 Trajectories of surface drifters in April 1978 together with surface pressure in the atmosphere averaged for the month. Note that drifters tend to follow lines of constant pressure except in the Kuroshio where ocean currents are fast compared with velocities in the Ekman layer in the ocean. (From McNally, *et al.* 1983).

did Hasselmann (1970).

5. A_z is a function of U_{10}^2 only. It is assumed to be independent of depth. This is not a good assumption. The mixed layer may be thinner than the Ekman depth, and A_z will change rapidly at the bottom of the mixed layer because mixing is a function of stability. Mixing across a stable layer is much less than mixing through a layer of a neutral stability. More realistic profiles for the coefficient of eddy viscosity as a function of depth change the shape of the calculated velocity profile. We reconsider this problem below.

6. Homogeneous density. This is probably good, except as it effects stability.

Observations of Flow Near the Sea Surface Does the flow close to the sea surface agree with Ekman's theory? Measurements of currents made during several, very careful experiments indicate that Ekman's theory is remarkably good. The theory accurately describes the flow averaged over many days. The measurements also point out the limitations of the theory.

Weller and Plueddmann (1996) measured currents from 2 m to 132 m using 14 vector-measuring current meters deployed from the Floating Instrument Platform FLIP in February and March 1990 500 km west of point Conception, California. This was the last of a remarkable series of experiments coordinated by Weller using instruments on FLIP.

Davis, DeSzoeke, and Niiler (1981) measured currents from 2 m to 175 m using 19 vector-measuring current meters deployed from a mooring for 19 days in August and September 1977 at 50°N, 145°W in the northeast Pacific.

Ralph and Niiler (1999) tracked 1503 drifters drogued to 15 m depth in the Pacific from March 1987 to December 1994. Wind velocity was obtained every 6 hours from the European Centre for Medium-Range Weather Forcasts ECMWF.

The results of the experiments indicate that:

1. Inertial currents are the largest component of the flow.

2. The flow is nearly independent of depth within the mixed layer for periods near the inertial period. Thus the mixed layer moves like a slab at the inertial period. Current shear is concentrated at the top of the thermocline.

3. The flow averaged over many inertial periods is almost exactly that calculated from Ekman's theory. The shear of the Ekman currents extends through the averaged mixed layer and into the thermocline. Ralph and Niiler found:

$$D_E = \frac{7.12}{\sqrt{\sin|\varphi|}}\, U_{10} \tag{9.20}$$

$$V_0 = \frac{0.0068}{\sqrt{\sin|\varphi|}}\, U_{10} \tag{9.21}$$

The Ekman-layer depth D_E is almost exactly that proposed by Ekman (9.16), but the surface current V_0 is half his value (9.14).

4. The transport is 90° to the right of the wind in the northern hemisphere. The transport direction agrees well with Ekman's theory.

Note that few experiments are able to produce useful measurements of Ekman currents. This is because because it is hard to make accurate, direct measurements of currents within the Ekman layer at the sea surface. Two important difficulties must be overcome:

1. Direct measurements of currents are difficult to make. Ekman currents are fastest within a few meters of the sea surface after winds have been blowing strongly for at least a day. But strong winds blowing for a day produce large waves that have large oscillating currents within a few meters of the surface. Only vector-measuring moored current meters and holey-sock drifters work accurately during these conditions. (see §10.8).
2. Ekman currents are difficult to separate from other near-surface currents, including those in geostrophic balance (see Chapter 10), and currents due to waves, inertial oscillations, Langmuir circulation, and tides. Currents must be mesaures once a second for many days to separate the different contributions to the signal.

Langmuir Circulation The measurements of surface currents show that the near-surface flow in the ocean with variable stratification and changing wind and wave conditions is much more complicated than the simple Ekman layer we have been describing. Other processes complicate the picture. One important process is the Langmuir circulation. According to Langmuir, surface currents spiral around an axis parallel to the wind direction. Weller, *et al.* (1985) observed such a flow during an experiment to measure the wind-driven circulation in the upper 50 meters of the sea. They found that during a period when the wind speed was 14 m/s, surface currents were organized into Langmuir cells spaced 20 m apart, the cells were aligned at an angle of 15° to the right of the wind; and vertical velocity at 23 m depth was concentrated in narrow jets under the areas of surface convergence (Figure 9.6). Maximum vertical velocity was −0.18 m/s. The seasonal thermocline was at 50 m, and no downward velocity was observed in or below the thermocline.

Influence of Stability in the Ekman Layer Ralph and Niiler (1999) point out that Ekman's choice of an equation for surface currents (9.14), which leads to (9.16), is consistent with theories that include the influence of stability in the upper ocean. Currents with periods near the inertial period produce shear in the thermocline. The shear mixes the surface layers when the Richardson number falls below the critical value (Pollard et al. 1973). This idea, when included in mixed-layer theories, leads to a surface current V_0 that is proportional to $\sqrt{Nf}$

$$V_0 \sim U_{10}\sqrt{N/f} \tag{9.22}$$

furthermore

$$A_z \sim U_{10}^2/N \qquad \text{and} \qquad D_E \sim U_{10}/\sqrt{Nf} \tag{9.23}$$

Notice that (9.22) and (9.23) are now dimensionally correct. The equations used earlier, (9.14), (9.16), (9.20), and (9.21) all required a dimensional coefficient.

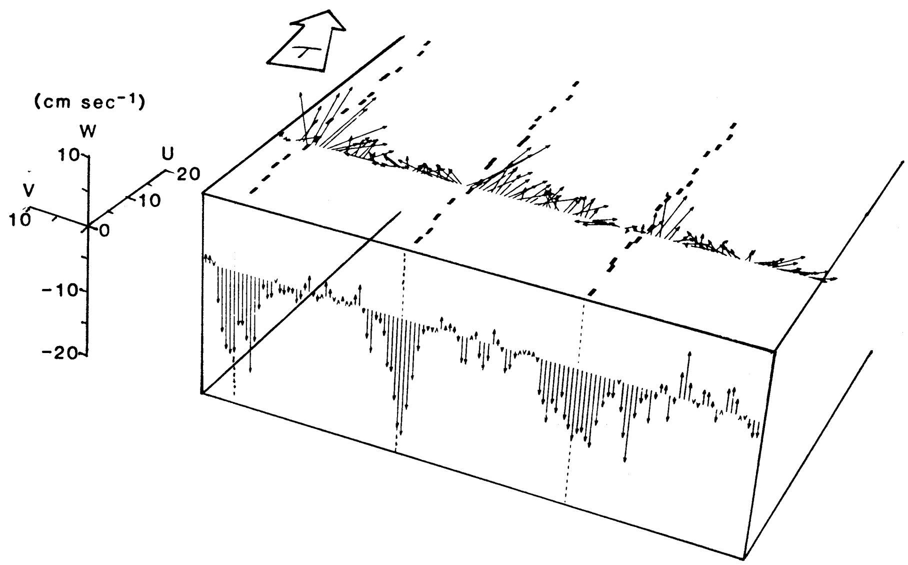


Figure 9.6 A three-dimensional view of the Langmuir circulation at the surface of the Pacific observed from the Floating Instrument Platform FLIP. The heavy dashed line on the sea surface indicate lines of convergence marked by cards on the surface. Vertical arrows are individual values of vertical velocity measured every 14 seconds at 23 m depth as the platform drifted through the Langmuir currents. Horizontal arrows, which are drawn on the surface for clarity, are values of horizontal velocity at 23 m. The broad arrow gives the direction of the wind (From Weller *et al.* 1985).

9.3 Ekman Mass Transports

Flow in the Ekman layer at the sea surface carries mass. For many reasons we may want to know the total mass transported in the layer. The *Ekman mass transport* M_E is defined as the integral of the Ekman velocity U_E, V_E from the surface to a depth d below the Ekman layer. The two components of the transport are M_{Ex}, M_{Ey} :

$$M_{Ex} = \int_{-d}^{0} \rho U_E \, dz, \qquad M_{Ey} = \int_{-d}^{0} \rho V_E \, dz \tag{9.24}$$

The transport has units kg/(m·s); and it is the mass of water passing through a vertical plane one meter wide that is perpendicular to the transport and extending from the surface to depth $-d$ (Figure 9.7).

Volume transport Q is the mass transport divided by the density of water and multiplied by the width perpendicular to the transport.

$$Q_x = \frac{Y M_x}{\rho}, \qquad Q_y = \frac{X M_y}{\rho} \tag{9.25}$$

where Y is the north-south distance across which the eastward transport Q_x is calculated, and X in the east-west distance across which the northward transport Q_y is calculated. Volume transport has dimensions of cubic meters per

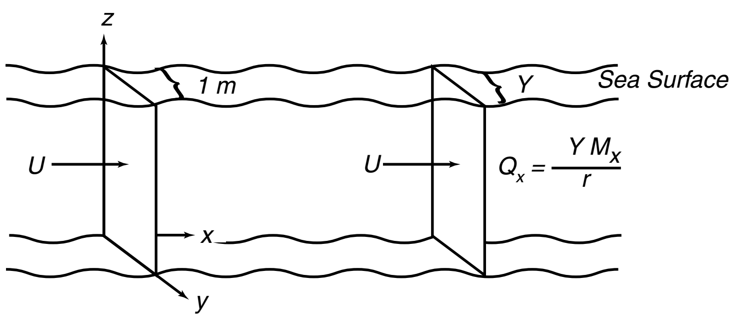


Figure 9.7 Sketch for defining **Left:** mass transports, and **Right:** volume transports.

second. A convenient unit for volume transport in the ocean is a million cubic meters per second. This unit is called a *Sverdrup*, and it is abbreviated Sv.

We calculate the Ekman mass transports by integrating (8.15) in (9.24):

$$f \int_{-d}^{0} \rho\, V_E\, dz = f\, M_{Ey} = -\int_{-d}^{0} dT_x$$

$$f\, M_{Ey} = -T_x\big|_{z=0} + T_x\big|_{z=-d} \tag{9.26}$$

A few hundred meters below the surface the Ekman velocities approach zero, and the last term of (9.26) is zero. Thus mass transport is due only to wind stress at the sea surface ($z = 0$). In a similar way, we can calculate the transport in the x direction to obtain the two components of the *Ekman mass transport*:

$$f\, M_{Ey} = -T_x(0) \tag{9.27a}$$

$$f\, M_{Ex} = \quad T_y(0) \tag{9.27b}$$

where $T(0)$ is the stress at the sea surface.

Notice that the transport is perpendicular to the wind stress, and to the right of the wind in the northern hemisphere. If the wind is to the north in the positive y direction (a south wind), then $T_x(0) = 0$, $M_{Ey} = 0$; and $M_{Ex} = T_y(0)/f$. In the northern hemisphere, f is positive, and the mass transport is in the x direction, to the east.

It may seem strange that the drag of the wind on the water leads to a current at right angles to the drag. The result follows from the assumption that friction is confined to a thin surface boundary layer, that it is zero in the interior of the ocean, and that the current is in equilibrium with the wind so that it is no longer accelerating.

Recent observations of Ekman transport in the ocean agree with the theoretical values (9.27). Chereskin and Roemmich (1991) measured the Ekman volume transport across 11°N in the Atlantic using an acoustic Doppler current profiler described in Chapter 10. They calculated a southward transport $Q_y = 12.0 \pm 5.5$ Sv from direct measurements of current, $Q_y = 8.8 \pm 1.9$ Sv from measured winds using (9.27) and (9.25), and $Q_y = 13.5 \pm 0.3$ Sv from mean winds averaged over many years at 11°N.

Advantages of Use of Transports The calculation of mass transports has two important advantages. First, the calculation is much more robust than calculations of velocities in the Ekman layer. By robust, I mean that the calculation is based on fewer assumptions, and that the results are more likely to be correct. Thus the calculated mass transport does not depend on knowing the distribution of velocity in the Ekman layer or the eddy viscosity.

Second, the variability of transport in space has important consequences. Let's look at a few applications.

9.4 Application of Ekman Theory

Because winds blowing on the sea surface produce an Ekman layer that transports water at right angles to the wind direction, any spatial variability of the wind, or winds blowing along some coasts, can lead to upwelling. And upwelling is important:

1. Enhanced biological productivity in upwelling regions leads to important fisheries.
2. Cold upwelled water alters local weather. Weather onshore of regions of upwelling tend to have fog, low stratus clouds, a stable stratified atmosphere, little convection, and little rain.
3. Spatial variability of transports leads to upwelling and downwelling, which leads to redistribution of mass in the ocean, which leads to wind-driven geostrophic currents via Ekman pumping, a process we will consider in Chapter 11.

Coastal Upwelling To see how winds lead to upwelling, consider north winds blowing parallel to the California Coast (Figure 9.8 left). The wind produces a mass transport away from the shore everywhere along the shore. The water pushed offshore can be replaced only by water from below the Ekman layer. This is *upwelling* (Figure 9.8 right). Because the upwelled water is cold, the upwelling leads to a region of cold water at the surface along the coast. Figure 10.17 shows the distribution of cold water off the coast of California.

Upwelled water is colder than water normally found on the surface, and it is richer in nutrients. The nutrients fertilize phytoplankton in the mixed layer, which are eaten by zooplankton, which are eaten by small fish, which are eaten by larger fish and so on to infinity. As a result, upwelling regions are productive waters supporting the world's major fisheries. The important regions are offshore of Peru, California, Somalia, Morocco, and Namibia.

Now we can answer the question we asked at the beginning of the chapter: Why is the climate of San Francisco so different from that of Norfolk, Virginia? Figures 4.2 or 9.8 show that wind along the California and Oregon coasts has a strong southward component. The wind causes upwelling along the coast; which leads to cold water close to shore. The shoreward component of the wind brings warmer air from far offshore over the colder water, which cools the incoming air close to the sea, leading to a thin, cool atmospheric boundary layer. As the air cools, fog forms along the coast. Finally, the cool layer of air is blown over

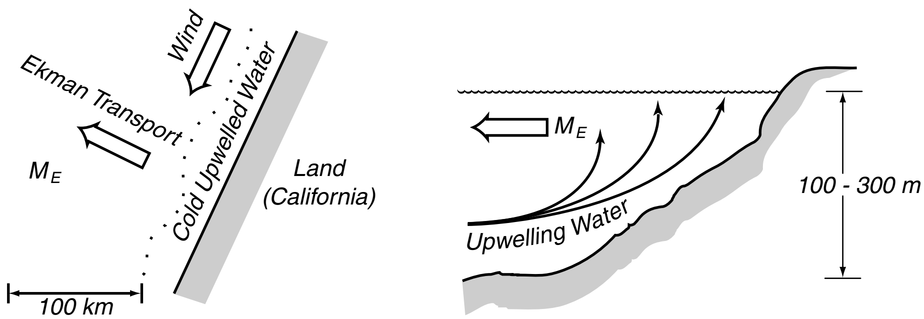


Figure 9.8 Sketch of Ekman transport along a coast leading to upwelling of cold water along the coast. **Left:** Cross section. The water transported offshore must be replaced by water upwelling from below the mixed layer. **Right:** Plan view. North winds along a west coast in the northern hemisphere cause Ekman transports away from the shore.

San Francisco, cooling the city. The warmer air above the boundary layer, due to downward velocity of the Hadley circulation in the atmosphere (see Figure 4.3), inhibits vertical convection, and rain is rare. Rain forms only when winter storms coming ashore bring strong convection higher up in the atmosphere.

In addition to upwelling, there are other processes influencing weather in California and Virginia.

1. The mixed layer at the sea surface tends to be thin on the eastern side of oceans, and upwelling can easily bring up cold water.
2. Currents along the eastern side of oceans at mid-latitudes tend to bring colder water from higher latitudes.
3. The marine boundary layer in the atmosphere, that layer of moist air above the sea, is only a few hundred meters thick in the eastern Pacific near California. It is over a kilometer thick near Asia.

All these processes are reversed offshore of east coasts, leading to warm water close to shore, thick atmospheric boundary layers, and frequent convective rain. Thus Norfolk is much different that San Francisco due to upwelling and the direction of the coastal currents.

Ekman Pumping The spatial variability of the wind at the sea surface leads to spatial variability of the Ekman transports. Because mass must be conserved, the spatial variability of the transports must lead to vertical velocities at the top of the Ekman layer (see §7.8). To calculate this velocity, we first integrate the continuity equation (7.19) in the vertical:

$$\rho \int_{-d}^{0} \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \right) dz = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \int_{-d}^{0} \rho\, u\, dz + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \int_{-d}^{0} \rho\, v\, dz = -\frac{\partial}{\partial z} \int_{-d}^{0} \rho\, w\, dz$$

$$\frac{\partial M_{Ex}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial M_{Ey}}{\partial y} = -\rho\, [w(0) - w(-d)] \tag{9.28}$$

By definition, the Ekman velocities approach zero at the base of the Ekman layer, and the vertical velocity at the base of the layer $w_E(-d)$ due to divergence of the Ekman flow must be zero. Therefore:

$$\frac{\partial M_{Ex}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial M_{Ey}}{\partial y} = -\rho\, w_E(0) \tag{9.29a}$$

$$\boxed{\nabla_H \cdot \mathbf{M}_E = -\rho\, w_E(0)} \tag{9.29b}$$

Where $\mathbf{M}_E$ is the vector mass transport due to Ekman flow in the upper boundary layer of the ocean, and ∇_H is the horizontal divergence operator. (9.29) states that the horizontal divergence of the Ekman transports leads to a vertical velocity in the upper boundary layer of the ocean, a process called *Ekman Pumping.*

If we use the Ekman mass transports (9.27) in (9.29) we can relate Ekman pumping to the wind stress.

$$w_E(0) = -\frac{1}{\rho}\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{T_x(0)}{f}\right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{T_y(0)}{f}\right)\right] \tag{9.30a}$$

$$w_E(0) = -\text{curl}\left(\frac{\mathbf{T}}{\rho\, f}\right) \tag{9.30b}$$

where $\mathbf{T}$ is the vector wind stress.

The vertical velocity at the sea surface $w(0)$ must be zero because the surface cannot rise into the air, so $w_E(0)$ must be balanced by another vertical velocity. We will see in Chapter 12 that it is balanced by a geostrophic velocity $w_G(0)$ at the top of the interior flow in the ocean.

Note that the derivation above follows Pedlosky (1996), and it differs from the traditional approach that leads to a vertical velocity at the base of the Ekman layer. Pedlosky points out that if the Ekman layer is very thin compared with the depth of the ocean, it makes no difference whether the velocity is calculated at the top or bottom of the Ekman layer, but this is usually not true for the ocean. Hence, we must compute vertical velocity at the top of the layer. Note also that in deriving (9.29) we have implicitly assumed that the sea surface is at $z = 0$. If it is not, the limits of the integration are not constant. For this case, see Fofonoff (1962b).

9.5 Important Concepts

1. Changes in wind stress produce transient oscillations in the ocean called inertial currents
   (a) Inertial currents are very common in the ocean.
   (b) The period of the current is $(2\pi)/f$.
2. Steady winds produce a thin boundary layer, the Ekman layer, at the top of the ocean. Ekman boundary layers also exist at the bottom of the ocean and the atmosphere. The Ekman layer in the atmosphere above the sea surface is called the planetary boundary layer.

3. The Ekman layer at the sea surface has the following characteristics:
   (a) *Direction*: 45°to the right of the wind looking downwind in the Northern Hemisphere.
   (b) *Surface Speed*: 1–2.5% of wind speed depending on latitude.
   (c) *Depth*: approximately 5–30 m depending on latitude and wind velocity.
4. Careful measurements of currents near the sea surface show that:
   (a) Inertial oscillations are the largest component of the current in the mixed layer.
   (b) The flow is nearly independent of depth within the mixed layer for periods near the inertial period. Thus the mixed layer moves like a slab at the inertial period.
   (c) An Ekman layer exists in the atmosphere just above the sea (and land) surface.
   (d) Surface drifters tend to drift parallel to lines of constant atmospheric pressure at the sea surface. This is consistent with Ekman's theory.
   (e) The flow averaged over many inertial periods is almost exactly that calculated from Ekman's theory.
5. Transport is 90° to the right of the wind in the northern hemisphere.
6. Spatial variability of Ekman transport, due to spatial variability of winds over distances of hundreds of kilometers and days, leads to convergence and divergence of the transport.
   (a) Winds blowing toward the equator along west coasts of continents produces upwelling along the coast. This leads to cold, productive waters within about 100 km of the shore.
   (b) Upwelled water along west coasts of continents modifies the weather along the west coasts.

Chapter 10

Geostrophic Currents

Within the ocean's interior away from the top and bottom Ekman layers, for horizontal distances exceeding a few tens of kilometers, and for times exceeding a few days, horizontal pressure gradients in the ocean almost exactly balance the Coriolis force resulting from horizontal currents. This balance is known as the *geostrophic approximation*.

The dominant forces acting in the vertical are the vertical pressure gradient and the weight of the water. The two balance within a few parts per million. Thus pressure at any point in the water column is due almost entirely to the weight of the water in the column above the point. The dominant forces in the horizontal are the pressure gradient and the Coriolis force. They balance within a few parts per thousand over large distances and times (See Box).

Both balances require that viscosity and nonlinear terms in the equations of motion be negligible. Is this reasonable? Consider viscosity. We know that a rowboat weighing a hundred kilograms will coast for maybe ten meters after the rower stops. A super tanker moving at the speed of a rowboat may coast for kilometers. It seems reasonable, therefore that a cubic kilometer of water weighing 10^{15} kg would coast for perhaps a day before slowing to a stop. And oceanic mesoscale eddies contain perhaps 1000 cubic kilometers of water. Hence, our intuition may lead us to conclude that neglect of viscosity is reasonable. Of course, intuition can be wrong, and we need to refer back to scaling arguments.

10.1 Hydrostatic Equilibrium

Before describing the geostrophic balance, let's first consider the simplest solution of the momentum equation, the solution for an ocean at rest. It gives the hydrostatic pressure within the ocean. To obtain the solution, we assume the fluid is stationary:

$$u = v = w = 0; \tag{10.1}$$

the fluid remains stationary:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{dw}{dt} = 0; \tag{10.2}$$

Scaling the Equations: The Geostrophic Approximation

We wish to simplify the equations of motion to obtain solutions that describe the deep-sea conditions well away from coasts and below the Ekman boundary layer at the surface. To begin, let's examine the typical size of each term in the equations in the expectation that some will be so small that they can be dropped without changing the dominant characteristics of the solutions. For interior, deep-sea conditions, typical values for distance L, horizontal velocity U, depth H, Coriolis parameter f, gravity g, and density ρ are:

$$\begin{aligned} L &\approx 10^6 \text{ m} & f &\approx 10^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1} \\ U &\approx 10^{-1} \text{ m/s} & g &\approx 10 \text{ m/s}^2 \\ H &\approx 10^3 \text{ m} & \rho &\approx 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

From these variables we can calculate typical values for vertical velocity W, pressure P, and time T:

$$\frac{\partial W}{\partial z} = -\left(\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right)$$

$$\frac{W}{H} = \frac{U}{L}; \quad W = \frac{UH}{L} = \frac{10^{-1}\,10^{3}}{10^6} \text{ m/s} = 10^{-4}\text{m/s}$$

$$P = \rho g z = 10^3\,10^1\,10^3 = 10^7 \text{ Pa}$$

$$T = L/U = 10^7 \text{ s}$$

The momentum equation for vertical velocity is therefore:

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial w}{\partial x} + v\frac{\partial w}{\partial y} + w\frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} + 2\Omega\, u\cos\varphi - g$$

$$\frac{W}{T} + \frac{UW}{L} + \frac{UW}{L} + \frac{W^2}{L} = \frac{P}{\rho H} + fU - g$$

$$10^{-11} + 10^{-11} + 10^{-11} + 10^{-14} = 10 \quad + 10^{-5} - 10$$

and the only important balance in the vertical is hydrostatic:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = -\rho g \quad \text{Correct to} \quad 1:10^6.$$

The momentum equation for horizontal velocity in the x direction is:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + u\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + v\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} + w\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = -\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} + fv$$

$$10^{-8} + \ 10^{-8} + \ 10^{-8} + \ 10^{-8} = \quad 10^{-5} \ + 10^{-5}$$

Thus the Coriolis force balances the pressure gradient within one part per thousand. This is called the *geostrophic balance*, and the *geostrophic equations* are:

$$\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = fv; \quad \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = -fu; \quad \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = -g$$

This balance applies to oceanic flows with horizontal dimensions larger than roughly 50 km and times greater than a few days.

and, there is no friction:

$$f_x = f_y = f_z = 0. \tag{10.3}$$

With these assumptions, (7.18) becomes:

$$\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = 0; \qquad \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = 0; \qquad \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = -\,g(\varphi, z) \tag{10.4}$$

where we have explicitly noted that gravity g is a function of latitude φ and height z. We will show later why we have kept this explicit.

Equations (10.4a) require surfaces of constant pressure to be level surface. A surface of constant pressure is an *isobaric surface*. The last equation can be integrated to obtain the pressure at any depth h. Recalling that ρ is a function of depth for an ocean at rest.

$$p = \int_{-h}^{0} g(\varphi, z)\,\rho(z)\,dz \tag{10.5}$$

Later, we will show that (10.5) applies with an accuracy of about one part per million even if the ocean is not at rest.

10.2 Geostrophic Equations

The geostrophic balance requires that the Coriolis force balance the horizontal pressure gradient. The equations for geostrophic balance are derived from the equations of motion assuming the flow has no acceleration, $du/dt = dv/dt = dw/dt = 0$; that horizontal velocities are much larger than vertical, $w \ll u, v$; that the only external force is gravity; and that friction is small. With these assumptions (7.15) become

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \rho f v; \quad \frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = -\rho f u; \quad \frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = -\rho g \tag{10.6}$$

where $f = 2\Omega \sin\varphi$ is the Coriolis parameter. These are the *geostrophic equations*.

The equations can be written:

$$u = -\frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y}; \qquad v = \frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \tag{10.7a}$$

$$p = p_0 + \int_{-h}^{\zeta} g(\varphi, z)\rho(z)dz \tag{10.7b}$$

where p_0 is atmospheric pressure at $z = 0$, and ζ is the height of the sea surface. Note that we have allowed for the sea surface to be above or below the surface $z = 0$; and the pressure gradient at the sea surface is balanced by a surface current u_s.

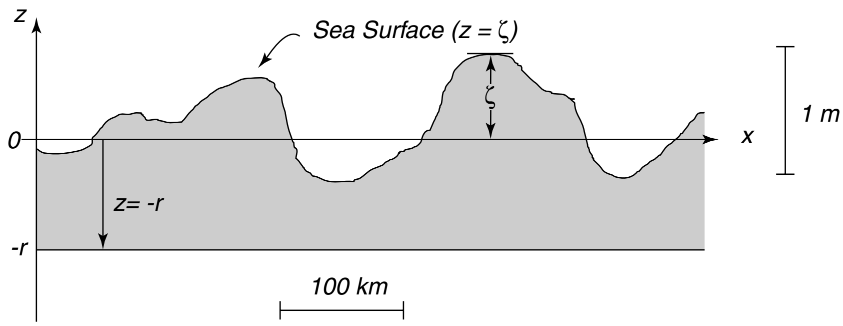


Figure 10.1 Sketch defining ζ and r, used for calculating pressure just below the sea surface.

Substituting (10.7b) into (10.7a) gives:

$$u = -\frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\int_{-h}^{0} g(\varphi, z)\,\rho(z)\,dz - \frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial y}$$

$$u = -\frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\int_{-h}^{0} g(\varphi, z)\,\rho(z)\,dz - u_s \tag{10.8a}$$

where we have used the Boussinesque approximation, retaining full accuracy for ρ only when calculating pressure.

In a similar way, we can derive the equation for v.

$$v = \frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\int_{-h}^{0} g(\varphi, z)\,\rho(z)\,dz + \frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial x}$$

$$v = \frac{1}{f\rho}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\int_{-h}^{0} g(\varphi, z)\,\rho(z)\,dz + v_s \tag{10.8b}$$

If the ocean is homogeneous and density and gravity are constant, the first term on the right-hand side of (10.8) is equal to zero; and the horizontal pressure gradients within the ocean are the same as the gradient at the surface.

If the ocean is stratified, the horizontal pressure gradient has two components, one due to the slope at the sea surface, and an additional term due to horizontal density differences. The first term on the right-hand side of (10.8) is called the relative velocity. Thus calculation of geostrophic currents from the density distribution requires the velocity (u_0, v_0) at the sea surface or at some other depth.

10.3 Surface Geostrophic Currents From Altimetry

The geostrophic approximation applied at the sea surface leads to a very simple relation between surface slope and surface current. Consider a level surface slightly below the sea surface, say two meters below the sea surface, at $z = -r$. A *level surface* is a surface of constant gravitational potential, and no work is required to move along a frictionless, level surface (Figure 10.1).

The pressure on the level surface is:

$$p = \rho\, g\; (\zeta + r) \tag{10.9}$$

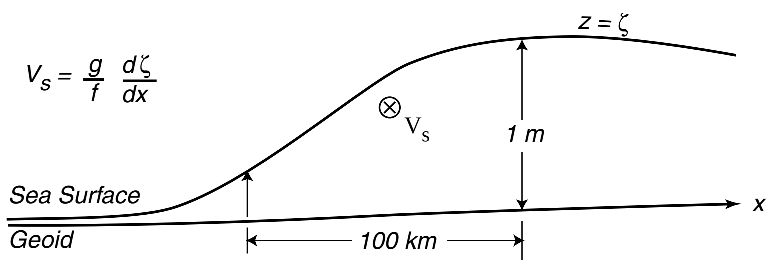


Figure 10.2 The slope of the sea surface relative to the geoid ($\partial\zeta/\partial x$) is directly related to surface geostrophic currents v_s. The slope of 1 meter per 100 kilometers (10 μrad) is typical of strong currents.

assuming ρ and g are essentially constant in the upper few meters of the ocean.

Substituting this into (10.8a, b), gives the two components (u_s, v_s) of the surface geostrophic current:

$$u_s = -\frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial y}; \qquad v_s = \frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial x} \tag{10.10}$$

where g is gravity, f is the Coriolis parameter, and ζ is the height of the sea surface above a level surface.

The Oceanic Topography In §3.4 we define the topography of the sea surface ζ to be the height of the sea surface relative to a particular level surface, the geoid; and we defined the geoid to be the level surface that coincided with the surface of the ocean at rest. Thus, according to (10.10) the surface geostrophic currents are proportional to the slope of the topography (Figure 10.2), a quantity that can be measured by satellite altimeters if the geoid is known.

Because the geoid is a level surface, it is a surface of constant geopotential. To see this, consider the work done in moving a mass m by a distance h perpendicular to a level surface. The work is $W = mgh$, and the change of potential energy per unit mass is gh. Thus level surfaces are surfaces of constant geopotential, where the *geopotential* $\Phi = gh$.

Topography is due to process that cause the ocean to move: tides, ocean currents, and the changes in barometric pressure that produce the inverted barometer effect. Because the ocean's topography is due to dynamical processes, it is usually called *dynamic topography*. The topography is approximately one hundredth of the geoid undulations. This means that the shape of the sea surface is dominated by local variations of gravity. The influence of currents is much smaller. Typically, sea-surface topography has amplitude of ±1 m. Typical slopes are $\partial\zeta/\partial x \approx$ 1–10 microradians for $v =$ 0.1–1.0 m/s at mid latitude.

Errors in knowing the height of the geoid are larger than the topographic signal for wavelengths shorter than roughly 1600 km (Nerem, *et al.* 1994). The height of the geoid, smoothed over horizontal distances greater than roughly 1,600 km, is known with an accuracy of ±15 cm (Tapley, *et al.* 1994a). The unsmoothed geoid is less well known. The height of the unsmoothed, local geoid is known with an accuracy of only around ±50 cm (Figure 10.3).

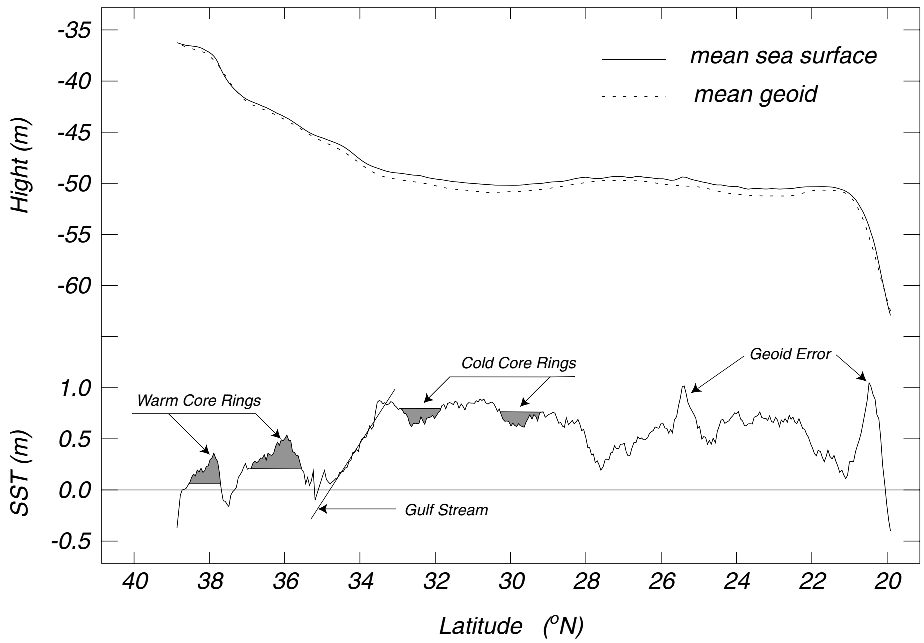


Figure 10.3 Topex/Poseidon altimeter observations of the Gulf Stream. When the altimeter observations are subtracted from the local geoid, they yield the oceanic topography, which is due primarily to ocean currents in this example. The gravimetric geoid was determined by the Ohio State University from ship and other surveys of gravity in the region. From Center for Space Research, University of Texas.

Satellite Altimetry Very accurate, satellite-altimeter systems are needed for measuring the oceanic topography. The first systems, carried on Seasat, Geosat, ERS–1, and ERS–2 were designed to measure the variability of currents with horizontal dimensions of less than a thousand kilometers. Only Topex/Poseidon, launched in 1992, was designed to make the much more accurate measurements necessary for observing the permanent (time-averaged) surface circulation of the oceans, tides, and the variability of gyre-scale currents.

Because the geoid is not well known locally, altimeters are usually flown in orbits that have an exactly repeating ground track. Thus Topex/Poseidon flies over the same ground track every 9.9156 days. By subtracting sea-surface height from one traverse of the ground track from height measured on a later traverse, changes in topography can be observed without knowing the geoid. The geoid is constant in time, and the subtraction removes the geoid, revealing changes due to changing currents, such as mesoscale variability, assuming tides have been removed from the data (Figure 10.4). Mesoscale variability includes eddies with diameters between roughly 20 and 500 km.

The great accuracy and precision of Topex/Poseidon's altimetric system allow the measurements of the oceanic topography over ocean basins with an accuracy of ±5 cm. Such an accurate satellite-altimeter system can measure:

1. Changes in the global mean volume of the ocean (Born et al. 1986, Nerem, 1995);

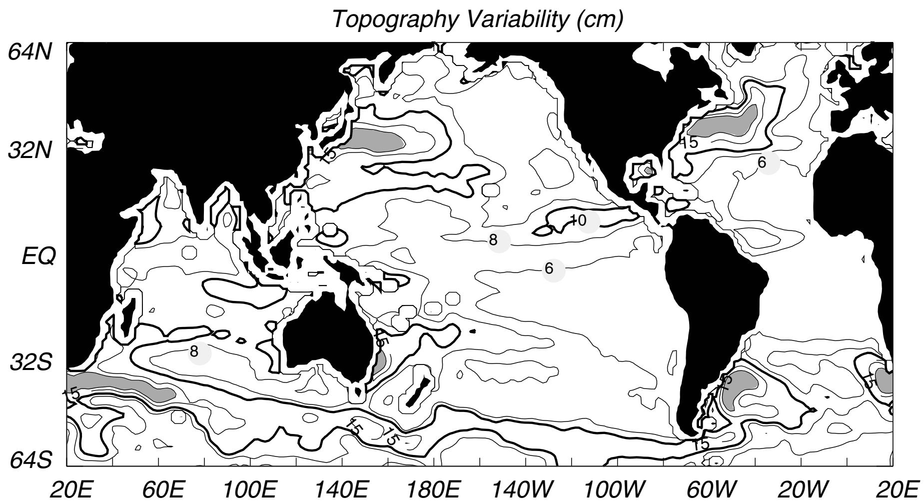


Figure 10.4 Global distribution of variance of topography from Topex/Poseidon altimeter data from 10/3/92 to 10/6/94. The height variance is an indicator of variability of currents. (From Center for Space Research, University of Texas).

2. Seasonal heating and cooling of the ocean (Chambers, Tapley, and Stewart, 1998);
3. Tides (Andersen, Woodworth, and Flather, 1995);
4. The permanent surface geostrophic current system (Figure 10.5);
5. Changes in surface geostrophic currents on all scales (Figure 10.4); and
6. Variations in topography of equatorial current systems such as those associated with El Niño (Figure 10.6).

Altimeter Errors (Topex/Poseidon) The most accurate observations of the sea-surface topography are from Topex/Poseidon. Errors for this satellite altimeter system are due to:

1. Instrument noise, ocean waves, water vapor, free electrons in the ionosphere, and mass of the atmosphere. Topex/Poseidon carries a precise altimeter system able to observed the height of the satellite above the sea surface between $\pm 66°$latitude with a precision of ± 2 cm and an accuracy of ± 3.2 cm (Fu, *et al.* 1994). The system consists of a two-frequency radar altimeter to measure height above the sea, the influence of the ionosphere, and wave height. The system also included a three-frequency microwave radiometer able to measure water vapor in the troposphere.
2. Tracking errors. The satellite carries three tracking systems that enable its position in space, its ephemeris, to be determined with an accuracy of ± 3.5 cm (Tapley *et al.* 1994a).
3. Sampling error. The satellite measures height along a ground track that repeats within ± 1 km every 9.9156 days. Each repeat is a cycle. Because

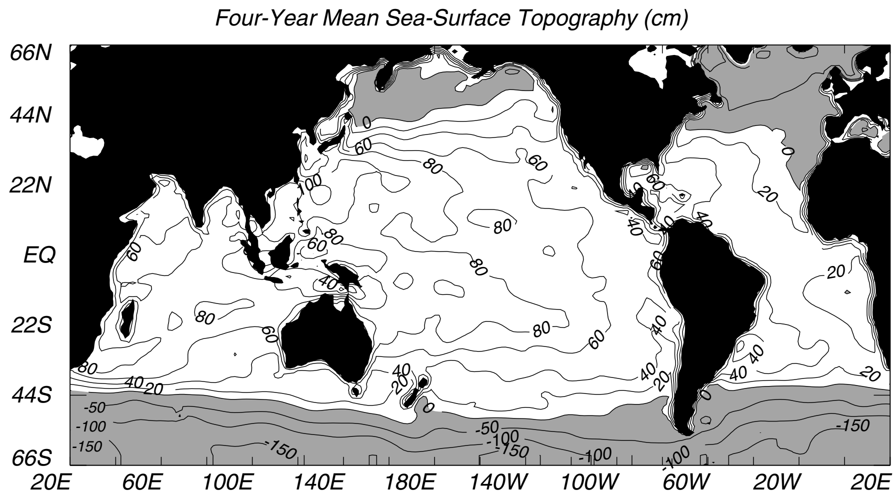


Figure 10.5 Global distribution of time-averaged topography of the ocean from Topex/Poseidon altimeter data from 10/3/92 to 10/6/99 relative to the JGM–3 geoid. Geostrophic currents at the ocean surface are parallel to the contours. Compare with Figure 2.8 calculated from hydrographic data. (From Center for Space Research, University of Texas).

currents are measured only along the subsatellite track, there is a sampling error. The satellite cannot map the topography between ground tracks, nor can it observe changes with periods less than 2×9.9156 d (see §17.3).

4. Geoid error. The permanent topography is not well known over distances shorter than 1,600 km because geoid errors dominate for shorter distances. Maps of the topography smoothed over 1,600 km are used to study the dominant features of the permanent geostophic currents at the sea surface (Figure 10.5).

Taken together, the measurements of height above the sea and the satellite position give sea-surface height in geocentric coordinates with an accuracy of ± 4.7 cm. The geoid error adds further errors that depend on the size of the area being measured.

10.4 Geostrophic Currents From Hydrography

The geostrophic equations are widely used in oceanography to calculate currents at depth. The basic idea is to use hydrographic measurements of temperature, salinity or conductivity, and pressure to calculate the density field of the ocean using the equation of state of sea water. Density is used in (10.7b) to calculate the internal pressure field, from which the geostrophic currents are calculated using (10.8a, b). Usually, however, the constant of integration in (10.8) is not known, and only the relative velocity field can be calculated.

At this point, you may ask, why not just measure pressure directly as is done in meteorology, where direct measurements of pressure are used to calculate winds. And, aren't pressure measurements needed to calculate density from the equation of state? The answer is that very small changes in depth make

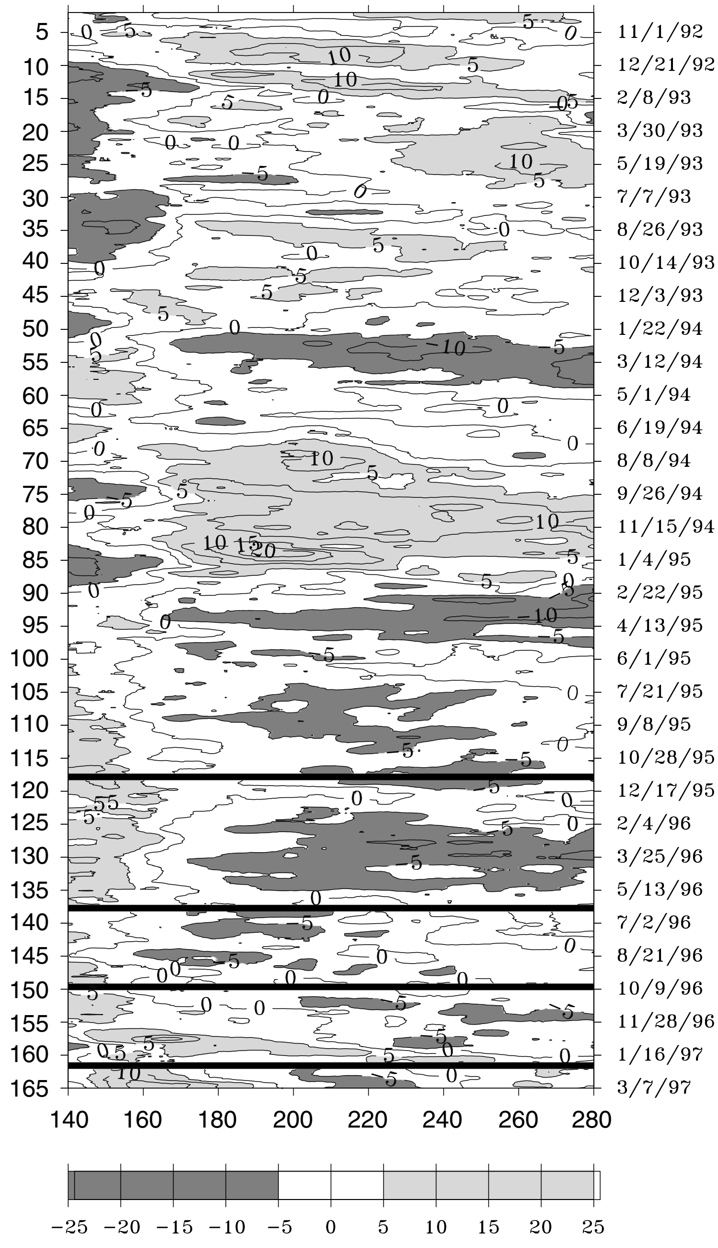


Figure 10.6 Time-longitude plot of sea-level anomalies in the Equatorial Pacific observed by Topex/Poseidon. Warm anomalies are light gray, cold anomalies are dark gray. The anomalies are computed from 10-day deviations from a mean surface computed from 10/3/1992 to 10/8/1995. The data are smoothed with a Gaussian weighted filter with a longitudinal span of 5°and a latitudinal span of 2°. The annotations on the left are cycles of satellite data. The black stripe indicates data missing at time plot wqs made.

large changes in pressure because water is so heavy. Errors in pressure caused by errors in determining the depth of a pressure gauge are much larger than the pressure signal due to currents. For example, using (10.7a), we calculate that the pressure gradient due to a 10 cm/s current at 30°latitude is 7.5×10^{-3} Pa/m, which is 750 Pa in 100 km. From the hydrostatic equation (10.5), 750 Pa is equivalent to a change of depth of 7.4 cm. Therefore, for this example, we must know the depth of a pressure gauge with an accuracy of much better than 7.4 cm. This is not possible.

While simple in concept, the calculation of geostrophic currents from hydrographic data is difficult, and the difficulties lie in the details. The first detail is to understand how variations in gravity influence pressure.

Geopotential Surfaces Within the Ocean Calculation of pressure gradients within the ocean must be done along surfaces of constant geopotential just as we calculated pressure gradients on the geoid at the sea surface to calculate surface geostrophic currents. As long ago as 1910, Vilhelm Bjerknes (1910) realized that such surfaces are not at fixed heights in the atmosphere because g is not constant; and (10.4c) must include the variability of gravity in both the horizontal and vertical directions.

The *geopotential* Φ is:

$$\Phi = \int_0^z g dz \tag{10.11}$$

and in SI units, $\Phi/9.8$ has almost the same numerical value as height in meters. The meteorological community accepted Bjerknes' proposal that height be replaced by *dynamic meters* $D = \Phi/10$ to obtain a natural vertical coordinate. Later, this was replaced by the *geopotential meter* (gpm) $Z = \Phi/9.80$. The geopotential meter is a measure of the work required to lift a unit mass from sea level to a height z against the force of gravity. Harald Sverdrup, Bjerknes' student, carried the concept to oceanography; and depths in the ocean are often quoted in geopotential meters. Hence, geopotential surfaces in the ocean are defined by different values of Φ, and the geometric distance between two geopotential surfaces cannot be constant over thousands of kilometers.

Gravity can be written as the product of a term that varies with latitude times a term that varies with height (List, 1966: 217 & 488):

$$g = g(\varphi, z) = g_\varphi \left(\frac{a}{a+z}\right)^2 \tag{10.12a}$$

$$g_\varphi = 9.806160 \left[1 - 2.64 \times 10^{-3} \cos 2\varphi + 5.9 \times 10^{-6} \cos^2 \varphi\right] \tag{10.12b}$$

$$a = 6,378,134.9 \text{ m} \tag{10.12c}$$

where a is the Earth's equatorial radius, and φ is latitude. Here z is measured from the geoid, and it is negative downward. The difference between depths of constant vertical distance and constant potential can be relatively large. For example, the geometrical depth of the 1000 dynamic meter surface is 1017.40 m at the north pole and 1022.78 m at the equator, a difference of 5.38 m.

Depth in geopotential meters, depth in meters, and pressure in decibars are almost the same numerically, where a decibar is 10^4 Pa (Table 10.1), and a pascal (Pa) is the SI unit for pressure. For this reason, oceanographers prefer to state pressure in decibars. At a depth of 1 meter the pressure is approximately 1.007 decibars and the depth is 1.00 geopotential meters.

Table 10.1 Units of Pressure

1 Pa	=	$1 \text{ N/m}^2 = 1 \text{ kg.s}^{-2}.\text{m}^{-1}$
1 Bar	=	10^5 Pa
1 decibar	=	10^4 Pa
1 millibar	=	100 Pa

Dutton (1995: §4.2) shows that by writing $Z = \Phi/g_{38}$, where $g_{38} = 9.80$ m/s^2, and Z = *geopotential height*, then the hydrostatic equation is $\partial P/\partial Z = g_{38}\rho$. Writing z for Z, and g for 9.8 m/s^2, we obtain the hydrostatic equation in familiar form: $\partial p/\partial z = -g\rho$.

Equations for Geostrophic Currents Within the Ocean To calculate geostrophic currents, we need to calculate the horizontal pressure gradient within the ocean. This can be done using either of two approaches:

1. Calculate the slope of an isobaric surface. We used this approache when we used sea-surface slope from altimetry to calculate surface geostrophic currents. The sea surface is an isobaric surface.

2. Calculate the change in pressure on a surface of constant geopotential. Such a surface is called a *geopotential surface*.

Oceanographers usually calculate the slope of isobaric surfaces. The important steps are:

1. Calculate differences in heights ($\Phi_A - \Phi_B$) between two isobaric surfaces (P_1, P_2) at hydrographic stations A and B (Figure 10.7). This is similar to the calculation of ζ of the surface layer.

2. Calculate the slope of the upper isobaric surface relative to the lower.

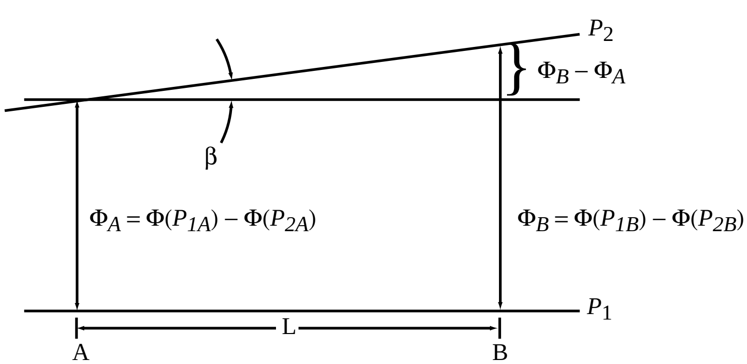


Figure 10.7. Sketch of geometry used for calculating geostrophic current from hydrography.

3. Calculate the geostrophic current at the upper surface relative to the current at the lower. This is the current shear.
4. Integrate the current shear from some depth where currents are known to obtain currents as a function of depth. For example, from the surface downward, using surface geostrophic currents observed by satellite altimetry, or upward from an assumed level of no motion.

To calculate geostrophic currents oceanographers use a modified form of the hydrostatic equation. The vertical pressure gradient (10.3c) is written

$$\frac{\delta p}{\rho} = \alpha\, \delta p = -g\, \delta z \tag{10.13a}$$

$$\alpha\, \delta p = \delta \Phi \tag{10.13b}$$

where $\alpha = \alpha(S,t,p)$ is the *specific volume*; and (10.13b) follows from (10.11). Differentiating (10.13b) with respect to horizontal distance x allows the geostrophic balance to be written in terms of the slope of the isobaric surface:

$$\alpha\, \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \frac{1}{\rho}\, \frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = -2\, \Omega\, v \sin\varphi \tag{10.14a}$$

$$\frac{\partial \Phi\,(p = p_0)}{\partial x} = -2\, \Omega\, v\, \sin\varphi \tag{10.14b}$$

where Φ is the geopotential height of an isobaric surface. Note that the terminology is a little confusing; Φ is not necessarily a geopotential surface.

Now let's see how hydrographic data are used for evaluating $\partial\Phi/\partial x$. Consider two isobaric surfaces (P_1, P_2) in the ocean as shown in Figure 10.7. The geopotential difference between two isobaric surfaces at station A is:

$$\Phi\,(P_{1A}) - \Phi\,(P_{2A}) = \int_{P_{1A}}^{P_{2A}} \alpha\,(S,t,p)\, dp \tag{10.15}$$

The specific volume anomaly is written as the sum of two parts:

$$\alpha(S,t,p) = \alpha(35,0,p) + \delta \tag{10.16}$$

where $\alpha(35,0,p)$ is the specific volume of sea water with salinity of 35 psu, temperature of 0°C, and pressure p. The second term δ is the *specific volume anomaly.* Using (10.11) in (10.10) gives:

$$\Phi(P_{1A}) - \Phi(P_{2A}) = \int_{P_{1A}}^{P_{2A}} \alpha(35,0,p) + \int_{P_{1A}}^{P_{2A}} \delta\, dp$$

$$\Phi(P_{1A}) - \Phi(P_{2A}) = (\Phi_1 - \Phi_2)_{std} + \Delta\Phi_A$$

where $(\Phi_1 - \Phi_2)_{std}$ is the *standard geopotential distance* between two isobaric surfaces P_1 and P_2; and

$$\Delta\Phi_A = \int_{P_{1A}}^{P_{2A}} \delta\, dp \tag{10.17}$$

is the anomaly of the geopotential distance between the surfaces. It is called the *geopotential anomaly.* If pressure is in decibars, the standard geopotential distance is numerically approximately z, where z is the geometric distance between the two surfaces. The geopotential anomaly is much smaller, being approximately 0.1% of the standard geopotential distance.

Consider now the geopotential anomaly between two pressure surfaces P_1 and P_2 calculated at two hydrographic stations A and B a distance L meters apart (Figure 10.7). For simplicity we assume the lower isobaric surface is a level surface. Hence the isobaric and geopotential surfaces coincide, and there is no geostrophic velocity at this depth. The slope of the upper surface is

$$\frac{\Delta\Phi_B - \Delta\Phi_A}{L} = \text{slope of isobaric surface } P_2$$

because the standard geopotential distance is the same at stations A and B. The geostrophic velocity at the upper surface calculated from (10.14b) is:

$$V = \frac{(\Delta\Phi_B - \Delta\Phi_A)}{2\Omega\, L\, \sin\varphi} \tag{10.18}$$

where V is the velocity at the upper geopotential surface. The velocity V is perpendicular to the plane of the two hydrographic stations and directed into the plane of Figure 10.7 if the flow is in the northern hemisphere. *A useful rule of thumb is that the flow is such that warmer, lighter water is to the right looking downstream in the northern hemisphere.*

If the pressure is measured in decibars, and L in meters, (10.18) becomes:

$$V = \frac{10\ (\Delta\Phi_B - \Delta\Phi_A)}{2\Omega\, L \sin\varphi} \tag{10.19}$$

Note that we could have calculated the slope of the isobaric surfaces using density ρ instead of specific volume α. We have chosen to use α because it is the common practice in oceanography, and tables of specific volume anomalies and computer code to calculate the anomalies are widely available. The common practice follows from numerical methods developed before calculators and computers were available, when all calculations were done by hand or by mechanical calculators with the help of tables and nomograms. Because the computaions must be done with an accuracy of a few parts per million, and because all scientific fields tend to be conservative, the common practice has continued to use specific volume anomalies rather than density anomalies.

Barotropic and Baroclinic Flow: If the ocean were homogeneous with constant density, then isobaric surfaces would always be parallel to the sea surface, and the geostrophic velocity would be independent of depth. In this case the relative velocity is zero, and hydrographic data cannot be used to measure the geostrophic current. If density varies with depth, but not with horizontal distance, the isobaric surfaces are always parallel to the sea surface and the levels of constant density, the *isopycnal surfaces.* In this case, the relative flow is also zero. Both cases are examples of *barotrophic flow.*

Barotropic flow occurs when levels of constant pressure in the ocean, the *isobaric surfaces*, are always parallel to the surfaces of constant density, the *isopycnal surfaces*. Note, some authors call the vertically averaged flow the baroclinic component of the flow. Wunsch (1996: 74) points out that baroclinic is used in so many different ways that the term is meaningless and should not be used.

Baroclinic flow occurs when levels of constant pressure are inclined to surfaces of constant density. In this case, density varies with depth and horizontal position. A good example is seen in Figure 10.12 which shows levels of constant density changing depth by more than 1 km over horizontal distances of 100 km at the Gulf Stream. Baroclinic flow varies with depth, and the relative current can be calculated from hydrographic data. Note, constant-density surfaces cannot be inclined to constant-pressure surfaces for a fluid at rest.

In general, the variation of flow in the vertical can be decomposed into a barotropic component which is independent of depth, and a baroclinic component which varies with depth.

10.5 An Example Using Hydrographic Data

Let's now consider a specific numerical calculation of geostrophic velocity using generally accepted proceedures from *Processing of Oceanographic Station Data* (JPOTS Editorial Panel, 1991). The book has worked examples using hydrographic data collected by the R/V *Endeavor* in the North Atlantic. Data were collected on Cruise 88 along 71°W across the Gulf Stream south of Cape Cod, Massachusetts at stations 61 and 64. Station 61 is on the Sargasso Sea side of the Gulf Stream in water 4260 m deep. Station 64 is north of the Gulf Stream in water 3892 m deep. The measurements were made by a Conductivity-Temperature-Depth-Oxygen Profiler, Mark III CTD/02, made by Neil Brown Instruments Systems. It had a rosette of 24 1.2-liter Niskin water bottles. Salinity and oxygen samples from the bottles were used to calibrate the CTD.

The CTD sampled temperature, salinity, and pressure 22 times per second, and the digital data were averaged over 2 dbar intervals as the CTD was lowered in the water. Data were tabulated at 2 dbar pressure intervals centered on odd values of pressure because the first observation is at the surface, and the first averaging interval extends to 2 dbar, and the center of the first interval is at 1 dbar. Data were further smoothed with a binomial filter and linearly interpolated to standard levels reported in the first three columns of Tables 10.2 and 10.3. All processing was done electronically.

$\delta(S,t,p)$ in the fourth column of Tables 10.2 and 10.3 is calculated from the values of t, S, p in the layer. $< \delta >$ is the average value of specific volume anomaly for the layer between standard pressure levels. It is the average of the values of $\delta(S,t,p)$ at the top and bottom of the layer. The last column ($10^{-5}\Delta\Phi$) is the product of the average specific volume anomaly of the layer times the thickness of the layer in decibars. Therefore, the last column is the geopotential anomaly $\Delta\Phi$ calculated by integrating (10.17) between p_1 at the bottom of each layer and p_2 at the top of each layer.

Table 10.2 Computation of Relative Geostrophic Currents.
Data from Endeavor Cruise 88, Station 61
(36°40.03'N, 70°59.59'W; 23 August 1982; 1102Z)

Pressure decibar	t °C	S psu	$\sigma(\theta)$ kg/m^3	$\delta(S,t,p)$ 10^{-8}m^3/kg	$<\delta>$ 10^{-8}m^3/kg	$10^{-5}\Delta\Phi$ m^2/s^2
0	25.698	35.221	23.296	457.24		
					457.26	0.0046
1	25.698	35.221	23.296	457.28		
					440.22	0.0396
10	26.763	36.106	23.658	423.15		
					423.41	0.0423
20	26.678	36.106	23.658	423.66		
					423.82	0.0424
30	26.676	36.107	23.659	423.98		
					376.23	0.0752
50	24.528	36.561	24.670	328.48		
					302.07	0.0755
75	22.753	36.614	25.236	275.66		
					257.41	0.0644
100	21.427	36.637	25.630	239.15		
					229.61	0.0574
125	20.633	36.627	25.841	220.06		
					208.84	0.0522
150	19.522	36.558	26.086	197.62		
					189.65	0.0948
200	18.798	36.555	26.273	181.67		
					178.72	0.0894
250	18.431	36.537	26.354	175.77		
					174.12	0.0871
300	18.189	36.526	26.408	172.46		
					170.38	0.1704
400	17.726	36.477	26.489	168.30		
					166.76	0.1668
500	17.165	36.381	26.557	165.22		
					158.78	0.1588
600	15.952	36.105	26.714	152.33		
					143.18	0.1432
700	13.458	35.776	26.914	134.03		
					124.20	0.1242
800	11.109	35.437	27.115	114.36		
					104.48	0.1045
900	8.798	35.178	27.306	94.60		
					80.84	0.0808
1000	6.292	35.044	27.562	67.07		
					61.89	0.0619
1100	5.249	35.004	27.660	56.70		
					54.64	0.0546
1200	4.813	34.995	27.705	52.58		
					51.74	0.0517
1300	4.554	34.986	27.727	50.90		
					50.40	0.0504
1400	4.357	34.977	27.743	49.89		
					49.73	0.0497
1500	4.245	34.975	27.753	49.56		
					49.30	0.1232
1750	4.028	34.973	27.777	49.03		
					48.83	0.1221
2000	3.852	34.975	27.799	48.62		
					47.77	0.2389
2500	3.424	34.968	27.839	46.92		
					45.94	0.2297
3000	2.963	34.946	27.868	44.96		
					43.40	0.2170
3500	2.462	34.920	27.894	41.84		
					41.93	0.2097
4000	2.259	34.904	27.901	42.02		

The distance between the stations is $L = 110,935$ m; the average Coriolis parameter is $f = 0.88104 \times 10^{-4}$; and the factor $10/fL$ in (10.19) is 1.0231 s/m. This was used to calculate the relative geostrophic currents reported in Table 10.4 and plotted in Figure 10.8. The currents are calculated relative to the current at 2000 decibars. Notice that there is no indication of Ekman currents in the current profile. Ekman currents are not geostrophic, and they do not contribute to the topography.

Table 10.3 Computation of Relative Geostrophic Currents. Data from Endeavor Cruise 88, Station 64 (37°39.93'N, 71°0.00'W; 24 August 1982; 0203Z)

Pressure decibar	t °C	S psu	$\sigma(\theta)$ kg/m^3	$\delta(S,t,p)$ 10^{-8}m^3/kg	$<\delta>$ 10^{-8}m^3/kg	$10^{-5}\Delta\Phi$ m^2/s^2
0	26.148	34.646	22.722	512.09	512.15	0.0051
1	26.148	34.646	22.722	512.21	512.61	0.0461
10	26.163	34.645	22.717	513.01	512.89	0.0513
20	26.167	34.655	22.724	512.76	466.29	0.0466
30	25.640	35.733	23.703	419.82	322.38	0.0645
50	18.967	35.944	25.755	224.93	185.56	0.0464
75	15.371	35.904	26.590	146.19	136.18	0.0340
100	14.356	35.897	26.809	126.16	120.91	0.0302
125	13.059	35.696	26.925	115.66	111.93	0.0280
150	12.134	35.567	27.008	108.20	100.19	0.0501
200	10.307	35.360	27.185	92.17	87.41	0.0437
250	8.783	35.168	27.290	82.64	79.40	0.0397
300	8.046	35.117	27.364	76.16	66.68	0.0667
400	6.235	35.052	27.568	57.19	52.71	0.0527
500	5.230	35.018	27.667	48.23	46.76	0.0468
600	5.005	35.044	27.710	45.29	44.67	0.0447
700	4.756	35.027	27.731	44.04	43.69	0.0437
800	4.399	34.992	27.744	43.33	43.22	0.0432
900	4.291	34.991	27.756	43.11	43.12	0.0431
1000	4.179	34.986	27.764	43.12	43.10	0.0431
1100	4.077	34.982	27.773	43.07	43.12	0.0431
1200	3.969	34.975	27.779	43.17	43.28	0.0433
1300	3.909	34.974	27.786	43.39	43.38	0.0434
1400	3.831	34.973	27.793	43.36	43.31	0.0433
1500	3.767	34.975	27.802	43.26	43.20	0.1080
1750	3.600	34.975	27.821	43.13	43.00	0.1075
2000	3.401	34.968	27.837	42.86	42.13	0.2106
2500	2.942	34.948	27.867	41.39	40.33	0.2016
3000	2.475	34.923	27.891	39.26	39.22	0.1961
3500	2.219	34.904	27.900	39.17	40.08	0.2004
4000	2.177	34.896	27.901	40.98		

10.6 Comments on Geostrophic Currents

Knowing the theory of geostrophic currents and how the theory can be applied to measurements to calculate currents, let's now consider some of the limitations of the theory and techniques.

Converting Relative Velocity to Velocity Hydrographic data give geostrophic currents relative to geostrophic currents at some reference level. How can we convert the relative geostrophic velocities to velocities relative to the earth?

1. *Assume a Level of no Motion*: Traditionally, oceanographers assume there is a *level of no motion*, sometimes called a *reference surface*, roughly 2,000

Table 10.4 Computation of Relative Geostrophic Currents. Data from Endeavor Cruise 88, Station 61 and 64

Pressure decibar	$10^{-5}\Delta\Phi_{61}$ m^2/s^2	$\Sigma\Delta\Phi dz$ at 61*	$10^{-5}\Delta\Phi_{64}$ m^2/s^2	$\Sigma\Delta\Phi dz$ at 64*	V (m/s)
0		2.1872		1.2583	0.95
	0.0046		0.0051		
1		2.1826		1.2532	0.95
	0.0396		0.0461		
10		2.1430		1.2070	0.96
	0.0423		0.0513		
20		2.1006		1.1557	0.97
	0.0424		0.0466		
30		2.0583		1.1091	0.97
	0.0752		0.0645		
50		1.9830		1.0446	0.96
	0.0755		0.0464		
75		1.9075		0.9982	0.93
	0.0644		0.0340		
100		1.8431		0.9642	0.90
	0.0574		0.0302		
125		1.7857		0.9340	0.87
	0.0522		0.0280		
150		1.7335		0.9060	0.85
	0.0948		0.0501		
200		1.6387		0.8559	0.80
	0.0894		0.0437		
250		1.5493		0.8122	0.75
	0.0871		0.0397		
300		1.4623		0.7725	0.71
	0.1704		0.0667		
400		1.2919		0.7058	0.60
	0.1668		0.0527		
500		1.1252		0.6531	0.48
	0.1588		0.0468		
600		0.9664		0.6063	0.37
	0.1432		0.0447		
700		0.8232		0.5617	0.27
	0.1242		0.0437		
800		0.6990		0.5180	0.19
	0.1045		0.0432		
900		0.5945		0.4748	0.12
	0.0808		0.0431		
1000		0.5137		0.4317	0.08
	0.0619		0.0431		
1100		0.4518		0.3886	0.06
	0.0546		0.0431		
1200		0.3972		0.3454	0.05
	0.0517		0.0433		
1300		0.3454		0.3022	0.04
	0.0504		0.0434		
1400		0.2950		0.2588	0.04
	0.0497		0.0433		
1500		0.2453		0.2155	0.03
	0.1232		0.1080		
1750		0.1221		0.1075	0.01
	0.1221		0.1075		
2000		0.0000		0.0000	0.00
	0.2389		0.2106		
2500		-0.2389		-0.2106	-0.03
	0.2297		0.2016		
3000		-0.4686		-0.4123	-0.06
	0.2170		0.1961		
3500		-0.6856		-0.6083	-0.08
	0.2097		0.2004		
4000		-0.8952		-0.8087	-0.09

∗ Geopotential anomaly integrated from 2000 dbar level.
Velocity is calculated from (10.18)

m below the surface. This is the assumption used to derive the currents in Table 10.4. Currents are assumed to be zero at this depth, and relative currents are integrated up to the surface and down to the bottom to obtain current velocity as a function of depth. There is some experimental evidence that such a level exists on average for mean currents (see for example, Defant, 1961: 492), although current meters tend to measure strong, variable currents at all levels.

Defant recommends choosing the reference level at the depth where the current shear in the vertical is smallest, which is usually near 2 km. The as-

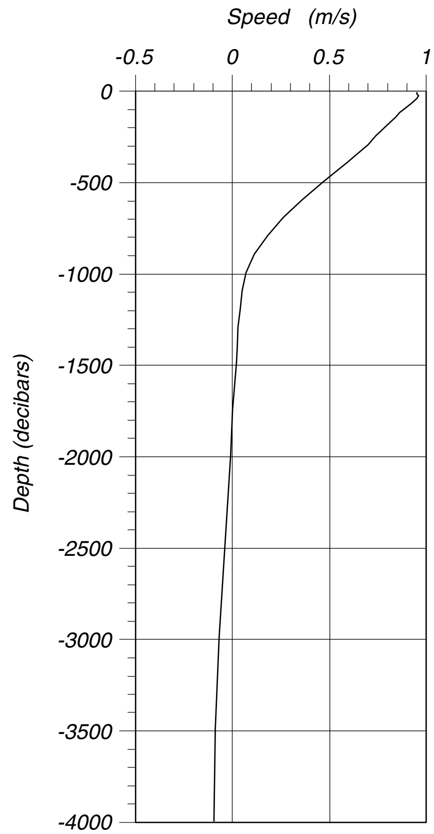


Figure 10.8 Relative current as a function of depth calculated from hydrographic data collected by the *R/V Endeavor* cruise south of Cape Cod in August 1982. The Gulf Stream is the fast current shallower than 1000 decibars. The assumed depth of no motion is at 2000 decibars.

sumption leads to useful maps of surface currents because surface currents tend to be faster than deeper currents. Figure 10.9 shows the geopotential anomaly and surface currents in the Pacific relative to the 1,000 dbar pressure level. When the specific volume anomaly is integrated from the level of no motion to the surface, the height of the surface is often called the *dynamic topography.*

Note that even a small error in the assumed velocity at the level of no motion leads to a large error in the calculation of transport, even though the error in the calculation of near surface currents is small.

2. *Use known currents:* The known currents could be measured by current meters or by satellite altimetry. Problems arise if the currents are not measured at the same time as the hydrographic data. For example, the hydrographic data may have been collected over a period of months to decades, while the currents may have been measured over a period of only a few months. Hence, the hydrography may not be consistent with

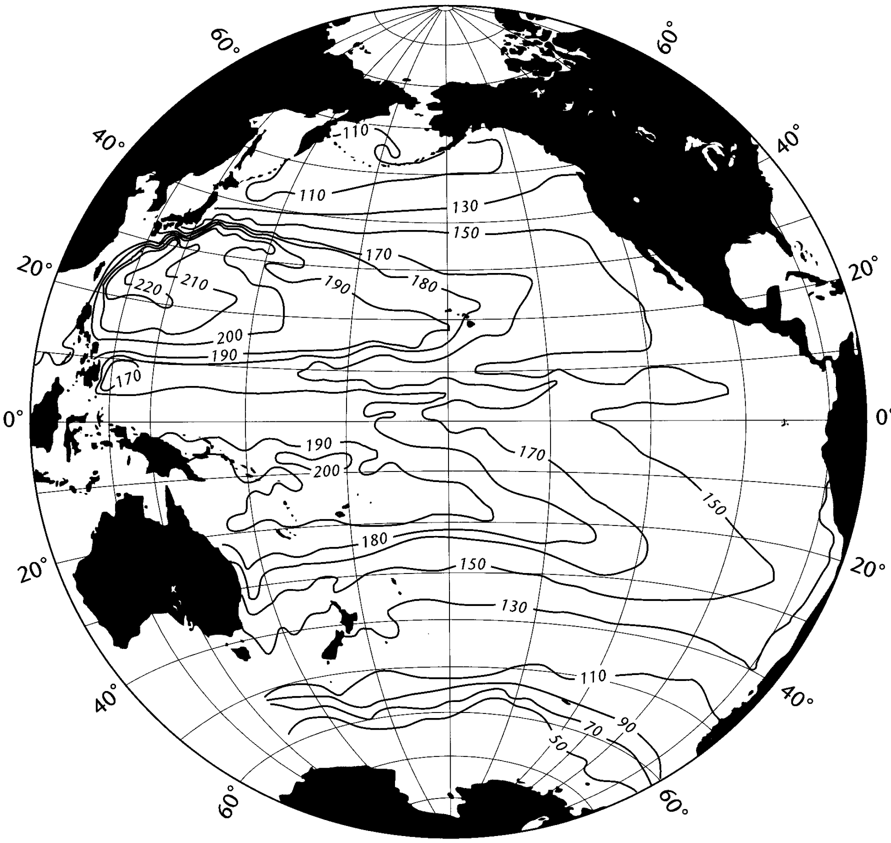


Figure 10.9. Mean geopotential anomaly of the Pacific Ocean relative to the 1,000 dbar surface based on 36,356 observations. Height is in geopotential centimeters. If the velocity at 1,000 dbar were zero, the map would be the surface topography of the Pacific. (From Wyrtki, 1974).

the current measurements. Sometimes currents and hydrographic data are measured at nearly the same time (Figure 10.10). In this example, currents were measured continuously by moored current meters (points) in a deep western boundary current and from CTD data taken just after the current meters were deployed and just before they were recovered (smooth curves). The solid line is the current assuming a level of no motion at 2,000 m, the dotted line is the current adjusted using the current meter observations smoothed for various intervals before or after the CTD casts.

3. *Use Conservation Equations*: Lines of hydrographic stations across a strait or an ocean basin may be used with conservation of mass and salt to calculate currents. This is an example of an inverse problem (see Wunsch, 1996 on how inverse methods are used in oceanography). The solution may not be unique, but bounds on the error can be calculated.

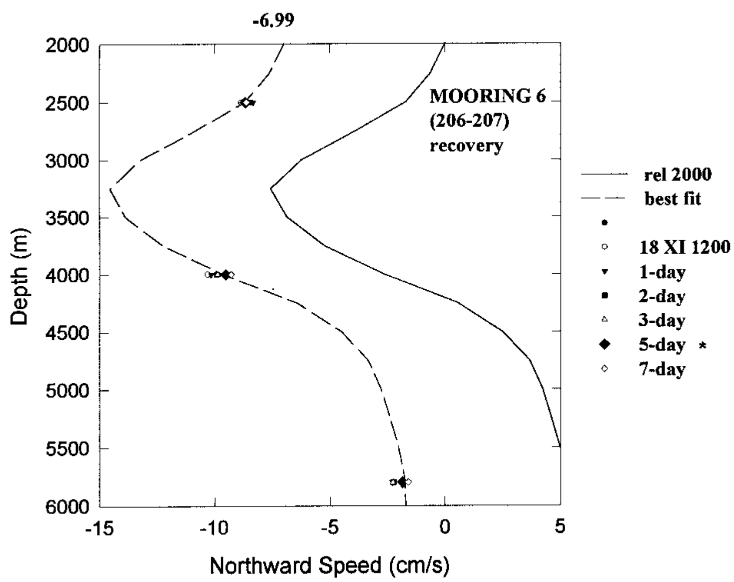


Figure 10.10 Current meter measurements can be used with CTD measurements to determine current as a function of depth avoiding the need for assuming a depth of no motion. Solid line: profile assuming a depth of no motion at 2000 decibars. Dashed line: profile adjusted to agree with currents measured by current meters 1–7 days before the CTD measurements. (Plots from Tom Whitworth, Texas A&M University)

Disadvantage of Calculating Currents from Hydrographic Data Currents calculated from hydrographic data have provided important insights into the circulation of the ocean over the decades from the turn of the 20th century to the present. Nevertheless, it is important to review the limitations of the technique.

1. Hydrographic data can be used to calculate only the current relative a current at another level.
2. The assumption of a level of no motion may be suitable in the deep ocean, but it is usually not a useful assumption when the water is shallow such as over the continental shelf.
3. Geostrophic currents cannot be calculated from hydrographic stations that are close together. Stations must be tens of kilometers apart.
4. Hydrographic stations must be repeated to obtain the mean and variable components of the current. This is impractical, and geostrophic currents calculated from hydrographic data have usually been used to map only the time-averaged circulation of the oceans or the change in circulation from decate to decade.

Limitations of the Geostrophic Equations We began this section by showing that the geostrophic balance applies with good accuracy to flows that exceed a few tens of kilometers in extent and with periods greater than a few days. The balance cannot, however, be perfect. If it were, the flow in the ocean would never change because the balance ignores any acceleration of the flow. The important limitations of the geostrophic assumption are:

1. Geostrophic currents cannot evolve with time.
2. The balance ignores acceleration of the flow, therefore it does not apply to oceanic flows with horizontal dimensions less than roughly 50 km and times less than a few days.
3. The geostrophic balance does not apply near the equator where the Coriolis force goes to zero because $\sin\varphi \to 0$.
4. The geostrophic balance ignores the influence of friction.

Despite these problems, currents in the ocean are almost always very close to being in geostrophic balance even within a few degrees of the Equator. Strub et al. (1997) showed that currents calculated from satellite altimeter measurements of sea-surface slope have an accuracy of $\pm$ 3–5 cm/s. Later, Uchida, Imawaki, and Hu (1998) compared currents measured by drifters in the Kuroshio with currents calculated from satellite altimeter measurements of sea-surface slope assuming geostrophic balance. Using slopes over distances of 12.5 km, they found the difference between the two measurements was $\pm$ 16 cm/s for currents up to 150 cm/s, or about 10%. Johns, Watts, and Rossby (1989) measured the velocity of the Gulf Stream northeast of Cape Hatteras and compared the measurements with velocity calculated from hydrographic data assuming geostrophic balance. They found that the measured velocity in the core of the stream, at depths less than 500 m, was 10–25 cm/s faster than the velocity calculated from the geostrophic equations using measured velocities at a depth of 2000 m. The maximum velocity in the core was greater than 150 cm/s, so the error was $\approx$ 10%. When they added the influence of the curvature of the Gulf Stream, which adds an acceleration term to the geostrophic equations, the difference in the calculated and observed velocity dropped to less than 5–10 cm/s ($\approx$ 5%).

10.7 Currents From Hydrographic Sections

Lines of hydrographic data along ship tracks are often used to produce contour plots of density in a vertical section along the track. Cross-sections of currents sometimes show sharply dipping density surfaces with a large contrast in density on either side of the current. The baroclinic currents in the section can be estimated using a technique first proposed by Margules (1906) and described by Defant (1961: Chapter 14). The technique allows oceanographers to estimate the speed and direction of currents perpendicular to the section by a quick look at the section.

To derive Margules' equation, consider the slope $\partial z/\partial y$ of the boundary between two water masses with densities ρ_1 and ρ_2 (see Figure 10.11). To calculate the change in velocity across the interface we assume homogeneous layers of density $\rho_1 < \rho_2$ both of which are in geostrophic equilibrium. Although the ocean does not have an idealized interface that we assumed, and the water masses do not have uniform density, and the interface between the water masses is not sharp, the concept is still useful in practice.

The change in pressure on the interface is:

$$\delta P \frac{\partial P}{\partial x}\,\delta x + \frac{\partial P}{\partial z}\,\delta z, \tag{10.20}$$

and the vertical and horizontal pressure gradients are obtained from (10.6):

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = \rho_1\, g\, \frac{\partial P}{\partial z} = \rho_1\, f\, v_1 \tag{10.21}$$

Therefore:

$$\delta P_1 = -\rho_1 f v_1 \delta x + \rho_1 g dz \tag{10.22a}$$
$$\delta P_2 = -\rho_2 f v_2 \delta x + \rho_2 g dz \tag{10.22b}$$

The boundary conditions require $\delta P_1 = \delta P_2$ on the boundary. Equating (10.22a) with (10.22b), dividing by δx, and solving for $\delta z/\delta x$ gives:

$$\frac{\delta z}{\delta x} \equiv \tan\gamma = \frac{f}{g}\left(\frac{\rho_2\, v_2 - \rho_1\, v_1}{\rho_1 - \rho_2}\right)$$

$$\tan\gamma \approx \frac{f}{g}\left(\frac{\rho_1}{\rho_1 - \rho_2}\right)(v_2 - v_1) \tag{10.23a}$$
$$\tan\beta_1 = -\frac{f}{g}\, v_1 \tag{10.23b}$$
$$\tan\beta_2 = -\frac{f}{g}\, v_2 \tag{10.23c}$$

Because the internal differences in density are small, $\gamma \approx 1000 \tan\beta$. Thus the slope of the interface between the two water masses is 1000 times larger than the slope at the sea surface.

Consider the application of the technique to the Gulf Stream (Figure 10.12). From the figure: $\varphi = 36°$, $\rho_1 = 1026.6$ kg/m^3; and $\rho_2 = 1027.6$ kg/m^3. If we

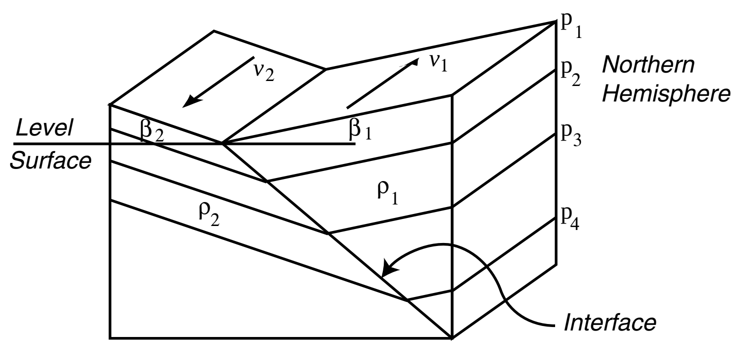


Figure 10.11 Inclination of the isobaric surfaces and interface between two homogeneous, moving water layers in the Northern Hemisphere.

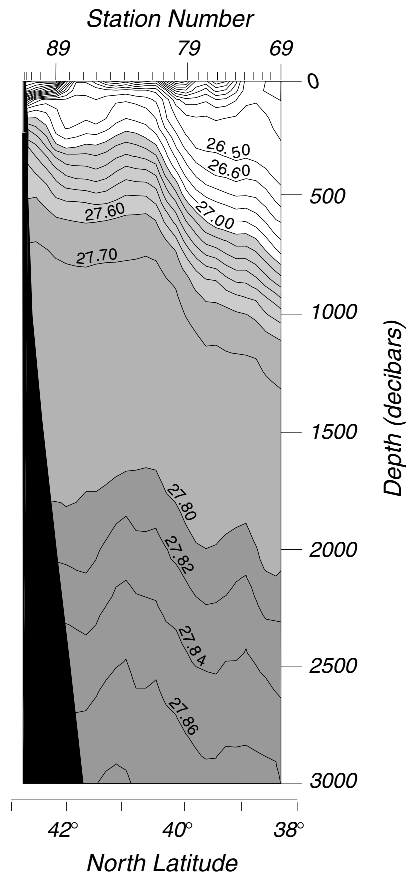


Figure 10.12 Cross section of potential density σ_θ across the Gulf Stream along 63.66°W calculated from CTD data collected from *Endeavor* on 25–28 April 1986. The Gulf Stream is centered on the steeply sloping contours shallower than 1000m between 40° and 41°. Notice that the vertical scale is 425 times the horizontal scale. (Data contoured by Lynn Talley, Scripps Institution of Oceanography).

use the $\sigma_t = 27.2$ surface to estimate the slope between the two water masses, we see that the surface changes from a depth of 450 m to a depth of 810 m over a distance of 40.7 km. Therefore, $\tan\gamma = -8840 \times 10^{-6} = 0.00884$; and $\Delta v = v_2 - v_1 = -0.98$ m/s. Assuming $v_2 = 0$, then $v_1 = 0.98$ m/s. This rough estimate of the velocity of the Gulf Stream compares well with velocity at a depth of 600m calculated from hydrographic data. Assuming a level of no motion at 1200 m, the hydrographic calculation gives a velocity of 0.80 m/s.

The slope of the isopycnal surfaces are clearly seen in the figure. And plots of isopycnal surfaces can be used to quickly estimate current directions and a rough value for the speed. In contrast, the slope of the sea surface is 8.6×10^{-6} or 0.86 m in 100 km. This is easily observed by an altimeter, but impossible to see by eye.

Note that isopycnal surfaces in the Gulf Stream slope downward to the east, and that sea-surface topography slopes upward to the east. Isobaric and isopycnal surfaces have opposite slope, current decreases as depth increases, and currents are baroclinic.

If the sharp interface between two water masses reaches the surface, it is an oceanic front. Such fronts have properties that are very similar to atmospheric fronts.

Eddies in the vicinity of the Gulf Stream can have warm or cold cores (Figure 10.13). Application of Margules' method these mesoscale eddies gives the direction of the flow. Anticyclonic eddies (clockwise rotation in the northern hemisphere) have warm cores (ρ_1 is deeper in the center of the eddy than elsewhere) and the isobaric surfaces bow upward. In particular, the sea surface is higher at the center of the ring. Cyclonic eddies are the reverse.

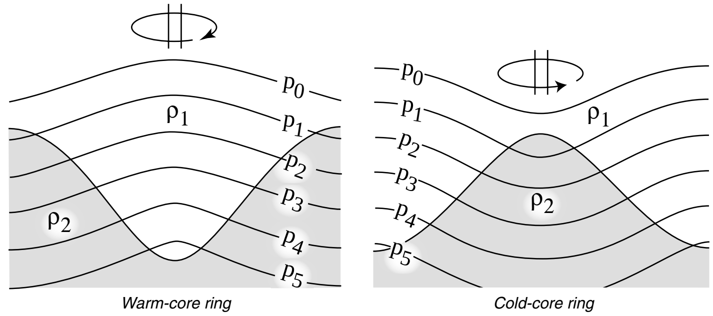


Figure 10.13 Shape of isobaric surfaces p_i and the interface between two water masses of density ρ_1, ρ_2 if the upper is rotating faster than the lower. **Left:** Anticylconic motion, warm-core eddy. **Right:** Cyclonic, cold-core eddy. Note that the sea surface p_0 slopes up toward the center of the warm-core ring, and the isopycnal surfaces slope down toward the center (From Defant, 1929).

10.8 Lagrangean Measurements of Currents

Oceanography and fluid mechanics distinguishes between two types of velocity: Lagrangian and Eulerian velocities. Lagrangian velocity is the velocity of a water particle. Eulerian velocity is the velocity of water at a fixed position. Because of the importance of measurements of currents, many techniques have been developed, although no one technique dominates.

Basic Technique Lagrangean techniques track the position of a drifter that follows a water parcel either on the surface or deeper within the water column. The mean velocity over some period is calculated from the distance between positions at the beginning and end of the period divided by the period. Errors are due to:

1. Errors in determining the position of the drifter.
2. The failure of the drifter to follow a parcel of water. We assume the drifter stays in a parcel of water, but external forces acting on the drifter can cause it to drift relative to the water.
3. Sampling errors. Drifters go only where drifters want to go. And drifters want to go to convergent zones. Hence drifters tend to avoid areas of

divergent flow.

Satellite Tracked Surface Drifters Surface drifters consist of a drogue plus a float that is usually tracked by the Argos system on meteorological satellites. The buoy carries a simple radio transmitter with a very stable frequency F_0. A receiver on the satellite receives the signal and determines the Doppler shift F as a function of time t (Figure 10.14). The Doppler frequency is

$$F = \frac{dR}{dt}\frac{F_0}{c} + F_0$$

where R is the distance to the buoy, c is the velocity of light. The closer the buoy to the satellite the more rapidly the frequency changes. When $F = F_0$ the range is a minimum. This is the time of closest approach, and the satellite's velocity vector is perpendicular to the line from the satellite to the buoy. The time of closest approach and the time rate of change of Doppler frequency at that time gives the bouy's position relative to the orbit with a 180°ambiguity. Because the orbit is accurately known, and because the buoy can be observed many times, its position can be determined without ambiguity.

The accuracy of the position depends on the stability of the frequency transmitted by the buoy. The Argos system tracks buoys with an accuracy of ±1–2

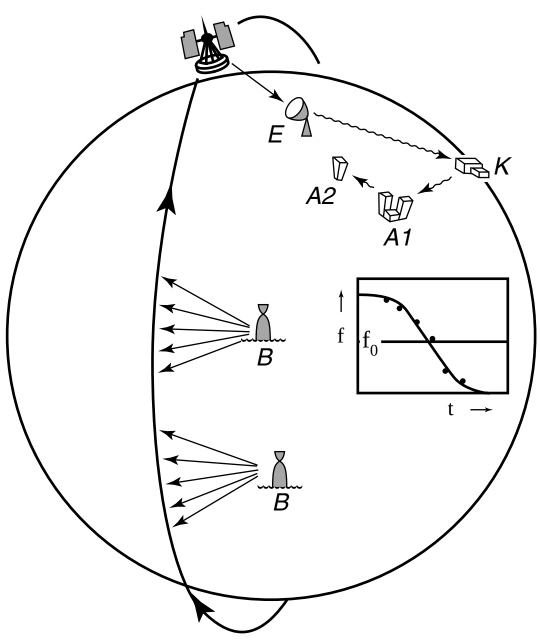


Figure 10.14 Satellite systems, especially System Argos, use radio signals transmitted from surface buoys to determine the position of the buoy. The satellite S receives a radio signal from the buoy B. The time rate of change of the signal, the Doppler shift, is a function of buoy position and distance from the satellite's track. The recorded Doppler signal is transmitted to ground stations E, which relays the information to processing centers A via control stations K. (From Dietrich *et al.*, 1980)

km, collecting 1–8 positions per day depending on latitude. Because 1 cm/s ≈ 1 km/day, and because typical values of currents in the ocean range from one to two hundred centimeters per second, this is an acceptable accuracy.

Holey-Sock Drifters Many types of surface drifters have been developed, culminating with the holey-sock drifter now widely used to track surface currents. The drifter consists of a circular, cylindrical drogue of cloth 1 m in diameter by 15 m long with 14 large holes cut in the sides. The weight of the drogue is supported by a submerged float set 3 m below the surface. The submerged float is tethered to a partially submerged surface float carrying the Argos transmitter.

Niiler et al. (1995) carefully measured the rate at which wind blowing on the surface float pulls the drogue through the water, and they found that the buoy moves $12 \pm 9°$ to the right of the wind at a speed

$$U_s = (4.32 \pm 0.67\times)\,10^{-2}\frac{U_{10}}{DAR} + (11.04 \pm 1.63)\,\frac{D}{DAR} \tag{10.24}$$

where DAR is the drag area ratio defined as the drogue's drag area divided by the sum of the tether's drag area and the surface float's drag area, and D is the difference in velocity of the water between the top of the cylindrical drogue and the bottom. If $DAR > 40$, then the drift $U_s < 1$ cm/s for $U_{10} < 10$ m/s.

Subsurface Drifters (Swallow and Richardson Floats) Subsurface drifters are widely used for measuring currents below the mixed layer. Subsurface drifters are neutrally buoyant chamber tracked by sonar using the SOFAR—Sound Fixing and Ranging—system for listening to sounds in the sound channel. The chamber can be a section of aluminum tubing containing electronics and carefully weighed to have the same density as water at a predetermined depth. Aluminum is chosen because it has a compressibility less than water.

The drifter has errors due to the failure of the drifter to stay within the same water mass. Often the errors are sufficiently small that the only important error is due to tracking accuracy.

The primary disadvantage of the neutrally buoyant drifter is that tracking systems are not available throughout the ocean.

Subsurface Drifters (ALACE Drifters) : Autonomous Lagrangian Circulation Explorer (ALACE) drifters (Figure 10.15) are designed to cycle between the surface and some predetermined depth. The drifter spends roughly 30 days at depth, and periodically returns to the surface to report it's position and other information using the Argos system (Davis et al., 1992). The drifter thus combines the best aspects of surface and neutrally-buoyant drifters. It is able to track deep currents, it is autonomous of acoustic tracking systems, and it can be tracked anywhere in the ocean by satellite. The maximum depth is near 2 km, and the drifter carries sufficient power to complete 70 30-day cycles to 1,000 m or 50 30-day cycles to 2,000 m.

The drifters are widely used in the World Ocean Circulation Experiment to determine mid-level currents in remote regions, especially the Antarctic Circumpolar Current.

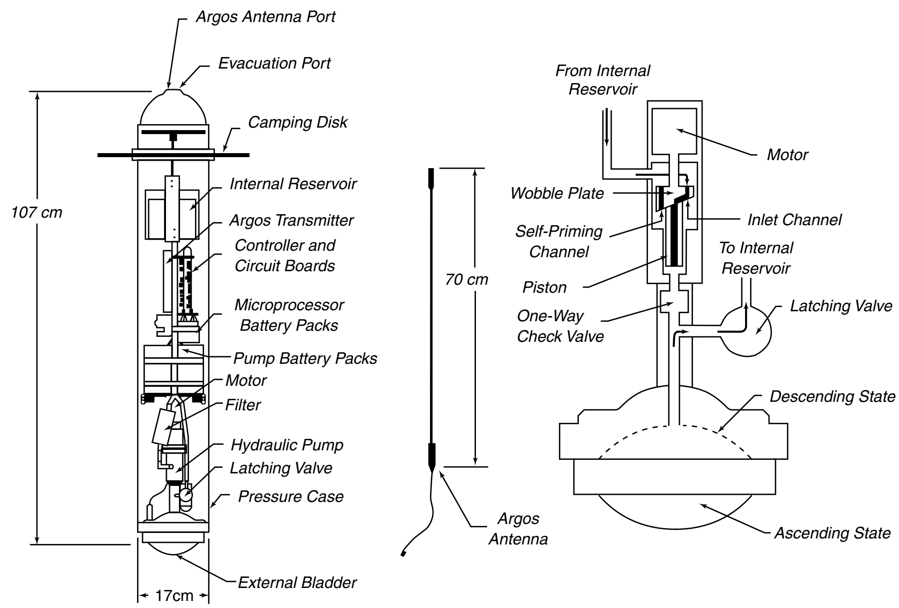


Figure 10.15 The Autonomous Lagrangian Circulation Explorer (ALACE) drifters are widely used by the World Ocean Circulation Experiment to measure deeper currents within the ocean. **Left:** Schematic of the drifter. To ascend, the hydraulic pump moves oil from an internal reservoir to an external bladder, reducing the drifter's density. To descend, the latching valve is opened to allow oil to flow back into the internal reservoir. The antenna is mounted to the end cap. **Right:** Expanded schematic of the hydraulic system. The motor rotates the wobble plate actuating the piston which pumps hydraulic oil. (From Davis et al., 1992).

Lagrangean Current Measurements Using Tracers Perhaps the best way for following water parcels is to tag the parcel with molecules not normally found in the ocean. Thanks to atomic bomb tests in the 1950s and the recent exponential production of chlorofluorocarbons, such tracers have been introduced into the ocean in large quantities. See §13.5 for a list of tracers used in oceanography. Surveys of the trace molecules are used for inferring the movement of the water. The technique is especially useful for calculating velocity of deep water masses averaged over decades and for calculating eddy diffusivities.

The distribution of trace molecules is calculated from the concentration of the molecules in water samples collected on hydrographic sections and surveys. Because the collection of data is expensive and slow, the number of repeated sections is not large. Figure 10.16 shows two maps of the distribution of tritium in the North Atlantic collected in 1972–1973 by the Geosecs Program and in 1981, a decade later. The sections show that tritium, introduced into the atmosphere during the atomic bomb tests in the atmosphere in the 1950s to 1972, penetrated to depths below 4 km only north of 40°N by 1971 and to 35°N by 1981. This shows that deep currents are very slow, about 1.6 mm/s in this example.

Because the deep currents are so small, we can question what process are responsible for the observed distribution of tracers. Both turbulent diffusion

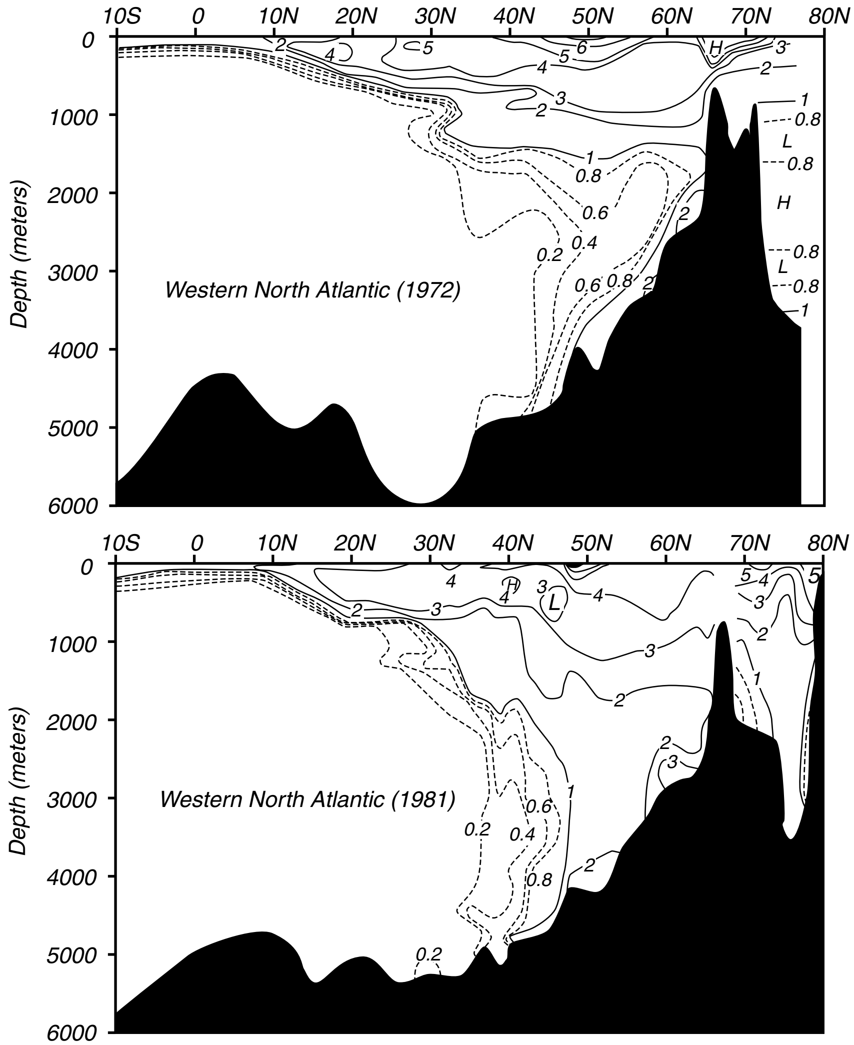


Figure 10.16 Distribution of tritium along a section through the western basins in the North Atlantic, measured in 1972 (**Top**) and remeasured in 1981 (**Bottom**). Units are tritium units, where one tritium unit is 10^{18} (tritium atoms)/(hydrogen atoms) corrected to the activity levels that would have been observed on 1 January 1981. Compare this figure to the density in the ocean shown in Figure 13.9. From Toggweiler (1994)

and advection by currents can fit the observations. Hence, does Figure 10.16 give mean currents in the deep Atlantic, or the turbulent diffusion of tritium?

Another useful tracer is the temperature and salinity of the water. We will consider these observations in Chapter 13 when we describe the core method for studying the deep circulation. Here, we note that AVHRR observations of surface temperature of the ocean are an additional source of information about currents.

Sequential infrared images of surface temperature are used to calculate the

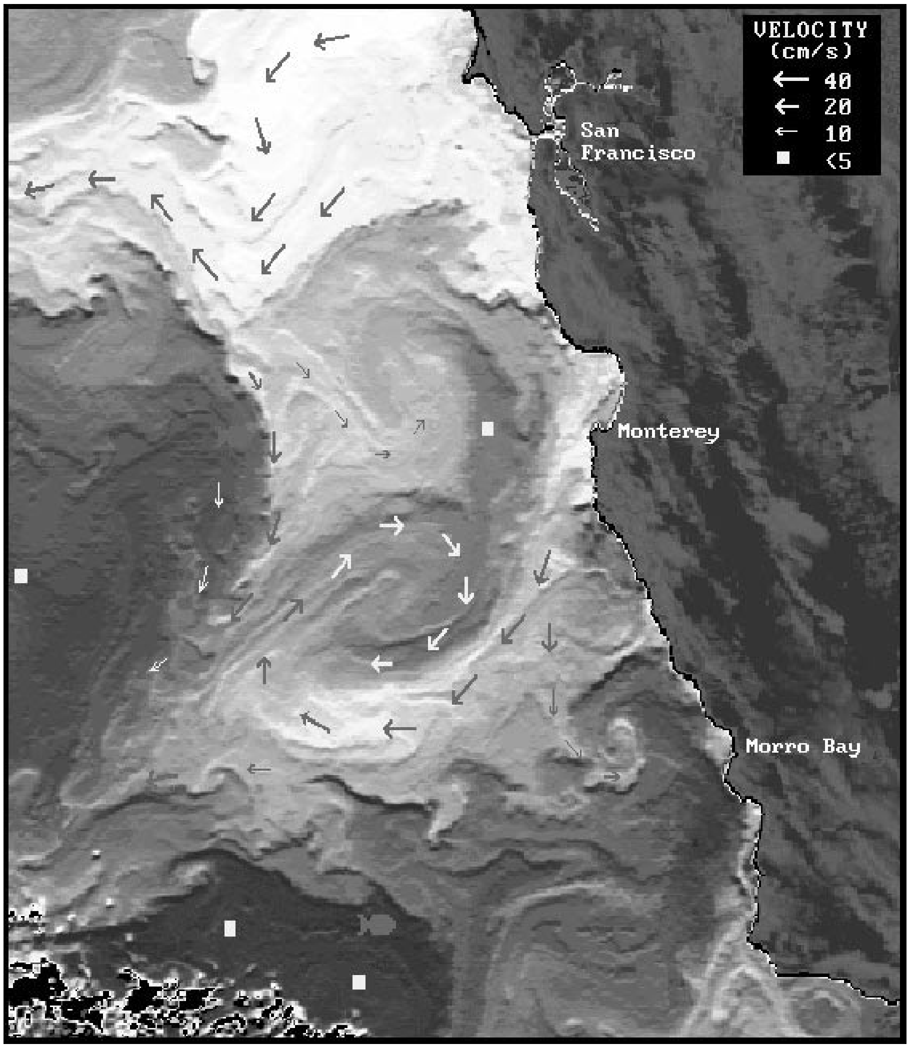


Figure 10.17 Ocean temperature and current patterns are combined in this AVHRR analysis. Surface currents were computed by tracking the displacement of small thermal or sediment features between a pair of images. A directional edge-enhancement filter was applied here to define better the different water masses. (From Ocean Imaging, Solana Beach, Caliornia, with permission).

displacement of features in the images (Figure 10.17). The technique is especially useful for surveying the variability of currents near shore. Land provides reference points from which displacement can be calculated accurately, and large temperature contrasts can be found in many regions in some seasons.

There are two important difficulties.

1. Many regions have extensive cloud cover, and the ocean cannot be seen.
2. Flow is primarily parallel to temperature fronts, and strong currents can exist along fronts even though the front may not move. It is therefore

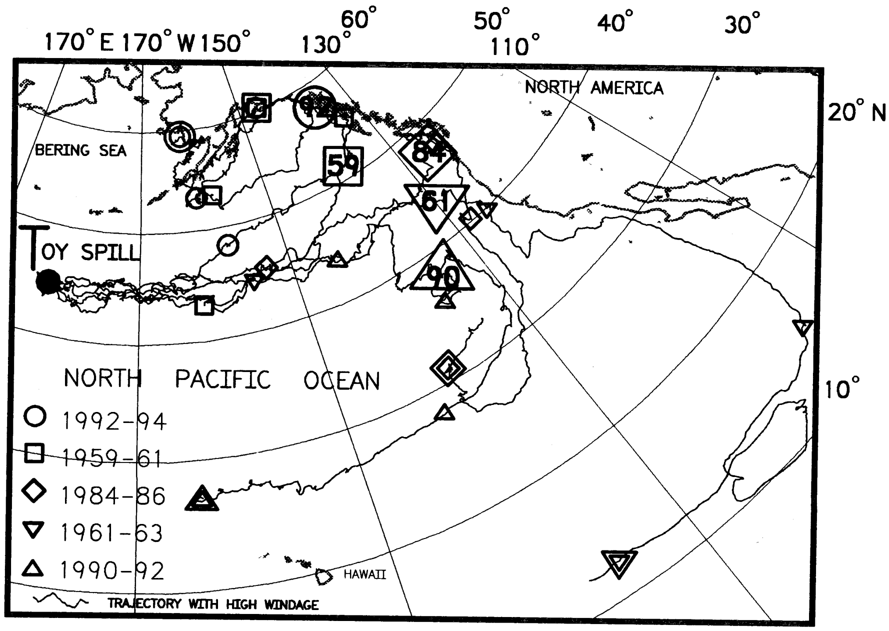


Figure 10.18 Trajectories that spilled rubber duckies would have followed had they been spilled on January 10 of different years. Five trajectories were selected from a set of 48 simulations of the spill each year between 1946 and 1993. The trajectories begin on January 10 (T) and end 2 years later (double symbols). Large symbols enclosing dates are the positions on November 16 of the year of the spill. Hence the circle with 92 inside is the location where rubber ducks first came ashore near Sitka. The code at lower left gives the dates of the trajectories: 1959, when the toys would have traveled in a loop around the Gulf of Alaska gyre; 1961, the most southerly trajectory; 1984, when the toys would have looped back to the northeast in an area of slow drift; 1990, when the toys would have traveled the farthest westward north of Hawaii; and 1992, when the toys after passing Sitka would go westward then northward through Unimak Pass into the Bering Sea. Note that the drifters tended to follow only one track. They could not be used for mapping currents away from the track. (From Ebbesmeyer and Ingraham, 1994).

essential to track the motion of small eddies embedded in the flow near the front and not the position of the front.

An example of Langrangean Current Measurements: The Rubber Duckie Spill On January 10, 1992 a 12.2-m container with 29,000 bathtub toys (including rubber ducks) washed overboard from a container ship at 44.7°N, 178.1°E. Ten months later the toys began washing ashore near Sitka, Alaska. A similar accident on May 27, 1990 released 80,000 Nike-brand shoes at 48°N, 161°W when waves washed containers from the *Hansa Carrier*(Figure 10.18). The spill and the eventual recovery of the toys proved to be a good test of a numerical model for calculating the trajectories of oil spills developed by Ebbesmeyer and Ingraham (1992, 1994). They calculated the possible trajectories of the spilled rubber ducks using the Ocean Surface Current Simulations OSCURS numerical model driven by winds calculated from the Fleet Numerical

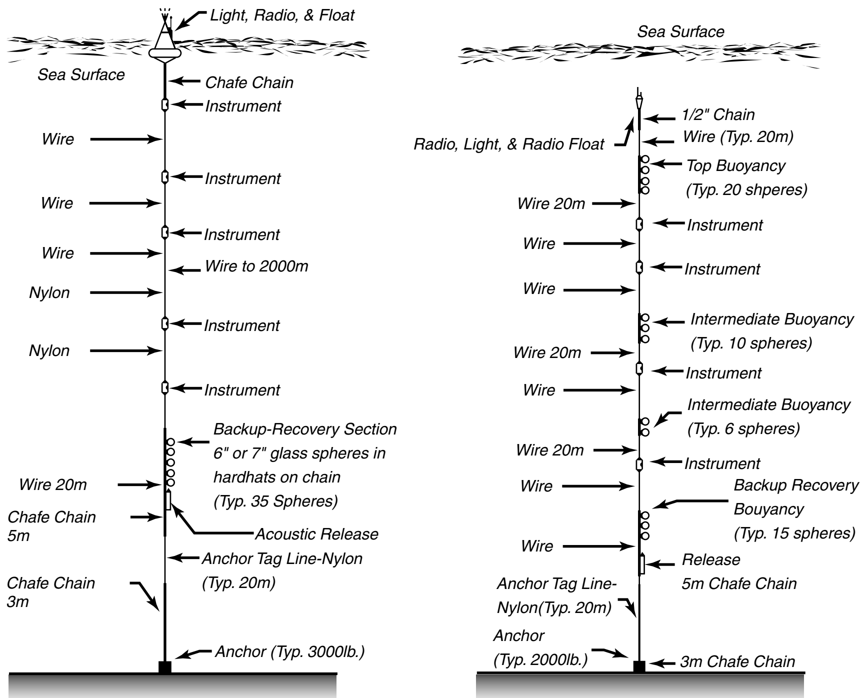


Figure 10.19 **Left:** An example of a surface mooring of the type deployed by the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution's Buoy Group. **Right:** An example of a subsurface mooring deployed by the same group. (From Baker, 1981).

Oceanography Center's daily sea-level pressure data. The calculated trajectories agreed well with observed locations of drifters found on the shore. Using a 50% increase in windage coefficient and a 5° decrease in the angle of deflection function, the toys arrived near Sitka, Alaska at the time of the first recoveries on November 16, 1992.

10.9 Eulerian Measurements of Currents

Eulerian currents are measured using many types of current meters attached to many types of moorings or ships. The instruments can be mechanical or acoustic, and many different configurations and techniques have been used at one time or another.

Moorings are deployed by ships, and they may last for months to longer than a year (Figure 10.19). Because the mooring must be deployed and recovered by deep-sea research ships, the technique is expensive. Yet, it is one of the most widely used method for directly measuring currents. Submerged moorings are preferred for several reasons: the surface float is not forced by high frequency, strong, surface currents; the mooring is out of sight and it does not attract the attention of fishermen; and the floatation is usually deep enough to avoid being caught by fishing nets.

Errors in measurements of Eulerian currents arise from:

1. Mooring motion. Subsurface moorings move least. Surface moorings in strong currents move most, and are seldom used.
2. Inadequate Sampling. Moorings tend not to last long enough to give accurate estimates of mean velocity or interannual variability of the velocity.
3. Fouling of the sensors by marine organisms, especially instruments deployed for more than a few weeks close to the surface.

Moored Current Meters Moored current meters are perhaps the most common type of Eulerian current-measuring device. Many different types of mechanical current meters have been used. Examples include:

1. Aanderaa current meters which uses a vane and a Savonius rotor (Figure 10.20).
2. Vector Averaging Current Meters which uses a vane and propellers.
3. Vector Measuring Current Meters, which uses a vane and specially designed pairs of propellers oriented at right angles to each other. The propellers are designed to respond to the cosine of the vector velocity (weller and Davis, 1980).

Errors are due to the failure to accurately measure the flow past the instrument: i) The response may be nonlinear; ii) the instrument may not respond to rapid changes in the current; and iii) it may not respond accurately to flow that is not horizontal. Special care must be taken in selecting meters to be used near the surface where wave-produced currents are large.

Acoustic-Doppler Current Profiler: For many applications, mechanical current meters are being replaced by acoustic current meters that measure the Doppler shift of acoustic signals reflected from bubbles, phytoplankton and zooplankton in the water in several directions and distances from the acoustic transducer. One type of acoustic device is particularly useful, the Acoustic-Doppler Current Profiler, commonly called the ADCP. Ship-board instruments are widely used for profiling currents within 200 to 300 m of the sea surface while the ship steams between hydrographic stations. Instruments mounted on CTDs are used to profile currents from the surface to the bottom at hydrographic stations.

The instrument measures Doppler shift in several directions using three to four acoustic beams. Each beam gives the velocity in the direction of the beam, and the combination of several beams gives two or three components of the velocity.

The accuracy of the ship-borne instrument depends on the accuracy with which the ship's velocity and orientation are known. Note that the ship can be headed in one direction, yet drift in a slightly different direction. Because the ship's velocity is much faster than the current, small errors in determining the ship's velocity can produce large errors in the measurement of current. The error can be reduced by steaming along a closed, rectangular track. The net flow into a rectangular box a kilometer on a side traversed in a few minutes must be zero, and this can be used to infer the accuracy of the measurements.

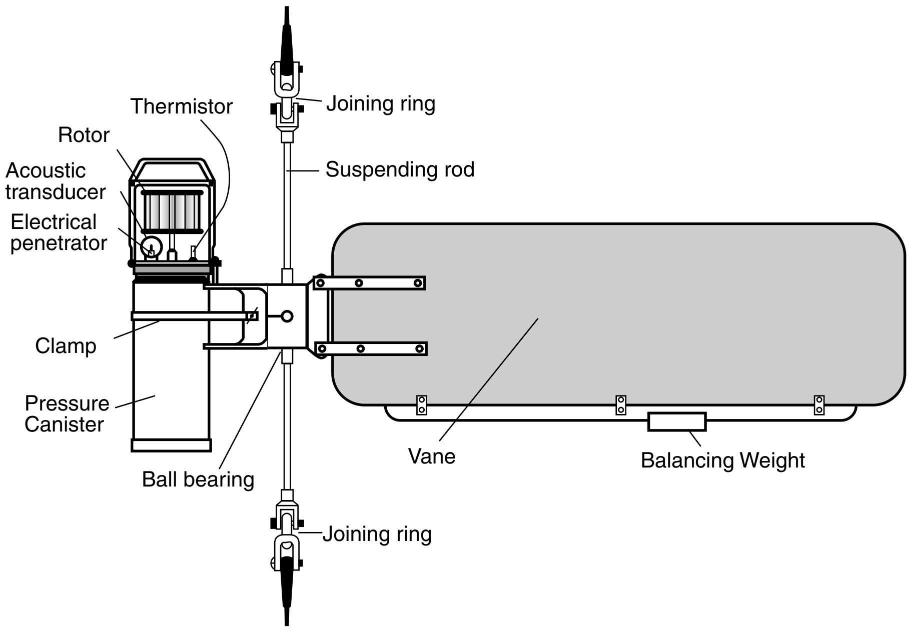


Figure 10.20 An example of a moored current meter with a Savonius roter to measure current speed, a vane to measure current direction, and a pressure-resistant housing for power and circuits to record the signal. The turns of the rotor are measured by the acoustic transducer. (From Dietrich, et al. 1980)

Acoustic Tomography Another acoustic technique uses acoustic signals transmitted through the sound channel to and from a few moorings spread out across oceanic regions. The technique is expensive because it requires many deep moorings and loud sound sources. It promises, however, to obtain information difficult to obtain by other means. The number of acoustic paths across a region rises as the square of the number of moorings. And, the signal propagating along the sound channel has many modes, some that stay near the axis of the channel, others that propagate close to the sea surface and bottom (See Figure 3.16). The various modes give information about the vertical temperature structure in the ocean, and the many paths in the horizontal give the spatial distribution of temperature. If one mooring retransmits the signal it receives from another mooring, the time for the signal to propagate in one direction minus the time for the signal to propagate in the reverse direction, the reciprocal travel time, is proportional to current component parallel to the acoustic path.

Other Methods (Mostly of Historical Interest) A variety of techniques widely used in the past, are now seldom used. One of the most popular for a few years was the Geomagnetic ElectroKinetograph GEK current meter. It measured currents by measuring the electrical potential induced in sea water when a conductor (sea water) moving in a magnetic field (Earth's field). It consisted of a pair of electrodes towed behind a ship. The electrodes were at the beginning and end of line several hundred meters long. Or, the electrodes were at ends of submarine telephone cables. The accuracy of the technique was difficult to quantify and the technique fell from favor. The primary error was due to unknown shorting of current by conduction through the sea floor and in still water below moving surface currents.

10.10 Important Concepts

1. Pressure distribution is almost precisely the hydrostatic pressure obtained by assuming the ocean is at rest. Pressure is therefore calculated very accurately from measurements of temperature and conductivity as a function of pressure using the equation of state of seawater. Hydrographic data give the relative, internal pressure field of the ocean.
2. Flow in the ocean is in almost exact geostropic balance except for flow in the upper and lower boundary layers. Corolis force almost exactly balances the horizontal pressure gradient.
3. Satellite altimetric observations of the oceanic topography give the surface geostrophic current. The calculation of topography requires an accurate geoid, which is known with sufficient accuracy only over distances exceeding a few thousand kilometers. If the geoid is not known, altimeters can measure the change in topography as a function of time, which gives the change in surface geostrophic currents.
4. Topex/Poseidon is the most accurate altimeter system, and it can measure the topography or changes in topography with an accuracy of ± 4.7 cm.
5. Hydrographic data are used to calculate the internal geostrophic currents in the ocean relative to known currents at some level. The level can be surface currents measured by altimetery or an assumed level of no motion at depths below 1–2 m.
6. Flow in the ocean that is independent of depth is called barotropic flow, flow that depends on depth is called baroclinic flow. Hydrographic data give only the baroclinic flow.
7. Geostrophic flow cannot change with time, so the flow in the ocean is not exactly geostrophic. The geostrophic method does not apply to flows at the equator where the Coriolis force vanishes.
8. Slopes of constant density or temperature surfaces seen in a cross-section of the ocean can be used to estimate the speed of flow through the section.
9. Measurements of the position of a parcel of water give the Lagrangean flow in the ocean. The position can be determined using surface or subsurface drifters, or chemical tracers such as tritium.
10. Measurements of the velocity of flow past a point gives the Eulearian flow in the ocean. The velocity of the flow can be measured using moored current meters or acoustic velocity profilers on ships, CTDs or moorings.

Chapter 11

Wind Driven Ocean Circulation

What drives the ocean currents? At first, we might answer, the winds drive the circulation. But if we think more carefully about the question, we might not be so sure. We might notice, for example, that strong currents, such as the North Equatorial Countercurrents in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans go upwind. Spanish navigators in the 16th century noticed strong northward currents along the Florida coast that seemed to be unrelated to the wind. How can this happen? And, why are strong currents found offshore of east coasts but not offshore of west coasts?

Answers to the questions can be found in a series of three remarkable papers published from 1947 to 1951. In the first, Harald Sverdrup (1947) showed that the circulation in the upper kilometer or so of the ocean is directly related to the curl of the wind stress. Henry Stommel (1948) showed that the circulation in oceanic gyres is asymmetrical because the Coriolis force varies with latitude. Finally, Walter Munk (1950) added eddy viscosity and calculated the circulation of the upper layers of the Pacific. Together the three oceanographers laid the foundations for a modern theory of ocean circulation.

11.1 Sverdrup's Theory of the Oceanic Circulation

While Sverdrup was analyzing observations of equatorial currents, he came upon (11.7) below relating the curl of the wind stress to mass transport within the upper ocean. In deriving the relationship, Sverdrup assumed that the flow is stationary, and that the non-linear terms and lateral friction in the momentum equation are small. He assumed also that the flow is baroclinic and that the wind-driven circulation vanishes at some depth of no motion. From (8.9 and 8.14 a,b) the horizontal components of the momentum equation are:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \quad f \rho v + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right) \tag{11.1a}$$

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = -f\,\rho\,u + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right) \tag{11.1b}$$

Sverdrup integrated these equations from the surface to a depth $-D$ equal to or greater than the depth at which the horizontal pressure gradient becomes zero. He defined:

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} = \int_{-D}^{0} \frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\,dz, \qquad \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \int_{-D}^{0} \frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\,dz, \tag{11.2a}$$

$$M_x \equiv \int_{-D}^{0} \rho\,u(z)\,dz, \qquad M_y \equiv \int_{-D}^{0} \rho\,v(z)\,dz, \tag{11.2b}$$

where M_x, M_y are the mass transports in the wind-driven layer extending down to an assumed depth of no motion.

The horizontal boundary condition at the sea surface is the wind stress, and the boundary at depth $-D$ is zero stress because the currents go to zero:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(A_z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)_0 &= T_x \qquad & \left(A_z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)_{-D} &= 0 \\
\left(A_z\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right)_0 &= T_y \qquad & \left(A_z\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right)_{-D} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{11.3}$$

where T_x and T_y are the components of the wind stress.

Using these definitions and boundary conditions, (11.1) become:

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} = f\,M_y + T_x \tag{11.4a}$$

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = -f\,M_x + T_y \tag{11.4b}$$

In a similar way, Sverdrup integrated the continuity equation (7.10) over the same vertical depth, assuming the vertical velocity at the surface and at depth $-D$ are zero, to obtain:

$$\frac{\partial M_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial M_y}{\partial y} = 0 \tag{11.5}$$

Differentiating (11.4a) with respect to y and (11.4b) with respect to x, subtracting, and using (11.5) gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
\beta\,M_y &= \frac{\partial T_y}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial T_x}{\partial y} \\
\beta\,M_y &= \mathrm{curl}_z(T)
\end{aligned} \tag{11.6}$$

where $\beta \equiv \partial f/\partial y$ is the rate of change of Coriolis parameter with latitude, and where $\mathrm{curl}_z(T)$ is the vertical component of the curl of the wind stress.

This is an important and fundamental result—the northward mass transport of wind driven currents is equal to the curl of the wind stress. Note that Sverdrup allowed f to vary with latitude. We will see later that this is essential.

If f varies only with latitude, then:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0$$

$$\beta \equiv \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \frac{2\,\Omega\cos\varphi}{R} \tag{11.7}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} = -\frac{f}{R^2} \tag{11.8}$$

where R is Earth's radius and φ is latitude.

Over much of the open ocean, especially in the tropics, the wind is zonal and $\partial T_y/\partial x$ is sufficiently small that

$$M_y \approx -\frac{1}{\beta}\,\frac{\partial T_x}{\partial y} \tag{11.9}$$

Substituting (11.9) into (11.5), Sverdrup obtained:

$$\frac{\partial M_x}{\partial x} = -\frac{1}{2\,\Omega\cos\varphi}\left(\frac{\partial T_x}{\partial y}\tan\varphi + \frac{\partial^2 T_x}{\partial y^2}R\right) \tag{11.10}$$

Sverdrup integrated this equation from a north-south eastern boundary at $x = 0$, assuming no flow into the boundary. This requires $M_x = 0$ at $x = 0$. Then

$$M_x = -\frac{\Delta x}{2\,\Omega\cos\varphi}\left[\left\langle\frac{\partial T_x}{\partial y}\right\rangle\tan\varphi + \left\langle\frac{\partial^2 T_x}{\partial y^2}\right\rangle R\right] \tag{11.11}$$

where Δx is the distance from the eastern boundary of the ocean basin, and brackets indicate zonal averages of the wind stress.

To test his theory, Sverdrup compared transports calculated from known winds in the eastern tropical Pacific with transports calculated from hydrographic data collected by the *Carnegie* and *Bushnell* in October and November 1928, 1929, and 1939 between 22°N and 10°S along 80°W, 87°W, 108°W, and 109°W. The hydrographic data were used to compute P by integrating from a depth of $D = -1000$ m. The comparison, Figures 11.1 and 11.2, showed not only that the transports can be accurately calculated from the wind, but also that the theory predicts wind-driven currents going upwind.

Comments on Sverdrup's Solutions

1. Sverdrup assumed i) The internal flow in the ocean is geostrophic; ii) there is a uniform depth of no motion; and iii) Ekman's transport is correct. We have examined Ekman's theory in Chapter 9, and the geostrophic balance in Chapter 10. We know little about the depth of no motion in the tropical Pacific.

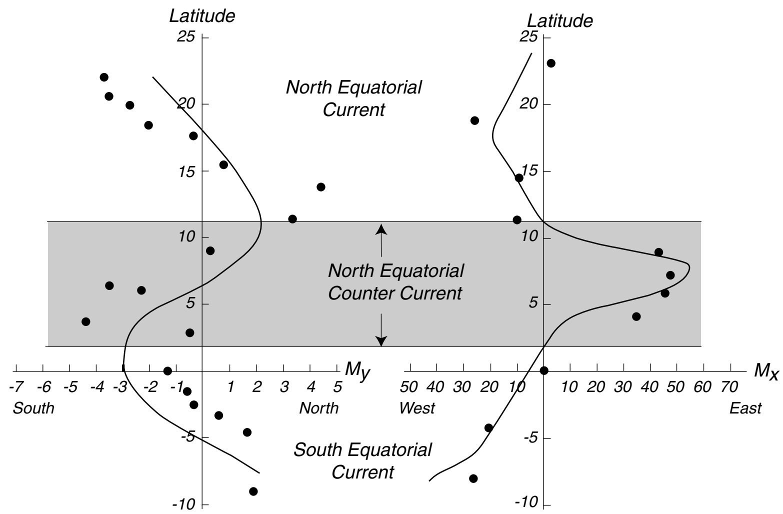


Figure 11.1 Mass transport in the eastern Pacific calculated from Sverdrup's theory using observed winds with 11.9 and 11.11 (solid lines) and pressure calculated from hydrographic data from ships with 11.4 (dots). Transport is in tons per second through a section one meter wide extending from the sea surface to a depth of one kilometer. Note the difference in scale between M_y and M_x (From Reid, 1948).

2. The solutions tend to be limited to the east side of the oceans because M_x grows with x. The result stems from neglecting friction which would eventually balance the wind-driven flow. Nevertheless, Sverdrup solutions have been used for describing the global system of surface currents. The

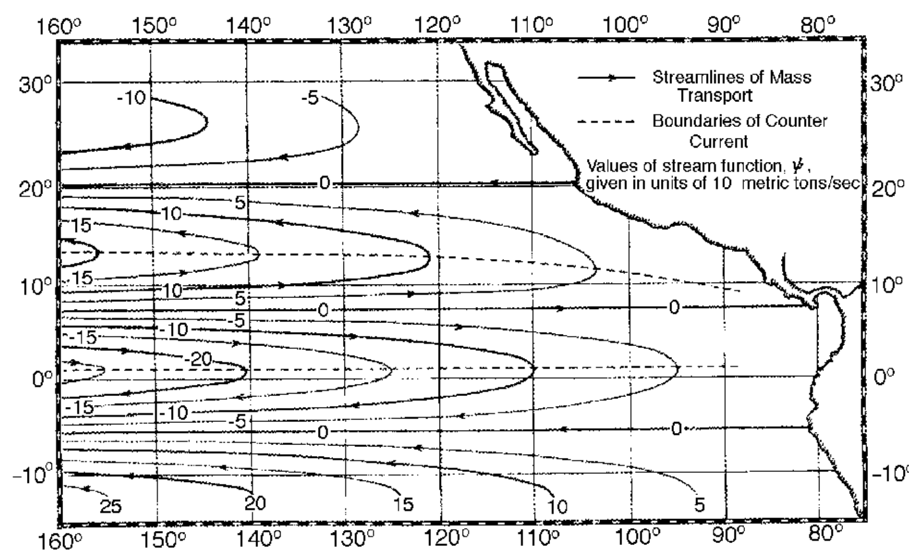


Figure 11.2 Streamlines of mass transport in the eastern Pacific calculated from Sverdrup's theory using mean annual wind stress (From Reid 1948).

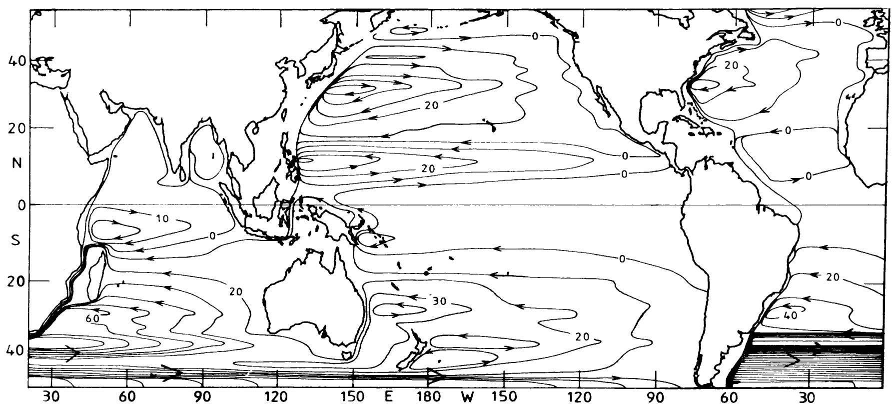


Figure 11.3 Depth-integrated Sverdrup transport applied globally using the wind stress from Hellerman and Rosenstein (1983). Contour interval is 10 Sverdrups. (From Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994)

solutions are applied throughout each basin all the way to the western limit of the basin. There, conservation of mass is forced by including north-south currents confined to a thin, horizontal boundary layer (Figure 11.3).

3. Only one boundary condition can be satisfied, no flow through the eastern boundary. More complete descriptions of the flow require more complete equations.
4. The solutions give no information on the vertical distribution of the current.
5. Results were based on data from one cruise plus climatological wind data assuming a steady state. Yet the flow varies in time and space, and the agreement of theory with observations could be due to chance.
6. Later calculations by Leetma, McCreary, and Moore (1981) using more recent wind data produces solutions with seasonal variability that agrees well with observations provided the level of no motion is at 500 m. If another depth were chosen, the results are not as good.
7. Wunsch (1996: §2.2.3) after carefully examining the evidence for a Sverdrup balance in the ocean concluded we do not have sufficient information to test the theory. He writes

   > The purpose of this extended discussion has not been to disapprove the validity of Sverdrup balance; rather, it was to emphasize the gap commonly existing in oceanography between a plausible and attractive theoretical idea and the ability to demonstrate its quantitative applicability to actual oceanic flow fields.—Wunsch (1996).

   Wunsch, however, notes

   > Sverdrup's relationship is so central to theories of the ocean circulation that almost all discussions assume it to be valid without any

> comment at all and proceed to calculate its comsequences for higher-order dynamics ... it is difficult to overestimate the importance of Sverdrup balance—Wunsch (1996).

And the gap is shrinking. Measurements of mean stress in the equatorial Pacific (Yu and McPhaden, 1999) show that the flow there is in Sverdrup balance.

Stream Lines, Path Lines, and the Stream Function Before discussing further progress in understanding the ocean's wind-driven circulation, we need to introduce the concept of stream lines and the stream function (see Kundu, 1990: 51 & 66).

At each instant in time, we can represent the flow field in a fluid by a vector velocity at each point in space. The instantaneous curves that are everywhere tangent to the direction of the vectors are called the *stream lines* of the flow. If the flow is unsteady, the pattern of stream lines change with time.

The trajectory of a fluid particle, the path followed by a Lagrangean drifter, is called the *path line* in fluid mechanics. The path line is the same as the stream line for steady flow, and they are different for an unsteady flow.

We can simplify the description of two-dimensional, incompressible flows by use of the *stream function* ψ defined by:

$$u \equiv \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y}, \qquad v \equiv -\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}, \tag{11.12}$$

The stream function is often used because it is a scalar from which the vector velocity field can be calculated. This leads to simpler equations for some flows.

Stream functions are also useful for visualizing the flow. At each instant, the flow is parallel to lines of constant ψ. Thus if the flow is steady, the lines of constant stream function are the paths followed by water parcels.

The volume rate of flow between any two stream lines of a steady flow is $d\psi$, and the volume rate of flow between two stream lines ψ_1 and ψ_2 is equal to $\psi_1 - \psi_2$. To see this, consider an arbitrary line $dx = (dx, dy)$ between two stream lines (Figure 11.4). The volume rate of flow between the stream lines is:

$$v\,dx + (-u)\,dy = -\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}\,dx - \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y}\,dy = -d\psi \tag{11.13}$$

and the volume rate of flow between the two stream lines is numerically equal to the difference in their values of ψ.

Now, lets apply the concepts to satellite-altimeter maps of the oceanic topography. Referring back to the discussion of surface geostrophic currents observed by satellite altimeters, we wrote (10.10)

$$\begin{aligned} u_s &= -\frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial y} \\ v_s &= \frac{g}{f}\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial x} \end{aligned} \tag{11.14}$$

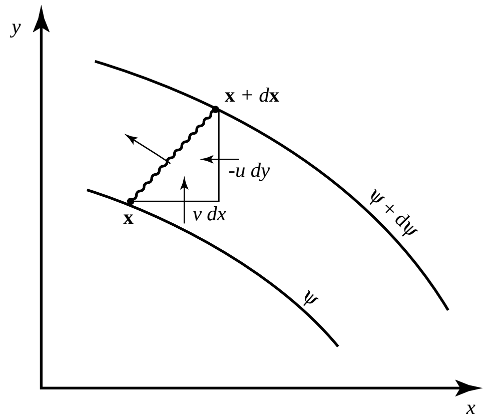


Figure 11.4 Volume transport between stream lines in a two-dimensional, steady flow (From Kundu, 1990).

Comparing (11.14) with (11.12) it is clear that

$$\psi = -\frac{g}{f}\,\zeta \tag{11.15}$$

and the sea surface is a stream function scaled by g/f. Turning to Figure 10.6, the lines of constant height are stream lines, and flow is along the lines. The surface geostrophic transport is proportional to the difference in height, independent of distance between the stream lines. The same statements apply to Figure 10.9, except that the transport is relative to transport at the 1000 decibars surface, which is roughly one kilometer deep.

In addition to the stream function, oceanographers use the mass-transport stream function Ψ defined by:

$$M_x \equiv \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial y}, \qquad M_y \equiv -\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial x} \tag{11.16}$$

This is the function shown in Figures 11.2 and 11.3.

11.2 Stommel's Theory of Western Boundary Currents

At the same time Sverdrup was beginning to understand circulation in the eastern Pacific, Stommel was beginning to understand why western boundary currents occur in ocean basins. To study the circulation in the North Atlantic, Stommel (1948) used essentially the same equations used by Sverdrup (11.1, 11.2, and 11.3) but he added a simple bottom stress proportional to velocity to (11.3):

$$\left(A_z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)_0 = -T_x = -F\cos(x\,b/y) \qquad \left(A_z\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)_D = -R\,u \tag{11.17a}$$

$$\left(A_z\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right)_0 = -T_y = 0 \qquad \left(A_z\frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right)_D = -R\,v \tag{11.17b}$$

where F and R are constants.

Stommel calculated steady-state solutions for flow in a rectangular basin $0 \leq y \leq b$, $0 \leq x \leq \lambda$ of constant depth D filled with water of constant density. His first solution was for a non-rotating Earth. This solution had a symmetric flow pattern with no western boundary current (Figure 11.5, left). Next, Stommel assumed a constant rotation, which again led to a symmetric solution with no western boundary current. Finally, he assumed that the Coriolis force varies with latitude. This led to a solution with western intensification (Figure 11.5, right). Stommel suggested that the crowding of stream lines in the west indicated that the variation of Coriolis force with latitude may explain why the Gulf Stream is found in the ocean. We now know that the variation of Coriolis force with latitude is required for the existence of the western boundary current, and that other models for the flow which use different formulations for friction, lead to western boundary currents with different structure. Pedlosky (1987, Chapter 5) gives a very useful, succinct, and mathematically clear description of the various theories for western boundary currents. Müller (1995) gives a more mathematical description.

In the next chapter, we will see that Stommel's results can also be explained in terms of vorticity—wind produces clockwise torque (vorticity), which must be balanced by a counterclockwise torque produced at the western boundary.

11.3 Munk's Solution

Sverdrup's and Stommel's work suggested the dominant processes producing a basin-wide, wind-driven circulation. Munk (1950) built upon this foundation, adding information from Rossby (1936) on lateral eddy viscosity, to obtain a solution for the circulation within an ocean basin. Munk used Sverdrup's idea of a vertically integrated mass transport flowing over a motionless deeper layer. This simplified the mathematical problem, and it is more realistic. The ocean currents are concentrated in the upper kilometer of the ocean, they are not barotropic and independent of depth. To include friction, Munk used lateral

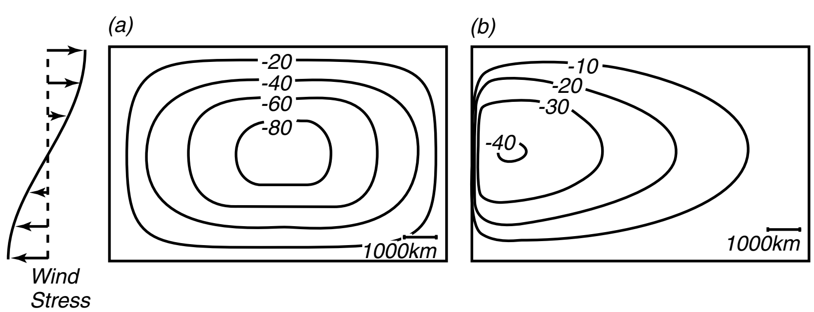


Figure 11.5 Stream function for flow in a basin as calculated by Stommel (1948). **Left:** Flow for non-rotating basin or flow for a basin with constant rotation. **Right:** Flow when rotation varies linearly with y.

eddy friction with constant $A_H = A_x = A_y$. Equations (11.1) become:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} = \quad f\,\rho\,v + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z \frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right) + A_H\,\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \tag{11.18a}$$

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} = -f\,\rho\,u + \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(A_z \frac{\partial v}{\partial z}\right) + A_H\,\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial y^2} \tag{11.18b}$$

Munk integrated the equation from a depth $-D$ to the surface at $z = z_0$ which is similar to Sverdrup's integration except that the surface is not at $z = 0$. Munk assumed that currents at the depth $-D$ vanish, and that (11.3) apply at the horizontal boundaries at the top and bottom of the layer.

To simplify the equations, Munk used the mass-transport stream function (11.16), and he proceeded along the lines of Sverdrup. He eliminated the pressure term by taking the y derivative of (11.18a) and the x derivative of (11.18b) to obtain the equation for mass transport:

$$\underbrace{A_H \nabla^4 \Psi}_{\text{Friction}} - \underbrace{\beta\,\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial x} = -\,\mathrm{curl}_z}_{\text{Sverdrup Balance}} \tag{11.19}$$

where

$$\nabla^4 = \frac{\partial^4}{\partial x^4} + 2\,\frac{\partial^4}{\partial x^2\,\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^4}{\partial y^4} \tag{11.20}$$

is the biharmonic operator. Equation (11.19) is the same as (11.6) with the addition of the lateral friction term A_H. The friction term is large close to a lateral boundary where the horizontal derivatives of the velocity field are large, and it is small in the interior of the ocean basin. Thus in the interior, the balance of forces is the same as that in Sverdrup's solution.

Equation (11.19) is a fourth-order partial differential equation, and four boundary conditions are needed. Munk assumed the flow at a boundary is parallel to a boundary and that there is no slip at the boundary:

$$\Psi_{bdry} = 0, \qquad \left(\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial n}\right)_{bdry} = 0 \tag{11.21}$$

where n is normal to the boundary. Munk then solved (11.19) with (11.21) assuming the flow was in a rectangular basin extending from $x = 0$ to $x = r$, and from $y = -s$ to $y = +s$. He further assumed that the wind stress was zonal and in the form:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= a\,\cos ny + b\,\sin ny + c \\ n &= j\,\pi/s, \qquad j = 1,\,2,\,\ldots \end{aligned} \tag{11.22}$$

Munk's solution (Figure 11.6) shows the dominant features of the gyre-scale circulation in an ocean basin. It has a circulation similar to Sverdrup's in the

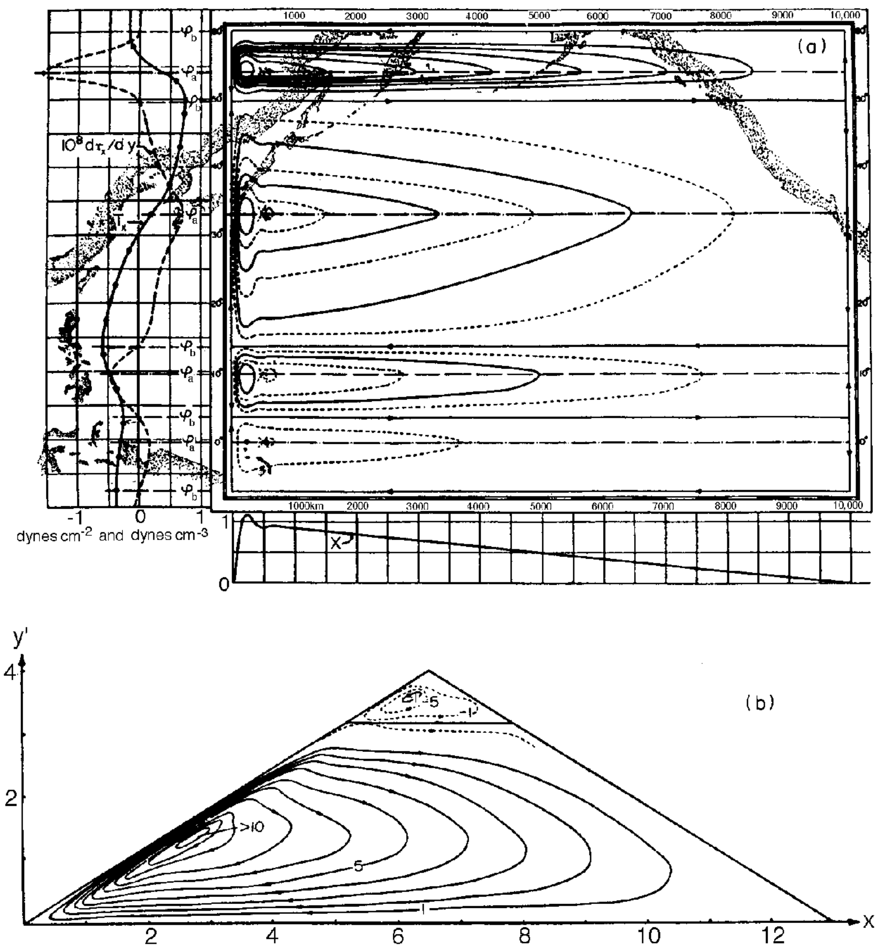


Figure 11.6 **Upper Left:** Mean annual wind stress $T_x(y)$ over the Pacific and the curl of the wind stress. **Upper Right:** The mass transport stream function for a rectangular basin calculated by Munk (1950) using observed wind stress for the Pacific. Contour interval is 10×10^6 m^3/s = 10 Sverdrups. The total transport between the coast and any point x, y is $\psi(x, y)$.The transport in the relatively narrow northern section is greatly exaggerated. **Lower Right:** North-South component of the mass transport. **Bottom:** The solution for a triangular basin. (From Munk, 1950).

eastern parts of the ocean basin and a strong western boundary current in the west. Using $A_H = 5 \times 10^3$ m^2/s gives a boundary current roughly 225 km wide with a shape similar to the flow observed in the Gulf Stream and the Kuroshio (Figure 11.7).

The transport in western boundary currents is independent of A_H, and it depends only on (11.6) integrated across the width of the ocean basin. Hence, it depends on the width of the ocean, the curl of the wind stress, and β. Using the best available estimates of the wind stress, Munk calculated that the Gulf Stream should have a transport of 36 Sv and that the Kuroshio should have a

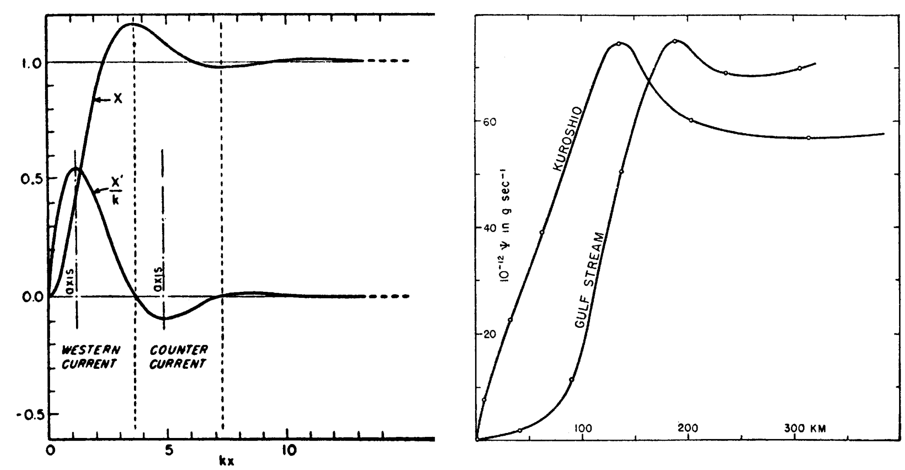


Figure 11.7 **Left:** Northward mass transport X and transport per unit length X'/k in the ocean calculated by Munk (1950). **Right:** Mass transport stream function y computed from hydrographic data across the Kuroshio and Gulf Stream. The Gulf Stream data were collected by the Atlantis at stations 1225–1231 in April 1931; the Kuroshio data were collected by the Mansyu at stations 429–434 in January 1927. x = 0 is at the continental shelf. (From Munk, 1950).

transport of 39 Sv. The values are about one half of the measured values of the flow available to Munk. This is very good agreement considering the wind stress was not well known.

Recent recalculations show good agreement except for the region offshore of Cape Hattaras where there is a strong recirculation. Munk's solution was based on wind stress averaged aver 5°squares. This underestimated the curl of the stress. Leetma and Bunker (1978) used modern drag coefficient and $2° \times 5°$ averages of stress to obtain 32 Sv transport in the Gulf Stream, a value very close to that calculated by Munk.

11.4 Observed Circulation in the Atlantic

The theories by Sverdrup, Munk, and Stommel describe a very simple flow. But the ocean is much more complicated. To see just how complicated the flow is at the surface, let's look at a whole ocean basin, the North Atlantic. I have chosen this region because it is the best observed, and because mid-latitude processes in the Atlantic are similar to mid-latitude processes in the other oceans. Thus, for example, we use the Gulf Stream as an example of a western boundary current.

Let's begin with the Gulf Stream to see how our understanding of ocean currents has evolved. Of course, we can't look at all aspects of the flow. You can find out much more by reading Tomczak and Godfrey (1994) book on *Regional Oceanography: An Introduction.*

North Atlantic Circulation The North Atlantic is the most thoroughly studied ocean basin. There is an extensive body of theory to descibe most aspects of the circulation, including flow at the surface, in the thermocline, and at depth,

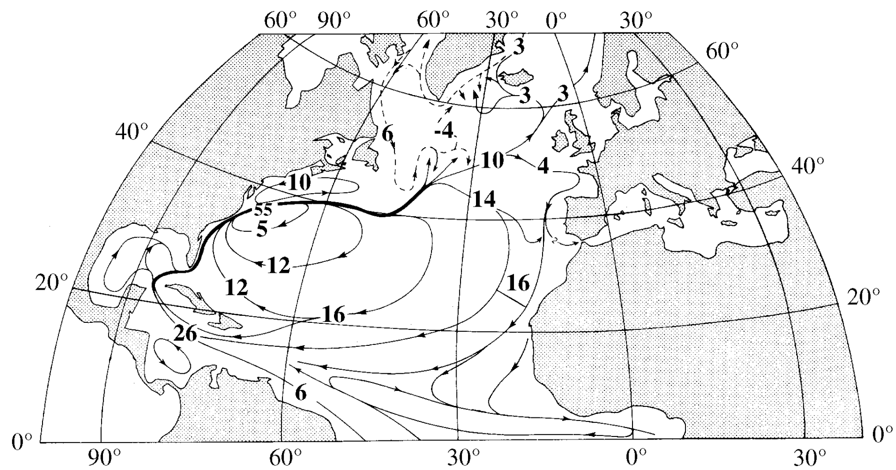


Figure 11.8 Schematic of currents in the North Atlantic showing major surface currents. Values are transport in units of 10^6 m^3/s (From Sverdrup, Johnson, and Fleming 1942: Fig. 187).

together with an extensive body of field observations. By looking at figures depicting the circulation, we can learn more about the circulation, and by looking at the figures produced over the past few decades we can trace an ever more complete understanding of the circulation.

Let's begin with the traditional view of the time-averaged flow in the North Atlantic based mostly on hydrographic observations of the density field (Figure 2.7). It is a contempory view of the mean circulation of the entire ocean based on a century of more of observations. Because the figure includes all the oceans, perhaps it is overly simplified. So, let's look then at a similar view of the mean circulation of just the North Atlantic (Figure 11.8).

The figure shows a broad, basin-wide, mid latitude gyre as we expect from Sverdrup's theory described in §11.1. In the west, a western boundary current, the Gulf Stream, completes the gyre. In the north a subpolar gyre includes the Laborador current. An equatorial current system and countercurrent are found at low latitudes with flow similar to that in the Pacific. Note, however, the strong cross equatorial flow in the west which flows along the northeast coast of Brazil toward the Caribbean.

If we look closer at the flow in the far north Atlantic (Figure 11.9) we see that the flow is still more complex. This figure includes much more detail of a region important for fisheries and commerce. Because it is based on an extensive base of hydrographic observations, is this reality? For example, if we were to drop a Lagrangean float into the Atlantic would it follow the streamline shown in the figure?

To answer the question, let's look at the tracks of a 110 buoys drifting on the sea surface compiled by Phil Richardson (Figure 11.10 top). The tracks give a very different view of the currents in the North Atlantic. It is hard to distinguish the flow from the jumble of lines, sometimes called spagetti tracks. Clearly, the flow is very turbulent, especially in the Gulf Stream, a fast, western-boundary

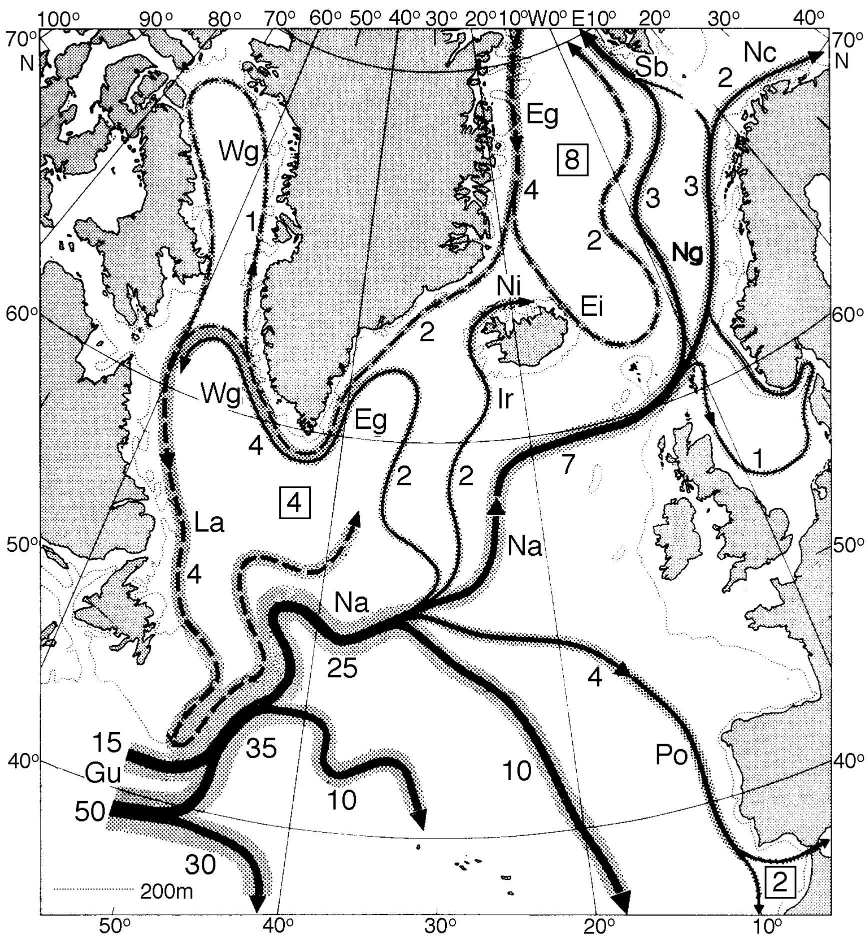


Figure 11.9 Detailed schematic of currents in the North Atlantic showing major surface currents. The numbers give the transport in units on $10^6 m^3/s$ from the surface to a depth of 10^6 m^3/s. **Eg**: East Greenland Current; **Ei**: East Iceland Current; **Gu**: Gulf Sttream; **Ir**: Irminger Current; **La**: Laborador Current; **Na**: North Atlantic Current; **Nc**: North Cape Current; **Ng**: Norwegian Current; **Ni**: North Iceland Current; **Po**: Portugal Current; **Sb**: Spitzbergen Current; **Wg**: West Greenland Current. Numbers within squares give sinking water in units on $10^6 m^3/s$. Solid Lines: Relatively warm currents. Broken Lines: Relatively cold currents. (From Dietrich, et al. 1980).

current. Furthermore, the turbulent eddies seem to have a diameter of a few degrees. This is much different that turbulence in the atmosphere. In the air, the large eddies are called storms, and storms have diameters of 10°–20°. Thus oceanic "storms" are much smaller than atmospheric storms.

Perhaps we can see the mean flow if we average the drifter tracks. What happens when Richardson averages the tracks through 2° × 2° boxes? The averages (Figure 11.10 bottom) begin to show some trends, but note that in some regions, such as east of the Gulf Stream, adjacent boxes have very different means, some having currents going in different directions. This indicates the flow is so variable, that the average is not stable; and 40 or more observations do not yields a stable mean value. Overall, Richardson finds that the kinetic energy of the eddies is 8 to 37 times larger than the kinetic energy of the mean flow. Thus the oceanic turbulence is very different than laboratory turbulence. In the lab, the mean flow is typically much faster than the eddies.

Further work by Richardson (1993) based on subsurface buoys freely drifting at depths between 500 and 3,500 m, shows that the current extends deep below the surface, and that typical eddy diameter is 80 km.

Gulf Stream Recirculation Region If we look closely at figure 11.9 we see that the transport in the Gulf Stream increases from 26 Sv in the Florida Strait (between Florida and Cuba) to 55 Sv offshore of Cape Hattaras. Later measurements showed the transport increases from 30 Sv in the Florida Strait to 150 Sv near 40°N.

The observed increase, and the large transport off Hatteras, disagree with transports calculated from Sverdrup's theory. Theory predicts a much smaller maximum transport of 30 Sv, and that the maximum ought to be near 28°N. Now we have a problem: What causes the high transports near 40°N?

Niiler (1987) summarizes the theory and observations. First, there is no hydrographic evidence for a large influx of water from the Antilles Current that flows north of the Bahamas and into the Gulf Stream. This rules out the possibility that the Sverdrup flow is larger than the calculated value, and that the flow bypasses the Gulf of Mexico. The flow seems to come primarily from the Gulf Stream itself. The flow between 60°W and 55°W is to the south. The water then flows south and west, and rejoins the Stream between 65°W and 75°W. Thus, there are two subtropical gyres: a small gyre directly south of the Stream centered on 65°W, called the Gulf Stream recirculation region, and the broad, wind-driven gyre near the surface seen in figure 11.8 that extends all the way to Europe.

The Gulf Stream recirculation carries two to three times the mass of the broader gyre. Current meters deployed in the recirculation region show that the flow extends to the bottom. This explains why the recirculation is weak in the maps calculated from hydrographic data. Currents calculated from the density distribution give only the baroclinic component of the flow, and they miss the component that is independent of depth, the barotropic component.

The Gulf Stream recirculation is driven by the potential energy of the steeply sloping thermocline at the Gulf Stream. The depth of the 27.00 sigma-theta (σ_θ) surface drops from 250 meters near 41°N in figure 10.12 to 800 m near 38°N south of the Stream. Eddies in the Stream convert the potential energy to kinetic energy through baroclinic instability. The instability leads to an interesting phenomena: negative viscosity. The Gulf Stream accelerates not decelerates. It acts as though it were under the influence of a negative viscosity. The same process drives the jet stream in the atmosphere. The steeply sloping density surface separating the polar air mass from mid-latitude air masses at the atmosphere's polar front also leads to baroclinic instability. For more on this fascinating see Starr's (1968) book on *Physics of Negative Viscosity Phenomena*.

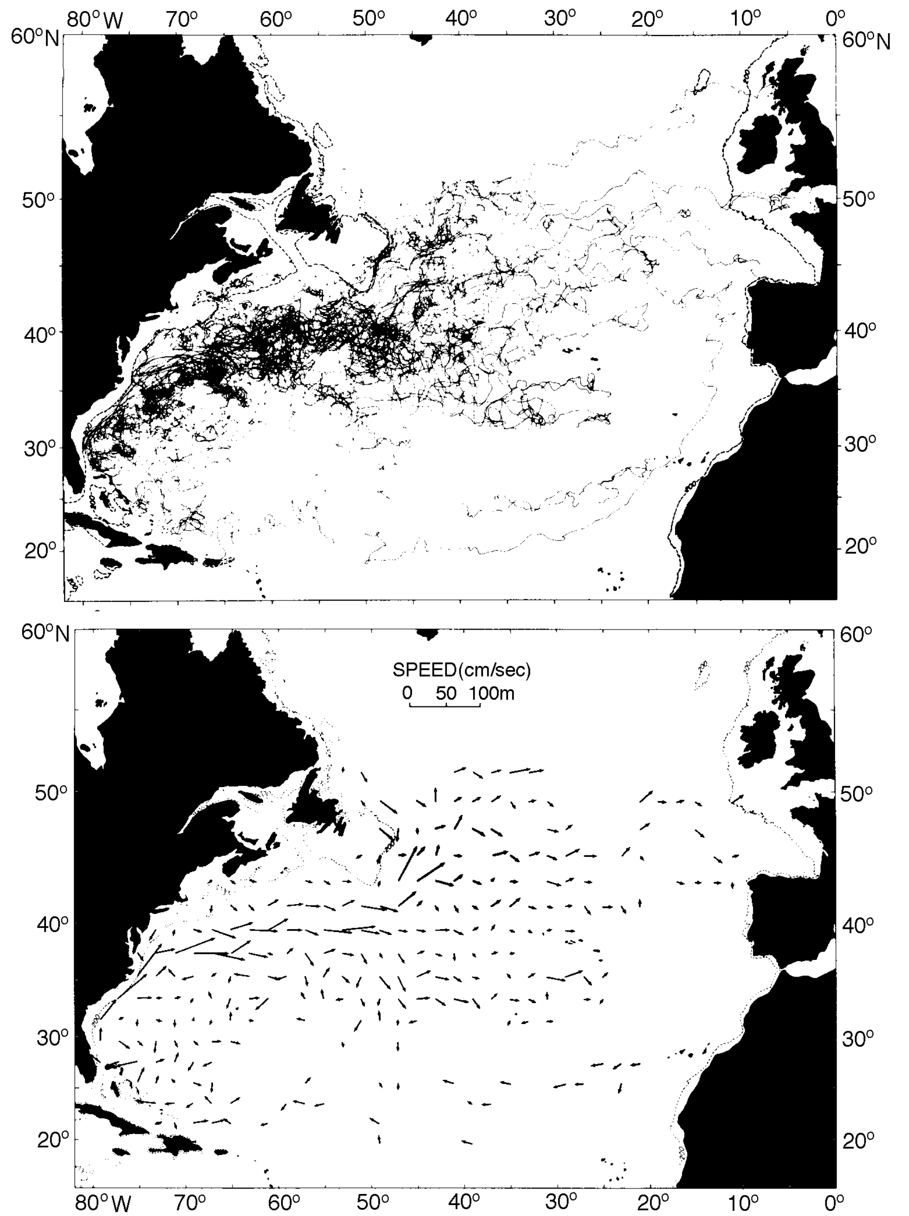


Figure 11.10 **Top** Tracks of 110 drifting buoys deployed in the western North Atlantic. **Botton** Mean velocity of currents in 2° × 2° boxes calculated from tracks above. Boxes with fewer than 40 observations were omitted. Length of arrow is proportional to speed. Maximum values are near 0.6 m/s in the Gulf Straem near 37°N 71°W. (From Richardson 1983).

Let's look at this process in the Gulf Stream (figure 11.11). The strong current shear in the Stream causes the flow to begin to meander. The meander intensifies, and eventually the Stream throws off a ring. Those on the south

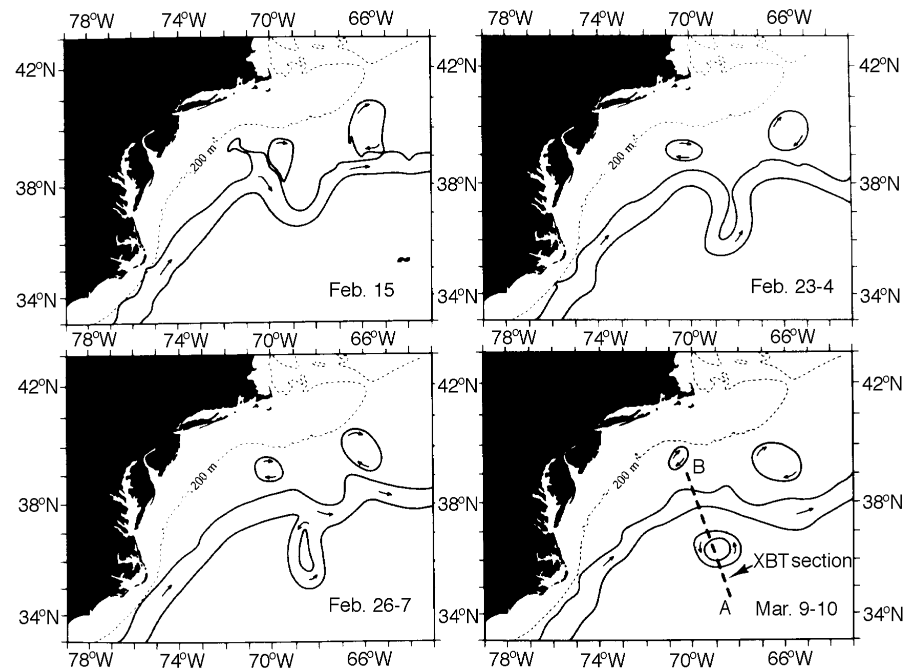


Figure 11.11 Gulf Stream meanders lead to the formation of a spinning eddy, a ring. Notice that rings have a diameter of about 1° (From Ring Group, 1981).

side drift southwest, and eventually merge with the stream several months later (figure 11.12). The process occurs all along the recirculation region, and satellite images show nearly a dozen or so rings occur north and south of the stream (figure 11.12). In the south Atlantic, there is another western boundary current, the Brazil Current that completes the Sverdrup circulation in that basin. Between the flow in the north and south Atlantic lies the equatorial circulation similar to the circulation in the Pacific. Before we can complete our description of the Atlantic, we need to look at the Antarctic Circumpolar Current.

11.5 Important Concepts

1. The theory for wind-driven, geostrophic currents was first outlined in a series of papers by Sverdrup, Stommel, and Munk between 1947 and 1951.

2. They showed that realistic currents can be calculated only if the Coriolis parameter varies with latitude.

3. Sverdrup showed that the curl of the wind stress is driven by a northward mass transport, and that this can be used to calculate currents in the ocean away from western boundary currents.

4. Stommel showed that western boundary currents are required for flow to circulate around an ocean basin when the Coriolis parameter varies with latitude.

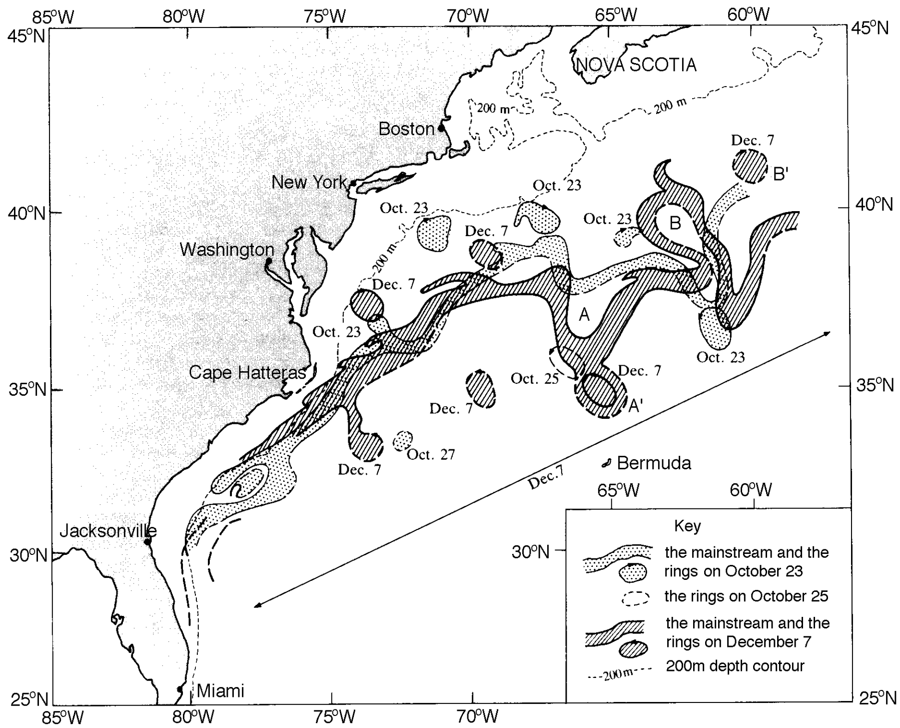


Figure 11.12 Sketch of the position of the Gulf Stream, warm core, and cold core eddies observed im infrared images of the sea surface collected by the infrared radiometer on NOAA-5 in October and December 1978 (from Tolmazin, 1985: 91).

5. Munk showed how to combine the two solutions to calculate the wind-driven geostrophic circulation in an ocean basin. In all cases, the current is driven by the curl of the wind stress.
6. The observed circulation in the ocean is very turbulent. many years of observations may need to be averaged together to obtain a stable map of the mean flow.
7. The Gulf Stream is a region of baroclinic instability in which turbulence accelerates the stream. This creates a Gulf Stream recirculation. Transports in the recirculation region are much larger than transports calculated from the Sverdrup-Munk theory.

Chapter 12

Vorticity in the Ocean

Most of the fluid flows with which we are familiar, from bathtubs to swimming pools, are not rotating, or they are rotating so slowly that rotation is not important except maybe at the drain of a bathtub as water is let out. As a result, we do not have a good intuitive understanding of rotating flows. In the ocean, rotation and the conservation of vorticity strongly influence flow over distances exceeding a few tens of kilometers. The consequences of the rotation leads to results we have not seen before in our day-to-day dealings with fluids. For example, did you ask yourself why the curl of the wind stress leads to a mass transport in the north-south direction and not in the east-west direction? What is special about north-south motion? In this chapter, we will explore some of the consequences of rotation for flow in the ocean.

12.1 Definitions of Vorticity

In simple words, vorticity is the rotation of the fluid. The rate of rotation can be expressed various ways. Consider a bowl of water sitting on a table in a laboratory. The water may be spinning in the bowl. In addition to the spinning of the water, the bowl and the laboratory are rotating because they are on a rotating Earth. The two processes are separate, and we can consider two types of vorticity.

Planetary Vorticity Everything on Earth, including the oceans, the atmosphere, and bowls of water rotates with the Earth. This rotation imparted by Earth is the *planetary vorticity* f. It is twice the local rate of rotation of Earth:

$$\boxed{f \equiv 2\,\Omega \sin \varphi} \tag{12.1}$$

Planetary vorticity is the Coriolis parameter we used earlier to discuss flow in the ocean. It is greatest at the poles where it is twice the rotation rate of Earth. Note that the vorticity vanishes at the equator and that the vorticity in the southern hemisphere is negative because φ is negative.

Relative Vorticity The ocean and atmosphere do not rotate at exactly the same rate as Earth. They have some rotation relative to Earth due to currents and winds. *Relative vorticity* ζ is the vorticity due to currents in the ocean. Mathematically it is:

$$\boxed{\zeta \equiv \text{curl}_z\,\mathbf{V} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}} \tag{12.2}$$

where $\mathbf{V} = (u, v)$ is the horizontal velocity vector, and where we have assumed that the flow is two-dimensional. This is true if the flow extends over distances greater than a few tens of kilometers. ζ is the vertical component of the three-dimensional vorticity vector ω, and it is sometimes written ω_z. ζ is positive for counter-clockwise rotation viewed from above. This is the same sense as Earth's rotation in the northern hemisphere.

Note on Symbols Symbols commonly used in one part of oceanography often have very different meaning in another part. Here we use ζ for vorticity, but in Chapter 10, we used ζ to mean the height of the sea surface. We could use ω_z for relative vorticity, but ω is also commonly used to mean frequency in radians per second. I have tried to eliminate most confusing useage, but the dual use of ζ is one we will have to live with. Fortunately, it shouldn't cause much confusion.

For a rigid body rotating at rate Ω, curl$\mathbf{V} = 2\,\Omega$. Of course, the flow does not need to rotate as a rigid body to have relative vorticity. Vorticity can also result from shear. For example, at a north/south western boundary in the ocean, $u = 0$, $v = v(x)$ and $\zeta = \partial v(x)/\partial x$.

ζ is usually much smaller than f, and it is greatest at the edge of fast currents such as the Gulf Stream. To obtain some understanding of the size of ζ, consider the edge of the Gulf Stream off Cape Hatteras where the velocity decreases by 1 m/s in 100 km at the boundary. The curl of the current is approximately (1 m/s)/(100 km) = 0.13 cycles/day = 1 cycle/week. Hence even this large relative vorticity is still almost seven times smaller than f. More typical values of relative vorticity, such as the vorticity of eddies, is a cycle per month.

Absolute Vorticity The sum of the planetary and relative vorticity is called *absolute vorticity*:

$$\boxed{\text{Absolute Vorticity} \equiv (\zeta + f)} \tag{12.3}$$

We can obtain an equation for absolute vorticity in the ocean by a simple manipulation of the equations of motion for frictionless flow. We begin with:

$$\frac{Du}{Dt} - f\,v = -\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \tag{12.4a}$$

$$\frac{Dv}{Dt} + f\,u = -\frac{1}{\rho}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} \tag{12.4b}$$

If we expand the substantial derivative, and if we subtract $\partial\,/\partial y$ of (12.4a) from $\partial\,/\partial x$ of (12.4b), we obtain after some algebraic manipulations:

$$\boxed{\frac{D}{Dt}\,(\zeta + f) + (\zeta + f)\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right) = 0} \tag{12.5}$$

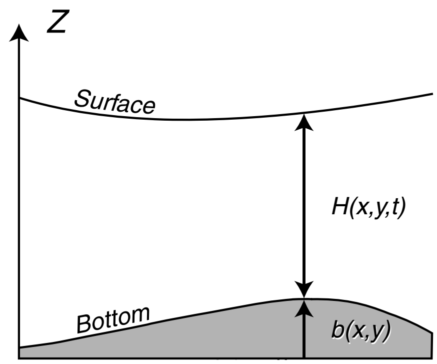


Figure 12.1 Sketch of fluid flow used for deriving conservation of potential vorticity (From Cushman-Roisin, 1994).

In deriving (12.15) we used:

$$\frac{Df}{Dt} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} = \beta\, v$$

recalling that f is independent of time t and eastward distance x.

Potential Vorticity The rotation rate of a column of fluid changes as the column is expanded or contracted. This changes the vorticity through changes in ζ. To see how this happens, consider barotropic, geostrophic flow in an ocean with depth $H(x, y, t)$, where H is the distance from the sea surface to the bottom. That is, we allow the surface to have topography (figure 12.1).

Integrating the continuity equation (7.19) from the bottom to the top of the ocean gives (Cushman-Roisin, 1994):

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right)\int_b^{b+H} dz + w\Big|_b^{b+H} = 0 \tag{12.6}$$

where b is the topography of the bottom, and H is the depth of the water. The boundary conditions require that flow at the surface and the bottom be along the surface and the bottom. Thus the vertical velocities at the top and the bottom are:

$$w(b+H) = \frac{\partial(b+H)}{\partial t} + u\,\frac{\partial(b+H)}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial(b+H)}{\partial y} \tag{12.7}$$

$$w(b) = u\,\frac{\partial(b)}{\partial x} + v\,\frac{\partial(b)}{\partial y} \tag{12.8}$$

Substituting (12.7) and (12.8) into (12.6) we obtain

$$\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right) + \frac{1}{D}\,\frac{DH}{Dt} = 0$$

Substituting this into (12.5) gives:

$$\frac{D}{Dt}(\zeta + f) - \frac{(\zeta + f)}{H}\frac{DH}{Dt} = 0$$

which can be written:

$$\frac{D}{Dt}\left(\frac{\zeta + f}{H}\right) = 0$$

The quantity within the parentheses must be constant; and it is called *potential vorticity* Π. Potential vorticity is is conserved along a fluid trajectory:

$$\boxed{\text{Potential Vorticity} = \Pi \equiv \frac{\zeta + f}{H}} \tag{12.9}$$

For baroclinic flow in a continuously stratified fluid, the potential vorticity can be written (Pedlosky, 1987: §2.5):

$$\Pi = \frac{\zeta + f}{\rho} \cdot \nabla\lambda \tag{12.10}$$

where λ is any conserved quantity for each fluid element. In, particular, if $\lambda = \rho$ then:

$$\Pi = \frac{\zeta + f}{\rho}\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} \tag{12.11}$$

assuming the horizontal gradients of density are small compared with the vertical gradients, a good assumption in the thermocline. In most of the interior of the ocean, $f \gg \zeta$ and (12.11) is written (Pedlosky, 1996, eq 3.11.2):

$$\Pi = \frac{f}{\rho}\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial z} \tag{12.12}$$

This allows the potential vorticity of various layers of the ocean to be determined directly from hydrographic data without knowledge of the velocity field.

12.2 Conservation of Vorticity

The angular momentum of any isolated spinning body is conserved. The spinning body can be an eddy in the ocean or the Earth in space. If the the spinning body is not isolated, that is, if it is linked to another body, then angular momentum can be transfered between the bodies. The two bodies need not be in physical contact. Gravitational forces can transfer momentum between bodies in space. We will return to this topic in Chapter 17 when we discuss tides in the ocean. Here, let's look at conservation of vorticity in a spinning ocean.

Friction is essential for the transfer of momentum in a fluid. Friction transfers momentum from the atmosphere to the ocean through the thin, frictional, Ekman layer at the sea surface. Friction transfers momentum from the ocean

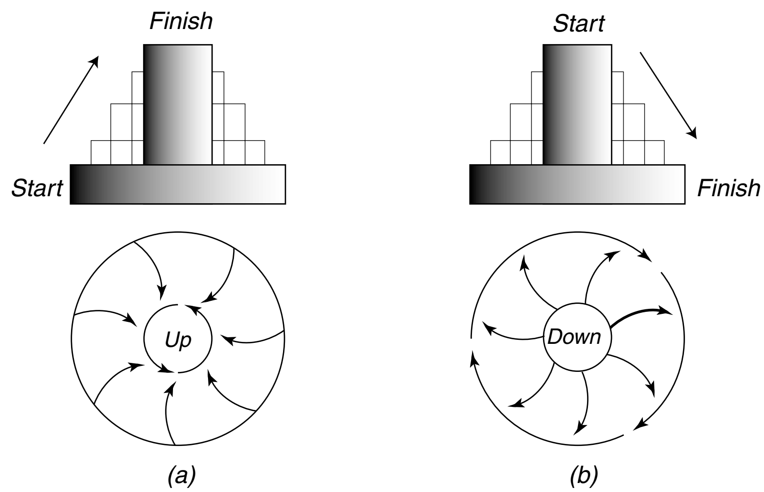


Figure 12.2 Sketch of the production of relative vorticity by the changes in the height of a fluid column. **Left:** vertical stretching reduces the moment of inertia of the column, causing it to spin faster; **Right:** vetical shrinking increases the moment of inertia of the column, causing it to spin slower (from von Arx, 1962).

to the solid earth through the Ekman layer at the sea floor. Friction along the sides of subsea mountains leads to pressure differences on either side of the mountain which causes another form of drag called *form drag*. This is the same drag that causes wind force on cars moving at high speed. In the vast interior of the ocean, however, the flow is frictionless, and vorticity is conserved. Such a flow is said to be *conservative*.

Conservation of Potential Vorticity The conservation of potential vorticity couples changes in depth, relative vorticity, and changes in latitude. All three interact.

1. Changes in the depth H of the flow causes changes in the relative vorticity. The concept is analogous with the way figure skaters decreases their spin by extending their arms and legs. The action increases their moment of inertia and decreases their rate of spin (Figure 12.2).
2. Changes in latitude require a corresponding change in ζ. As a column of water moves equatorward, f decreases, and ζ must increase (Figure 12.3). If this seems somewhat mysterious, von Arx (1962) suggests we consider a barrel of water at rest at the north pole. If the barrel is moved southward, the water in it retains the rotation it had at the pole, and it will appear to rotate counterclockwise at the new latitude where f is smaller.

Consequences of Conservation of Potential Vorticity The concept of conservation of potential vorticity has far reaching consequences, and its application to fluid flow in the ocean gives a deeper understanding of ocean currents.

1. In the ocean f tends to be much larger than ζ and thus $f/H =$ constant. This requires that the flow in an ocean of constant depth be zonal. Of

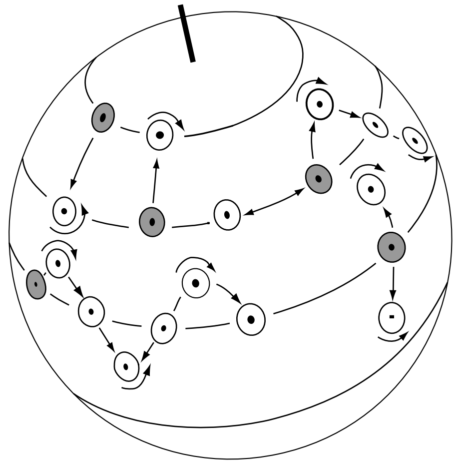


Figure 12.3 Angular momentum tends to be conserved as columns of water change latitude. This causes changes in relative vorticity of the columns (from von Arx, 1962).

course, depth is not constant, but in general, currents tend to be east-west rather than north south. Wind makes small changes in ζ, leading to a small meridional component to the flow (see figure 11.3).

2. Barotropic flows are diverted by seafloor features. Consider what happens when a flow that extends from the surface to the bottom encounters a sub-sea ridge (Figure 12.4). As the depth decreases, $\zeta + f$ must also decrease, which requires that f decrease, and the flow is deflected toward the equator. This is called *topographic steering.* If the change in depth is sufficiently large, no change in latitude will be sufficient to conserve potential vorticity, and the flow will be unable to cross the ridge. This is called *topographic blocking.*

3. The conservation of vorticity provides an alternate explanation for the existance of western boundary currents (Figure 12.5). Consider the gyre-scale flow in an ocean basin, say in the North Atlantic from 10°N to 50°N. The wind blowing over the Atlantic adds negative vorticity. As the

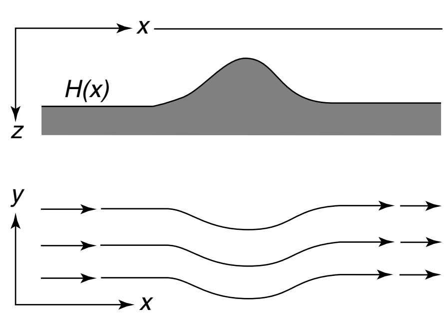


Figure 12.4 Barotropic flow over a sub-sea ridge is deflected equatorward to conserve potential vorticity (from Dietrich, *et al.*, 1980).

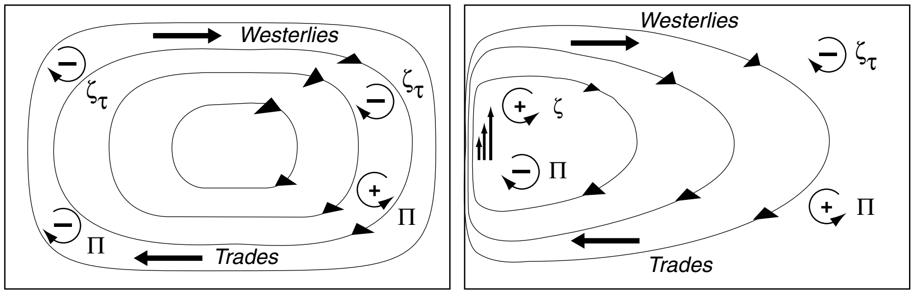


Figure 12.5 Conservation of potential vorticity can clarify why western boundary currents are necessary. **Left:** Vorticity input by the wind ζ_τ balances the change in potential vorticity Π in the east as the flow moves southward and f decreases; but the two do not balance in the west where Π must decrease as the flow moves northward and f increases. **Right:** Vorticity in the west is balanced by relative vorticity ζ generated by shear in the western boundary current.

water flows around the gyre, the vorticity of the gyre must remain nearly constant, else the flow would spin up or slow down. The negative vorticity input by the wind must be balanced by a source of positive vorticity.

The source of positive vorticity must be boundary currents: the wind-driven flow is baroclinic, which is weak near the bottom, and bottom friction cannot transfer vorticity out of the ocean. Hence, we must decide which boundary contributes. Flow tends to be zonal, and east-west boundaries will not solve the problem. In the east, potential vorticity is conserved: the input of negative relative vorticity is balanced by a decrease in potential vorticity as the flow turns southward. Only in the west is vorticity not conserved, and a strong source of positive vorticity is required. The vorticity is provided by the current shear in the western boundary current as the current rubs against the coast causing the northward velocity to go to zero at the coast (Figure 12.5, right).

In this example, friction transfers angular momentum from the wind to the ocean and eddy viscosity—friction—transfers angular momentum from the ocean to the solid earth.

12.3 Vorticity and Ekman Pumping

Rotation places another very interesting constraint on the geostrophic flow field. To help understand the constraints, let's first consider flow in a fluid with constant rotation. Then we will look into how vorticity constrains the flow of a fluid with rotation that varies with latitude. An understanding of the constraints leads to a deeper understanding of Sverdrup's and Stommel's results descussed in the last chapter.

Fluid dynamics on the f plane: the Taylor-Proudman Theorem The influence of vorticity due to Earth's rotation is most striking for geostrophic flow of a fluid with constant density ρ_0 on a plane with constant rotation $f = f_0$. From Chapter 10, the three components of the geostrophic equations and the continuity equations are:

$$f\,v = \frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \tag{12.13a}$$

$$f\,u = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y} \tag{12.13b}$$

$$g = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} \tag{12.13c}$$

$$0 = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \tag{12.13d}$$

Taking the z derivative of (12.13a) and using (12.13c) gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
-f_0\,\frac{\partial v}{\partial z} &= -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(-\frac{1}{\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial z}\right) = \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} = 0 \\
f_0\frac{\partial v}{\partial z} &= 0 \\
\therefore \quad \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, for the u-component of velocity (12.13b). Thus, the vertical derivative of the horizontal velocity field must be zero.

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial u}{\partial z} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial z} = 0} \tag{12.14}$$

This is the *Taylor-Proudman Theorem*, which applies to slowly varying flows in a homogeneous, rotating, inviscid fluid. The theorem places strong constraints on the flow:

> If therefore any small motion be communicated to a rotating fluid the resulting motion of the fluid must be one in which any two particles originally in a line parallel to the axis of rotation must remain so, except for possible small oscillations about that position—Taylor (1921).

Hence, geostrophic flow past a seamount requires that the flow go around the seamount; it cannot go over the seamount. Taylor (1921) explicitly derived (12.14) and (12.16) below. Proudman (1916) independently derived the same theorem but not as explicitly.

Further consequences of the theorem can be obtained by eliminating the pressure terms from (12.13a & 12.13b) to obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} &= -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{1}{f_0\,\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial y}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{1}{f_0\,\rho_0}\frac{\partial p}{\partial x}\right) \\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} &= \frac{1}{f_0\,\rho_0}\left(-\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x\,\partial y} + \frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x\,\partial y}\right) \\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{12.15}$$

Because the fluid is incompressible, the continuity equation (12.13d) requires

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial z} = 0 \tag{12.16}$$

Furthermore, because $w = 0$ at the sea surface and at the sea floor, if the bottom is level, there can be no vertical velocity on an f–plane. Note that the derivation of (12.16) did not require that density be constant. It requires only slow motion in a frictionless, rotating fluid.

Fluid Dynamics on the beta plane: Ekman Pumping If (12.16) is true and there can be no gradient of vertical velocity in an ocean with constant planetary vorticity, how then can the divergence of the Ekman transport at the sea surface lead to vertical velocities at the surface or at the base of the Ekman layer? The answer can only be that one of the constraints used in deriving (12.16) must be violated. One constraint that can be relaxed is the requirement that $f = f_0$.

Consider then flow on a beta plane. If $f = f_0 + \beta\, y$, then (12.13d) becomes:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y} = -\frac{1}{f\,\rho_0}\,\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x\,\partial y} + \frac{1}{f\,\rho_0}\,\frac{\partial^2 p}{\partial x\,\partial y} - \frac{\beta}{f}\,\frac{1}{f\,\rho_0}\,\frac{\partial p}{\partial x} \tag{12.17}$$

$$f\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}\right) = -\beta\, v \tag{12.18}$$

where we have used (12.13) to obtain v in the right-hand side of (12.18).

Using the continuity equation, and recalling that $\beta\, y \ll f_0$

$$f_0\frac{\partial w_G}{\partial z} = \beta\, v \tag{12.19}$$

where we have used the subscript G to emphasize that (12.19) applies to the ocean's interior, geostrophic flow. Thus the variation of Coriolis force with latitude allows vertical velocity gradients in the geostrophic interior of the ocean, and the vertical velocity leads to north-south currents. This explains why Sverdrup and Stommel both needed to do their calculations on a β-plane. Wind stress curl cannot produce vertical currents unless f varies with latitude.

Ekman Pumping in the Ocean In Chapter 9, we saw that the curl of the wind stress T produced a divergence of the Ekman transports leading to a vertical velocity $w_E(0)$ at the top of the Ekman layer.

$$w_E(0) = -\text{curl}\left(\frac{T}{\rho f}\right) \tag{12.20}$$

where ρ is density and f is the Coriolis parameter. Because the vertical velocity at the sea surface must be zero, the Ekman vertical velocity must be balanced by a vertical geostrophic velocity $w_G(0)$.

$$w_E(0) = -w_G(0) = -\text{curl}\left(\frac{T}{\rho f}\right) \tag{12.21}$$

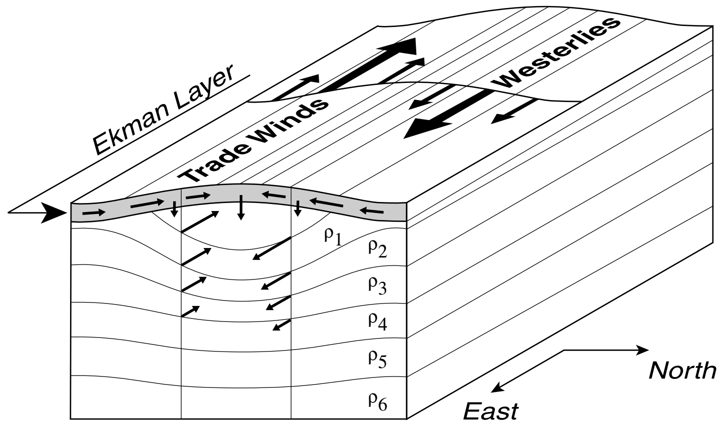


Figure 12.6 Winds at the sea surface drive Ekman transports to the right of the wind in this northern hemisphere example (bold arrows in shaded Ekman layer). The converging Ekman transports driven by the trades and westerlies drives a downward geostrophic flow just below the Ekman layer (bold vertical arrors), leading to downward bowing constant density surfaces ρ_i. Geostrophic currents associated with the warm water are shown by bold arrows. (After Tolmazin, 1985)

To see how this works in practice, let's look at how Ekman pumping drives the geostrophic flow in the interior of the ocean. Consider the mid-latitude winds in an ocean basin in the northern hemisphere (Figure 12.6). Wind stress at the sea surface drives an Ekman mass transport to the right of the wind. The westerlies drive a southward transport, the trades drive a northward transport. The converging Ekman transports must be balanced by downward velocity at the top of the geostrophic layer just under the Ekman layer.

Because the water just below the Ekman layer is warmer than the deeper water, the vertical velocity produces a dome of warm water shown by the downward bending surfaces of constant density. The density distribution produces north-south pressure gradients that must be balanced by east-west geostrophic currents. In short, the divergence of the Ekman transports redistributes mass within the frictionless interior of the ocean leading to the wind-driven geostrophic currents.

The wind-driven geostrophic currents are baroclinic. Their influence does not extend much below 1 km. As a result, there is a level of no motion indicated by a level density surface in the figure, and the sea surface must bow upward above the warm water.

We finish this example by noting that conservation of vorticity within the geostrophic interior of the ocean in this example leads to a Sverdrup transport to the south. Why this is so is explained by Niiler (1987: 16).

> Let us postulate there exists a deep level where horizontal and vertical motion of the water is much reduced from what it is just below the mixed layer [Figure 12.7]... Also let us assume that vorticity is conserved there (or mixing is small) and the flow is so slow that accelerations over the

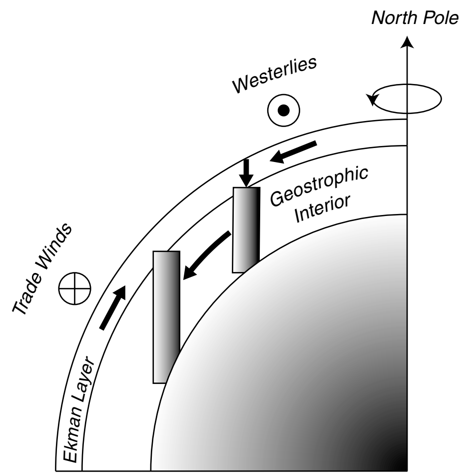


Figure 12.7 Ekman pumping that produces a downward velocity at the base of the Ekman layer forces the fluid in the interior of the ocean to move southward. (From Niiler, 1987)

> earth's surface are much smaller than Coriolis accelerations. In such a situation a column of water of depth H will conserve its spin per unit volume, f/H (relative to the sun, parallel to the earth's axis of rotation). A vortex column which is compressed from the top by wind-forced sinking (H decreases) and whose bottom is in relatively quiescent water would tend to shorten and slow its spin. Thus because of the curved ocean surface it has to move southward (or extend its column) to regain its spin. Therefore, there should be a massive flow of water at some depth below the surface to the south in areas where the surface layers produce a sinking motion and to the north where rising motion is produced. This phenomenon was first modeled correctly by Sverdrup (1947) (after he wrote "Oceans") and gives a dynamically plausible explanation of how wind produces deeper circulation in the ocean.

Ekman Pumping: An Example Let's now apply Ekman pumping ideas to flow in the North Pacific to see how winds can produce currents flowing upwind. We read in §11.1 how Sverdrup's theory led to a description of currents in the northeast Pacific, including the north equatorial countercurrent flows upwind. The description, however, was theoretical, and it provided little insight into the mechanisms at work.

To gain insight, look at Figure 12.8. It shows the mean zonal winds in the Pacific, together with the north-south Ekman transports driven by the zonal winds. Notice that convergence of transport leads to downwelling, which produces a thick layer of warm water in the upper kilometer of the water column, and high sea level. Figure 12.6, which is a schematic cross section of the region between 10°N and 60°N shows the pool of warm water in the upper kilometer of the Pacific centered on 30°N. Conversely, divergent transports leads to low sea level. The mean north-south pressure gradients are balanced by the Coriolis force of east-west geostrophic currents in the upper ocean.

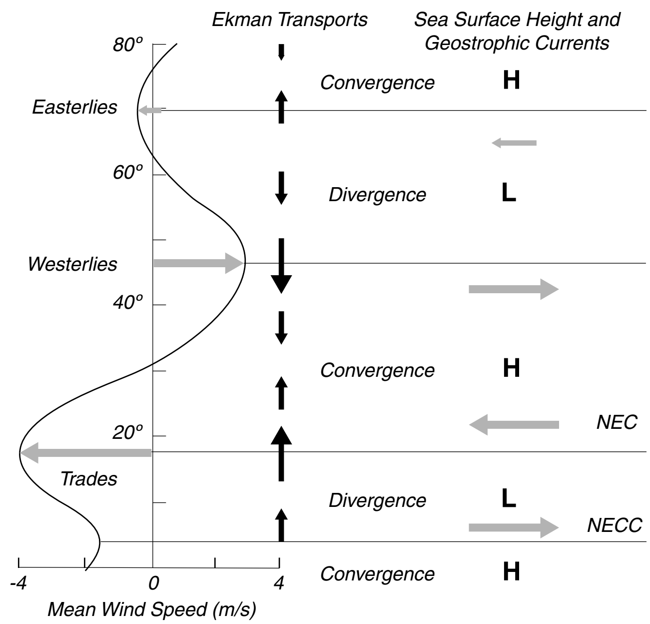


Figure 12.8 An example of how winds produce geostrophic currents running upwind. Ekman transports due to winds in the north Pacific (**Left**) lead to Ekman pumping (**Center**), which sets up north-south pressure gradients in the upper ocean. The pressure gradients are balanced by the Coriolis force due to east-west geostrophic currents (**Right**). Horizontal lines indicate regions where the curl of the zonal wind stress changes sign.

12.4 Important Concepts

1. Vorticity strongly constrains ocean dynamics.
2. The oceans have large vorticity because they are on Earth, which rotates once per day. This planetary vorticity is much larger than other sources of vorticity.
3. Taylor and Proudman showed that vertical velocity is impossible in a uniformly rotating flow. Hence Ekman pumping requires that vorticity vary with latitude. This explains why Sverdrup and Stommel found that realistic oceanic circulation, which is driven by Ekman pumping, requires that f vary with latitude.
4. The curl of the wind stress adds relative vorticity central gyres of each ocean basin. For steady state circulation in the gyre, the ocean must lose vorticity in western boundaru currents.
5. Positive wind stress curl leads to divergent flow in the Ekman layer. The ocean's interior geostrophic circulation adjusts through a northward mass transport.
6. Conservation of absolute vorticity in an ocean with constant density leads to the conservation of potential vorticity. Thus changes in depth in an ocean of constant density requires changes of latitude of the current.

Chapter 13

Deep Circulation in the Ocean

The direct forcing of the oceanic circulation by wind discussed in the last few chapters is limited mostly to the upper kilometer of the water column. Below a kilometer lies the vast water masses of the ocean extending to depths of 4–5 km. The water is everywhere cold, with a potential temperature less than 4°C. The water mass is formed when cold, dense water sinks from the surface to great depths at high latitudes. It spreads out from these regions to fill the ocean basins, and it eventually upwells through the thermocline over large areas of the ocean. It is this upwelling that drives the deep circulation. The vast deep ocean is usually referred to as the *abyss*, and the circulation as the *abyssal circulation*.

The most dense water at the sea surface, water that is dense enough to sink to the very bottom, is formed when frigid air blows across the ocean at high latitudes in the Atlantic. The wind cools and evaporates water. If the wind is sufficiently cold, sea ice forms, further increasing the salinity of the water because ice is fresher than sea water. At a few areas at high latitudes in the Atlantic in winter, the density of the water increases sufficiently for the water to sink deep into the ocean, reaching the ocean bottom. At other polar regions, cold, dense water is formed, but it is not quite salty enough to sink to the bottom. Because the Atlantic is so salty, the most dense water forms only in the Atlantic.

At mid and low latitudes, the density, even in winter, is sufficiently low that the water cannot sink more than a few hundred meters into the ocean. The only exception are some seas, such as the Mediterranean Sea, where evaporation is so great that the salinity of the water is sufficiently great for the water to sink to intermediate depths in the seas. If these seas are in communication with the open ocean, the waters formed in winter in the seas spreads out to intermediate depths in the ocean.

The sinking of cold dense water at high latitudes is due to temperature and salinity differences, and the sinking and spreading of cold water is known as the

Thermohaline Circulation or the *Meridional Overturning Circulation*. In this chapter we will consider theories and observations of the circulation, and the influence of the circulation on climate.

13.1 Importance of the Thermohaline Circulation

The deep circulation which carries cold water from high latitudes in winter to lower latitudes throughout the world has very important consequences.

1. The contrast between the cold deep water and the warm surface waters determines the stratification of the oceans. Stratification strongly influences ocean dynamics.
2. The volume of deep water is far larger than the volume of surface water; and although currents in the deep ocean are relatively weak, they have transports comparable to the surface transports.
3. The deep circulation has important influences on Earth's heat budget and climate. The deep circulation varies over periods from decades to centuries to perhaps a thousand years, and this variability is thought to modulate climate over such time intervals. The ocean may be the primary cause of variability over times ranging from years to decades, and it may have helped modulate ice-age climate.

Two aspects of the deep circulation are especially important for understanding Earth's climate and its possible response to increased carbon dioxide CO_2 in the atmosphere: i) the ability of cold water to absorb CO_2 from the atmosphere, and ii) the ability of deep currents to modulate the heat transported from the tropics to high latitudes.

The Oceans as a Reservoir of Carbon Dioxide The oceans are the primary reservoir of readily available CO_2, an important greenhouse gas. The oceans contain 40,000 GtC of dissolved, particulate, and living forms of carbon. The land contains 2,200 GtC, and the atmosphere contains only 750 GtC. Thus the oceans hold 50 times more carbon than the air. Furthermore, the amount of new carbon put into the atmosphere since the industrial revolution, 150 GtC, is less than the amount of carbon cycled through the marine ecosystem in five years. (1 GtC = 1 gigaton of carbon = 10^{12} kilograms of carbon.) Carbonate rocks such as limestone, the shells of marine animals, and corals are other, much larger, reservoirs; but this carbon is locked up. It cannot be easily exchanged with carbon in other reservoirs.

More CO_2 dissolves in cold water than in warm water. Just imagine shaking and opening a hot can of Coke™. The CO_2 from a hot can will spew out far faster than from a cold can. Thus the cold deep water in the ocean is the major reservoir of dissolved CO_2 in the ocean.

New CO_2 is released into the atmosphere when fossil fuels and trees are burned. Roughly half of the CO_2 released into the atmosphere quickly dissolves in the cold waters of the ocean which carry it into the abyss.

Forecasts of future climate change depend strongly on how much CO_2 is stored in the ocean and for how long. If little is stored, or if it is stored and

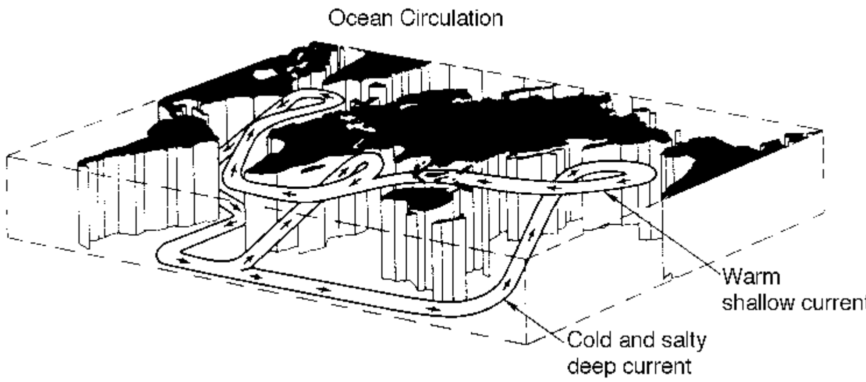


Figure 13.1 The oceanic conveyor belt carying heat northward into the north Atlantic. Note that this is a cartoon, and it does not accurately describe the ocean's circulation. (from Broecker and Peng, 1982).

later released into the atmosphere, the concentration in the atmosphere will change, modulating Earth's long-wave radiation balance. How much and how long CO_2 is stored in the ocean depends on the thermohaline circulation. The amount that dissolves depends on the temperature of the deep water, and the time the CO_2 is stored in the deep ocean depends on the rate at which deep water is replenished. Increased ventilation of deep layers, and warming of the deep layers could release large quantities of the gas to the atmosphere.

The storage of carbon in the ocean also depends on the dynamics of marine ecosystems, upwelling, and the amount of dead plants and animals stored in sediments; but we won't consider these processes.

Oceanic Transport of Heat The oceans carry about half the heat from the tropics to high latitudes required to maintain Earth's temperature. Heat carried by the Gulf Stream and the north Atlantic drift warms Europe. Norway, at 60°N is far warmer than southern Greenland or northern Labrador at the same latitude; and palm trees grow on the west coast of Ireland, but not in Newfoundland which is further south.

Wally Broecker (1982), who works at Lamont-Doherty Geophysical Observatory of Columbia University, calls the oceanic component of the heat-transport system the *Global Conveyor Belt*. The basic idea is that the Gulf Stream carries heat to the far north Atlantic. There the surface waters release heat and water to the atmosphere and become sufficiently dense that they sink to the bottom in the in the Norwegian Sea and in the Greenland Sea. The deep water later upwells in other regions and in other oceans, and eventually makes its way back to the Gulf Stream and the north Atlantic.

A simple picture of the conveyor belt (Figure 13.1) shows the important elements of the transports. Nevertheless, it is a cartoon, a much simplified illustration of reality. For example, the picture ignores the large sources of bottom water offshore of Antarctica in the Weddel and Ross Seas.

We can make a crude estimate of the importance of the conveyor belt circulation from a simple calculation based on what we know about waters in the Atlantic compiled by Bill Schmitz (1996) in his wonderful summary of his life's work. The Gulf Stream carries 40 Sv of 18°C water northward. Of this, 14 Sv return southward in the deep western boundary current at a temperature of 2°C. The flow carried by the conveyor belt must therefore lose 0.9 petawatts (1 petawatt = 10^{15} watt) in the north Atlantic north of 24°N. Although the calculation is very crude, it is remarkably close to the value of 1.2 ± 0.2 petawatts estimated much more carefully by Rintoul and Wunsch (1991).

Note that if the water remained on the surface and returned as an eastern boundary current, it would be far warmer than the deep current when it returned southward. Hence, the heat transport would be much reduced.

So much heat is transported northward in the north Atlantic that heat transport in the Atlantic is entirely northward, even in the southern hemisphere (figure 5.12). Much of the solar heat absorbed by the tropical Atlantic is shipped north to warm Europe and the northern hemisphere. Imagine then what might happen if the supply of heat is shut off. We will get back to that topic in the next section.

The production of bottom water is modulated by slow changes of surface salinity in the north Atlantic. It is also modulated by the rate of upwelling due to mixing in other oceanic areas. First, let's look at the influence of salinity.

More saline surface waters form denser water in winter than less saline water. At first you may think that temperature is also important, but at high latitudes water in all oceans becomes cold enough to freeze, so all oceans produce −2°C water at the surface. Of this, only the most salty will sink, and the saltiest water is in the Atlantic.

The production of bottom water is remarkably sensitive to small changes in salinity. Rahmstorf (1995), using a numerical model of the meridional-overturning circulation, showed that a ± 0.1 Sv variation of the flow of fresh water into the north Atlantic can switch on or off the deep circulation of 14 Sv. If the deep-water production is shut off during times of low salinity, the 1 petawatt of heat may also be shut off.

I write *may be shut off* because the ocean is a very complex system. We don't know if other processes will increase heat transport if the deep circulation is disturbed. For example, the circulation at intermediate depths may increase when deep circulation is reduced.

The production of bottom water is also remarkably sensitive to small changes in mixing in the deep ocean. Munk and Wunsch (1998) calculate that 2.1 TW (terawatts = 10^{12} watts) are required to drive the deep circulation; and that this small source of mechanical mixing drives a poleward heat flux of 2000 TW. Most of the energy for mixing comes from dissipation of tidal currents, which depend on the distribution of the continents. Thus during the last ice age, when sea level was much lower, tides, tidal currents, tidal dissipation, and deep circulation would all differ from present values.

Role of the Ocean in Ice-Age Climate Fluctuations What might happen when the production of deep water in the Atlantic is shut off? Information contained in the Greenland and Antarctic ice sheets and in north Atlantic sediments provide important clues.

Two ice cores through the Greenland ice sheet and three through the Antarctic sheet provide a continuous record of atmospheric conditions over Greenland and Antarctica extending back more than a hundred-thousand years before the present. Annual layers in the core are counted to get age. Deeper in the core, where annual layers are hard to see, age is calculated from depth. The oxygen-isotope ratios in the ice give temperatures over parts of the northern hemisphere, bubbles in the ice give atmospheric CO_2 concentration, and chemical composition and particle concentration give information about volcanic eruptions and windiness of the atmosphere.

Cores through deep-sea sediments in the north Atlantic made by the Ocean Drilling Program give information about sea-surface above the core, the production of north Atlantic deep water, and the production of icebergs.

1. The oxygen-isotope record in the ice cores show remarkable temperature variability over the past 100,000 years. Many times during the last ice age, temperatures near Greenland warmed rapidly over periods of 1–100 years, followed by gradual cooling over longer periods (Dansgaard et al, 1993). For example, $\approx 11,500$ years ago, temperatures over Greenland warmed by $\approx 8°$C in 40 years in three steps, each spanning 5 years (Alley, 2000). Such abrupt warming is called a Dansgaard/Oeschger event. Other studies have shown that much of the northern hemisphere warmed and cooled in phase with temperatures calculated from the ice core.

2. Hartmut Heinrich and colleagues (Bond et al. 1992), studying the sediments in the north Atlantic noticed periods when coarse material was deposited on the bottom in mid ocean. Only icebergs can carry such material out to sea, and the find indicated times when large numbers of icebergs were released into the north Atlantic. These are now called Heinrich events.

3. Heinrich events seem to preceed the largest Dansgaard/Oeschger events. The Dansgaard/Oeschger–Heinrich tandem events seem to be related to warming events seen in Antarctic ice cores. Temeratures changes in the two hemispheres are out of phase. When Greenland warms, Antarctica cools.

4. The correlation of Greenland temperature with iceberg production is related to the meridional overturning circulation. When icebergs melted, the surge of fresh water increased the stability of the water column shutting off the production of North Atlantic Deep Water. The shut-off of deep-water formation greatly reduced the transport of warm water in the north Atlantic, producing very cold northern hemisphere climate (Figure 13.2). The melting of the ice pushed the polar front, the boundary between cold and warm water in the north Atlantic further south than its

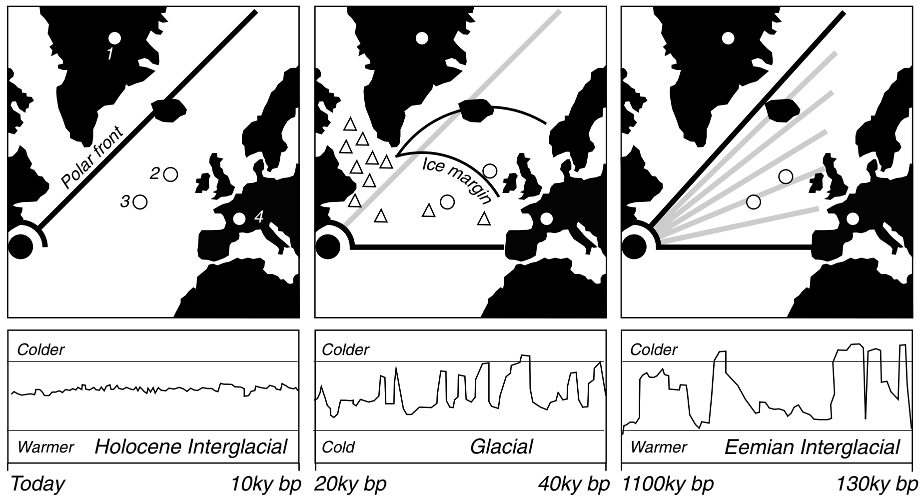


Figure 13.2 Periodic surges of icebergs during the last ice age appear to have modulated temperatures of the northern hemisphere by lowering the salinity of the far north Atlantic and reducing the meridional overturning circulation. Data from cores through the Greenland ice sheet (1), deep-sea sediments (2,3), and alpine-lake sediments (4) indicate that: **Left:** During recent times the circulation has been stable, and the polar front which separates warm and cold water masses has allowed warm water to penetrate beyond Norway. **Center:** During the last ice age, periodic surges of icebergs reduced salinity and reduced the meridional overturning circulation, causing the polar front to move southward and keeping warm water south of Spain. **Right:** Similar fluctuations during the last intergalcial appear to have caused rapid, large changes in climate. The **Bottom** plot is a rough indication of temperature in the region, but the scales are not the same (from Zahn, 1994).

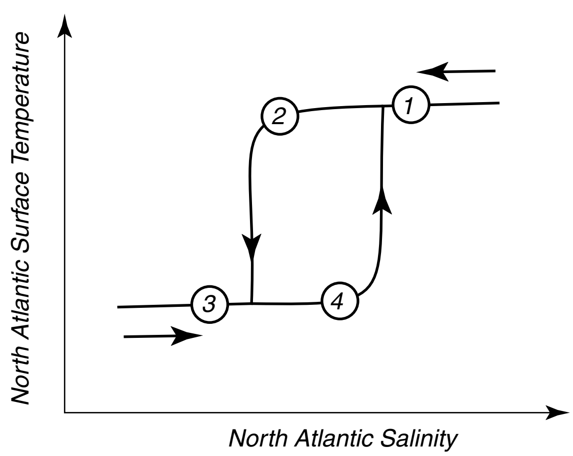


Figure 13.3 The meridional-overturning circulationis part of a non-linear system. The circulation has two stable states near *2* and *4*. The switching of north Atlantic from a warm, salty regime to a cold, fresh regime and back has hysterisis. This means that as the warm salty ocean in an initial state *1* freshens, and becomes more fresh than *2* it quickly switches to a cold, fresh state *3*. When the area again becomes salty, it must move past state *4* before it can switch back to *1*.

present position. The location of the front, and the time it was at different positions can be determined from analysis of bottom sediments.

5. When the meridional overturning circulation shuts down, heat normally carried from the south Atlantic to the north Atlantic becomes available to warm the southern hemisphere. This explains the Antarctic warming.
6. The switching on and off of the meridional overturning circulation has large hysterisis (Figure 13.3). The circulation has two stable states. The first is the present circulation. In the second, deep water is produced mostly near Antarctica, and upwelling occurs in the far north Pacific (as it does today) and in the far north Atlantic. Once the circulation is shut off, th system switches to the second stable state. The return to normal salinity does not cause the circulation to turn on. Surface waters must become saltier than average for the first state to return (Rahmstorf, 1995).
7. A weakened version of this process with a period of about 1000 years may be modulating present-day climate in the north Atlantic, and it may have been responsible for the Little Ice Age from 1100 to 1800.

The simple picture we have painted of the variability in salinity, air temperature, and deep-water formation is not yet well understood. For example, we don't know what causes the ice sheets to surge. Surges may result from warmer temperatures caused by increased water vapor from the tropics (a greenhouse gas) or from an internal instability of a large ice sheet. Nor do we know exactly how the oceanic circulation responds to changes in the deep circulation or surface moisture fluxes. Recent work by Wang, Stone and Marotzke (1999), who used a numerical model to simulate the climate system, shows that the meridional overturning circulation is modulated by moisture fluxes in the *southern* hemisphere.

13.2 Theory for the Thermohaline Circulation

Stommel, Arons, and Feller in a series of papers from 1958 to 1960 laid the foundation for our present understanding of the abyssal circulation (Stommel 1958; Stommel, Arons, and Faller, 1958; Stommel and Arons, 1960). The papers reported simplified theories of the circulation that differed so greatly from what was expected that Stommel and Arons devised laboratory experiments with rotating fluids to confirmed their theory. The theory for the deep circulation has been further discussed by Marotzke (2000) and Munk and Wunsch (1998).

The theory Stommel, Arons, Feller theory is based on three fundamental ideas:

1. The source of cold, deep water is sinking at a few locations at high latitudes in the Atlantic, notably in the Irminger and Greenland Seas in the north and the Weddel Sea in the south.
2. The thermocline is remarkably sharp everywhere in mid to low latitudes, and the shape of the profile does not change from year to year. Because turbulence in the thermocline transports heat downward, the thermocline should become much weaker after many years. Since this does not happen,

upwelling and mixing in the thermocline must carry cold water upward at a rate that balances the downward flux of heat.

3. The abyssal circulation is strictly geostrophic in the interior of the ocean, and therefore potential vorticity is conserved.

Notice that the deep circulation is not driven by convection. Munk and Wunsch (1998) point out that deep convection by itself leads to a deep, stagnant, pool of cold water. In this case, the thermohaline circulation is confined to the upper layers of the ocean. Mixing or upwelling is required to pump cold water upward through the thermocline and drive the meriodional overturning circulation.

Notice also that convection and sinking are not the same, and they do not occur in the same place (Marotzke and Scott, 1999). Convection ocurs in small regions a few kilometers on a side. Sinking, driven by Ekman pumping and geostrophic currents, can occur over far larger areas. In this chapter, we are discussing mostly sinking of water.

To describe the simplest aspects of the flow, we begin with the Sverdrup equation applied to a bottom current of thickness H in an ocean of constant depth:

$$\beta\, v = f\, \frac{\partial w}{\partial z} \tag{13.1}$$

where $f = 2\,\Omega\, \sin\varphi$, $\beta = (2\Omega\, \cos\varphi)\,/R$, Ω is Earth's rotation rate, R Earth's radius, and φ is latitude. Integrating (13.1) from the bottom of the ocean to the top of the abyssal circulation gives:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_0^H v\, dz = \int_0^H \frac{f}{\beta}\, \frac{\partial w}{\partial z}\, dz \\ V &= \frac{R \tan\varphi}{H}\, W_0 \end{aligned} \tag{13.2}$$

where V is the vertical integral of the northward velocity, and W_0 is the velocity at the base of the thermocline. Because the vertical velocity is everywhere positive as required to balance the downward diffusion of heat, then V must be everywhere toward the poles. This is the abyssal flow in the interior of the ocean sketched by Stommel in Figure 13.4. The U component of the flow is calculated from V and w using the continuity equation.

To connect the streamlines of the flow in the west, Stommel added a deep western boundary current. The strength of the western boundary current depends on the volume of water S produced at the source regions. Stommel and Arons calculated the flow for a simplified ocean bounded by the Equator and two meridians (a pie shaped ocean). First they placed the source S_0 near the pole to approximate the flow in the north Atlantic. If the volume of water sinking at the source equals the volume of water upwelled in the basin, and if the upwelled velocity is constant everywhere, then the transport T_w in the western boundary current is:

$$T_w = -2\, S_0 \sin\varphi \tag{13.3}$$

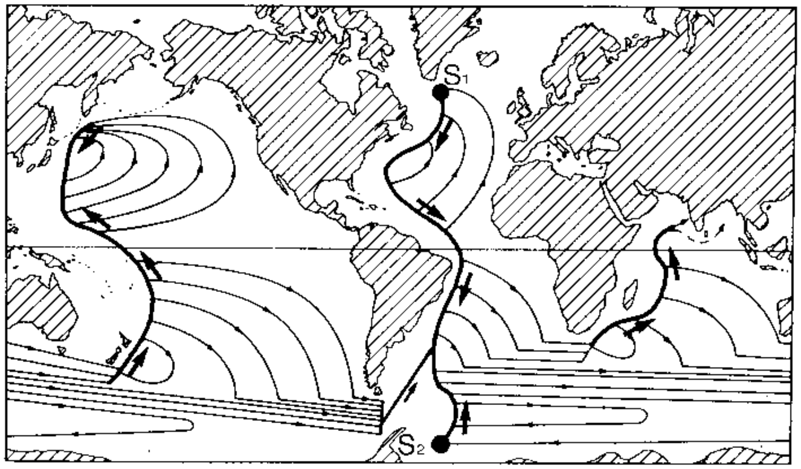


Figure 13.4 Sketch of the deep circulation resulting from deep convection in the Atlantic (dark circles) and upwelling through the thermocline elsewhere (After Stommel, 1958).

The transport in the western boundary current at the poles is twice the volume of the source, and the transport diminishes to zero at the Equator (Stommel and Arons, 1960a: eq, 7.3.15; see also Pedlosky, 1996: §7.3). The flow driven by the upwelling water adds a recirculation equal to the source. If S_0 exceeds the volume of water upwelled in the basin, then the western boundary current carries water across the Equator. This gives the western boundary current sketched in the north Atlantic in Figure 13.4.

Next, Stommel and Arons calculated the transport in a western boundary current in a basin with no source. The transport is:

$$T_w = S\,[1 - 2\,\sin\varphi] \tag{13.4}$$

where S is the transport across the Equator from the other hemisphere. In this basin Stommel notes:

> A current of recirculated water equal to the source strength starts at the pole and flows toward the source ... [and] gradually diminishes to zero at $\varphi = 30°$north latitude. A northward current of equal strength starts at the equatorial source and also diminishes to zero at 30°north latitude.

This gives the western boundary current as sketched in the north Pacific in Figure 13.4.

Note that the Stommel-Aron theory assumes a flat bottom. The mid-ocean ridge system divides the deep ocean into a series of basins connected by sills through which the water flows from one basin to the next. As a result, the flow in the deep ocean is not as simple as that sketched by Stommel. Boundary current flow along the edges of the basins, and flow in the eastern basins in the Atlantic comes through the mid-Atlantic ridge from the western basics. Figure 13.5 shows how ridges control the flow in the Indian Ocean. Nevertheless, the basic flow is remarkably like that suggested by Stommel.

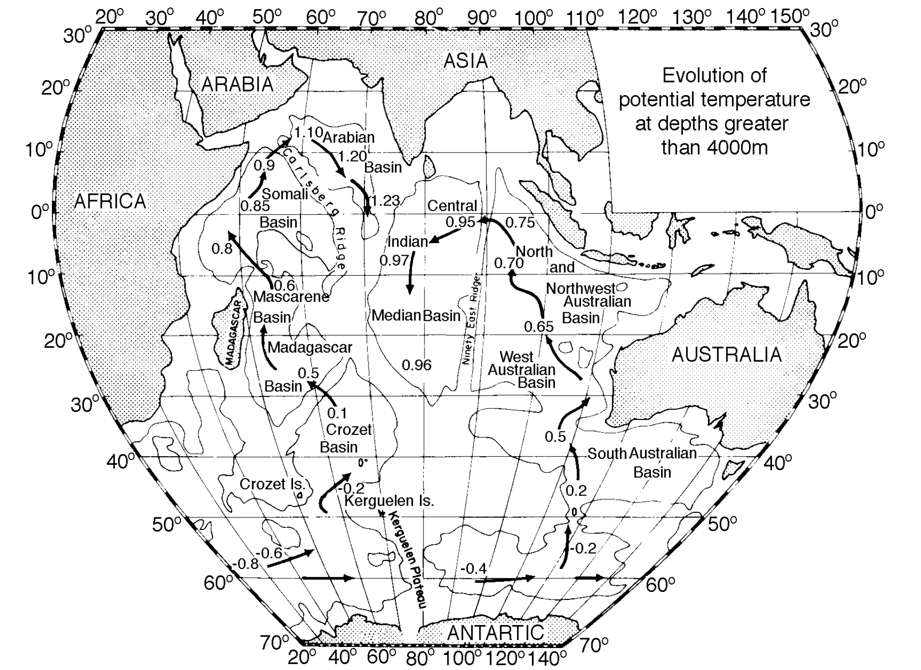


Figure 13.5 Sketch of the deep circulation in the Indian Ocean inferred from the temperature, given in °C. Note that the flow is constrained by the deep mid-ocean ridge system (After Tchernia, 1980).

Finally, the Stommel-Arons theory gives some values for time required for the water to move from the source regions to the base of the thermocline in various basins. The time required varies from a few hundred years for basins near the sources to nearly a thousand years for the north Pacific, which is fartherest from the sources.

Some Comments on the Theory for the Deep Circulation Our understanding of the deep circulation is still evolving.

1. The deep circulation is driven by mixing in the ocean, not by deep convection near the poles. Marotzke and Scott (1999) points out that the two processes are very different. Convection reduces the potential energy of the water column, and it is self powered. Mixing in a stratified fluid increases the potential energy, and it must be driven by an external process.
2. Numerical models of the deep circulation show that the meridional overturning circulation is very sensitive to the assumed vertical diffusivity coefficient in the thermocline (Gargett and Holloway, 1992).
3. Numerical calculations by Marotzke and Scott (1999) indicate that the transport is not limited by the rate of deep convection, but it is sensitive to the assumed vertical mixing coefficient, especially near side boundaries.
4. Where is cold water mixed upward? Is it in the thermocline or at the ocean's boundaries? Recent measurements of vertical mixing (§8.5) sug-

gest mixing is concentrated above seamounts and mid-ocean ridges, and along strong currents such as the Gulf Stream.

5. Because the meridional overturning circulation is pulled by mixing and not pushed by deep convection, the transport of heat into the north Atlantic may not be as sensitive to surface salinity as described above.

13.3 Observations of the Deep Circulation

The abyssal circulation is less well known than the upper-ocean circulation. Direct observations from moored current meters or deep-drifting floats were difficult to make until recently, and there are few long-term direct measurements of current. In addition, the measurements do not produce a stable mean value for the deep currents. For example, if the deep circulation takes roughly 1,000 years to transport water from the north Atlantic to the Antarctic Circumpolar Current and then to the north Pacific, the mean flow is about 1 mm/s. Observing this small mean flow in the presence of typical deep currents having variable velocities of up to 10 cm/s or greater, is very difficult.

Most of our knowledge of the deep circulation is inferred from measured distribution of temperature, salinity, oxygen, silicate, tritium, fluorocarbons and other tracers. These measurements are much more stable than direct current measurements, and observations made decades apart can be used to trace the circulation. Tomczak (1999) carefully describes how the techniques can be made quantitative and how they can be applied in practice.

Water Masses The concept of water masses originates in meteorology. Vilhelm Bjerknes, a Norwegian meteorologist, first described the cold air masses that form in the polar regions. He showed how they move southward, where they collide with warm air masses at places he called fronts, just as masses of troops collide at fronts in war (Friedman, 1989). In a similar way, water masses are formed in different regions of the ocean, and the water masses are often separated by fronts. Note, however, that strong winds are associated with fronts in the atmosphere because of the large difference in density and temperature on either side of the front. Fronts in the ocean sometimes have little contrast in density, and these fronts have only weak currents.

Tomczak (1999) defines a *water mass* as a

> body of water with a common formation history, having its origin in a physical region of the ocean. Just as air masses in the atmosphere, water masses are physical entities with a measureable volume and therefore occupy a finite volume in the ocean. In their formation region they have exclusive occupation of a particular part of the ocean; elsewhere they share the ocean with other water masses with which they mix. The total volume of a water mass is given by the sum of all its elements regardless of their location.

Plots of salinity as a function of temperature, called T-S plots, are used to delineate water masses and their geographical distribution, to describe mixing among water masses, and to infer motion of water in the deep ocean. Here's

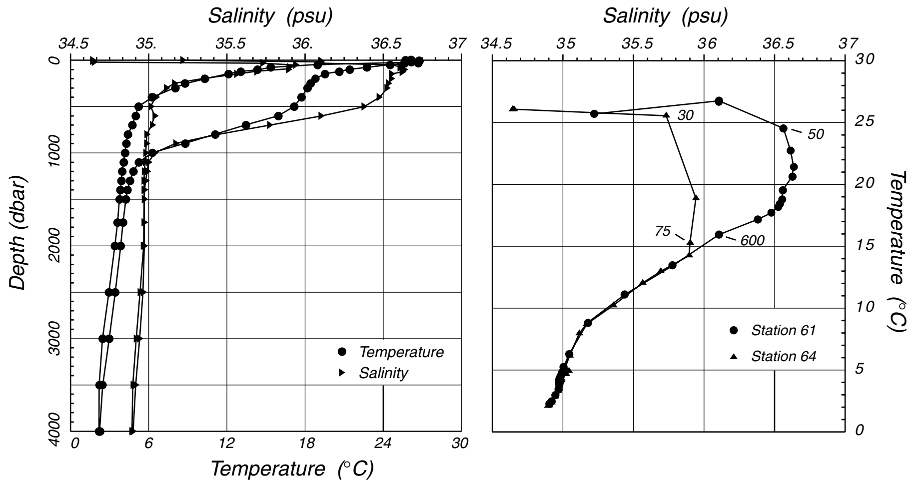


Figure 13.6 Temperature and salinity measured at hydrographic stations on either side of the Gulf Stream. Data are from Tables 10.2 and 10.4. **Left:** Temperature and salinity plotted as a function of depth. **Right:** The same data, but salinity is plotted as a function of temperature in a *T-S* plot. Notice that temperature and salinity are uniquely related below the mixed layer. A few depths are noted next to data points.

why the plots are so useful: water properties, such as temperature and salinity, are formed only when the water is at the surface or in the mixed layer. Heating, cooling, rain, and evaporation all contribute. Once the water sinks below the mixed layer temperature and salinity can change only by mixing with adjacent water masses. Thus water from a particular region has a particular temperature associated with a particular salinity, and the relationship changes little as the water moves through the deep ocean.

Thus temperature and salinity are not independent variables. For example, the temperature and salinity of the water at different depths below the Gulf Stream are uniquely related (Figure 13.6, right), indicating they came from the same source region, even though they do not appear related if temperature and salinity are plotted independently as a function of depth (Figure 13.6, left).

Temperature and salinity are *conservative properties* because there are no sources or sinks of heat and salt in the interior of the ocean. Other properties, such as oxygen are non-conservative. For example, oxygen content may change slowly due to oxidation of organic material and respiration by animals.

Each point in the *T-S* plot is called a *water type*. This is a mathematical ideal. Some water masses may be very homogeneous and they are almost points on the plot. Other water masses are less homogeneous, and they occupy regions on the plot.

The mixing of two water types leads to a straight line on a *T-S* diagram (Figure 13.7). Because the lines of constant density on a *T-S* plot are curved, mixing increases the density of the water. This is called *densification* (Figure 13.8).

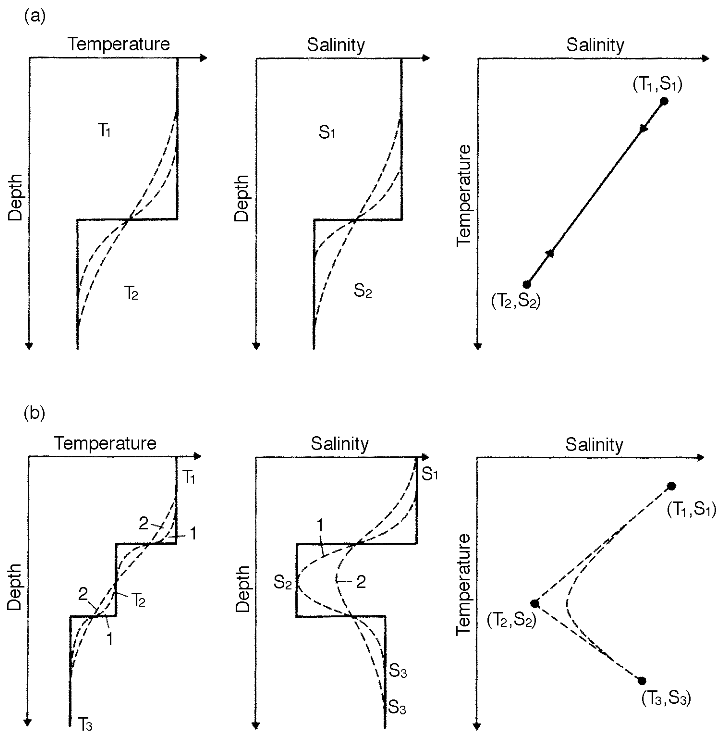


Figure 13.7 **Upper:** Mixing of two water masses produces a line on a *T-S* plot. **Lower:** Mixing among three water masses produces intersecting lines on a *T-S* plot, and the apex at the intersection is rounded by further mixing. From Tolmazin (1985).

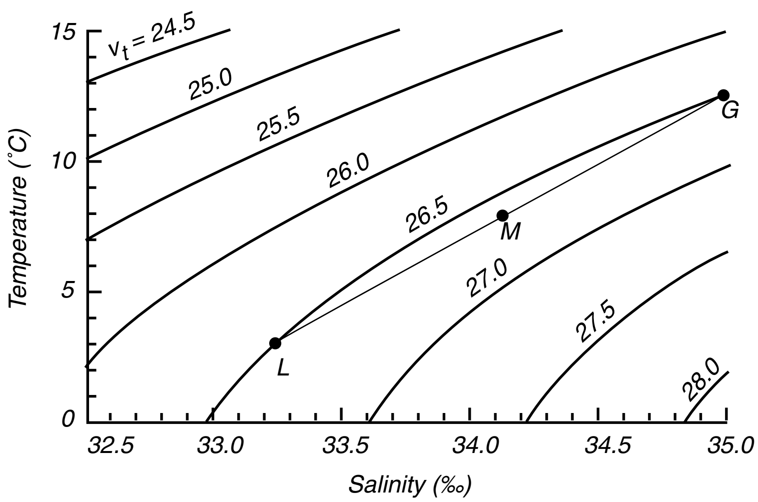


Figure 13.8 Mixing of two water types of the same density produces water that is denser than either water type. From Tolmazin (1985).

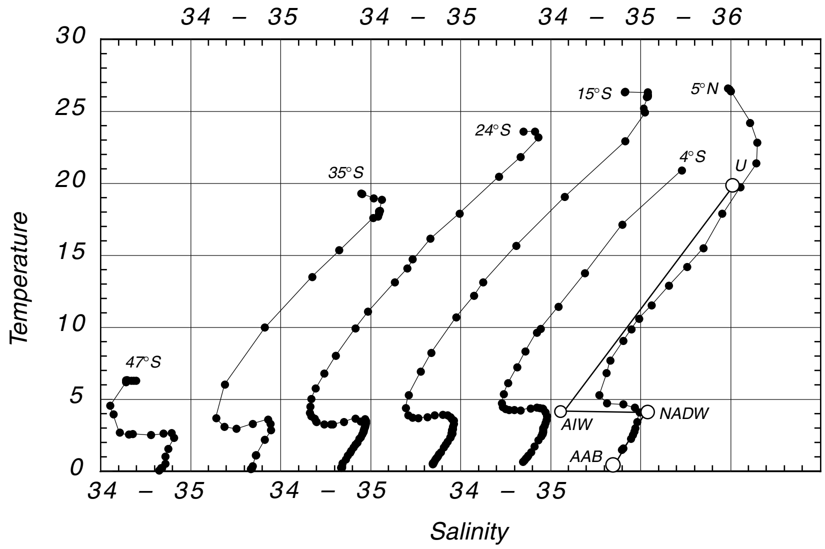


Figure 13.9 *T-S* plot of data collected at various latitudes in the western basins of the south Atlantic. Lines drawn through data from 5°N, showing possible mixing between water masses: NADW–North Atlantic Deep Water, AIW–Antarctic Intermediate Water, AAB Antarctic Bottom Water, U Subtropical Lower Water.

Water Masses and the Deep Circulation Let's use these ideas of water masses and mixing to study the deep circulation. We start in the south Atlantic because it has very clearly defined water masses. A *T-S* plot calculated from hydrographic data collected in the south Atlantic (Figure 13.9) shows three important water masses listed in order of decreasing depth (Table 13.1): Antarctic Bottom Water AAB, North Atlantic Deep Water NADW, and Antarctic Intermediate Water AIW. All are deeper than one kilometer. The mixing among three water masses shows the characteristic rounded apexes shown in the idealized case shown in Figure 13.7.

The plot indicates that the same water masses can be found throughout the western basins in the south Atlantic. Now let's use a cross section of salinity to trace the movement of the water masses using the core method.

Core Method The slow variation from place to place in the ocean of a tracer such as salinity can be used to determine the source of the waters masses such as those in Figure 13.8. This is called the *core method.* The method may also be used to track the slow movement of the water mass. Note, however, that a slow drift of the water and horizontal mixing both produce the same observed properties in the plot, and they cannot be separated by the core method.

A *core* is a layer of water with extreme value (in the mathematical sense) of salinity or other property as a function of depth. An extreme value is a local maximum or minimum of the quantity as a function of depth. The method assumes that the flow is along the core. Water in the core mixes with the water masses above and below the core and it gradually loses its identity. Furthermore, the flow tends to be along surfaces of constant potential density.

Table 13.1 Water Masses of the south Atlantic between 33°S and 11°N

			Temp. (°C)	Salinity (psu)
Antarctic water	Antarctic Intermediate Water	AIW	3.3	34.15
	Antarctic Bottom Water	ABW	0.4	34.67
North Atlantic water	North Atlantic Deep Water	NADW	4.0	35.00
	North Atlantic Bottom Water	NABW	2.5	34.90
Thermocline water	Subtropical Lower Water	U	18.0	35.94

From Defant (1961: Table 82)

Let's apply the method to the data from the south Atlantic to find the source of the water masses. As you might expect, this will explain their names.

We start with a north-south cross section of salinity in the western basins of the Atlantic (Figure 13.10). It we locate the maxima and minima of salinity as a fucntion of depth at different latitudes, we can see two clearly defined cores. The upper low-slainity core starts near 55°S and it extends northward at depths near 1000 m. This water originates at the Antarctic Polar Front zone. This is the Antarctic Intermediate Water. Below this water mass is a core of salty water originating in the north Atlantic. This is the North Atlantic Deep Water. Below this is the most dense water, the Antarctic Bottom Water. It originates in winter when cold, dense, saline water forms in the Weddel Sea and other shallow seas around Antarctica. The water sinks along the continental slope and mixes with Circumpolar Deep Water. It then fills the deep basins of the south Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans.

The Circumpolar Deep Water is mostly North Atlantic Deep Water that has been carried around Antarctica. As it is carried along, it mixes with deep waters of the Indian and Pacific Oceans to form the circumpolar water.

The flow is probably not along the arrows shown in Figure 13.10. The

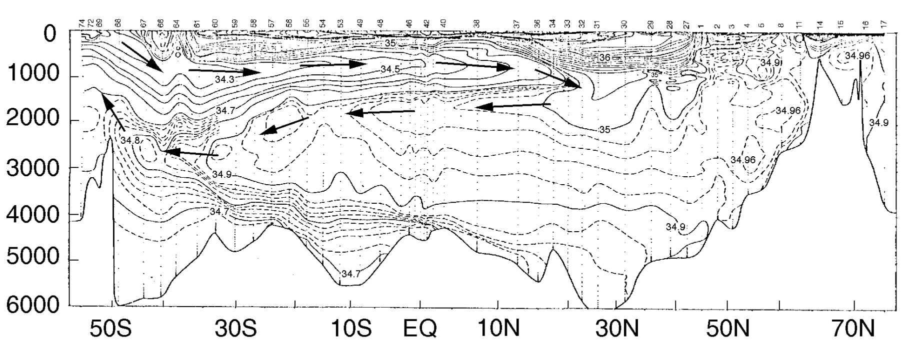


Figure 13.10 Contour plot of salinity as a function of depth in the western basins of the Atlantic from the Arctic Ocean to Antarctica. The plot clearly shows extensive cores, one at depths near 1000 m extending from 50°S to 20°N, the other at is at depths near 2000 m extending from 20°N to 50°S. The upper is the Antarctic Intermediate Water, the lower is the North Atlantic Deep Water. The arrows mark the assumed direction of the flow in the cores. The Antarctic Bottom Water fills the deepest levels from 50°S to 30°N. See also Figures 10.16 and 6.11. From Lynn and Ried (1968).

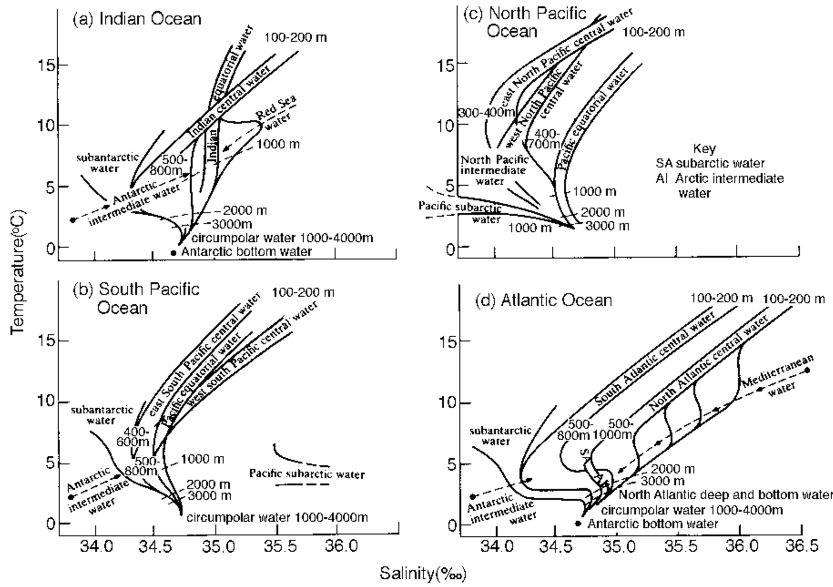


Figure 13.11 *T-S* plots of water in the various ocean basins. From Tolmazin (1985).

distribution of properties in the abyss can be explained by a combination of slow flow in the direction of the arrows plus horizontal mixing along surfaces of constant potential density with some weak vertical mixing. The vertical mixing probably occurs at the places where the density surface reaches the sea bottom at a lateral boundary such as seamounts, mid-ocean ridges, and along the western boundary. Flow in a plane perpendicular to that of the figure may be at least as strong as the flow in the plane of the figure shown by the arrows.

The core method can be applied only to a tracer that does not influence density. Hence temperature is usually a poor choice. If the tracer controls density, then flow will be around the core according to ideas of geostrophy, not along core as assumed by the core method.

The core method works especially well in the south Atlantic with its clearly defined water masses. In other ocean basins, the *T-S* relationship is more complicated. The abyssal waters in the other basins are a complex mixture of waters coming from different areas in the ocean (Figure 13.11). For example, warm, salty water from the Mediterranean Sea enters the north Atlantic and spreads out at intermediate depths displacing intermediate water from Antarctica in the north Atlantic, adding additional complexity to the flow as seen in the lower right part of the figure.

Other Tracers I have illustrated the core method using salinity as a tracer, but many other tracers are used. An ideal tracer is easy to measure even when its concentration is very small; it is conserved, which means that only mixing changes its concentration; it does not influence the density of the water; it exists in the water mass we wish to trace, but not in other adjacent water masses; and it does not influence marine organisms (we don't want to release toxic tracers).

Various tracers meet these criteria to a greater or lesser extent, and they are used to follow the deep and intermediate water in the ocean. Here are some of the most widely used tracers.

1. Salinity is conserved, and it influences density much less than temperature.
2. Oxygen is only partly conserved. Its concentration is reduced by the respiration of marine animals and the oxidation of marine products.
3. Silicates are used by some marine organisms. They are conserved at depths below the sunlit zone.
4. Phosphates are used by all organisms, but they can provide additional information.
5. ^{3}He is conserved, but there are few sources, mostly at deep-sea volcanic areas and hot springs.
6. ^{3}H (tritium) was produced by atomic bomb tests in the atmosphere in the 1950s. It enters the ocean through the mixed layer, and it is useful for tracing the formation of deep water. It decays with a half life of 12.3 y and it is slowly disappearing from the ocean. Figure 10.16 shows the slow advection or perhaps mixing of the tracer into the deep north Atlantic. Note that after 25 years little tritium is found south of 30° N. This implies a mean velocity of less than a mm/s.
7. Fluorocarbons (Freons used in air conditioning) have been recently injected into atmosphere. They can be measured with very great sensitivity; and they are being used for tracing the sources of deep water.
8. Sulpher hexafluoride SF_6 can be injected into sea water, and the concentration can be measured with great sensitivity for many months.

Each tracer has its usefulness, and each provides additional information about the flow.

13.4 Antarctic Circumpolar Current

The Antarctic Circumpolar Current is an important feature of the ocean's deep circulation because it transports deep and intermediate water between the Atlantic, Indian, and Pacific Ocean, and because it contributes to the deep circualtion in all basins. Because it is so important for understanding the deep circulation in all oceans, let's look at what is known about this current.

A plot of density across a line of constant longitude in the Drake Passage (Figure 13.12) shows three fronts. They are, from north to south: 1) the Subantarctic Front, 2) the Polar Front, and 3) the Southern ACC Front. Each front is continuous around Antarctica (Figure 13.13). The plot also shows that the constant-density surfaces slope at all depths, which indicates that the currents extend to the bottom.

Typical current speeds are around 10 cm/s with speeds of up to 50 cm/s near some fronts. Although the currents are slow, they transport much more water than western boundary currents because the flow is deep and wide. Whitworth

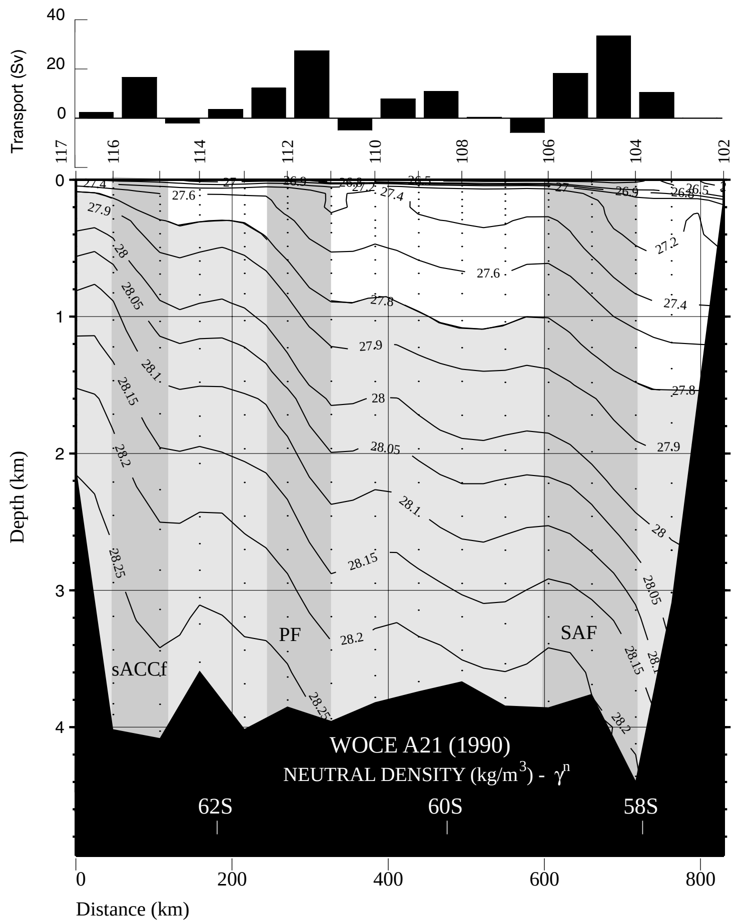


Figure 13.12 Cross section of neutral density across the Antarctic Circumpolar Current in the Drake Passage from the World Ocean Circulation Experiment section A21 in 1990. The current has three streams associated with the three fronts (dard shading): SF = Southern ACC Front, PF = Polar Front, and SAF = Subantarctic Front. Hydrographic station numbers are given at the top, and transports are relative to 3,000 dbar. Circumpolar deep water is indicated by light shading. From Orsi (2000)

and Peterson (1985) calculated transport through the Drake Passage using several years of data from an array of 91 current meters on 24 moorings spaced approximately 50 km apart along a line spanning the passage. They also used measurements of bottom pressure measured by gauges on either side of the passage. They found that the average transport through the Drake Passage was 125 ± 11 Sv, and that the transport varied from 95 Sv to 158 Sv. The maximum transport tended to occur in late winter and early spring (Figure 13.14).

Because the antarctic currents extend all the way to the bottom, they are influenced by topographic steering. As the current crosses ridges such as the Kerguelen Plateau, the Pacific-Antarctic Ridge, the Drake Passage, it is deflected by the ridges.

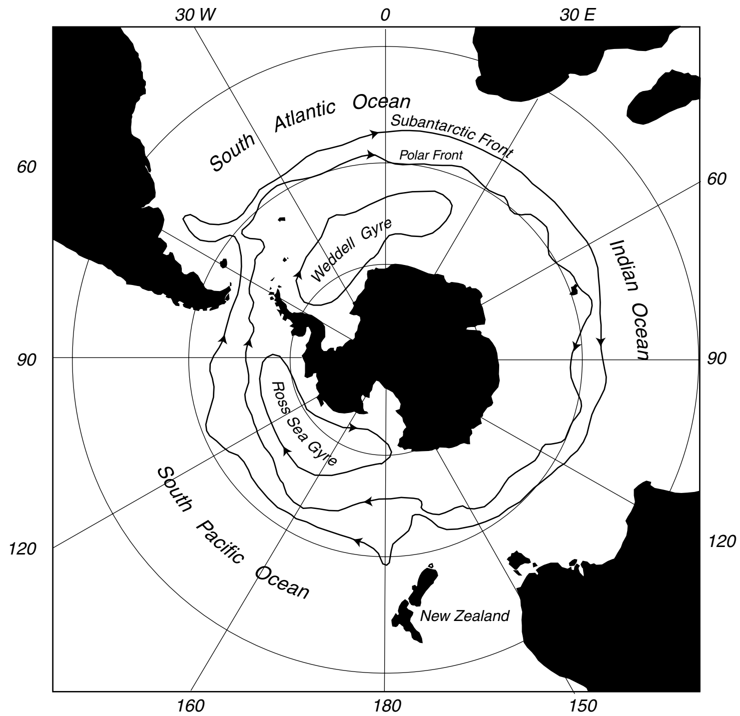


Figure 13.13 Distribution of the Subantarctic and Polar Fronts and associated currents in the Antarctic. From Whitworth (1988)

The core of the current is composed of circumpolar deep water, a mixture of deep water from all oceans. The upper branch of the current contains oxygen-poor water from all oceans. The lower (deeper) branch contains a core of high-salinity water from the Atlantic, including contributions from the north Atlantic deep water mixed with salty Mediterranean Sea water. As the different water masses circulate around Antarctica they mix with other water masses with similar density. In a sense, the current is a giant 'mix-master' taking deep water from each ocean, mixing it with deep water from other oceans, and then redistributing it back to each ocean.

The coldest, saltiest water in the ocean is produced on the continental shelf around Antarctica in winter, mostly from the shallow Weddel and Ross seas. The cold salty water drains from the shelves, entrains some deep water, and spreads out along the sea floor. Eventually, 8–10 Sv of bottom water are formed (Orsi, Johnson, and Bullister, 1999). This dense water then seeps into all the ocean basins. By definition, this water is too dense to cross pass through thee Drake Passage, so it is not circumpolar water.

The Antarctic currents are wind driven. Strong west winds with maximum speed near 50°S drive the currents (see Figure 4.2), and the north-south gradient of wind speed produces convergence and divergence of Ekman transports. Divergence south of the zone of maximum wind speed, south of 50°S leads to upwelling of the circumpolar deep water. Convergence north of the zone

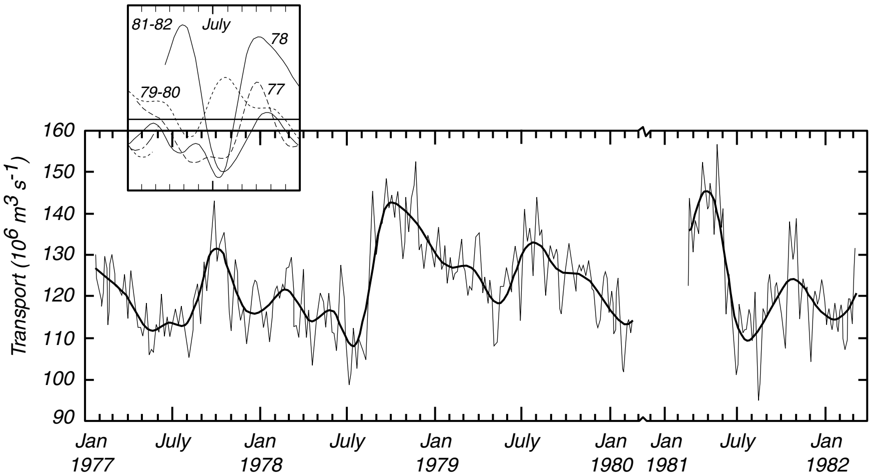


Figure 13.14 Variability of the transport in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current as measured by an array of current meters deployed across the Drake Passage. The heavier line is smoothed, time-averaged transport. From Whitworth (1988)

of maximum winds leads to downwelling of the Antarctic intermediate water. The surface water is relatively fresh but cold, and when they sink they define characteristics of the Antarctic intermediate water.

Because wind constantly transfers momentum to the circumpolar current, causing it to accelerate, the acceleration must be balanced by some type of drag, and we are led to ask: What keeps the flow from acelerating to very high speeds? The simple answer, from Munk and Palmen (1951), is form drag. Form drag is due to the current crossing subsea ridges, especially at the Drake Passage. Form drag is also the drag of the wind on a fast moving car. In both cases, the flow is diverted, by the ridge or by your car, creating a low pressure zone downstream of the ridge or down wind of the car. The low pressure zone transfers momentum into the solid earth, slowing down the current.

13.5 Important Concepts

1. The deep circulation of the ocean is very important because it determines the vertical stratification of the oceans and because it modulates climate.
2. The cold, deep water in the ocean absorbs CO_2 from the atmosphere, therefore temporarily reducing atmospheric CO_2. Eventually, however, most of the CO_2 must be released back to the ocean. (Some is used by plants, some is used to make sea shells).
3. The production of deep bottom waters in the north Atlantic causes a transport of one petawatt of heat into the northern hemisphere which warms Europe.
4. Variability of deep water formation in the north Atlantic has been tied to large fluctuations of northern hemisphere temperature during the last ice ages.

5. The theory for the deep circulation was worked out by Stommel and Aarons in a series of papers published from 1958 to 1960. They showed that vertical velocities are needed nearly everywhere in the ocean to maintain the thermocline, and the vertical velocity drives the deep circulation.
6. The deep circulation is driven by vertical mixing, which is largest above mid-ocean ridges, near seamounts, and in strong boundary currents.
7. The deep circulation is too weak to measure directly. It is inferred from observations of water masses defined by their temperature and salinities and from observation of tracers.
8. The Antarctic Circumpolar Current mixes deep water from all oceans and redistributes it back to each ocean. The current is deep and slow with a transport of 125 Sv.

Chapter 14

Equatorial Processes

Equatorial processes are important for understanding the influence of the ocean on the atmosphere and the interannual fluctuations in global weather patterns. The sun warms the vast expanses of the tropical Pacific and Indian Oceans, evaporating water. When the water condenses as rain it releases so much heat that these areas are the primary engine driving the atmospheric circulation (Figure 14.1). Rainfall over extensive areas exceeds three meters per year, and some oceanic regions receive more than five meters of rain per year. To put the numbers in perspective, five meters of rain per year releases on average 400 W/m^2 of heat to the atmosphere. Equatorial currents modulate the air-sea interactions, especially through the phenomenon known as El Niño, with global consequences. We describe here first the basic equatorial processes, then the year-to-year variability of the processes and the influence of the variability on weather patterns.

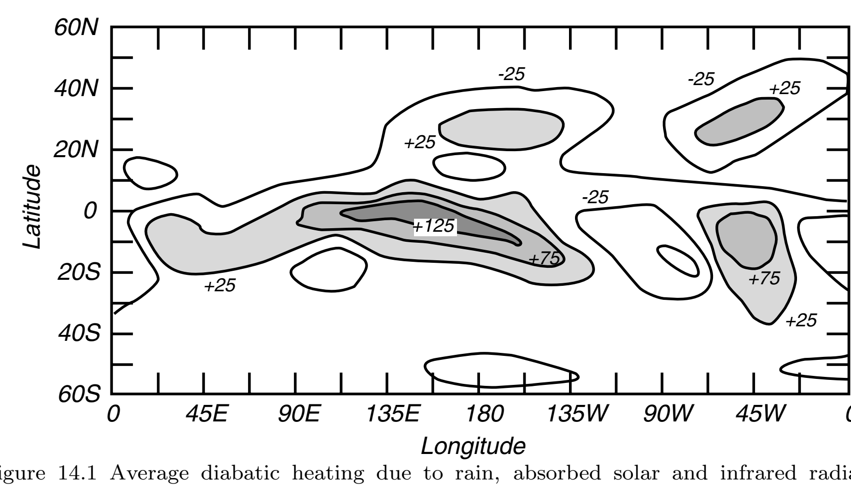


Figure 14.1 Average diabatic heating due to rain, absorbed solar and infrared radiation and between 700 and 50 mb in the atmosphere during December, January and February calculated from ECMWF data for 1983–1989. Most of the heating is due to the relaese of latent heat by rain (From Webster, 1992).

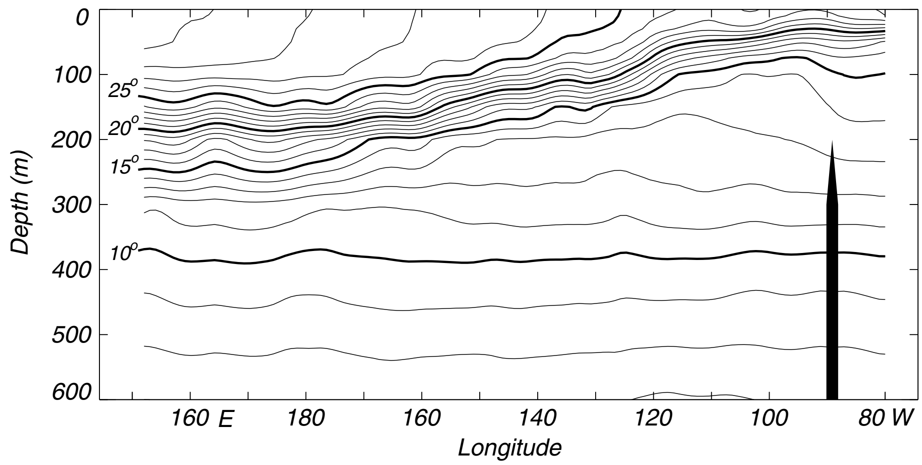


Figure 14.2 The mean, upper-ocean, thermal structure along the equator in the Pacific from north of New Guinea to Ecuador calculated from data in Levitus (1982).

14.1 Equatorial Processes

The tropical regions are characterized by a thin, permanent, shallow layer of warm water over deeper, colder water. In this respect, the vertical stratification is similar to the summer stratification at higher latitudes. Surface waters are hottest in the west (Figure 6.3) in the great Pacific warm pool. The mixed layer is deep in the west and very shallow in the east (Figure 14.2).

The shallow thermocline has important consequences. The southeast trade winds blow along the equator (Figure 4.2) although they tend to be strongest in the east. North of the equator, Ekman transport is northward; south of the equator it is southward. The divergence of the Ekman flow causes upwelling on the equator. In the west, the upwelled water is warm. But in the east the upwelled water is cold because the thermocline is so shallow. This leads to a cold tongue of water at the sea surface extending from South America to near the dateline (Figure 6.3).

Surface temperature in the east is a balance among four processes:

1. The strength of the upwelling, which is determined by the westward component of the wind.
2. The speed of westward currents which carry cold water from the coast of Peru and Equador.
3. North-south mixing with warmer waters on either side of the equator.
4. Heat fluxes through the sea surface along the equator.

The east-west temperature gradient on the equator drives a zonal circulation in the atmosphere, the Walker circulation. Thunderstorms over the warm pool carry air upward, and sinking air in the east feeds the return flow at the surface. Variations in the temperature gradient influences the Walker circulation, which, in turn, influences the gradient. The feedback can lead to an instability, the El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) discussed in the next section.

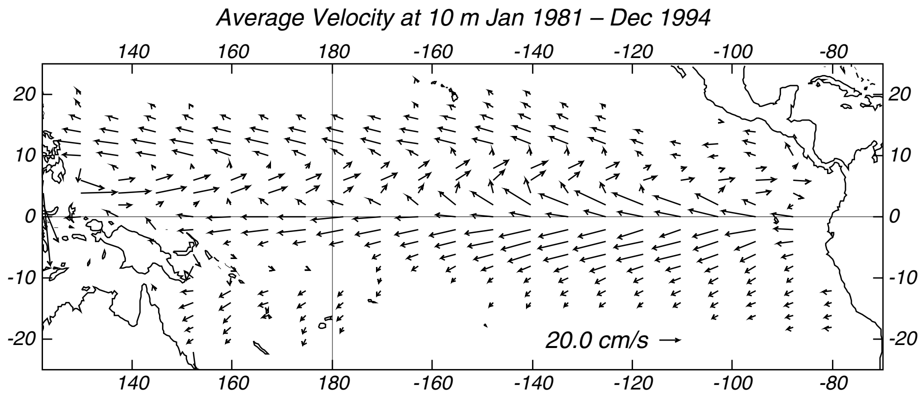


Figure 14.3 Average currents at 10 m calculated from the Modular Ocean Model driven by observed winds and mean heat fluxes from 1981 to 1994. The model, operated by the NOAA National Centers for Environmental Prediction, assimilates observed surface and subsurface temperatures (From Behringer, Ji, and Leetmaa, 1998).

Surface Currents The strong stratification confines the wind-driven circulation to the mixed layer and upper thermocline. Sverdrup's theory and Munk's extension, described in §11.1 and §11.3, explain the surface currents in the tropical Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans. The currents include (Figure 14.3):

1. The North Equatorial Countercurrent between 3°N and 10°N, which flows eastward with a typical surface speed of 50 cm/s. The current is centered on the band of weak winds, the *doldrums*, that exist at the latitude where the north and south trade winds converge, the *tropical convergence zone*.
2. The North and South Equatorial Currents which flow westward in the zonal band on either side of the countercurrent. The currents are shallow, less than 200 m deep. The northern current is weak, with a speed less than roughly 20 cm/s. The southern current has a maximum speed of around 100 cm/s, in the band between 3°N and the equator.

The currents in the Atlantic are similar to those in the Pacific because the trade winds in that ocean also converge near 5°–10°N. The South Equatorial Current in the Atlantic continues northwest along the coast of Brazil, where it is known as the North Brazil Current. In the Indian Ocean, the doldrums occur in the southern hemisphere and only during the northern-hemisphere winter. In the northern hemisphere, the currents reverse with the monsoon winds.

There is, however, much more to the story of equatorial currents.

Equatorial Undercurrent: Observations Just a few meters below the surface on the equator is a strong eastward flowing current, the Equatorial Undercurrent, the last major oceanic current to be discovered. Here's the story:

> In September 1951, aboard the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service research vessel long-line fishing on the equator south of Hawaii, it was noticed that the subsurface gear drifted steadily to the east. The next year Cromwell,

> in company with Montgomery and Stroup, led an expedition to investigate the vertical distribution of horizontal velocity at the equator. Using floating drogues at the surface and at various depths, they were able to establish the presence, near the equator in the central Pacific, of a strong, narrow eastward current in the lower part of the surface layer and the upper part of the thermocline (Cromwell, *et. al.*, 1954). A few years later the Scripps *Eastropic* Expedition, under Cromwell's leadership, found the current extended toward the east nearly to the Galapagos Islands but was not present between those islands and the South American continent.
>
> The current is remarkable in that, even though comparable in transport to the Florida Current, its presence was unsuspected ten years ago; even now, neither the source nor the ultimate fate of its waters has been established. No theory of oceanic circulation predicted its existence, and only now are such theories being modified to account for the important features of its flow.—Warren S. Wooster (1960).

Evidence for an Equatorial Undercurrent had been noted by Buchanan, Krümmel, Puls, and others in the Atlantic (Neumann, 1960).

> However, no attention was paid to them. Other earlier hints regarding this undercurrent were mentioned by Matthäus (1969). Thus the old experience becomes even more obvious which says that discoveries not attracting the attention of contemporaries simply do not exist.—Dietrich et al. (1980).

Bob Arthur (1960) summarized the major aspects of the flow:

1. Surface flow may be directed westward at speeds of 25–75 cm/s;
2. Current reverses at a depth of from 20 to 40 m;
3. Eastward undercurrent extends to a depth of 400 meters with a transport of as much as 30 Sv = 30×10^6 m^3/s;
4. Core of maximum eastward velocity (0.50–1.50 m/s) rises from a depth of 100 m at 140°W to 40 m at 98°W, then dips down;
5. Undercurrent appears to be symmetrical about the equator and becomes much thinner and weaker at 2°N and 2°S.

In essence, the Pacific Equatorial Undercurrent is a ribbon with dimensions of 0.2 km × 300 km × 13,000 km (Figure 14.4).

Equatorial Undercurrent: Theory Although we do not yet have a complete theory for the undercurrent, we do have a clear understanding of some of the more important processes at work in the equatorial regions. Pedlosky(1996), in his excellent chapter on Equatorial Dynamics of the Thermocline: The Equatorial Undercurrent, points out that the basic dynamical balances we have used in mid latitudes break down near or on the equator.

Near the equator:

1. The Coriolis parameter becomes very small, going to zero at the equator:

$$f = 2\Omega \sin \varphi = \beta y \approx 2\Omega\, \varphi \tag{14.1}$$

   where φ is latitude, $\beta = \partial f / \partial y \approx 2\Omega / R$ near the equator, and $y = R\,\varphi$.

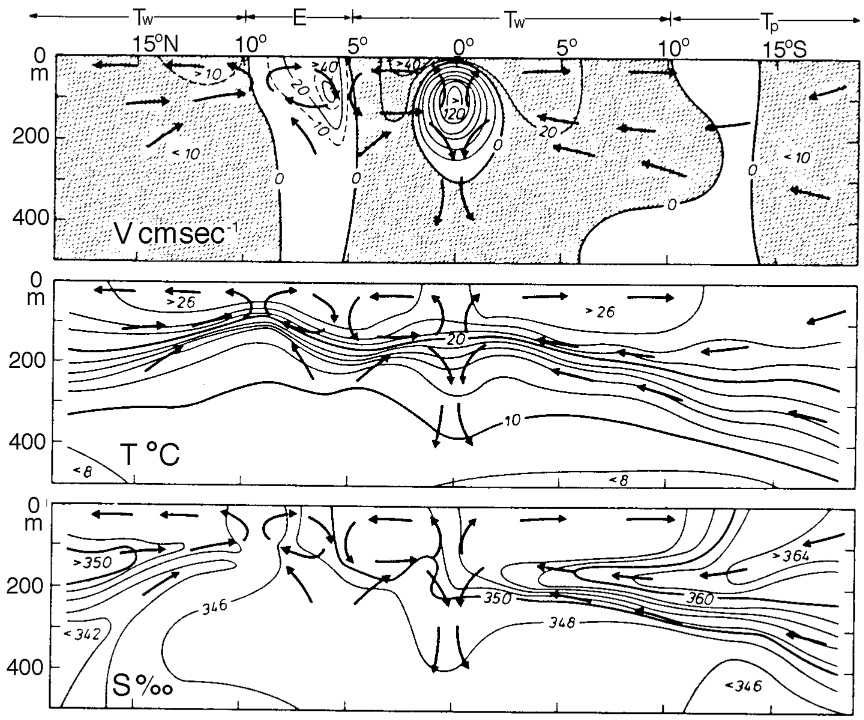


Figure 14.4 Cross Section of the Equatorial Undercurrent in the Pacific. Stippled areas are westward flowing. Arrows give transverse flow. (After Dietrich, 1970).

2. Planetary vorticity f is also small, and the advection of relative vorticity cannot be neglected. Thus the Sverdrup balance (11.7) must be modified.
3. The geostrophic and vorticity balances fail when the meridional distance L to the equator is $O\left(\sqrt{U/\beta}\right)$, where $\beta = \partial f/\partial y$. If $U = 1$ m/s, then $L = 200$ km or 2° of latitude. Lagerloeff et al (1999), using measured currents, show that currents near the equator can be described by the geostrophic balance for $|\varphi| > 2.2°$. They also show that flow closer to the equator can be described using a β-plane approximation $f = \beta y$.
4. The geostrophic balance for *zonal* currents works so well near the equator because f and $\partial\zeta/\partial y \rightarrow 0$ as $\varphi \rightarrow 0$, where ζ is sea surface topography.

The upwelled water along the equator produced by Ekman pumping is not part of a two-dimensional flow in a north-south, meridional plane. Instead, the flow is three-dimensional. The water tends to flow along the contours of constant density (isopycnal surfaces), which are close to the lines of constant temperature in Figure 14.2. Cold water enters the undercurrent in the far west Pacific, it moves eastward along the equator, and as it does it moves closer to the surface. Note, for example, that the 25°isotherm enters the undercurrent at a depth near 125 m in the western Pacific at 170°E and eventually reaches the surface at 125°W in the eastern Pacific.

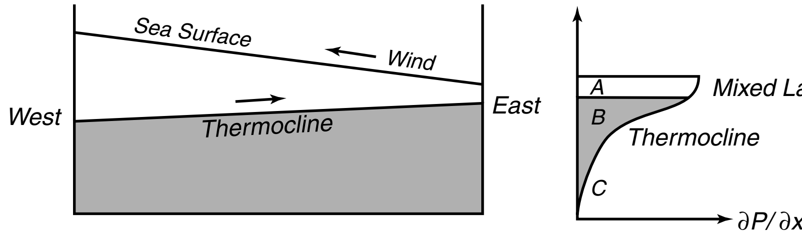


Figure 14.5 **Left:** Cross-sectional sketch of the thermocline and sea-surface topography along the equator. **Right:** Eastward pressure gradient in the central Pacific caused by the density structure at left.

The meridional geostrophic balance near the equator gives the speed of the zonal currents, but it does not explain what drives the undercurrent. A very simplified theory for the undercurrent is based on a balance of zonal pressure gradients along the equator. Wind stress pushes water westward, producing the deep thermocline and warm pool in the west. The deepening of the thermocline causes the sea-surface topography ζ to be higher in the west, assuming that flow below the thermocline is weak. Thus there is an eastward pressure gradient along the equator in the surface layers to a depth of a few hundred meters. The eastward pressure gradient at the surface is balanced by the wind stress T_x, (layer A in Figure 14.5), so $T_x = -\partial p/\partial x$.

Below a few tens of meters in layer B, the influence of the wind stress is small, and the pressure gradient is unbalanced, leading to an accelerated flow toward the east, the equatorial undercurrent. Within this layer, the flow accelerates until the pressure gradient is balanced by frictional forces which tend to slow the current. At depths below a few hundred meters in layer C, the eastward pressure gradient is too weak to produce a current, $\partial p/\partial x \approx 0$.

Coriolis forces keep the equatorial undercurrent centered on the equator. If the flow strays northward, the Coriolis force deflects the current southward. The opposite occurs if the flow strays southward.

14.2 Variable Equatorial Circulation: El Niño/La Niña

The trades are remarkably steady, but they do vary from month to month and year to year, especially in the western Pacific. One important source of variability are Madden-Julian waves in the atmosphere (McPhaden, 1999). If the trades in the west weaken or even reverse, the air-sea system in the equatorial regions can be thrown into another state called El Niño. This disruption of the equatorial system in the Pacific disrupts weather around the globe.

Although the modern meaning of the term El Niño denotes a disruption of the entire equatorial system in the Pacific, the term has been used in the past to describe several very different processes. This causes a lot of confusion. To reduce the confusion, let's learn a little history.

A Little History Many years ago, way back in the 19th century, the term was applied to conditions off the coast of Peru. The following quote comes from the introduction to Philander's (1990) excellent book *El Niño, La Niña, and the Southern Oscillation*:

> In the year 1891, Señor Dr. Luis Carranza of the Lima Geographical Society, contributed a small article to the Bulletin of that Society, calling attention to the fact that a counter-current flowing from north to south had been observed between the ports of Paita and Pacasmayo.
>
> The Paita sailors, who frequently navigate along the coast in small craft, either to the north or the south of that port, name this counter-current the current of "El Niño" (the Child Jesus) because it has been observed to appear immediately after Christmas.
>
> As this counter-current has been noticed on different occasions, and its appearance along the Peruvian coast has been concurrent with rains in latitudes where it seldom if ever rains to any great extent, I wish, on the present occasion, to call the attention of the distinguished geographers here assembled to this phenomenon, which exercises, undoubtably, a very great influence over the climatatic conditions of that part of the world.—Señor Frederico Alfonso Pezet's address to the Sixth International Geographical Congress in Lima, Peru 1895.

The Peruvians noticed that in some years the El Niño current was stronger than normal, it penetrated further south, and it is associated with heavy rains in Peru. This occurred in 1891 when (again quoting from Philander's book)

> … it was then seen that, wheras nearly every summer here and there there is a trace of the current along the coast, in that year it was so visible, and its effects were so palpable by the fact that large dead alligators and trunks of trees were borne down to Pacasmayo from the north, and that the whole temperature of that portion of Peru suffered such a change owing to the hot current that bathed the coast. … —Señor Frederico Alfonso Pezet.
>
> … the sea is full of wonders, the land even more so. First of all the desert becomes a garden … . The soil is soaked by the heavy downpour, and within a few weeks the whole country is covered by abundant pasture. The natural increase of flocks is practically doubled and cotton can be grown in places where in other years vegetation seems impossible.—From Mr. S.M. Scott & Mr. H. Twiddle quoted from Murphy (1926).

The El Niño of 1957 was even more exceptional. So much so that it attracted the attention of meteorologists and oceanographers throughout the Pacific basin.

> By the fall of 1957, the coral ring of Canton Island, in the memory of man ever bleak and dry, was lush with the seedlings of countless tropical trees and vines.
>
> One is inclined to select the events of this isolated atoll as epitomizing the year, for even here, on the remote edges of the Pacific, vast concerted shifts in the oceans and atmosphere had wrought dramatic change.
>
> Elsewhere about the Pacific it also was common knowledge that the year had been one of extraordinary climatic events. Hawaii had its first recorded typhoon; the seabird-killing *El Niño* visited the Peruvian coast; the ice went out of Point Barrow at the earliest time in history; and on the Pacific's western rim, the tropical rainy season lingered six weeks beyond its appointed term—Sette and Isaacs (1960).

Just months after the event, in 1958, a distinguished group of oceanographers and meteorologists assembled in Rancho Santa Fe, California to try to understand the *Changing Pacific Ocean in 1957 and 1958.* There, for perhaps the first time, they began the synthesis of meteorological events with oceanographic observations leading to our present understanding of El Niño.

While oceanographers had been mostly concerned with the eastern equatorial Pacific and El Niño, meteorologists had been mostly concerned with the western tropical Pacific, the tropical Indian Ocean, and what they called the Southern Oscillation. Hildebrandsson, the Lockyers, and Sir Gilbert Walker noticed in the early decades of the 20th century that pressure fluctuations throughout that region are highly correlated with pressure fluctuations in many other regions of the world (Figure 14.6). Because variations in pressure are asociated with winds and rainfall, they were wanted to find out if pressure in one region could be used to forecast weather in other regions using the correlations.

The early studies found that the two strongest centers of the variability are near Darwin, Australia and Tahiti. The fluctuations at Darwin are opposite those at Tahiti, and resemble an oscillation. Furthermore, the two centers had strong correlations with pressure in areas far from the Pacific. Walker named the fluctuations the *Southern Oscillation*.

The *Southern Oscillation Index* is sea-level pressure at Tahiti minus sea-level pressure at Darwin (Figure 14.7). Usually, the index is normalized by the standard deviation. The index indicates the strength of the trade winds. When the index is high, the pressure gradient between east and west in the tropical Pacific is large, and the trade winds are strong. When the index is negative trades, are weak.

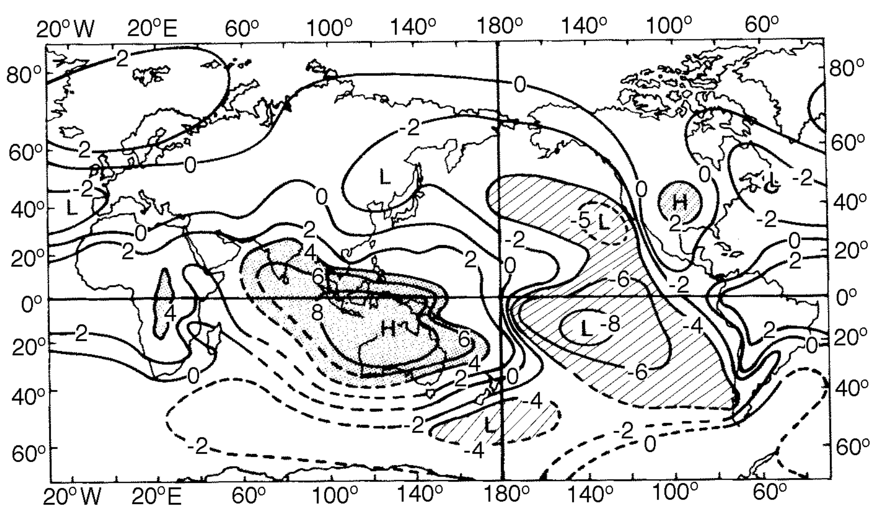


Figure 14.6 Correlation coefficient of annual-mean sea-level pressure with pressure at Darwin. – – – – Coefficient < −0.4. (From Trenberth and Shea, 1987).

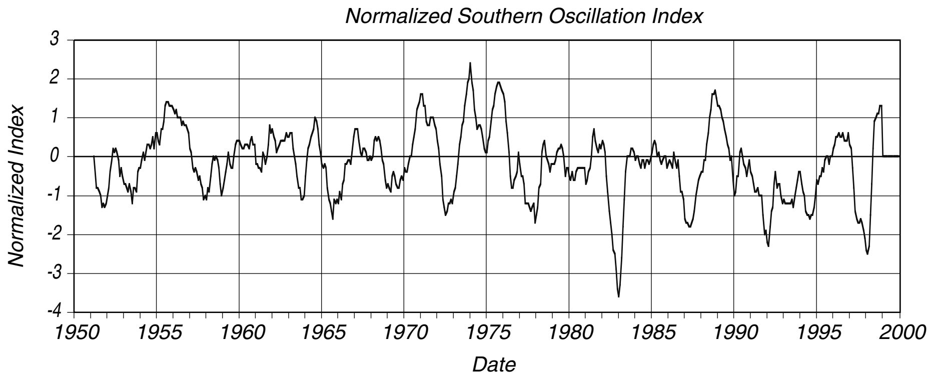


Figure 14.7 Normalized Southern Oscillation Index from 1951 to 1999. The normalized index is sea-level pressure anomaly at Tahiti divided by its standard deviation minus sea-level pressure anomaly at Darwin divided by its standard deviation then the difference is divided by the standard deviation of the difference. The means are calculated from 1951 to 1980. Monthly values of the index have been smoothed with a 5-month running mean. Strong El Niño events occured in 1957–58, 1965–66, 1972–73, 1982–83, 1997–98. Data from NOAA.

The connection between the Southern Oscillation and El Niño was made soon after the Rancho Sante Fe meeting. Ichiye and Petersen (1963) and Bjerknes (1966) noticed the relationship between equatorial temperatures in the Pacific during the 1957 El Niño and fluctuations in the trade winds associated with the Southern Oscillation. The theory was further developed by Wyrtki (1975).

Because El Niño and the Southern Oscillation are so closely related, the phenomenon is often referred to as the *El Niño–Southern Oscillation* or ENSO. More recently, the oscillation is refered to as El Niño/La Niña, where La Niña refers to the positive phase of the oscillation when trade winds are strong, and water temperature in the eastern equatorial region is very cold.

Philander (1990) pointed out that each El Niño is unique, with different temperature, pressure, and rainfall patterns. Some are strong, others are weak. So, exactly what events deserve to be called El Niño? Recent studies based on the COADS data show that the best indicator of El Niño is sea-level pressure anomaly in the eastern equatorial Pacific from 4°S to 4°N and from 108°W to 98°W (Harrison and Larkin, 1998). It correlates better with sea-surface temperature in the central Pacific than with the Southern-Oscillation Index. Thus the importance of the El Niño is not exactly proportional to the Southern Oscillation Index—the strong El Niño of 1957–58, has a weaker signal in Figure 7 than the weaker El Niño of 1965–66.

Trenberth (1997), based on discussions within the Climate Variability and Predictability program, recommends that those disruptions of the equatorial system in the Pacific shall be called an El Niño only when the 5-month running mean of sea-surface temperature anomalies in the region 5°N–5°S, 120°W–170°W exceeds 0.4°C for six months or longer.

So El Niño, which started life as a change in currents off Peru each Christmas, has grown into a giant. It now means a disruption of the ocean-atmosphere system over the whole equatorial Pacific.

Theory of El Niño Wyrtki (1975) gives a clear, modern description of El Niño.

> During the two years preceeding El Niño, excessively strong southeast trades are present in the central Pacific. These strong southeast trades intensify the subtropical gyre of the South Pacific, strengthen the South Equatorial Current, and increase the east-west slope of sea level by building up water in the western equatorial Pacific. As soon as the wind stress in the central Pacific relaxes, the accumulated water flows eastward, probably in the form of an equatorial Kelvin wave. This wave leads to the accumulation of warm water off Ecuador and Peru and to a depression of the usually shallow thermocline. In total, El Niño is the result of the response of the equatorial Pacific to atmospheric forcing by the trade winds.

Sometimes the trades in the western Pacific not only weaken, they actually reverse direction for a few weeks to a month, producing *westerly wind bursts* that quickly deepen the thermocline there. The deepening of the thermocline launches an eastward propagating Kelvin wave and a westward propagating Rossby wave. (If you are asking, What are Kelvin and Rossby waves? I will answer that in a minute. So please be patient.)

The Kelvin wave deepens the thermocline as it moves eastward, and it carries warm water eastward. Both processes cause a deepening of the mixed layer in the eastern equatorial Pacific a few months after the wave is launched in the western Pacific. The deeper thermocline in the east shuts off the upwelling of cold water, and the surface temperatures offshore of Ecuador and Peru warms by 2–4°. The warm water reduces the temperature contrast between east and west, further reducing the trades and hastening the development of El Niño.

With time, the warm pool spreads east, eventually extending as far as 140°E (Figure 14.8). Plus, water warms in the east along the equator due to reduced upwelling, and to reduced advection of cold water from the east due to weaker trade winds.

The warm waters along the equator in the east cause the areas of heavy rain to move eastward from Melanesia and Fiji to the central Pacific. Essentially, a major source of heat for the atmospheric circulation moves from the west to the central Pacific, anf the whole atmosphere responds to the change. Bjerkness (1972), decribing the interaction between the ocean and the atmosphere over the eastern equatorial Pacific concluded:

> In the cold ocean case (1964) the atmosphere has a pronounced stable layer between 900 and 800 mb, preventing convection and rainfall, and in the warm case (1965) the heat supply from the ocean eliminates the atmospheric stability and activates rainfall. . . . A side effect of the widespread warming of the tropical belt of the atmosphere shows up in the increase of exchange of angular momentum with the neighboring subtropical belt, whereby the subtropical westerly jet strenghtens . . . The variability of the heat and moisture supply to the global atmospheric thermal engine from the equatorial Pacific can be shown to have far-reaching large-scale effects.

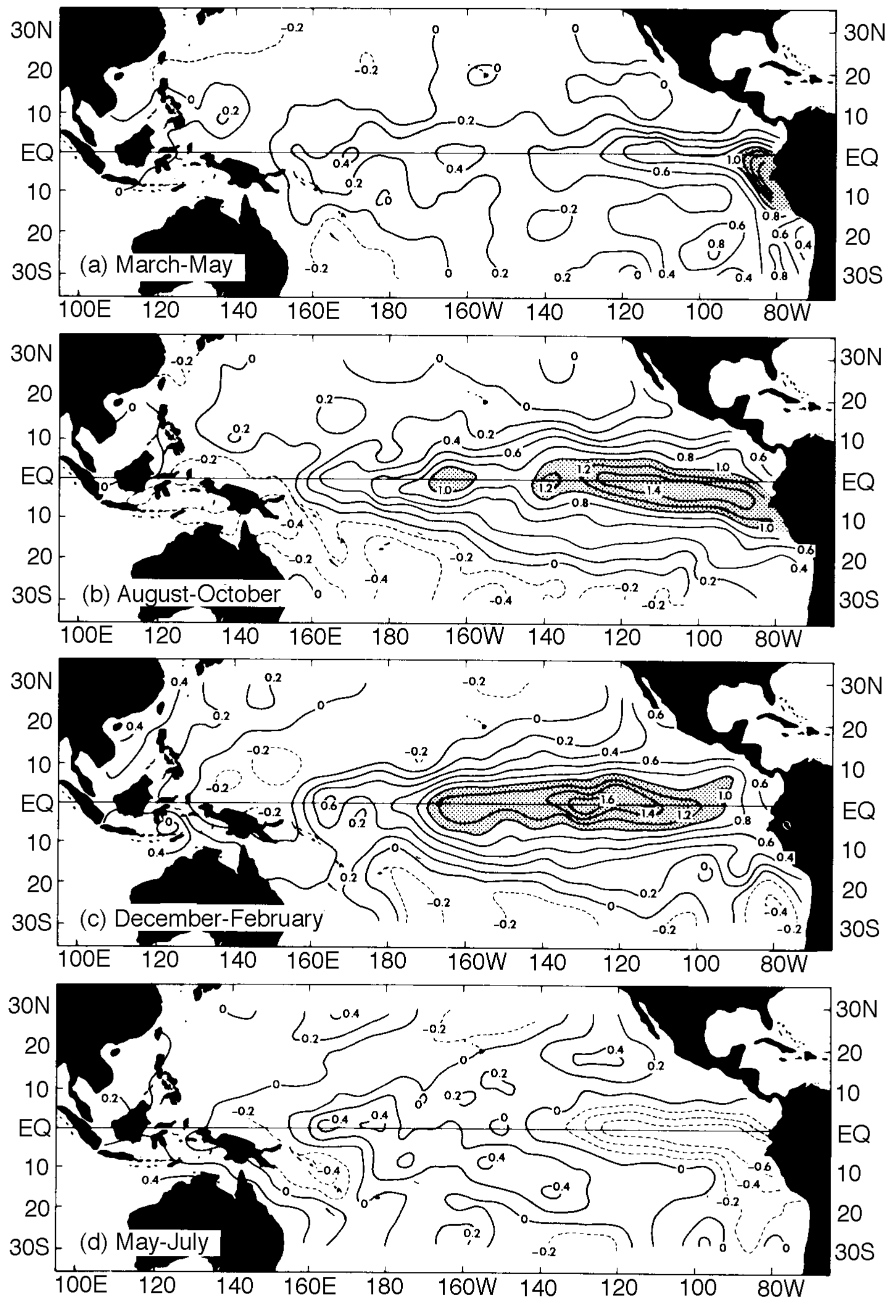


Figure 14.8 Anomalies of sea-surface temperature (in °C) during a typical El Niño obtained by averaging data from El Niños between 1950 and 1973. Months are after the onset of the event. (From Rasmusson and Carpenter, 1982).

It is these far reaching events that make El Niño so important. Few people care about warm water off Peru around Christmas, many care about global changes the weather. El Niño is important because of its influence on the atmosphere.

After the Kelvin wave reaches the coast of Ecuador, part is reflected as an westward propagating Rossby wave, and part propagates north and south as a coastally trapped Kelvin wave carrying warm water to higher latitudes. For example, during the 1957 El Niño, the northward propagating Kelvin wave produced unusually warm water off shore of California, and it eventually reached Alaska. This warming of the west coast of North America further influences climate in North America, especially in California.

As the Kelvin wave moves along the coast, it forces other Rossby waves which move west across the Pacific with a velocity that depends on the latitude (14.4). The velocity is very slow at mid to high latitudes and fastest on the equator. There the reflected wave moves back as a deepening of the thermocline, reaching the central Pacific a year later. In a similar way, the westward propagating Rossby wave launched at the start of the El Niño in the west, reflects off Asia and returns to the central Pacific as a Kelvin wave, again about a year later.

El Niño ends when the Rossby waves reflected from Asia and Equador meet in the central Pacific about a year after the onset of El Niño (Picaut, Masia, and du Penhoat, 1997). The waves push the warm pool at the surface toward the west. At the same time, the Rossby wave reflected from the western boundary causes the thermocline in the central Pacific to become shallower when the waves reaches the central Pacific. Then any strengthening of the trades causes upwelling of cold water in the east, which increases the east-west temperature gradient, which increases the trades, which increases the upwelling (Takayabu et al 1999). The system is then thrown into the La Niña state with strong trades, and a very cold tongue along the equator in the east.

La Niña tends to last longer than El Niño, and the full cycle from La Niña to El Niño and back takes around three years. The cycle is not exact and El Niño comes back at intervals from 2-7 years, with an average near four years (Figuer 14.7).

Equatorial Kelvin and Rossby Waves Kelvin and Rossby waves are the ocean's way of adjusting to changes in forcing such as westerly wind bursts. The adjustment occurs as waves of current and sea level that are influenced by gravity, Coriolis force f, and the north-south variation of Coriolis force $\partial f / \partial y = \beta$. There are many kinds of these waves with different spatial distributions, frequencies, wavelengths, speed and direction of propagation. If gravity and f are the restoring forces, the waves are called Kelvin and Poincare waves. If β is the restoring force, the waves are called planetary waves. One important type of planetary wave is the Rossby wave.

Two types of waves are especially important for El Niño: internal Kelvin waves and Rossby waves. Both waves can have modes that are confined to a narrow, north-south region centered on the equator. These are *equatorially trapped waves.* Both exist in slightly different forms at higher latitudes.

Kelvin and Rossby wave theory is beyond the scope of this book, so I will

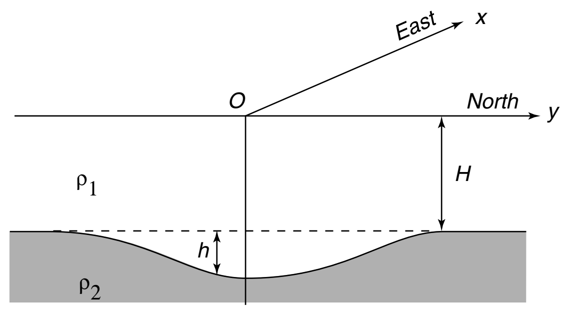


Figure 14.9 Sketch of the two-layer model of the equatorial ocean used to calculate planetary waves in those regions (From Philander, 1990).

just tell you what they are without deriving the properties of the waves. If you are curious, you can find the details in Philander (1990): Chapter 3; Pedlosky (1987): Chapter 3; and Apel (1987): §6.10–6.12. If you know little about waves, their wavelength, frequency, group and phase velocities, skip to Chapter 16 and read §16.1.

The theory for equatorial waves is based on a simple, two-layer model of the ocean (Figure 14.9). Because the tropical oceans have a thin, warm, surface layer above a sharp thermocline, such a model is a good approximation for those regions.

Equatorial-trapped Kelvin waves are non-dispersive, with group velocity:

$$c_{Kg} = c \equiv \sqrt{g'H}; \qquad \text{where} \qquad g' = \frac{\rho_2 - \rho_1}{\rho_1}\, g \tag{14.2}$$

g' is *reduced gravity*, ρ_1, ρ_2 are the densities above and below the thermocline, and g is gravity. Trapped Kelvin waves propagate only to the east. Note, that c is the phase and group velocity of a shallow-water, internal, gravity wave. It is the maximum velocity at which disturbances can travel along the thermocline.

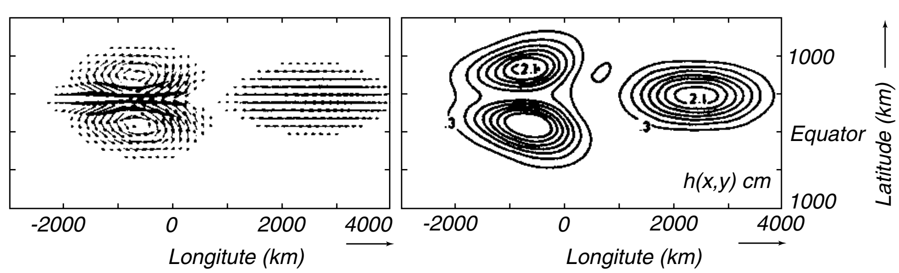


Figure 14.10 **Left:** Horizontal currents associated with equatorially trapped waves generated by a bell-shaped displacement of the thermocline. **Right:** Displacement of the thermocline due to the waves. The figures shows that after 20 days, the initial disturbance has separated into an westward propagating Rossby wave (left) and an eastward propagating Kelvin wave (right). (From Philander et al. 1984).

Typical values of the quantities in (14.2) are:

$$\frac{\rho_2 - \rho_1}{\rho_1} = 0.003; \qquad H = 150 \text{ m}; \qquad c = 2.1 \text{ m/s}$$

At the equator, Kelvin waves propagate eastward at speeds of up to 3 m/s, and they cross the Pacific in a few months. Currents associated with the wave are everywhere eastward with north-south component (Figure 14.10).

Kelvin waves can also propagate poleward as a trapped wave along an east coast of an ocean basin. Their group velocity is also given by (14.3), and they are confined to a coastal zone with width $x = c/\left(\beta\, y\right)$

The important Rossby waves on the equator have frequencies much less than the Coriolis frequency. They can travel only to the west. The group velocity is:

$$c_{Rg} = -\frac{c}{(2\,n+1)}; \qquad n = 1,\, 2,\, 3,\, \ldots \tag{14.3}$$

The fastest wave travels westward at a velocity near 0.8 m/s. The currents associated with the wave are almost in geostrophic balance in two counter-rotating eddies centered on the equator (Figure 14.10).

Away from the equator, low-frequency, long-wavelength Rossby waves also travel only to the west, and the currents associated with the waves are again almost in geostrophic balance. Group velocity depends strongly on latitude:

$$c_{Rg} = -\frac{\beta\, g'\, H}{f^2} \tag{14.4}$$

The wave dynamics in the equatorial regions differ markedly from wave dynamics at mid-latitudes. The baroclinic waves are much faster, and the response of the ocean to changes in wind forcing is also much faster than at mid-latitudes.

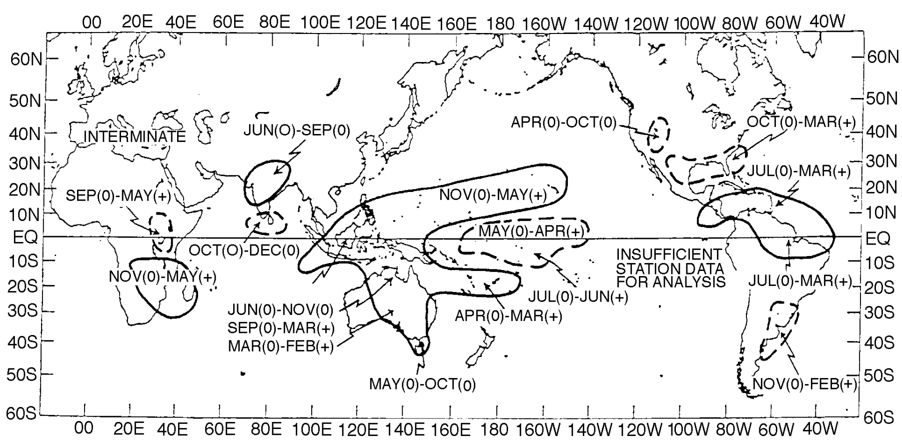


Figure 14.11 Sketch of regions receiving enhanced rain (dashed lines) or drought (solid lines) during an El Niño event. (0) indicates that rain changed during the year in which El Niño began, (+)indicates that rain changed during the year after El Niño began. (From Ropelewski and Halpert, 1987).

For the planetary waves waves confined to the equator, we can speak of an *equatorial wave guide.*

Now, let's return to El Niño and its "far-reaching large-scale effects."

14.3 El Niño Teleconnections

Teleconnections are statistically significant correlations between weather events that occur at different places on the Earth. Figure 14.11 shows the dominant global teleconnections associated with the El Niño/Southern Oscillation ENSO. It shows that ENSO is an atmospheric perturbation influencing the entire Pacific.

The influence of ENSO is through its influence on convection in the equatorial Pacific. As the area of heavy rain moves east, it perturbs atmospheric pressure (Figure 14.12) and influences the position of the jet stream at higher latitudes. This sequence of events leads to some predictability of weather patterns a season in advance over North America, Brazil, Australia, South Africa and other regions.

The ENSO perturbations to mid-latitude and tropical weather systems leads to dramatic changes in rainfall in some regions (Figure 14.12). As the convective regions migrate east along the equator, they bring rain to the normally arid, central-Pacific islands. The lack of rain the the western Pacific leads to drought in Indonesia and Australia.

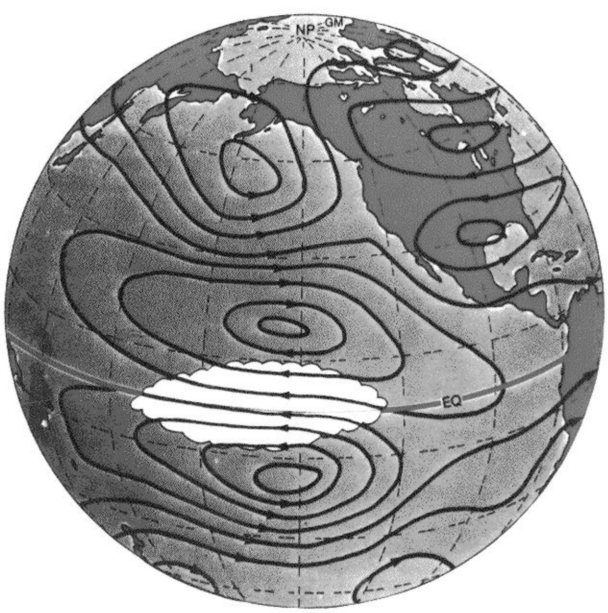


Figure 14.12 Changing patterns of convection in the equatorial Pacific during an El Niño, set up a pattern of pressure anomalies in the atmosphere (solid lines) which influence the extratropical atmosphere. (From Rasmusson and Wallace, 1983).

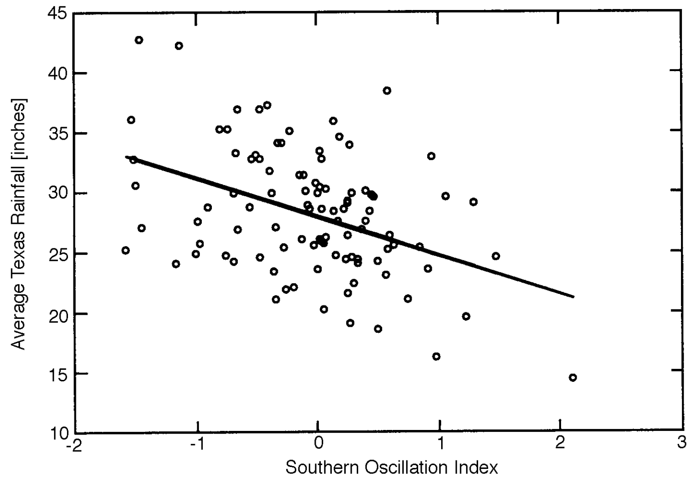


Figure 14.13 Correlation of yearly averaged rainfall averaged over all Texas each year plotted as a function of the Southern Oscillation Index averaged for the year. (From Stewart, 1994).

An Example: Variability of Texas Rainfall Figure 14.11 shows a global view of teleconections. Let's zoom in to one region, Texas, that I chose only becaue I live there. The global figure shows that the region should have higher than normal rainfall in the winter season after El Niño begins. I therefore correlated yearly averaged rainfall for the state of Texas to the Southern Oscillation Index; and I found that the rainfall is well correlated (Figure 14.13). Wet years correspond to El Niño years in the equatorial Pacific. During El Niño, convection normally found in the western equatorial pacific moved east into the central equatorial Pacific. The subtropical jet also moves east, carrying tropical moisture across Mexico to Texas and the Mississippi Valley. Cold fronts in winter interact with the upper level moisture to produce abundant winter rains from Texas eastward.

14.4 Observing El Niño

The tropical and equatorial Pacific is a vast, remote area seldom visited by ships. To observe the region NOAA's Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory has deployed a array of buoys to measure oceanographic and meteorological variables (Figure 14.14). The first buoy was successfully deployed in 1976 by David Halpern. Since that simple start, new moorings have been added to the array, new instruments have been added to the moorings, and the moorings have been improved. The program has now evolved into the Tropical Atmosphere Ocean TAO array of approximately 70 deep-ocean moorings spanning the equatorial Pacific Ocean between 8°N and 8°S from 95°W to 137°E.

The array began full operation in December 1994, and it continues to evolve. The work necessary to design and calibrate instruments, deploy moorings, and process data is coordinated through the TAO Project. It is a multi-national effort involving the participation of the United States, Japan, Korea, Taiwan,

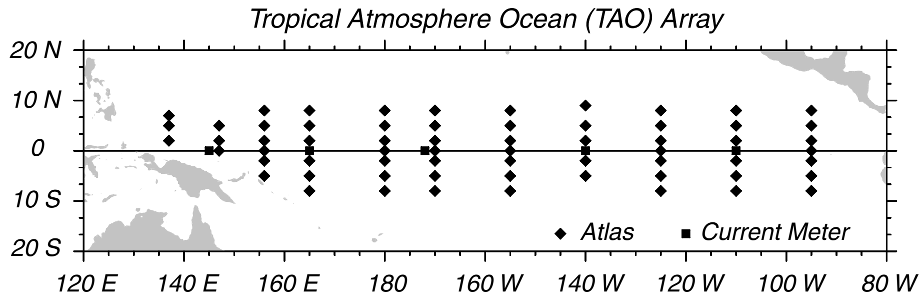


Figure 14.14 Tropical Atmosphere Ocean TAO array of moored buoys operated by the NOAA Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory with help from Japan, Korea, Taiwan, and France.

and France with a project office at the Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory in Seattle, Washington.

The TAO moorings measure air temperature, relative humidity, surface wind velocity, sea-surface temperatures, and subsurface temperatures from 10 meters down to 500 meters. Five moorings located on the equator at 110°W, 140°W, 170°W, 165°E, and 147°E also carry upward-looking Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers ADCP to measure upper-ocean currents between 10 m and 250 m. The moorings are designed to last about a year, and moorings are recovered and replaced yearly. Data from the array are sent back throught ARGOS system, and data are processed and made available in near real time. All sensors are calibrated prior to deployment and after recovery.

Data from TAO are being supplemeted with data from tide gauges and satellites. Sea level is measured by approximately 80 tide gauges operated by the Integrated Global Observing System. The gauges are located on more than 30 small islands and at 40 shore stations throughout the Pacific. Data from the stations are relayed to shore via satellites, processed, and made available in near real time. Altimeters on Topex/Poseidon and ERS-1 observe the ocean's topography between the island stations and across the deep ocean.

The Topex/Poseidon observations are especially useful. They provided detailed views of the development of the 1997–1998 El Niño in near real time that were widely reproduced throughout the world. The satellite data extended beyond the TAO data to include the entire tropical Pacific, producing maps of sea level every ten days. Animations of the maps show the Kelvin waves crossing the Pacific, and extending along the coasts of the Americas.

Rain rates are measured by NASA's Tropical Rainfall Measuring Mission which was specially designed to observe rain rates. It was launched on 27 November 1997, and it carries five instruments: the first spaceborne precipitation radar, a five-frequency microwave radiometer, a visible and infrared scanner, a cloud and earth radiant energy system, and a lightning imaging sensor. Working together, the instruments provide data necessary to produce monthly maps of tropical rainfall averaged over 500 km by 500 km areas with 15% accuracy. The grid is global between ±35° latitude. In addition, the satellite data are used to measure latent heat released to the atmosphere by rain, thus providing continuous monitoring of heating of the atmosphere in the tropics.

Further information about processes in the western Pacific warm pool were obtained through a very large, international, Coupled Ocean Atmosphere Response Experiment COARE 1992–1994. During the intensive observing period of the experiment from 1 November 1992 to 28 February 1993, instruments on dozens of moorings, ships, islands, aircraft, and satellites observed the region bounded by 30°N, 30°S, 130°W, and 90°E. The goal was to obtain a better understanding of processess over the warm pool, the TOGA-COARE domain, especially heat fluxes from the ocean during weak winds, the organization of the convection in the atmospheric, the ocean's response to the forcing, and the interactions that extend the oceanic and atmospheric influence of the warm pool system to other regions and vice versa. Results from the experiment are beginning to influence the development of numerical models for predicting El Niño.

14.5 Forecasting El Niño

The importance of El Niño to global weather patterns has led to many schemes for forecasting events in the equatorial Pacific. Several generations of models have been produced, but the skill of the forecasts has not always increased. Some models worked well for a few years, then failed. Failure was followed by improved models, and the cycle continued. Thus, the best models in 1991 failed to predict two warm events (weak El Niños) in 1993 and 1994 (Ji, Leetma, and Kousky, 1996); and the best model of the 1980s failed to predict the onset of the strong El Niño of 1997-1998 although the onset was predicted by a new model developed by the National Centers for Environmental Prediction. In general, the more sophisticated the model, the better the forecasts (Kerr, 1998). The best predictions of the 1997/1998 El Niño came from the U.S. National Centers for Environmental Prediction and the European Center for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts.

The following recounts some of the more recent work to improve the forecasts. For simplicity, I describe the technique used by the National Centers for Environmental Prediction (Ji, Behringer, and Leetmaa, 1998); but Chen et al. (1995), Latif et al. (1993), and Barnett et al. (1993), among others, have all developed useful prediction models.

Atmospheric Models Our ability to understand El Niño depends in part on our ability to model the atmospheric circulation in the equatorial Pacific. How well then do we know atmospheric processes over the Pacific?

To help answer the quastion, the World Climate Research Program has sponsored a program to intercompare the output from 30 different numerical models of the atmosphere during the period 1979-1988, the Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Project (Gates, 1992). The subproject on *The Variability in the Tropics: Synoptic to Intraseasonal Timescales* is especially important (Slingo et al. 1995) because it documents the ability of 15 atmospheric general-circulation models to simulate the observed variability in the tropical atmosphere. The models included several operated by government weather forecasting centers, including the model used for day-to-day forecasts by the European Center for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts.

The first results of the tropical study indicate that none of the models were able to duplicate all important interseasonal variability of the tropical atmosphere. The intraseasonal variability includes timescales of 2 to 80 days. The results also show that models with weak intraseasonal activity tend to also have a weak annual cycle. Most models seemed to simulate some important aspects of the interannual variability including El Niño. The length of the time series was, however, too short to provide conclusive results on interannual variability.

The results of the substudy imply that numerical models of the atmospheric general circulation need to be improved if they are to be used to study tropical variability and the response of the atmosphere to changes in the tropical ocean. Some of the improvement is coming from new knowledge gained from COARE.

Oceanic Models Our ability to understand El Niño also depends in part on our ability to model the oceanic circulation in the equatorial Pacific. Because the models provide the initial conditions used for the forecasts, they must be able to assimilate up-to-date measurements of the Pacific along with heat fluxes and surface winds calculated from the atmospheric models. The measurements could include sea-surface winds from scatterometers and moored buoys, surface temperature from the optimal-interpolation data set (see §6.6), subsurface temperatures from buoys and XBTs, and sea level from altimetry and tide-gauges on islands.

Ji, Behringer, and Leetmaa (1998) at the National Centers for Environmental Prediction have modified the Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory's Modular Ocean Model for use in the tropical Pacific (see §15.4 for more information about this model). It's domain is the Pacific between 45°S and 55°N and between 120°E and 70°W. The zonal resolution is 1.5°. The meridional resolution is 1/3° within 10° of the equator, increasing smoothly to 1° poleward of 20° latitude. It has 28 vertical levels, with 18 in the upper 400 m to resolve the mixed layer and thermocline. The model is driven by mean winds from Hellerman and Rosenstein (1983), anomalies in the wind field from Florida State University, and mean heat fluxes from Oberhuber (1988). It assimilates subsurface temperature from the TAO array and XBTs, and surface temperatures from the monthly optimal-interpolation data set (Reynolds and Smith, 1994).

The output of the this model is an ocean analysis, the density and current field that best fits the data used in the analysis. This is used to drive a coupled ocean-atmosphere model to produce forecasts. Figure 14.3 is an example of the currents calculated by the model.

Coupled Models As the name implies, coupled models are separate atmospheric and oceanic models that pass information through their common boundary at the sea surface, thus coupling the two calculations. The coupling can be one way, from the atmosphere, or two way, into and out of the ocean. In the scheme used by the NOAA National Centers for Environmental Prediction the ocean model is the same Modular Ocean Model described above. It is coupled to a low-resolution version of the global, medium-range forecast model operated by the National Centers (Ji, Kummar, and Leetmaa, 1994). Anomalies of wind stress, heat, and fresh-water fluxes calculated from the atmospheric model are added to the mean annual values of the fluxes, and the sums are used to drive the ocean model. Sea-surface temperature calculated from the ocean model is used to drive the atmospheric model from 15°N to 15°S.

As computer power decreases in cost, the models are becoming ever more complex. The trend is to global coupled models able to include other coupled ocean-atmosphere systems in addition to ENSO. We return to the problem in §15.7 where I describe global coupled models.

Forecasts In general, the coupled ocean-atmosphere models produce the best forecasts. The forecasts include not only events in the Pacific but also the global consequences of El Niño. The forecasts are judged two ways:

1. Using the correlation between the area-averaged sea-surface-temperature anomalies from the model and the observed temperature anomalies in the eastern equatorial Pacific. The area is usually from 170°W to 120°W between 5°S and 5°N. Useful forecasts have correlations exceeding 0.6.
2. Using the root-mean-square difference between the observed and predicted sea-surface temperature in the same area.

Forecasts made from the National-Centers coupled model had correlations that exceeded 0.6 as far as one year in advance when run using data from 1981 to 1995. The root-mean-square difference in temperature was less than 1°C for the forecasts. Forecasts had less skill for the period from 1992 to 1995, the period with weak warming events that have proved difficult to forecast. During that period, correlations exceed 0.6 for only eight months, although the temperature error was less than 0.7°C. The most accurate forecasts were those that started during the northern hemisphere warm period from May through September. Forecasts made in November through January were significantly less accurate (Ji, Behringer, and Leetmaa, 1998).

In conclusion, it appears that coupled ocean-atmosphere models driven with accurate atmospheric and oceanic data can produce useful forecasts of El Niño.

14.6 Important Concepts

1. Equatorial processes are important because heat released by rain in the equatorial region drives an important part of the atmospheric circulation.
2. Equatorial currents redistribute heat; and interannual variability of currents and temperatures in the equatorial Pacific modulates the oceanic forcing of the atmosphere.
3. Changes in equatorial dynamics cause changes in atmospheric circulation.
4. El Niño causes the biggest changes in equatorial dynamics. During El Niño, trade-winds weaken in the western Pacific, the thermocline becomes less deep in the west. This drives a Kelvin wave eastward along the equator, which deepens the thermocline in the eastern Pacific. The warm pool in the west moves eastward toward the central Pacific, and the intense tropical rain areas move with the warm pool.
5. As a result of El Niño, drought occurs in the Indonesian area and northern Australia, and floods occur in western, tropical South America. Variations

in the atmospheric circulation influence more distant areas through teleconnections.

6. Forecasts of El Niño are made using coupled ocean-atmospheric numerical models. Forecasts appear to have useful accuracy for 6–12 months in advance.

Chapter 15

Numerical Models

We saw earlier that analytic solutions to the equations of motion are difficult or impossible to obtain for typical oceanic flows. The problem is due to the non-linear terms, friction, and the need for realistic shapes for the sea floor and coastlines. We have also seen how difficult it is to describe the ocean from measurements. Satellites can observe some processes almost everywhere every few days. But they observe only some processes, and only near or at the surface. Ships can measure more variables, and deeper into the water, but the measurements are sparse. Hence, numerical models provide the only useful, global view of ocean currents. Let's look at the accuracy and validity of the models, keeping in mind that although they are only models, they provide a remarkably detailed and realistic view of the ocean.

15.1 Introduction–Some Words of Caution

Numerical models of ocean currents have many advantages. They simulate flows in realistic ocean basins with a realistic sea floor. They include the influence of viscosity and non-linear dynamics. And they can calculate possible future flows in the ocean. Perhaps, most important, they interpolate between sparse observations of the ocean produced by ships, drifters, and satellites.

Numerical models are not without problems. "There is a world of difference between the character of the fundamental laws, on the one hand, and the nature of the computations required to breathe life into them, on the other"—Berlinski (1996). The models can never give complete descriptions of the oceanic flows even if the equations are integrated accurately. The problems arise from several sources.

Discrete equations are not the same as continuous equations. In Chapter 7 we wrote down the differential equations describing the motion of a continuous fluid. Numerical models use algebraic approximations to the differential equations. We assume that the ocean basins are filled with a grid of points, and time moves forward in tiny steps. The value of the current, pressure, temperature, and salinity are calculated from their values at nearby points and previous times. Ian Stewart (1992), a noted mathematician, points out that

> Discretization is essential for computer implementation and cannot be dispensed with. The essence of the difficulty is that the dynamics of discrete systems is only loosely related to that of continuous systems—indeed the dynamics of discrete systems is far richer than that of their continuous counterparts—and the approximations involved can create spurious solutions.

Calculations of turbulence are difficult. Numerical models provide information only at grid points of the model. They provide no information about the flow between the points. Yet, the ocean is turbulent, and any oceanic model capable of resolving the turbulence needs grid points spaced millimeters apart, with time steps of milliseconds. Clearly, such a model can be used only for flow in a small box.

Practical ocean models have grid points spaced tens to hundreds of kilometers apart in the horizontal, and tens to hundreds of meters apart in the vertical. This means that turbulence cannot be calculated directly, and the influence of turbulence must be parameterized. Holloway (1994) states the problem succinctly:

> Ocean models retain fewer degrees of freedom than the actual ocean (by about 20 orders of magnitude). We compensate by applying 'eddy-viscous goo' to squash motion at all but the smallest retained scales. (We also use non-conservative numerics.) This is analogous to placing a partition in a box to prevent gas molecules from invading another region of the box. Our oceanic models cannot invade most of the real oceanic degrees of freedom simply because the models do not include them.
>
> Given that we cannot do things 'right', is it better to do nothing? That is not an option. 'Nothing' means applying viscous goo and wishing for the ever bigger computer. Can we do better? For example, can we guess a higher entropy configuration toward which the eddies tend to drive the ocean (that tendency to compete with the imposed forcing and dissipation)?

By "degrees of freedom" Holloway means all possible motions from the smallest waves and turbulence to the largest currents. We will return to turbulence later in this chapter.

Practical models must be simpler than the real ocean. Models of the ocean must run on available computers. This means oceanographers further simplify their models. We use the hydrostatic and Boussinesq approximations, and we often use equations integrated in the vertical, the shallow-water equations (Haidvogel and Beckmann, 1999: 37). We do this because we cannot yet run the most detailed models of oceanic circulation for thousands of years to understand the role of the ocean in climate.

Initial conditions are not well known. How to initialize the model? We do not know accurately the present velocity and density in the ocean, the starting point for running any model. The best we can do is to start at rest using the best estimates of the ocean's density field, such as that contained in the digital atlas produced by Levitus (1982, 1994), or we can use the output from an earlier run of the model or a similar model. Still, there are difficulties. The Levitus atlas is based on slightly inaccurate observations made over many decades; and the oceans take hundreds of years to come to equilibrium with the atmosphere, so models must run for hundreds of years to get the right deep circulation.

Numerical code has errors. Do you know of any software without bugs? Numerical models use many subroutines each with many lines of code which are converted into instructions understood by processors using other software called a compiler. Eliminating all software errors is impossible. With careful testing, the output may be correct, but the accuracy cannot be guaranteed. Plus, numerical calculations cannot be more accurate than the accuracy of the floating-point numbers and integers used by the computer. Round-off errors cannot be ignored. Lawrence et al (1999), examining the output of an atmospheric numerical model found an error in the code produced by the FORTRAN-90 compiler used on the CRAY Research supercomputer used to run the code. They also found round-off errors in the concentration of tracers calculated from the model. Both errors produced important errors in the output of the model.

Summary Despite these many sources of error, most are small in practice. Numerical models of the ocean are giving the most detailed and complete views of the circulation available to oceanographers. Some of the simulations contain unprecedented details of the flow. Langer (1999), writing about the use of computers in physics wrote:

> All of who are involved in the sciences know that the computer has become an essential tool for research ... Scientific computation has reached the point where it is on a par with laboratory experiment and mathematical theory as a tool fro research in science and engineering.

I included the words of warning not to lead you to believe the models are wrong, but to lead you to accept the output with a grain of salt.

15.2 Numerical Models in Oceanography

Numerical models are used for many purposes in oceanography. For our purpose we can divide models into two classes:

Mechanistic models are simplified models used for studying processes. Because the models are simplified, the output is easier to interpret than output from more complex models. Many different types of simplified models have been developed, including models for describing planetary waves, the interaction of the flow with sea-floor features, or the response of the upper ocean to the wind. These are perhaps the most useful of all models because they provide insight into the physical mechanisms influencing the ocean. The development and use of mechanistic models is, unfortunately, beyond the scope of this book.

Simulation models are used for calculating realistic circulation of oceanic regions. The models are often very complex because all important processes are included, and the output is difficult to interpret. Let's look at a few of the more widely used models.

15.3 Simulation Models

The first simulation models were developed by Kirk Bryan and Michael Cox at the Geophysical Fluid Dynamics laboratory in Princeton. Their model (Bryan, 1969) calculated the 3-dimensional flow in the ocean using the continuity and momentum equation with the hydrostatic and Boussinesq approximations and a simplified equation of state. Such models are called *primitive equation* models because they use the most basic, or primitive form of the equations of motion. The equation of state allows the model to calculate changes in density due to fluxes of heat and water through the sea surface, so the model includes thermodynamic processes.

The Bryan-Cox model used large horizontal and vertical viscosity and diffusion to eliminate turbulent eddies having diameters smaller about 500 km, which is a few grid points in the model. It also had complex coastlines, smoothed sea-floor features, and a rigid lid.

The rigid lid was necessary for eliminating ocean-surface waves, such as tides and tsunamis which move far too fast for the coarse time steps used by all simulation models. The rigid lid has, however, disadvantages. Islands substantially slow the computation, and the sea-floor features must be smoothed to eliminate steep gradients.

The first simulation model was regional. It was quickly followed by a global model (Cox, 1975) with a horizontal resolution of 2° and with 12 levels in the vertical. The model ran far too slowly even on the fastest computers of the day, but it laid the foundation for more recent models. The coarse spatial resolution required that the model have large values for viscosity, and even regional models were too viscous to have realistic western boundary currents or mesoscale eddies.

Since those times, the goal has been to produce models with ever finer resolution. The hope is that if the resolution is sufficiently fine, the output will be sufficiently realistic. Computer technology has changed rapidly, and models have evolved rapidly. The output from the most recent models of the North Atlantic, which have resolution of 0.1° look very much like the real ocean (Smith et al, 2000). Let's look at a few typical and widely used models.

15.4 Primitive-Equation Models

The Bryan-Cox models evolved into many, widely used models which are providing impressive views of the global ocean circulation. The models include the influence of heat and water fluxes, eddy dynamics, and the meridional-overturning circulation. The models range in complexity from those that can run on desktop workstations to those that require the world's fastest computers. Semtner (1995) gives a good summary of resent results from computers with multiple, parallel processors.

Eddy-admitting, primitive-equation models have sufficient horizontal resolution that they produce mesoscale eddies. The resolution of these models is a few tenths of a degree of latitude and longitude, which is sufficient to resolve the largest eddies, those with diameter larger than two to three times the distance between grid points, such as those seen in Figures 11.11, 11.12, and 15.2. Vertical resolution is typically around 30 vertical levels. The models include realistic coasts and bottom features. The models are possible thanks to the development of fast, parallel processors with large memory. To obtain high vertical and horizontal resolution, the models require more than a million grid points. Typically they can simulate the global oceanic circulation for several decades.

Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory Modular Ocean Model MOM is perhaps the most widely used model growing out of the original Bryan-Cox code. It consists of a large set of modules that can be configured to run on many different computers to model many different aspects of the circulation. The source code is open and free, and it is in the public domain. The model is widely use for climate studies and and for studying the ocean's circulation over a wide range of space and time scales (Pacanowski and Griffies, 1999).

> Because MOM is used to investigate processes which cover a wide range of time and space scales, the code and manual are lengthy. However, it is far from necessary for the typical ocean modeler to become acquainted with all of its aspects. Indeed, MOM can be likened to a growing city with many different neighborhoods. Some of the neighborhoods communicate with one another, some are mutually incompatible, and others are basically independent. This diversity is quite a challenge to coordinate and suport. Indeed, over the years certain "neighborhoods" have been jettisoned or greatly renovated for various reasons.—Pacanowski and Griffies.

The model uses the momentum equations, equation of state, and the hydrostatic and Boussinesq approximations. Subgrid-scale motions are reduced by use of eddy viscosity. Version 3 of the model has a free surface, realistic bottom features, and it can be coupled to atmospheric models.

Semtner and Chervin's Global Model was perhaps the first, global, eddy-admitting model based on the Bryan-Cox models (Semtner and Chervin, 1988). It has much in common with the Modular Ocean Model (Semtner helped write the MOM code), and it provided the first high resolution view of ocean dynamics. It has a resolution of $0.5^\circ \times 0.5^\circ$ with 20 levels in the vertical. It has simple eddy viscosity, which varies with scale; and it does not allow static instability. In contrast with earlier models, it is global, excluding only the Arctic Sea, it includes the largest turbulent eddies, and it has realistic bottom features and coastlines. Originally, it had a rigid lid to eliminate fast-moving waves such as tides, so the bottom features were smoothed and it had few islands. More recent versions of the model have a free surface, eliminating the restrictions of the rigid lid.

The model was started from rest with observed vertical density distribution. Then it was was spun up for 22.5 yr with mean-annual wind stress, heat fluxes, and water fluxe. Then, it was integrated for ten more years with monthly wind stress, heat fluxes, and water fluxes. The integration was extended for an additional 12.5 years and the results were reported in Semtner and Chervin (1992). The results give a realistic picture of the global ocean circulation, its eddies, the transport of heat and mass, and the statistics of the variability.

Parallel Ocean Climate Model POCM is the latest version of the Semtner-Chervin model, being optomized to run on parallel computers. The model uses equally spaced grid points on a Mercator projection extending between $\pm 75°$ with a resolution of $0.4° \times 0.4° \cos\theta \times 20$ so the resolution varyies from $0.4°$ at the equator to $0.1°$ near the poles. The average resolution is about $0.25°$. It has a free surface, and realistic coasts, islands, and bottom features. It is forced by ECMWF wind stress and surface heat and water fluxes (Barnier et al, 1995).

The model was initialized with the fields calculated from the $0.5°$ Semtner-Chervin 1992 model which had been spun up for 33 years starting with the distribution of temperature and salinity from the Levitus atlas. The $1/2°$ fields were interpolated to $1/4°$, and the model was integrated starting from 1985 using ECMWF fluxes.

Output from the model has been compared with altimeter data from Topex/ Poseidon (Stammer et al, 1996). The comparisons indicate that numerical circulation models forced with the best known fluxes, and with resolution sufficient to resolve the larger eddies in the ocean, give realistic results.

Parallel Ocean Program Model produced by Smith and colleagues at Los Alamos National Laboratory (Maltrud et al, 1998) is a variation of the Semtner-Chervin model modified to run on a fast, parallel-processor computer, the CM-5 Connection Machine at Los Alamos. The modifications included improved numerical algorithms, realistic coasts, islands, and unsmoothed bottom features.

The model has 1280×896 equally spaced grid points on a Mercator projection extending from 77°S to 77°N, and 20 levels in the vertical. Thus it has a resolution of $0.28° \times 0.28° \cos\theta$, which varies from $0.28°$ (31.25 km) at the equator to $0.06°$ (6.5 km) at the highest latitudes. The average resolution is about $0.2°$. The model was is forced by ECMWF wind stress and surface heat and water fluxes (Barnier et al, 1995).

The model was initialized using temperature and salinity interpolated from the integration of Semtner and Chervin's (1992) $0.25°$ degree model, which was initialized from the integration of Semtner and Chervin's (1988) model. The model was then integrated for a 10-year period beginning in 1985 using various surface-forcing functions. Figure 15.1 was calculated using surface wind stress from the ECMWF averaged over 3-day periods and surface heat and fresh-water fluxes obtained by restoring the surface temperature and salinity to the monthly mean values of Levitus (1982).

Miami Isopycnal Coordinate Ocean Model MICOM All the models just described use x, y, z coordinates. Such a coordinate system has disadvantages. For example, mixing in the ocean is easy along surfaces of constant density, and difficult across such surfaces. A more natural coordinate system uses x, y, ρ, where ρ is density. A model with such coordinates is called an *isopycnal model*. Essentially, $\rho(z)$ is replaced with $z(\rho)$. Furthermore, because isopycnal surfaces are surfaces of constant density, horizontal mixing is always on constant-density surfaces in this model.

The Miami model is a prominant example of this class of models. It is a primitive-equation model driven by wind stress and heat fluxes. It has been integrated from 65°N to 69°S using 20 million grid points with horizontal spacing of $0.225° \times 0.225° \cos\theta$, where θ is latitude. The model was forced with COADS data supplemented with ECMWF data south of 30°S and with rain calculated

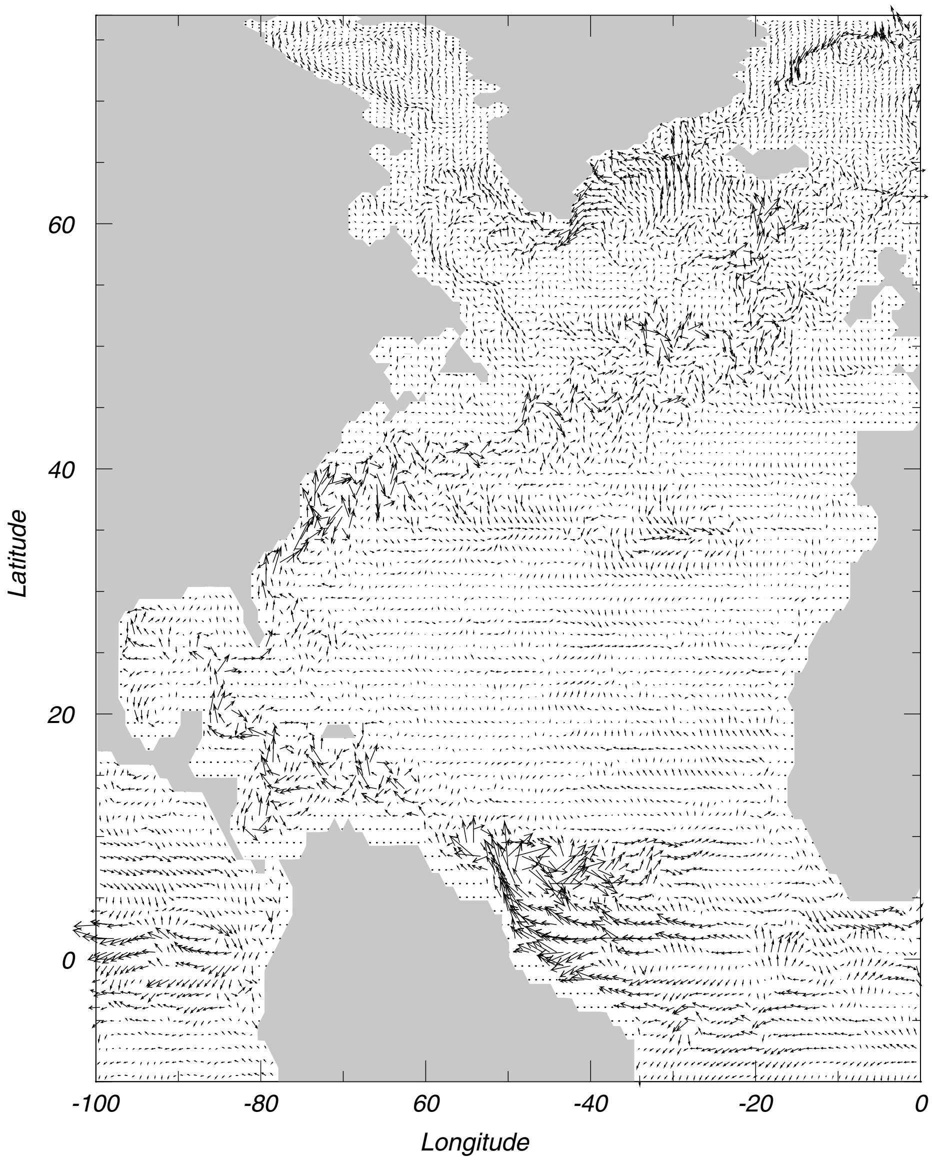


Figure 15.1 Instantaneous, near-surface geostrophic currents in the Atlantic for October 1, 1995 calculated from the Parallel Ocean Program numerical model developed at the Los Alamos National Laboratory. The length of the vector is the mean speed in the upper 50 m of the ocean; the direction is the mean direction of the current. From Richard Smith.

from the spaceborne microwave sounding unit. The model was initialized using temperature and salinity distributions from the Levitus (1994) atlas. The model produces realistic transports and currents (Figure 15.2).

Primitive-equation climate models are used for studies of large-scale hydrographic structure, climate dynamics, and water-mass formation. These mod-

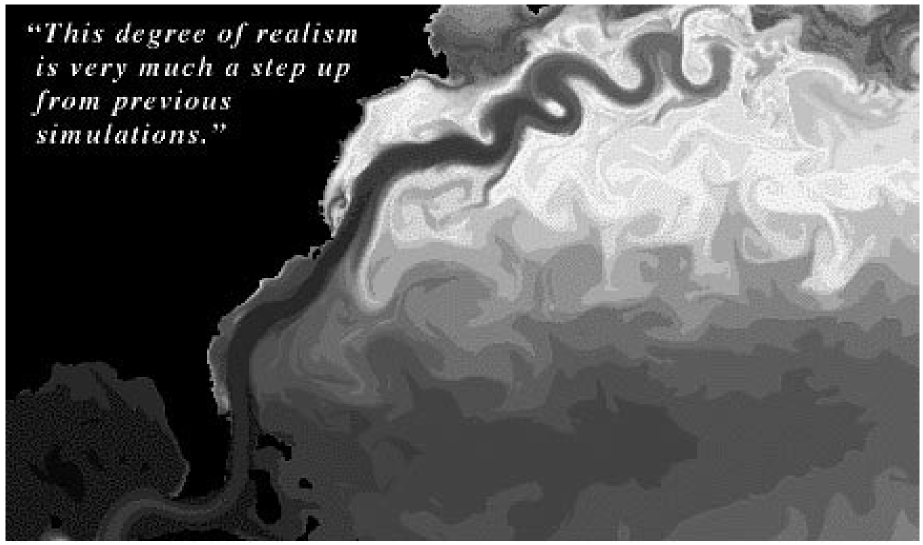


Figure 15.2 Output of Bleck's Miami Isopycnal Coordinate Ocean Model MICOM. It is a high-resolution model of the Atlantic showing the Gulf Stream, its variability, and the circulation of the North Atlantic (From Bleck).

els are the same as the eddy-admitting, primitive equation models I have just described except the horizontal resolution is much coarser. Because the models must simulate ocean flows for centuries, they must have coarse horizontal resolution and they cannot simulate msoscale eddies. Hence, they must have high dissipation for numerical stability. Typical horizontal resolutions are 2° to 4°. The models tend, however, to have high vertical resolution necessary for describing the meridional-overturning circulation important for climate. Often, the models are coupled with atmospheric and land models to simulate earth's climate.

15.5 Coastal Models

The great economic importance of the coastal zone has led to the development of many different numerical models for describing coastal currents, tides, and storm surges. The models extend from the beach to the continental slope, and they can include a free surface, realistic coasts and bottom features, river runoff, and atmospheric forcing. Because the models don't extend very far into deep water, they need additional information about deep-water currents or conditions at the shelf break.

The many different coastal models have many different goals, and many different implementations. Several of the models described above, including MOM and MICOM, have been used to model coastal processes. But many other specialized models have also been developed. Heaps (1987), Lynch et al (1996), and Haidvogel (1998) provide good overviews of the subject. Rather than look at a menu of models, let's look at two typical models.

Princeton Ocean Model developed by Blumberg and Mellor (1987) is widely used for describing coastal currents. It is a direct descendant of the Bryan-Cox model. It includes thermodynamic processes, turbulent mixing, and the Boussinesq and hydrostatic approximations. The Coriolis parameter is allowed to vary using a beta-plane approximation. Because the model must include a wide reage of depths, Blumberg and Mellor used a vertical coordinate σ scaled by the depth of the water:

$$\sigma = \frac{z - \eta}{H + \eta} \tag{15.1}$$

where $z = \eta(x, y, t)$ is the sea surface, and $z = -H(x, y)$ is the bottom.

Sub-grid turbulence is parameterized using a closure scheme proposed by Mellor and Yamada (1982) whereby eddy diffusion coefficients vary with the size of the eddies producing the mixing and the shear of the flow.

The model is driven by wind stress and heat and water fluxes from meteorological models. The model uses known geostrophic, tidal, and Ekman currents at the outer boundary.

The model has been used to calculate the three-dimensional distribution of velocity, salinity, sea level, temperature, and turbulence for up to 30 days over a region roughly 100–1000 km on a side with grid spacing of 1–50 km.

Dartmouth Gulf of Maine Model developed by Lynch et al (1996) is a 3-dimensional model of the circulation using a triangular, finite-element grid. The size of the triangles is proportional to both depth and the rate of change of depth. The triangles are small in regions where the bottom slopes are large and the depth is shallow, and they are large in deep water. The variable mesh is especially useful in coastal regions where the depth of water varies greatly. Thus the variable grid gives highest resolution where it is most needed.

The model uses roughly 13,000 triangles to cover the Gulf of Maine and nearby waters of the North Atlantic (Figures 15.3 and 15.4). Minimum size of the elements is roughly one kilometer. The model has 10 to 40 horizontal layers. The vertical spacing of the layers is not uniform. Layers are closer together near the top and bottom and they are more widely spaced in the interior. Minimum spacing is roughly one meter in the bottom boundary layer.

The model integrates the three-dimensional, primitive equations, in shallow-water form. The model has a simplified equation of state and a depth-averaged continuity equation, and it uses the hydrostatic and Boussinesq assumptions. Sub-grid mixing of momentum, heat and mass is parameterized using the Mellor and Yamada (1982) turbulence-closure scheme which gives vertical mixing coefficients that vary with stratification and velocity shear. Horizontal mixing coefficients were calculated from Smagorinski (1963). A carefully chosen, turbulent, eddy viscosity is used in the bottom boundary layer. The model is forced by wind, heating, and tidal forcing from the deep ocean.

The model is spun up from rest for a few days using a specified density field at all grid points, usually from a combination of CTD data plus historical data. This gives a velocity field consistent with the density field. The model is then forced with local winds and heat fluxes to calculate the evolution of the density and velocity fields.

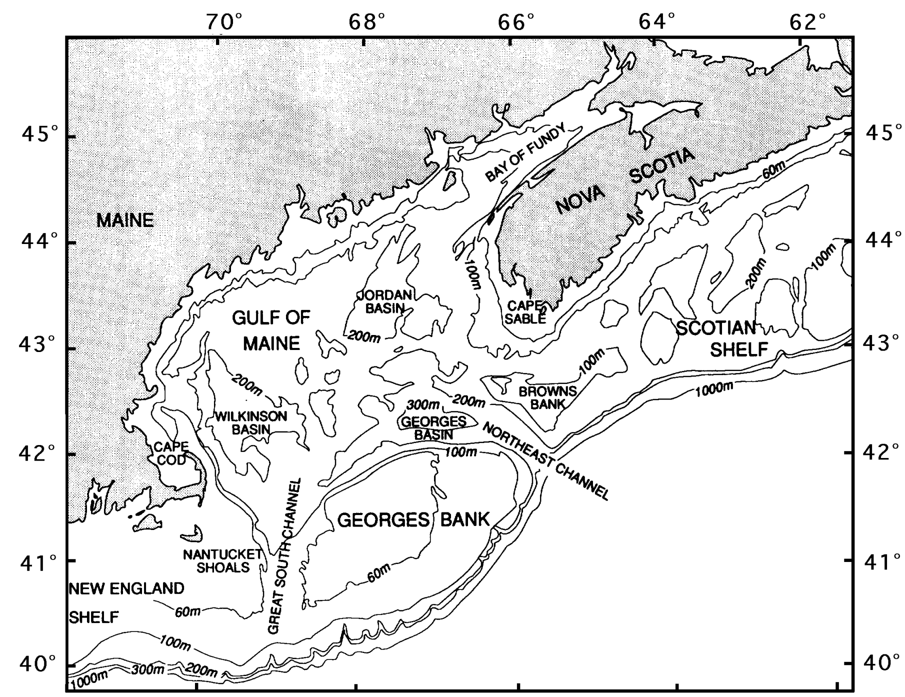


Figure 15.3 Topographic map of the Gulf of Maine showing important features of the Gulf. (From Lynch et al, 1996).

Comments on Coastal Models Roed et al. (1995) examined the accuracy of coastal models by comparing the ability of five models, including Blumberg and Mellor's to describe the flow in typical cases. They found that the models produced very different results, but that after the models were adjusted, the differences were reduced. The differences were due to differences in vertical and horizontal mixing and spatial and temporal resolution.

Hackett et al. (1995) compared the ability of two of the five models to describe observed flow on the Norwegian shelf. They conclude that

> . . . both models are able to qualitatively generate many of the observed features of the flow, but neither is able to quantitatively reproduce detailed currents . . . [Differences] are primarily attributable to inadequate parameterizations of subgrid scale turbulent mixing, to lack of horizontal resolution and to imperfect initial and boundary conditions.

Storm-Surge Models Storms coming ashore across wide, shallow, continental shelves drive large changes of sea level at the coast called storm surges (see §17.3 for a description of surges and processes influencing surges). The surges can cause great damage to coasts and coastal structures. Intense storms in the Bay of Bengal have killed hundrend of thousands in a few days in Bangladesh. Because surges are so important, government agencies in many countries have developed models to predict the changes of sea level and the extent of coastal flooding.

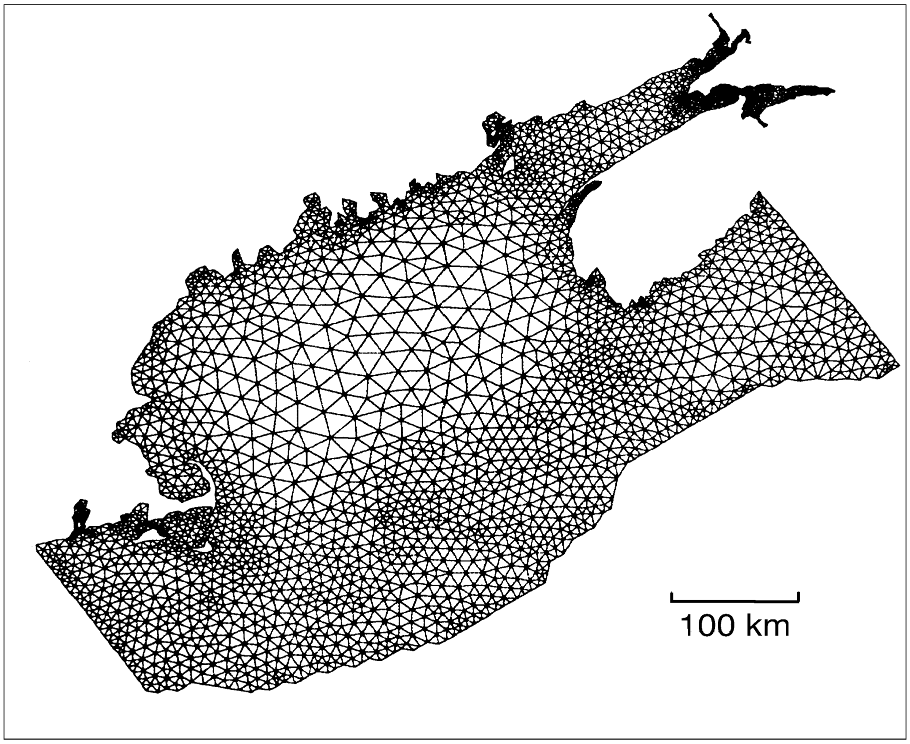


Figure 15.4 Triangular, finite-element grid used to compute flow in the Gulf of Maine shown in the previous figure. Note that the size of the triangles varies with depth and rate of change of depth. (From Lynch et al, 1996).

Calculating storm suges is not easy. Here are some reasons, in a rough order of importance.

1. The distribution of wind over the ocean is not well known. Numerical weather models calculate wind speed at a constant pressure surface, storm-surge models need wind at a constant height of 10 m. Winds in bays and lagoons tend to be weaker than winds just offshore because nearby land distorts the airflow, and this is not included in the weather models.
2. The shoreward extent of the model's domain changes with time. For example, if sea level rises, water will flood inland, and the boundary between water and sea moves inland with the water.
3. The drag coefficient of wind on water is not well known for hurricane force winds.
4. The drag coefficient of water on the seafloor is also not well known.
5. The models must include waves and tides which influence sea level in shallow waters.
6. Storm surge models must include the currents generated in a stratified, shallow sea by wind.

To reduce errors, models are tuned to give results that match conditions seen in past storms. Unfortunately, those past conditions are not well known. Changes in sea level and wind speed are rarely recorded accurately in storms except at a few, widely paced locations. Yet storm-surge heights can change by more than a meter over distances of tens of kilometers.

Despite these problems, models give very useful results. Let's look at one, commonly-used model.

Sea, Lake, and Overland Surges Model SLOSH is used by NOAA for forecasting storm surges prduced by hurricanes coming ashore along the Atlantic and Gulf coasts of the United States (Jelesnianski, Chen, and Shaffer, 1992).

The model is the result of a lifetime of work by Chester Jelesnianski. In developing the model, Jelesnianski paid careful attention to the relative importance of errors in the model. He worked to reduce the largest errors, and ignored the smaller ones. For example, the distribution of winds in a hurricane is not well known, so it makes little sense to use a spatially varying drag coefficient for the wind. Thus, Jelesnianski used a constant drag coefficient in the air, and a constant eddy stress coefficient in the water.

SLOSH calculates water level from depth-integrated, quasi-linear, shallow-water equtions. Thus it ignores stratification. It also ignores river inflow, rain, and tides. The latter may seem strange, but the model is designed for forecasting. The time of landfall cannot be foreast accurately, and hence the height of the tides is mostly unknown. Tides can be added to the calculated surge, but the nonlinear interaction of tides and surge is ignored.

The model is forced by idealized hurricane winds. It needs only atmospheric pressure at the center of the storm, the distance from the center to the area of maximum winds, the forecast storm track and speed along the track.

In preparation for hurricanes coming ashore near populated areas, the model has been adapted for 27 basins from Boston Harbor Massachusetts to Laguna Madre Texas. The model uses a fixed polar mesh. Mesh spacing begins with a fine mesh near the pole, which is located near the coastal city for which the model is adapted. The grid stretches continuously to a coarse mesh at distant boundaries of a large basin. Such a mesh gives high resolution in bays and near the coast where resolution is most needed. Using measured depths at sea and elevations on land, the model allows flooding of land, overtopping of levees and dunes, and sub-grid flow through channels between offshore islands.

Sea level calculated from the model has been compared with heights measured by tide gauges for 13 storms, including Betsy (1965), Camile (1969), Donna (1960), and Carla (1961). The overall accuracy is $\pm 20\%$.

15.6 Assimilation Models

None of the models we have described so far have output, such as current velocity or surface topography, constrained by oceanic observations. Thus we may ask: Can we model currents more accurately if we include observations of the variables we are trying to calculate? For example, can we use satellite altimetric measurements of the sea-surface topography and WOCE measurments of currents and internal density in the ocean to make a better model of the present ocean currents? Models which accept data that they are also trying to calculate are called *assimilation models*.

Here is a simple example. Suppose we are running a primitive-equation, eddy admitting numerical model to calculate the position of the Gulf Stream. Let's assume that the model is driven with real-time surface winds from the ECMWF weather model. Using the model, we can calculate the position of the current and also the sea-surface topography associated with the current. We find that the position of the Gulf Stream wiggles offshore of Cape Hattaras due to instabilities, and the position calculated by the model is just one of many possible positions for the same wind forcing. Which position is correct, that is, what is the position of the current today? We know, from satellite altimetry, the position of the current at a few points a few days ago. Can we use this information to calculate the current's position today? How do we assimilate this information into the model?

Many different approaches are being explored (Malanotte-Rizzoli, 1996). Roger Daley (1991) gives a complete description of how data are used with atmospheric models. Andrew Bennet (1992) and Carl Wunsch (1996) describe oceanic applications.

Assimilation of data into models is not easy.

1. Data assimilation is an *inverse problem*: A finite number of observations are used to estimate a continuous field—a function, which has an infinite number of points. The calculated fields, the solution to the inverse problem, are completely under-determined. There are many fields that fit the observations and the model precisely; and the solutions are not unique. In our example, the position of the Gulf Stream is a function. We may not need an infinite number of values to specify the position of the stream if we assume the position is somewhat smooth in space. But we certainly need hundreds of values along the stream's axis. Yet, we have only a few satellite points to constrain the position of the Stream.

   To learn more about inverse problems and their solution, read Parker (1994) who gives a very good introduction based on geophysical examples.

2. Ocean dynamics are non-linear, while most methods for calculating solutions to inverse problems depend on linear approximations. For example the position of the Gulf Stream is a very nonlinear function of the forcing by wind and heat fluxes over the North Atlantic.

3. Both the model and the data are incomplete and both have errors. We have few altimeter data points, and altimeter measurements of topography have errors, although the errors are small.

4. Most data available for assimilation into data comes from the surface, such as AVHRR and altimeter data. Surface data obviously constrain the surface geostrophic velocity, and surface velocity is related to deeper velocities. The trick is to couple the surface observations to deeper currents.

While various techniques are used to constrain numerical models in oceanography, perhaps the most practical are techniques borrowed from meteorology.

> Most major ocean currents have dynamics which are significantly nonlinear. This precludes the ready development of inverse methods . . . Accordingly, most attempts to combine ocean models and measurements have followed the practice in operational meteorology: measurements are used to prepare initial conditions for the model, which is then integrated forward in time until further measurements are available. The model is thereupon re-initialized. Such a strategy may be described as sequential.—Bennet (1992).

Let's see how Professor Allan Robinson and colleagues at Harvard University used sequential estimation techniques to forecast the position of the Gulf Stream.

The Harvard Open-Ocean Model is an eddy-admitting, quasi-geostropic model of the Gulf Stream downstraem of Cape Hatteras (Robinson et al. 1989). It has six levels in the vertical, 15 km resolution, and one-hour time steps. It uses a simple filter to smooth high-frequency variability and to damp grid-scale variability.

By *quasi-geostrophic* we mean that the flow field is close to geostrophic balance. The equations of motion include the acceleration terms D/Dt, where D/Dt is the substantial derivative and t is time. The flow can be stratified, but there is no change in density due to heat fluxes or vertical mixing. Thus the quasi-geostrophic equations are simpler than the primitive equations, and they can be integrated much faster. Cushman-Roisin (1994: 204) gives a good description of the development of quasi-geostrophic equations of motion.

The model reproduces the important features of the Gulf Stream and it's extension, including meanders, cold- and warm-core rings, the interaction of rings with the stream, and baroclinic instability. Because the model was designed to forecast the dynamics of the Gulf Stream, it must be constrained by oceanic measurements:

1. Data provide the initial conditions for the model. Satellite measurements of sea-surface temperature from the AVHRR and topography from an altimeter are used to determine the location of features in the region. Expendable bathythermograph AXBT measurements of subsurface temperature, and historical measurements of internal density are also used. The features are represented by simple analytic functions in the model.
2. The data are introduced into the numerical model, which interpolates and smoothes the data to produce the best estimate of the initial fields of density and velocity. The resulting fields are called *nowcasts.*
3. The model is integrated forward for one week, when new data are available, to produce a forecast.
4. Finally, the new data are introduced into the model as in the first step above, and the processes is repeated.

The model has been used for making successful, one-week forecasts of the Gulf Stream and region (Figure 15.4). Similar models have been developed to study the Azores current.

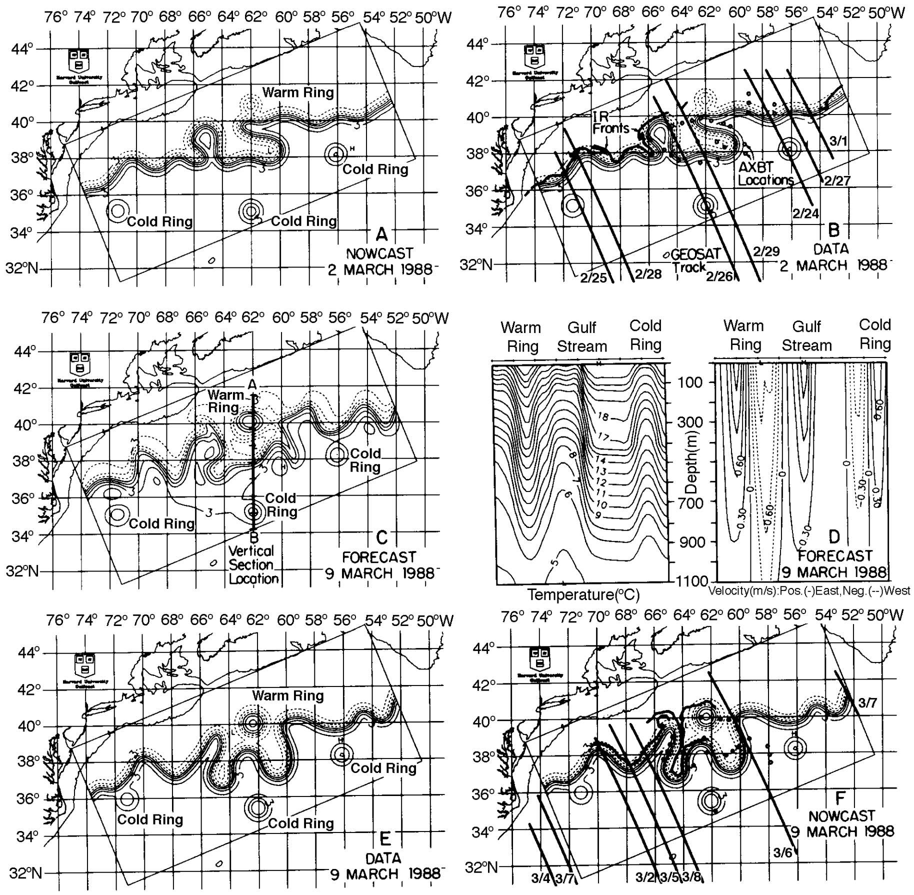


Figure 15.5 Output from the Harvard Open-Ocean Model: (Top) Data used for initializing the model on 2 March 1988 and the initial state of the model, the nowcast. (Center) The forecast for 9 March 1988. (Lower) The data used for determining currents on 9 March 1988 and the state of the ocean on that date calculated by the model using the new data. Although the Gulf Stream changed substantially in one week, the model forecasts the changes well. (From Robinson et al. 1989)

15.7 Coupled Ocean and Atmosphere Models

Coupled numerical models of the atmosphere and the ocean are used to study the climate system, its natural variability, and its response to external forcing. The most important use of the models has been to study how Earth's climate might respond to a doubling of CO_2 in the atmosphere. Much of the literature on climate change is based on studies using such models. Other important uses of coupled models include studies of El Niño and the meridional overturning circulation. The former varies over periods of a few years, the latter varies over a period of a few centuries.

Development of the work tends to be coordinated through the World Climate Research Program of the World Meteorological Organization WCRP/WMO, and recent progress is summarized in Chapter 5 of the *Climate Change 1995* report by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Gates, et al, 1996).

Comments on Accuracy of Coupled Models Models of the coupled, land-air-ice-ocean climate system must simulate hundreds to thousands of years. Yet,

> It will be very hard to establish an integration framework, particularly on a global scale, as present capabilities for modelling the Earth system are rather limited. A dual approach is planned. On the one hand, the relatively conventional approach of improving coupled atmosphere-ocean-land-ice modles will be pursued. Ingenuity aside, the computational demands are extreme, as is borne out by the Earth System Simulator — 640 linked supercomputers providing 40 teraflops [10^{12} floating-point operations per second] and a cooling system from hell under one roof — to be built in Japan by 2003.— Newton, 1999.

Because models must be simplified to run on existing computers, the simplification introduces important errors. First, the models must be simplier than models that simulate flow for a few years (WCRP, 1995).

Second, the coupled model must be integrated for many years for the ocean and atmosphere to approach equilibrium. This causes a new type of error. The coupled system tends to drift away from reality due to errors in calculating fluxes of heat and momentum between the ocean and atmosphere. For example, very small errors in precipitation over the Antarctic Circumpolar Current leads to small changes the salinity of the current, which leads to large changes in deep convection in the Weddel Sea, which influences the meridional overturning circulation.

Some modelers allow the system to drift, others adjust sea-surface temperature and the calculated fluxes between the ocean and atmosphere. Returning to the example, the flux of fresh water in the circumpolar current could be adjusted to keep salinity close to the observed value in the current. There is no good scientific basis for the adjustments except the desire to produce a "good" coupled model. Hence, the adjustments are ad hoc and controversial. Such adjustments are called *flux adjustments* or *flux corrections*.

Fortunately, as models have improved, the need for adjustment or the magnitude of the adjustment has been reduced. For example, using the Gent-McWilliams scheme for mixing along constant-density surfaces in a coupled ocean-atmosphere model greatly reduced climate drift in a coupled ocean-atmosphere model because the mixing scheme reduced deep convection in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current and elsewhere (Hirst, O'Farrell, and Gordon, 2000).

Grassl (2000) lists four capabilities of a credible coupled general circulation model:

1. "Adequate representation of the present climate.
2. "Reproduction (within typical interannual and decadal time-scale climate variability) of the changes since the start of the instrumental record for a given history of external forcing;

3. "Reproduction of a different climate ephisode in the past as derived from paleo climate records for given estimates of the history of external forcing; and
4. "Successful simulation of the gross features of an abrupt climate change event from the past."

Gates et al (1996) compared the output from sixteen coupled models, including models with and without flux adjustments. They found substantial differences among the models. For exmple, only three models calculated a meridional overturning circulation within the observed range of 13–18 Sv. Some had values as low as 2 Sv, others had values as large as 26 Sv. Furthermore, the observed root-mean-square difference (standard deviation) of the difference between the observed and calculated heat fluxes was 17–30 W/m^2 depending on season and hemisphere.

Grassl (2000) found four years later that many models, including models with and without flux adjustment, meet the first criterion. Some models meet the second criterion, but external solar forcing is still not well known and more work is needed. And a few models are starting to reproduce some aspects of the warm event of 6,000 years ago.

> But how useful are these models in making projections of future climate? Opinion is polarized. At one extreme are those who take the model results as gospel; at the other are those who denigrate results simply because they distrust models, or on the grounds that the model preformance is obviously wrong in some respects or that a process is not adequately included. The truth lies in between. All models are of course wrong because, by design, they depict a simplified view of the system being modelled. Nevertheless, many—but not all—models are very useful.—Trenberth, 1997.

Coupled models Many coupled ocean and atmosphere models have been developed. Some include only physical processes in the ocean, atmosphere, and the ice-covered polar seas. Others add the influence of land and biological activity in the ocean. Let's look at the oceanic components of a few models.

Climate System Model The Climate System Model developed by the National Center for Atmospheric Research NCAR includes physical and biogeochemical influence on the climate system (Boville and Gent, 1998). It has atmosphere, ocean, land-surface, and sea-ice components coupled by fluxes between components. The atmospheric component is the NCAR Community Climate Model, the oceanic component is a modified version of the Princeton Modular Ocean Model, using the Gent and McWilliams (1990) scheme for parameterizing mesoscale eddies. Resolution is approximately 2° × 2° with 45 vertical levels in the ocean.

The model has been spun up and integrated for 300 years, the results are realistic, and there is no need for a flux adjustment. (See the special issue of *Journal of Climate*, June 1998).

Princeton Coupled Model The model consists of an atmospheric model with a horizonatal resolution of 7.5° longitude by 4.5° latitude and 9 levels in the vertical, an ocean model with a horizontal resolution of 4° and 12 levels in the vertical, and a land-surface model. The ocean and atmosphere are coupled through heat, water, and momentum fluxes; land and ocean are coupled through river runoff; and land and atmosphere are coupled through water and heat fluxes.

Hadley Center Model This is an atmosphere-ocean-ice model that minimizes the need for flux adjustments (Johns et al, 1997). The ocean component is based on the Bryan-Cox primitive equation model, with realistic bottom features, vertical mixing coefficients from Pacanowski and Philander (1981). Both the ocean and the atmospheric component have a horizontal resolution of 96 × 73 grid points, the ocean has 20 levels in the vertical.

In contrast to most coupled models, this one is spun up as a coupled system with flux adjustments during spin up to keep sea surface temperature and salinity close to observed mean values. The coupled model was integrated from rest using Levitus values for temperature and salinity for September. The initial integration was from 1850 to 1940. The model was then integrated for another 1000 years. No flux adjustment was necessary after the initial 140-year integration because drift of global-averaged air temperature was ≤ 0.016 K/century.

15.8 Important Concepts

1. Numerical models are used to simulate oceanic flows with realistic and useful results. The most recent models include heat fluxes through the surface, wind forcing, mesoscale eddies, realistic coasts and sea-floor features, and more than 20 levels in the vertical.
2. Numerical models are not perfect. They solve discrete equations, which are not the same as the equations of motion described in earlier chapters. And,
3. Numerical models cannot reproduce all turbulence of the coean because the grid points are tens to hundreds of kilometers apart. The influence of turbulent motion over smaller distances must be calculated from theory; and this introduces errors.
4. Numerical models can be forced by real-time oceanographic data from ships and satellites to produce forecasts of oceanic conditions, including El Niño in the Pacific, and the position of the Gulf Stream in the Atlantic.
5. Coupled ocean-atmosphere models have much coarser spatial resolution so that that they can be integrated for hundreds of years to simulate the natural variability of the climate system and its response to increased CO_2 in the atmosphere.

Chapter 16

Ocean Waves

Looking out to sea from the shore, we can see waves on the sea surface. Looking carefully, we notice the waves are undulations of the sea surface with a height of around a meter, where height is the vertical distance between the bottom of a trough and the top of a nearby crest. The wavelength, which we might take to be the distance between prominent crests, is around 50-100 meters. Watching the waves for a few minutes, we notice that wave height and wave length are not constant. The heights vary randomly in time and space, and the statistical properties of the waves, such as the mean height averaged for a few hundred waves, change from day to day. These prominent offshore waves are generated by wind. Sometimes the local wind generates the waves, other times distant storms generate waves which ultimately reach the coast. For example, waves breaking on the Southern California coast on a summer day may come from vast storms offshore of Antarctica 10,000 km away.

If we watch closely for a long time, we notice that sea level changes from hour to hour. Over a period of a day, sea level increases and decreases relative to a point on the shore by about a meter. The slow rise and fall of sea level is due to the tides, another type of wave on the sea surface. Tides have wavelengths of thousands of kilometers, and they are generated by the slow, very small changes in gravity due to the motion of the sun and the moon relative to Earth.

In this chapter you will learn how to describe ocean-surface waves quantitatively. In the next chapter we will describe tides and waves along coasts.

16.1 Linear Theory of Ocean Surface Waves

Surface waves are inherently nonlinear: The solution of the equations of motion depends on the surface boundary conditions, but the surface boundary conditions are the waves we wish to calculate. How can we proceed?

We begin by assuming that the amplitude of waves on the water surface is infinitely small so the surface is almost exactly a plane. To simplify the mathematics, we can also assume that the flow is 2-dimensional with waves traveling in the x-direction. We also assume that the Coriolis force and viscosity can be neglected. If we retain rotation, we get Kelvin waves discussed in §14.2.

With these assumptions, the sea-surface elevation ζ is:

$$\zeta = a \sin(k\,x - \omega\,t) \tag{16.1}$$

with

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T}; \qquad k = \frac{2\pi}{L} \tag{16.2}$$

where ω is wave frequency in radians per second, f is the wave frequency in Hertz (Hz), k is wave number, T is wave period, L is wave length, and where we assume, as stated above, that $a \ll 1$.

The *wave period* T is the time it takes two successive wave crests or troughs to pass a fixwed point. The *wave length* L is the distance between two successive wave crests or troughs at a fixed time.

Dispersion Relation Wave frequency ω is related to wave number k by the *dispersion relation*:

$$\omega^2 = g\,k \tanh(kd) \tag{16.3}$$

where d is the water depth anf g is the acceleration of gravity.

Two approximations are especially useful.

1. *Deep-water approximation* is valid if the water depth d is much greater than the wave length L. In this case, $d \gg L$, $kd \gg 1$, and $\tanh(kd) = 1$.

2. *Shallow-water approximation* is valid if the water depth is much less than a wavelength. In this case, $d \ll L$, $kd \ll 1$, and $\tanh(kd) = kd$.

For these two limits of water depth compared with wavelength the dispersion relation reduces to:

$$\text{Deep-water dispersion relation:} \qquad \begin{array}{c} \omega^2 = g\,k \\ d > L/4 \end{array} \tag{16.4}$$

$$\text{Shallow-water dispersion relation:} \qquad \begin{array}{c} \omega^2 = g\,k^2\,d \\ d < L/11 \end{array} \tag{16.5}$$

The stated limits for d/L give a dispersion relation accurate within 10%. Because many wave properties can be measured with accuracies of 5–10%, the approximations are useful for calculating local wave properties. Later we will see how to calculate wave properties as the waves propagate from deep to shallow water.

Phase Velocity The phase velocity c is the speed at which a particular phase of the wave propagates, for example, the speed of propagation of the wave crest. In one wave period T the crest advances one wave length L and the phase speed is $c = L/T = \omega/k$. Thus, the definition of phase speed is:

$$c \equiv \frac{\omega}{k} \tag{16.6}$$

The direction of propagation is perpendicular to the wave crest in the positive x direction. The deep- and shallow-water approximations for the dispersion relation give:

$$\text{Deep-water phase velocity:} \qquad c = \sqrt{\frac{g}{k}} = \frac{g}{\omega} \tag{16.7}$$

$$\text{Shallow-water phase velocity:} \qquad c = \sqrt{g\,d} \tag{16.8}$$

The approximations are accurate to about 5% for limits stated in (16.5, 16.5).

In deep water, the phase speed depends on wave length or wave frequency. Longer waves travel faster. Thus, deep-water waves are said to be dispersive. In shallow water, the phase speed is independent of the wave; it depends only on the depth of the water. Shallow-water waves are non-dispersive.

Group Velocity The concept of group velocity c_g is fundamental for understanding the propagation of linear and nonlinear waves. First, it is the velocity at which a group of waves travels across the ocean. More importantly, it is also the propagation velocity of wave energy. Whitham (1974, §1.3 and §11.6) gives a clear derivation of the concept and the fundamental equation (16.9).

The definition of group velocity in two dimensions is:

$$c_g \equiv \frac{\partial \omega}{\partial k} \tag{16.9}$$

Using the approximations for the dispersion relation:

$$\text{Deep-water group velocity:} \qquad c_g = \frac{g}{2\omega} = \frac{c}{2} \tag{16.10}$$

$$\text{Shallow-water group velocity:} \qquad c_g = \sqrt{g\,d} = c \tag{16.11}$$

For ocean-surface waves, the direction of propagation is perpendicular to the wave crests in the positive x direction. In the more general case of other types of waves, the group velocity is not necessarily in the direction perpendicular to wave crests.

Notice that a group of deep-water waves moves at half the phase speed of the waves making up the group. How can this happen? If we could watch closely a group of waves crossing the sea, we would see waves crests appear at the back of the wave train, move through the train, and disappear at the leading edge of the group. Each wave crest moves at twice the speed of the group.

Do real ocean waves move in groups governed by the dispersion relation? Yes. Walter Munk and colleagues (1963) in a remarkable series of experiments in the 1960s showed that ocean waves propagating over great distances are dispersive, and that the dispersion could be used to track storms. They recorded waves for many days using an array of three pressure gauges just offshore of San Clemente Island, 60 miles due west of San Diego, California. Wave spectra were

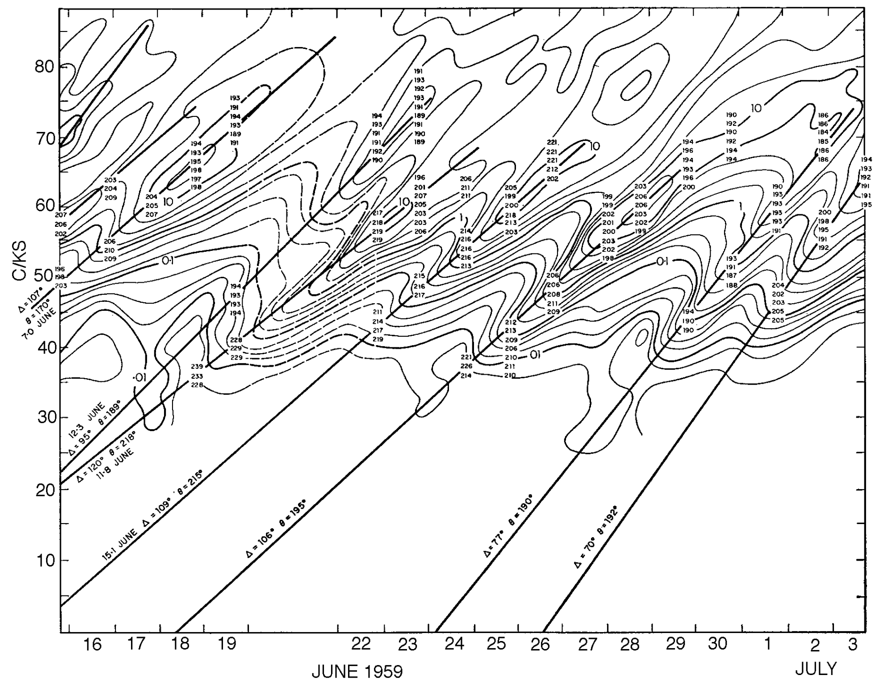


Figure 16.1 Contours of wave energy on a frequency-time plot calculated from spectra of waves measured by pressure gauges offshore of southern California. The ridges of high wave energy show the arrival of dispersed wave trains from distant storms. The slope of the ridge is proportional to distance to the storm. 1 C/KS is 1 cyle per kilosecond = 0.001 Hz; Δ is distance in degrees, θ is direction of arrival of waves at California (from Munk et al. 1963).

calculated for each day's data. (The concept of a spectra is discussed further below.) From the spectra, the amplitudes and frequencies of the low-frequency waves and the propagation direction of the waves were calculated. Finally, they plotted contours of wave energy on a frequency-time diagram (Figure 16.1).

To understand the figure, consider a distant storm that produces waves of many frequencies. The lowest-frequency waves (smallest ω) travel the fastest (16.11), and they arrive before other, higher-frequency waves. The further away the storm, the longer the delay between arrivals of waves of different frequencies. The ridges of high wave energy seen in the figure are produced by individual storms. The slope of the ridge gives the distance to the storm in degrees Δ along a great circle; and the phase information from the array gives the angle to the storm θ. The two angles give the storm's location relative to San Clemente.

The locations of th storms producing the waves in Figure 16.1 were compared with the location of storms plotted on weather maps and in most cases the two agreed well. Thus the ridge labeled 15-1 June was from a storm at a distance $\Delta = 109°$, which corresponded to a storm shown on weather maps at a distance of $\Delta = 111°$, putting the storm south of New Zealand at 55°S and 168°W.

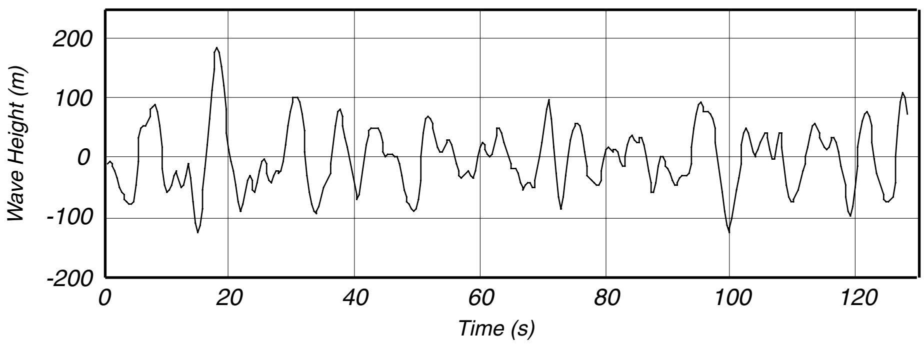


Figure 16.2 A short record of wave height measured by a wave buoy in the North Atlantic.

Wave Energy Wave energy E in Joules per square meter is related to the variance of sea-surface displacement ζ by:

$$E = \rho_w g \left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle \tag{16.12}$$

where ρ_w is water density, g is gravity, and the brackets denote a time or space average.

Significant Wave Height What do we mean by wave height? If we look at a wind-driven sea, we see waves of various heights. Some are much larger than most, others are much smaller (Figure 16.2). A practical definition that is often used is the height of the highest 1/3 of the waves, $H_{1/3}$. The height is computed as follows: measure wave height for a few minutes, pick out say 120 wave crests and record their heights. Pick the 40 largest waves and calculate the average height of the 40 values. This is $H_{1/3}$ for the wave record.

The concept of significant wave height was developed during the World War II as part of a project to forecast ocean wave heights and periods. Wiegel (1964: p. 198) reports that work at the Scripps Institution of Oceanography showed

> ... wave height estimated by observers corresponds to the average of the highest 20 to 40 per cent of waves ... Originally, the term significant wave height was attached to the average of these observations, the highest 30 per cent of the waves, but has evolved to become the average of the highest one-third of the waves, (designated H_S or $H_{1/3}$)

More recently, significant wave height is calculated from measured wave displacement. If the sea contains a narrow range of wave frequencies, $H_{1/3}$ is related to the standard deviation of sea-surface displacement (NAS , 1963: 22; Hoffman and Karst, 1975)

$$H_{1/3} = 4 \left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle^{1/2} \tag{16.13}$$

where $\left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle^{1/2}$ is the standard deviation of surface displacement. This relationship is much more useful, and it is now the accepted way to calculate wave height from wave measurements.

16.2 Nonlinear waves

We derived the properties of an ocean surface wave assuming the wave amplitude was very small. In reality, the amplitude is not small, but the product ka is small, and wave properties can be expanded in a power series of ka (Stokes, 1847). He calculated the properties of a wave of finite amplitude and found:

$$\zeta = a\cos(kx - \omega t) + \frac{1}{2}ka^2 \cos 2(kx - \omega t) + \frac{3}{8}k^2 a^3 \cos 3(kx - \omega t) + \cdots \tag{16.14}$$

The phases of the components for the Fourier series expnasion of ζ in (16.14) are such that non-linear waves have sharpened crests and flattened troughs. The maximum amplitude of the Stokes wave is $a_{max} = 0.07L$. Such steep waves in deep water are called Stokes waves (See also Lamb, 1945, §250).

Knowledge of non-linear waves came slowly until Hasselmann (1961, 1963a, 1963b, 1966), using the tools of high-energy particle physics, worked out to 6th order the interactions of three or more waves on the sea surface. He, Phillips (1960), and Longuet-Higgins and Phillips (1962) showed that n free waves on the sea suface can interact to produce another free wave only if the frequencies and wave numbers of the interacting waves sum to zero:

$$\omega_1 \pm \omega_2 \pm \omega_3 \pm \cdots \omega_n = 0 \tag{16.15a}$$
$$\mathbf{k_1} \pm \mathbf{k_2} \pm \mathbf{k_3} \pm \cdots \mathbf{k_n} = 0 \tag{16.15b}$$
$$\omega_i^2 = g\, k_i \tag{16.15c}$$

where we allow waves to travel in any direction, and $\mathbf{k_i}$ is the vector wave number giving wave length and direction. (16.15a,b) are general requirements for any interacting waves. The fewest number of waves that meet the conditions of (16.15) are three waves which interact to produce a fourth. The interaction is weak; waves must interact for hundreds of wave lengths and periods to produce a fourth wave with amplitude comparable to the incoming waves. The Stokes wave does not meet the criteria of (16.15) and the wave components are not free waves; the higher harmonics are bound to the primary wave.

Wave Momentum The concept of waves momentum has caused considerable confusion (McIntyre, 1981). In general, waves do not have momentum, a mass flux, but they do have a momentum flux. This is true for waves on the sea surface. Ursell (1950) showed that ocean swell on a rotating Earth has no mass transport. His proof seems to contradict the usual textbook discussions of steep, non-linear waves such as Stokes waves. Water particles driven by a Stokes wave move along paths that are nearly circular, but the paths fail to close, and the particles move slowly in the direction of wave propagation. This is a mass transport; and the phenomena is called Stokes drift. On a rotating Earth, the transport is influenced by rotation, and it becomes an inertial current.

Hasselmann (1970) looked closer at the problem and showed how non-linear waves, currents, and inertial oscillations can interact on a rotating Earth. Even over short distances where rotation is not important, packets of steep waves do not have momentum. They do have a forward transport near the surface, and this is balanced by an equal transport in the opposite direction at depth.

Solitary Waves Solitary waves are another class of non-linear waves, and they have very ineresting properties. They propagate without change of shape, and two solitons can cross without interaction. The first soliton was discovered by John Scott Russell (1808–1882), who followed a solitary wave generated by a boat in Edinburgh's Union Canal in 1834.

> Scott witnessed such a wave while watching a boat being drawn along the Union Canal by a pair of horses. When the boat stopped, he noticed that water around the vessel surged ahead in the form of a single wave, whose height and speed remained virtually unchanged. Russell pursued the wave on horseback for more than a mile before returning home to reconstruct the event in an experimental tank in his garden.—Nature 376, 3 August 1995, p. 373.

The properties of a solitary waves result from an exact balance between dispersion which tends to spread the solitary wave into a train of waves, and non-linear effects which tend to shorten and steepen the wave. The type of solitary wave in shallow water seen by Russell, has the form:

$$\zeta = a\ \mathrm{sech}^2\left[\left(\frac{3a}{4d^3}\right)^{1/2}(x - ct)\right] \tag{16.16}$$

which propagates at a speed:

$$c = c_0\left(1 + \frac{a}{2d}\right) \tag{16.17}$$

You might think that all shallow-water waves are solitons because they are non-dispersive, and hence they ought to propagate without change in shape. Unfortunately, this is not true if the waves have finite amplitude. The velocity of the wave depends on depth. If the wave consists of a single hump, then the water at the crest travels faster than water in the trough, and the wave steepens as it moves foreward. Eventually, the wave becomes very steep and breaks. At this point it is called a bore. In some river mouths, the incoming tide is so high and the estuary so long and shallow that the tidal wave entering the estuary eventually steepens and breaks producing a bore that runs up the river. This happens in the Amazon in South America, the Severn in Europe, and the Tsientang in China (Pugh, 1987: 249).

16.3 Waves and the Concept of a Wave Spectrum

If we look out to sea, we notice that waves on the sea surface are not simple sinusoids. The surface appears to be composed of random waves of various lengths and periods. How can we describe this surface? The simple answer is, Not very easily. We can however, with some simplifications, come close to describing the surface. The simplifications lead to the concept of the spectrum of ocean waves. The spectrum gives the distribution of wave energy among different wave frequencies of wave lengths on the sea surface.

The concept of a spectrum is based on work by Joseph Fourier (1768–1830), who showed that almost any function $\zeta(t)$ (or $\zeta(x)$ if you like), can be represented over the interval $-T/2 \leq t \leq T/2$ as the sum of an infinite series of sine and cosine functions with harmonic wave frequencies:

$$\zeta(t) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos 2\pi n f t + b_n \sin 2\pi n f t) \tag{16.18}$$

where

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \zeta(t) \cos 2\pi n f t \, dt, \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \tag{16.19a}$$

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \zeta(t) \sin 2\pi n f t \, dt, \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \tag{16.19b}$$

$f = 2\pi/T$ is the fundamental frequency, and nf are harmonics of the fundamental frequency. This form of $\zeta(t)$ is called a *Fourier series* (Bracewell, 1986: 204; Whittaker and Watson, 1963: §9.1). Notice that a_0 is the mean value of $\zeta(t)$ over the interval.

Equations (16.18 and 16.19) can be simplified using

$$\exp(2\pi n f t) = \cos(2\pi n f t) + i \sin(2\pi n f t) \tag{16.20}$$

where $i = \sqrt{-1}$. Equations (16.18 and 16.19) then become:

$$\zeta(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} Z_n \exp^{i 2\pi n f t} \tag{16.21}$$

where

$$Z_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \zeta(t) \exp^{-i 2\pi n f t} \, dt, \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots) \tag{16.22}$$

Z_n is called the *Fourier transform* of $\zeta(t)$.

The spectrum $S(f)$ of $\zeta(t)$ is:

$$S(nf) = Z_n Z_n^* \tag{16.23}$$

where Z^* is the complex conjugate of Z. We will use these forms for the Fourier series and spectra when we describing the computation of ocean wave spectra.

We can expand the idea of a Fourier series to include series that represent surfaces $\zeta(x, y)$ using similar techniques. Thus, any surface can be represented as an infinite series of sine and cosine functions oriented in all possible directions.

Now, let's apply these ideas to the sea surface. Suppose for a moment that the sea surface were frozen in time. Using the Fourier expansion, the frozen surface can be represented as an infinite series of sine and cosine functions of different wave numbers oriented in all possible directions. If we unfreeze the surface and let it evolve in time, we can represent the sea surface as an infinite series of sine and cosine functions of different wave lengths moving in all directions. Because wave lengths and wave frequencies are related through the dispersion relation, we can also represent the sea surface as an infinite sum of sine and cosine functions of different frequencies moving in all directions.

Note in our discussion of Fourier series that we assume the coefficients (a_n, b_n, Z_n) are constant. For times of perhaps an hour, and distances of perhaps tens of kilometers, the waves on the sea surface are sufficiently fixed that the assumption is true. Furthermore, non-linear interactions among waves are very weak. Therefore, we can represent a local sea surface by a linear superposition of real, sine waves having many different wave lengths or frequencies and different phases traveling in many different directions. The Fourier series in not just a convenient mathematical expression, it states that the sea surface is really, truely composed of sine waves, each one propagating according to the equations we wrote down in §16.1.

The concept of the sea surface being composed of independent waves can be carried further. Suppose I throw a rock into a calm ocean, and it makes a big splash. According to Fourier, the splash can be represented as a superposition of cosine waves all of nearly zero phase so the waves add up to a big splash at the origin. Furthermore, each individual Fourier wave then begins to travel away from the splash. The longest waves travel fastest, and eventually, far from the splash, the sea consists of a dispersed train of waves with the longest waves furtherest from the splash and the shortest waves closest.

Sampling the Sea Surface Calculating the Fourier series that represents the sea surface is perhaps impossible. It requires that we measure the height of the sea surface $\zeta(x, y, t)$ everywhere in an area perhaps ten kilometers on a side for perhaps an hour. So, let's simplify. Suppose we install a wave staff somewhere in the ocean and record the height of the sea surface as a function of time $\zeta(t)$. We would obtain a record like that in Figure 16.2. All waves on the sea surface will be measured, but we will know nothing about the direction of the waves. This is a much more practical measurement, and it will give the frequency spectrum of the waves on the sea surface.

Working with a trace of wave height on say a piece of paper is difficult, so let's digitize the output of the wave staff to obtain

$$\zeta_j \equiv \zeta(t_j), \qquad t_j \equiv j\Delta \tag{16.24}$$
$$j = 0, 1, 2, \cdots, N-1$$

where Δ is the time interval between the samples, and N is the total number of samples. The length T of the record is $T = N\,\Delta$. Figure 16.3 shows the first 20 seconds of wave height from Figure 16.2 digitized at intervals of $\Delta = 0.32$ s.

Notice that ζ_j is not the same as $\zeta(t)$. We have absolutely no information about the height of the sea surface between samples. Thus we have converted from an infinite set of numbers which describes $\zeta(t)$ to a finite set of numbers which describe ζ_j. By converting from a continuous function to a digitized function, we have given up an infinite amount of information about the surface.

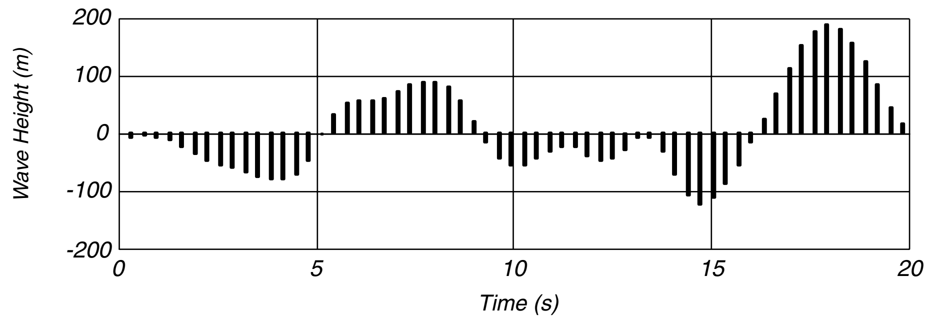


Figure 16.3 The first 20 seconds of digitized data from Figure 16.2.

The sampling interval Δ defines a *Nyquist critical frequency* (Press et al, 1992: 494)

$$Ny \equiv 1/(2\Delta) \tag{16.25}$$

> The Nyquist critical frequency is important for two related, but distinct, reasons. One is good news, the other is bad news. First the good news. It is the remarkable fact known as the *sampling theorem*: If a continuous function $\zeta(t)$, sampled at an interval Δ, happens to be *bandwidth limited* to frequencies smaller in magnitude than Ny, i.e., if $S(nf) = 0$ for all $|nf| \geq Ny$, then the function $\zeta(t)$ is *completely determined* by its samples ζ_j ... This is a remarkable theorem for many reasons, among them that it shows that the "information content" of a bandwidth limited function is, in some sense, infinitely smaller than that of a general continuous function ...
>
> Now the bad news. The bad news concerns the effect of sampling a continuous function that is *not* bandwidth limited to less than the Nyquist critical frequency. In that case, it turns out that all of the power spectral density that lies outside the frequency range $-Ny \leq nf \leq Ny$ is spuriously moved into that range. This phenomenon is called *aliasing*. Any frequency component outside of the range $(-Ny, Ny)$ is *aliased* (falsly translated) into that range by the very act of discrete sampling ... There is little that you can do to remove aliased power once you have discretely sampled a signal. The way to overcome aliasing is to (i) know the natural bandwidth limit of the signal — or else enforce a known limit by analog filtering of the continuous signal, and then (ii) sample at a rate sufficiently rapid to give at least two points per cycle of the highest frequency present.
> —Press et al 1992, but with notation changed to our notation.

Figure 16.4 illustrates the aliasing problem. Notice how a high frequency signal is aliased into a lower frequency if the higher frequency is above the critical frequency. Fortunately, we can can easily avoid the problem: (i) use instruments that do not respond to very short, high frequency waves if we are interested in the bigger waves; and (ii) chose Δt small enough that we lose little useful information. In the example shown in Figure 16.3, there are no waves in the signal to be digitized with frequencies higher than $Ny = 1.5625$ Hz.

Let's summarize. Digitized signals from a wave staff cannot be used to study waves with frequencies above the Nyquist critical frequency. Nor can the signal

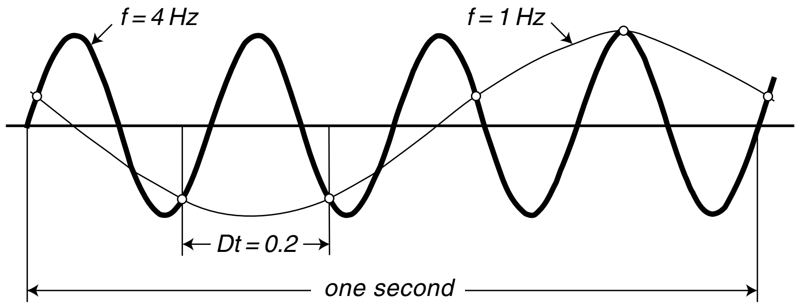


Figure 16.4 Sampling a 4 Hz sine wave (heavy line) every 0.2 s aliases the frequency to 1 Hz (light line).

be used to study waves with frequencies less than the fundamental frequency determined by the duration T of the wave record. The digitized wave record contains information about waves in the frequency range:

$$\frac{1}{T} < f < \frac{1}{2\Delta} \tag{16.26}$$

where $T = N\Delta$ is the length of the time series, and f is the frequency in Hertz.

Calculating The Wave Spectrum The digital Fourier transform Z_n of a wave record ζ_j equivalent to (16.21 and 16.22) is:

$$Z_n = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \zeta_j \exp[-i2\pi jn/N] \tag{16.27a}$$

$$\zeta_n = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} Z_j \exp[i2\pi jn/N] \tag{16.27b}$$

for $j = 0, 1, \cdots, N-1$; $n = 0, 1, \cdots, N-1$. These equations can be summed very quickly using the Fast Fourier Transform, especially if N is a power of 2 (Rabiner and Rader,1972; Press et al. 1992).

The simple spectrum S_n of ζ, which is called the *periodogram*, is:

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= \frac{1}{N^2}\left[|Z_n|^2 + |Z_{N-n}|^2\right]; \qquad n = 1, 2, \cdots, (N/2-1) \\ S_0 &= \frac{1}{N^2}|Z_0|^2 \\ S_{N/2} &= \frac{1}{N^2}|Z_{N/2}|^2 \end{aligned} \tag{16.28}$$

where S_N is normalized such that:

$$\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} |\zeta_j|^2 = \sum_{n=0}^{N/2} S_n \tag{16.29}$$

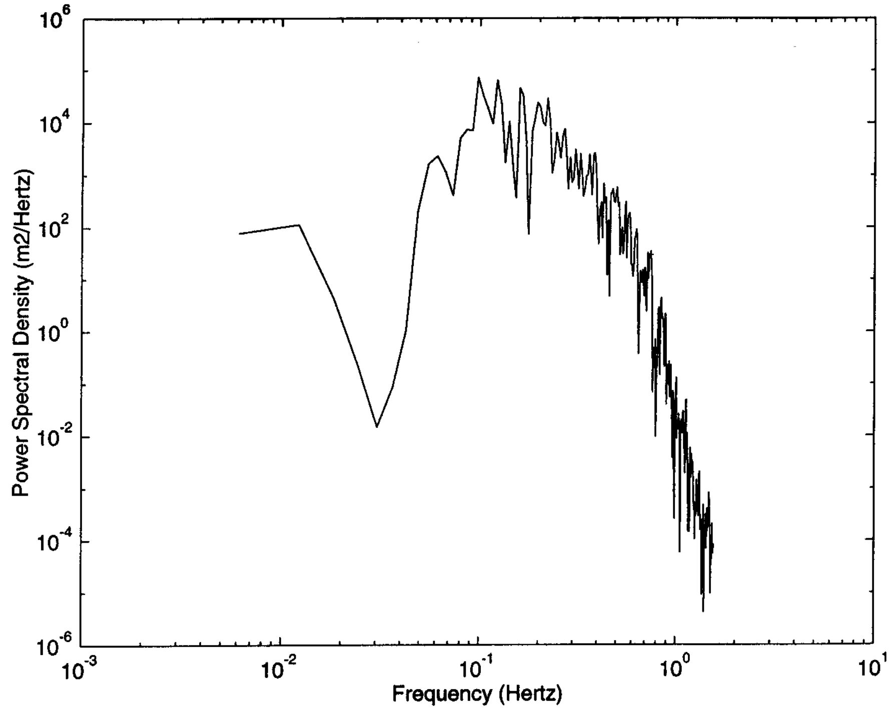


Figure 16.5 The periodogram calculated from the first 164 s of data from Figure 16.2. The Nyquist frequency is 1.5625 Hz.

that is, the variance of ζ_j is the sum of the $(N/2+1)$ terms in the periodogram. Note, the terms of S_n above the frequency $(N/2)$ are symmetric about that frequency. Figure 16.5 shows the periodogram of the time series shown in Figure 16.2.

The periodogram is a very noisy function. The variance of each point is equal to the expected value at the point. By averaging together 10–30 periodograms we can reduce the uncertainty in the value at each frequency. The averaged periodogram is called the spectrum of the wave height (Figure 16.6). It gives the distribution of the variance of sea-surface height at the wave staff as a function of frequency. Because wave energy is proportional to the variance (16.12) the spectrum is called the *energy spectrum* or the *wave-height spectrum.* Typically three hours of wave staff data are used to compute a spectrum of wave height.

Summary We can summarize the calculation of a spectrum into the following steps:

1. Digitize a segment of wave-height data to obtain useful limits according to (16.26). For example, use 1024 samples from 8.53 minutes of data sampled at the rate of 2 samples/second.
2. Calculate the digital, fast Fourier transform Z_n of the time series.
3. Calculate the periodogram S_n from the sum of the squares of the real and imaginary parts of the Fourier transform.

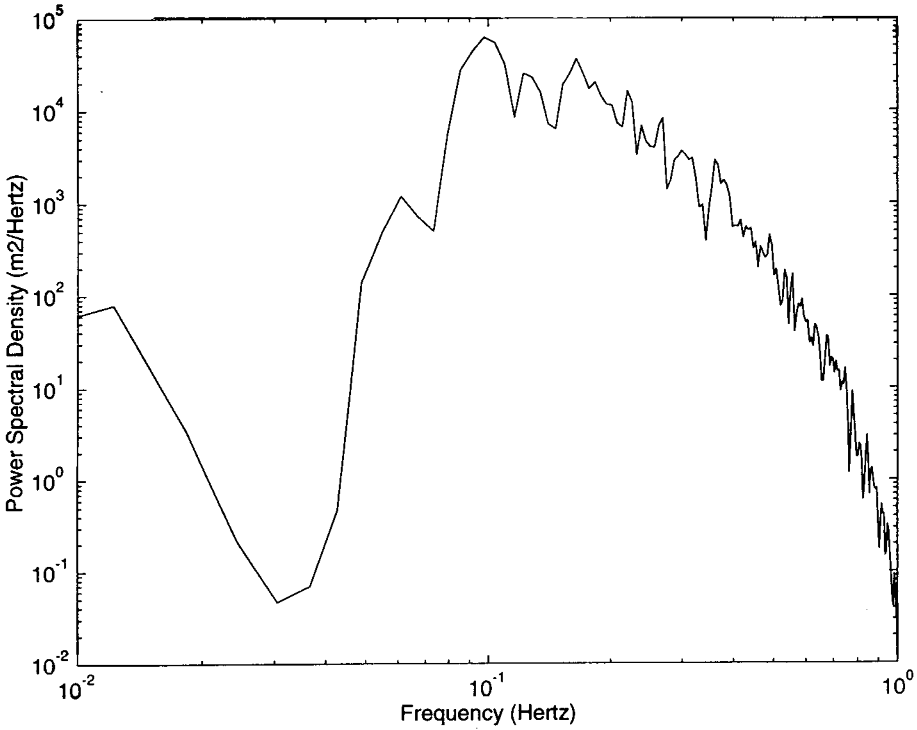


Figure 16.6 The spectrum of waves calculated from 11 minutes of data shown in Figure 7.2 by averaging four periodograms to reduce uncertainty in the spectral values. Spectral values below 0.04 Hz are in error due to noise.

4. Repeat to produce $M = 20$ periodograms.
5. Average the 20 periodograms to produce an averaged spectrum S_M.
6. S_M has values that are χ^2 distributed with $2M$ degrees of freedom.

This outline of the calculation of a spectrum ignores many details. For more complete information see, for example, Percival and Walden (1993), Press et al. (1992: §12), Oppenheim and Schafer (1975), or other texts on digital signal processing.

16.4 Ocean-Wave Spectra

Ocean waves are produced by the wind. The faster the wind, the longer the wind blows, and the bigger the area over which the wind blows, the bigger the waves. In designing ships or offshore structures we wish to know the biggest waves produced by a given wind speed. Suppose the wind blows at 20 m/s for many days over a large area of the North Atlantic. What will be the spectrum of ocean waves at the downwind side of the area?

Pierson-Moskowitz Spectrum Various idealized spectra are used to answer the question in oceanography and ocean engineering. Perhaps the simplest is

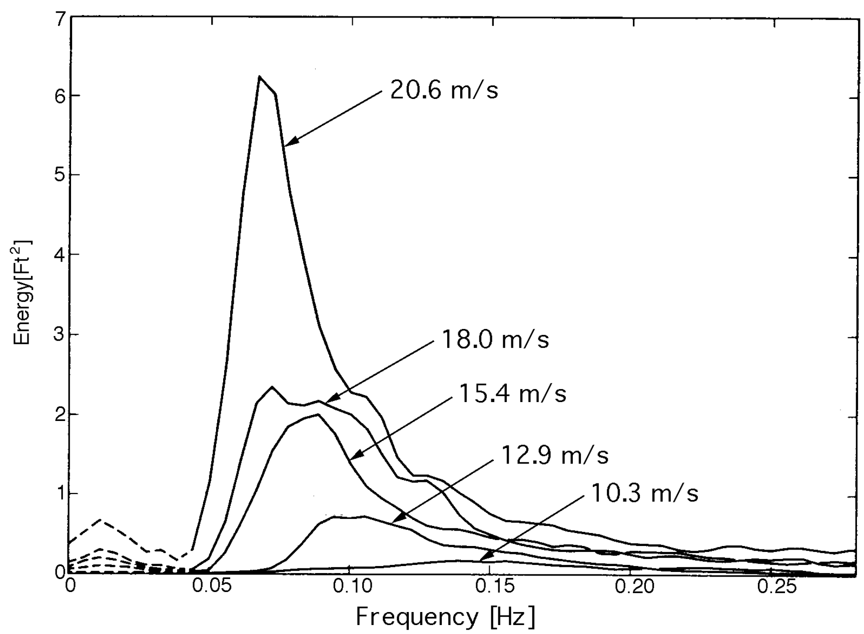


Figure 16.7 Wave spectra of a fully developed sea for different wind speeds according to Moskowitz (1964).

that proposed by Pierson and Moskowitz (1964). They assumed that if the wind blew steadily for a sufficiently long time and over a sufficiently large area, the waves would come into equilibrium with the wind. This is the concept of a *fully developed sea.* Here, a "long time" is roughly ten-thousand wave periods, and a "large area" is roughly ten-thousand wave lengths on a side.

To obtain such the spectrum of a fully developed sea, they used measurements of waves made by accelerometers on British weather ships in the North Atlantic. First, they selected wave data for times when the wind had blown steadily for long times over large areas of the North Atlantic. Then they calculated the wave spectra for various wind speeds, and they found that the spectra were of the form (Figure 16.7):

$$S(\omega) = \frac{\alpha g^2}{\omega^5} \exp\left[-\beta \left(\frac{\omega_0}{\omega}\right)^4\right] \tag{16.30}$$

where $\omega = 2\pi f$, f is the wave frequency in Hertz, $\alpha = 8.1 \times 10^{-3}$, $\beta = 0.74$, $\omega_0 = g/U_{19.5}$ and $U_{19.5}$ is the wind speed at a height of 19.5 m above the sea surface, the height of the anemometers on the weather ships used by Pierson and Moskowitz (1964).

For most airflow over the sea the atmospheric boundary layer has nearly neutral stability, and

$$U_{19.5} \approx 1.026\, U_{10} \tag{16.31}$$

assuming a drag coefficient of 1.3×10^{-3}.

The frequency of the peak of the Pierson-Moskowitz spectrum is calculated by solving $dS/d\omega = 0$ for ω_p, to obtain

$$\omega_p = 0.877\, g/U_{19.5}. \tag{16.32}$$

The speed of waves at the peak is calculated from (16.10), which gives:

$$c_p = \frac{g}{\omega_p} = 1.14\, U_{19.5} \approx 1.17\, U_{10} \tag{16.33}$$

Hence waves with frequency ω_p travel 14% faster than the wind at a height of 19.5 m or 17% faster than the wind at a height of 10 m. This poses a difficult problem: How can the wind produce waves traveling faster than the wind? We will return to the problem after we discuss the JONSWAP spectrum and the influence of nonlinear interactions among wind-generated waves.

The significant wave height is calculated from the integral of $S(\omega)$ to obtain:

$$\left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle = 2.74 \times 10^{-3}\, \frac{\left(U_{19.5}\right)^4}{g^2} \tag{16.34}$$

Remembering that $H_{1/3} = 4\left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle^{1/2}$, the significant wave height calculated from the Pierson-Moskowitz spectrum is:

$$H_{1/3} = 0.21\, \frac{\left(U_{19.5}\right)^2}{g} \approx 0.22\, \frac{\left(U_{10}\right)^2}{g} \tag{16.35}$$

Figure 16.8 gives significan wave heights and periods calculated from the Pierson-Moskowitz spectrum.

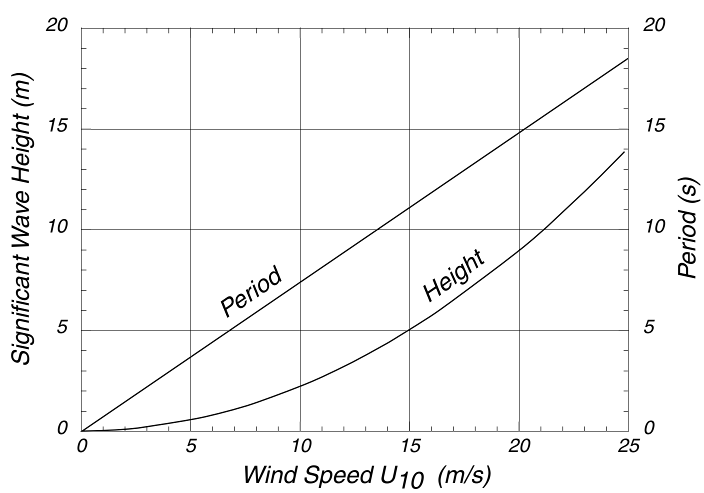


Figure 16.8 Significant wave height and period at the peak of the spectrum of a fully developed sea calculated from the Pierson-Moskowitz spectrum using (16.15 and 16.32).

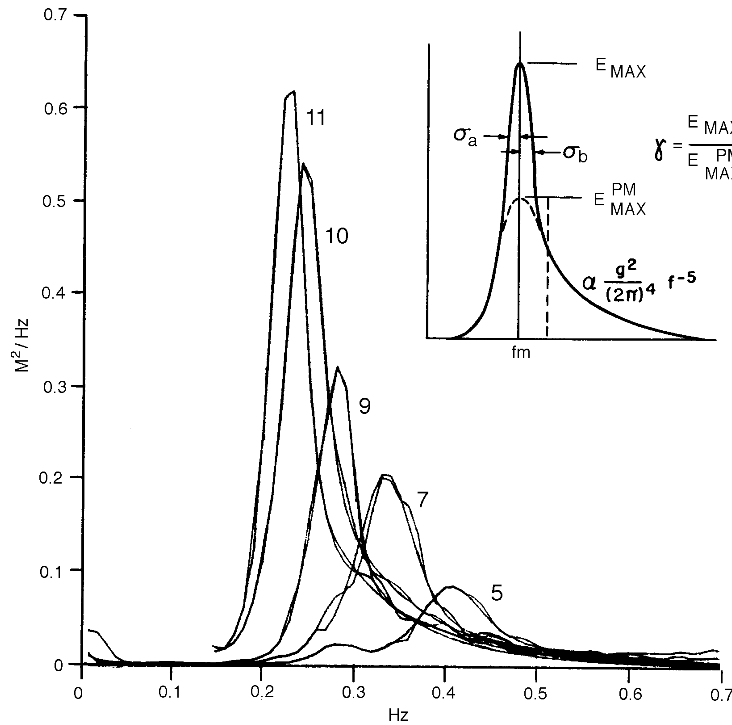


Figure 16.9 Wave spectra of a developing sea for different fetches according to Hasselmann et al. (1973).

JONSWAP Spectrum Hasselmann et al. (1973), after analyzing data collected during the Joint North Sea Wave Observation Project JONSWAP, found that the wave spectrum is never fully developed. It continues to develop through non-linear, wave-wave interactions even for very long times and distances. They therefore proposed a spectrum in the form (Figure 16.9):

$$S(\omega) = \frac{\alpha g^2}{\omega^5} \exp\left[-\frac{5}{4}\left(\frac{\omega_p}{\omega}\right)^4\right]\gamma^r \tag{16.36a}$$

$$r = \exp\left[-\frac{(\omega-\omega_p)^2}{2\,\sigma^2\,\omega_p^2}\right] \tag{16.36b}$$

Wave data collected during the JONSWAP experiment were used to determine the values for the constants in (16.36):

$$\alpha = 0.076 \left(\frac{U_{10}^2}{F\,g} \right)^{0.22} \tag{16.37a}$$

$$\omega_p = 22 \left(\frac{g^2}{U_{10} F} \right)^{1/3} \tag{16.37b}$$

$$\gamma = 3.3 \tag{16.37c}$$

$$\sigma = \begin{cases} 0.07 & \omega \le \omega_p \\ 0.09 & \omega > \omega_p \end{cases} \tag{16.37d}$$

where F is the distance from a lee shore, called the *fetch*, or the distance over which the wind blows with constant velocity.

Because the spectral values increase with fetch, so too does the energy of the wave field:

$$\left\langle \zeta^2 \right\rangle = 1.67 \times 10^{-7} \left(\frac{U_{10}^2}{g} \right) x \tag{16.38}$$

The JONSWAP spectrum is similar to the Pierson-Moskowitz spectrum except that waves continues to grow with distance (or time) as specified by the α term, and the peak in the spectrum is more pronounced, as specified by the γ term. The latter turns out to be particularly important because it leads to enhanced non-linear interactions and a spectrum that changes in time according to the theory of Hasselmann (1966).

Generation of Waves by Wind We have seen in the last few paragraphs that waves are related to the wind. We have, however, put off until now just how they are generated by the wind. Suppose we begin with a mirror-smooth sea (Beaufort Number 0). What happens if the wind suddenly begins to blow steadily at say 8 m/s? Three different physical processes begin:

1. The turbulence in the wind produces random pressure fluctuations at the sea surface, which produces small waves with wavelengths of a few centimeters (Phillips, 1957).
2. Next, the wind acts on the small waves, causing them to become larger. Wind belowing over the wave produces pressure differences along the wave profile causing the wave to grow. The process is unstable because, as the wave gets bigger, the pressure differences get bigger, and the wave grows faster. The instability causes the wave to grow exponentially (Miles, 1957).
3. Finally, the waves begin to interact among themselves to produce longer waves (Hasslemann et al. 1973). The interaction transfers wave energy from short waves generated by Miles' mechanism to waves with frequencies slightly smaller than the frequency of waves at the peak of the spectrum (Figure 16.10). Eventually, this leads to waves going faster than the wind, as noted by Pierson and Moskowitz.

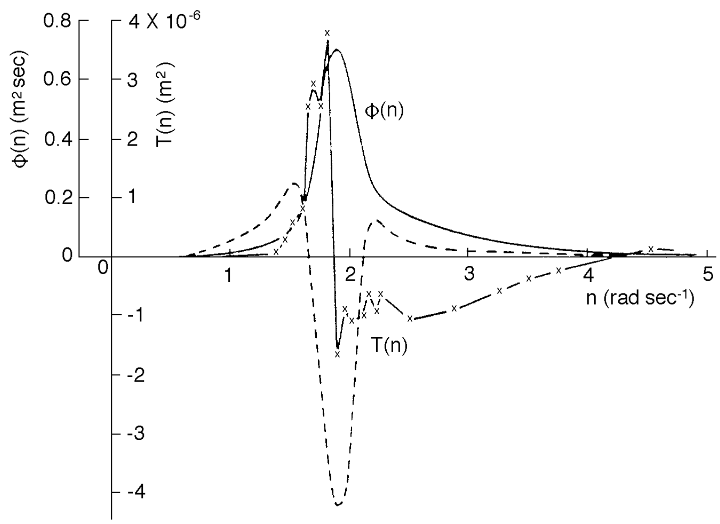


Figure 16.10 The function transfering wave energy from one part of the wave spectrum to another part via nonlinear wave-wave interactions $T(n)$ where n is frequency. Dashed curve is for the theoretical spectrum $\Phi(n)$, $\times - \times$ is for a measured spectrum. The interactions extract energy from high frequency waves and transfer it to low frequency waves, causing the spectrum to change with time and generating waves going faster than the wind, (From Phillips, 1977: 139).

16.5 Wave Forecasting

Our understanding of ocean waves, their spectra, their generation by the wind, and their interactions are now sufficiently well understood that the wave spectrum can be forecast using winds calculated from numerical weather-forecasting models. If we observe some small ocean area, or some area just offshore, we can see waves generated by the local wind, the *wind sea*, plus waves that were generated in other areas at other times and that have propogated into the area we are observing, the *swell.* Forecasts of local wave conditions must include both sea and swell, hence wave forecasting is not a local problem. We saw, for example, that waves off California can be generated by storms more than 10,000 km away.

Various techniques have been used to forecast waves. The earliest attempts were based on empirical relationships between wave height and wave length and wind speed, duration, and fetch. The development of the wave spectrum allowed evolution of individual wave components with frequency f travelling in direction θ of the directional wave spectrum $\psi(f, \theta)$ using

$$\frac{\partial \psi_0}{\partial t} + \mathbf{c_g} \cdot \nabla \psi_0 = S_i + S_{nl} + S_d \tag{16.39}$$

where $\psi_0 = \psi_0(f, \theta; \mathbf{x}, t)$ varies in space ($\mathbf{x}$) and time t, S_i is input from the wind given by the Phillips (1957) and Miles (1957) mechanisms, S_{nl} is the transfer among wave components due to nonlinear interactions (Figure 16.10), and S_d

is dissipation.

The third-generation wave-forecasting models now used by meteorological agencies throughout the world are based on integrations of (16.39) using many individual wave components (The SWAMP Group 1985; The WAMDI Group, 1988; Komen et al, 1994). The forecasts follow individual components of the wave spectrum in space and time, allowing each component to grow or decay depending on local winds, and allowing wave components to interact according to Hasselman's theory. Typically the sea is represented by 300 components: 25 wavelengths going in 12 directions (30°). Each component is allowed to propagate from grid point to grid point, growing with the wind or decaying in time, all the while interacting with other waves in the spectrum. To reduce computing time, the models use a nested grid of points: the grid has a high density of points in storms and near coasts and a low density in other regions. Typically, grid points in the open ocean are 3° apart.

Some recent experimental models take the wave-forecasting process one step further by assimilating altimeter and scatterometer observations of wind speed and wave height into the model. This reduces the errors in the forecasts, but it complicates the calculations. Regional and global forecasts of waves using assimilated satellite data are available from the European Centre for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts. Details of the calculations used for the third-generation models produced by the Wave Analysis Group (WAM) are described in the book by Komen et al. (1994).

NOAA's Ocean Modelling Branch at the National Centers for Environmental Predictions also produces regional and global forecasts of waves. The Branch use a third-generation model based on the Cycle-4 WAM model. It accommodates ever-changing ice edge, and it assimilates buoy and satellite altimeter wave data. The model calculates directional frequency spectra in 12 directions and 25 frequencies at 3-hour intervals up to 72 hours in advance. The lowest frequency is 0.04177 Hz and higher frequencies are spaced logarithmically at increments of 0.1 times the lowest frequency. Wave spectral data are available on a 2.5°× 2.5° grid for deep-water points between 67.5°S and 77.5°N. The model is driven using 10-meter winds calculated from the lowest winds from the Centers weather model adjusted to a height of 10 meter by using a logarithmic profile (8.20). The Branch is testing an improved forecast with 1°× 1.25° resolution (Figure 16.11).

16.6 Measurement of Waves

Because waves influence so many processes and operations at sea, many techniques have been devised for measuring waves. Here are a few of the more commonly used. Stewart (1980) gives a more complete description of wave measurement techniques, including methods for measuring the directional distribution of waves.

Sea State Estimated by Observers at Sea This is perhaps the most common observation included in early tabulations of wave heights. These are the significant wave heights summarized in the U.S. Navy's *Marine Climatological Atlas* and other such reports printed before the age of satellites.

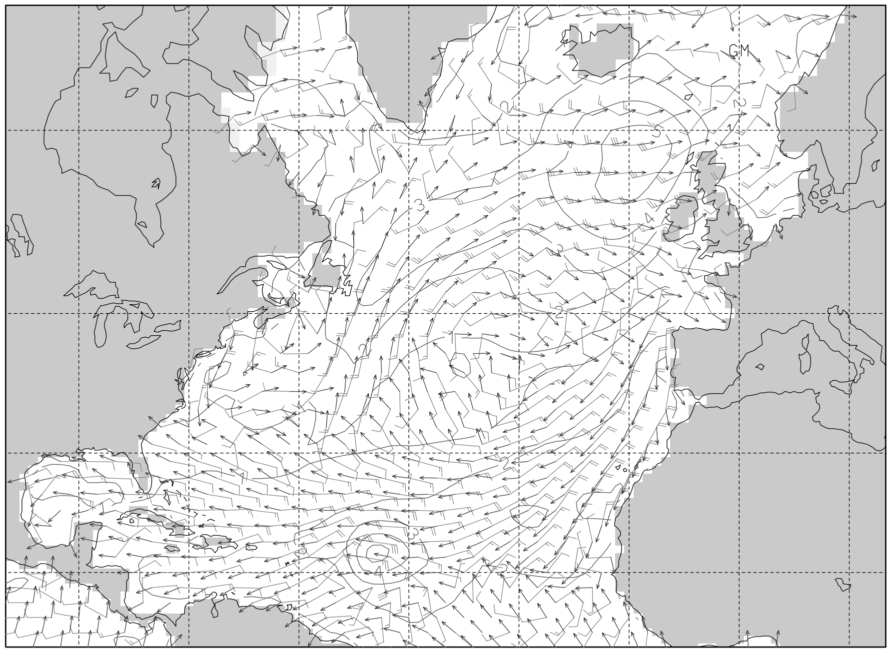


Figure 16.11 Output of a third-generation waveforecast model produced by NOAA's Ocean Modelling Branch for 20 August 1998. Contours are significant wave height in meters, arrows give direction of waves at the peak of the wave spectrum, and barbs give wind speed in m/s and direction. From NOAA Ocean Modelling Branch.

Accelerometer Mounted on Meteorological or Other Buoy This is a less common measurement, although it is often used for measuring waves during short experiments at sea. For example, accelerometers on weather ships measured wave height used by Pierson & Moskowitz and the waves shown in Figure 16.2. The most accurate measurements are made using an accelerometer stabilized by a gyro so the axis of the accelerometer is always vertical.

Double integration of vertical acceleration gives displacement. The double integration, however, amplifies low-frequency noise, leading to the low frequency signals seen in Figures 16.4 and 16.5. In addition, the buoy's heave is not sensitive to wavelengths less than the buoy's diameter, and buoys measure only waves having wavelengths greater than the diameter of the buoy.

Errors are due to failure to measure only vertical acceleration (How to maintain vertical reference?) and drift (low frequency noise) in measurement of acceleration. Overall, careful measurements are accurate to $\pm 10\%$ or better.

Wave Gages Gauges may be mounted on platforms or on the sea floor in shallow water. Many different types of sensors are used to measure the height of the wave or subsurface pressure which is related to wave height. Sound, infrared beams, and radio waves can be used to determine the distance from the sensor to the sea surface provided the sensor can be mounted on a stable platform that does not interfere with the waves. Pressure gauges described in

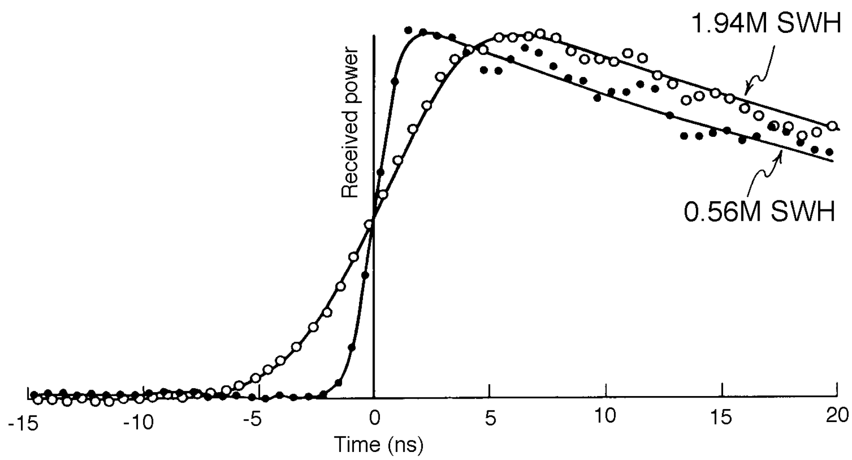


Figure 16.12 Shape of radio pulse received by the Seasat altimeter, showing the influence of ocean waves. The shape of the pulse is used to calculate significant wave height. (From Stewart, 1985).

§6.8 can be used to measure the depth from the sea surface to the gauge. Arrays of bottom-mounted pressure gauges are useful for determining wave directions. Thus arrays are widely used just offshore of the surf zone to determine offshore wave directions.

Pressure gauge must be located within a quarter of a wavelength of the surface because wave-induced pressure fluctuations decrease exponentially with depth. Thus, both gauges and pressure sensors are restricted to shallow water or to large platforms on the continental shelf. Again, accuracy is $\pm 10\%$ or better.

Satellite Altimeters The satellite altimeters used to measure surface geostrophic currents also measure wave height. Altimeters were flown on Seasat in 1978, Geosat from 1985 to 1988, ERS–1 &2 from 1991, and Topex/Poseidon from 1992. Altimeter data have been used to produce monthly mean maps of wave heights and the variability of wave energy density in time and space. The next step, just begun, is to use altimeter observation with wave forecasting programs, to increase the accuracy of wave forecasts.

The altimeter technique works as follows. Radio pulse from a satellite altimeter reflect first from the wave crests, later from the wave troughs. The reflection stretches the altimeter pulse in time, and the stretching is recorded and used to calculate wave height (Figure 16.12). Accuracy is $\pm 10\%$.

Synthetic Aperture Radars on Satellites These radars map the radar reflectivity of the sea surface with spatial resolution of 6–25 m. Maps of reflectivity often show wave-like features related to the real waves on the sea surface. I say 'wave-like' because there is not an exact one-to-one relationship between wave height and image density. Some waves are clearly mapped, others less so. The maps, however, can be used to obtain additional information about waves, especially the spatial distribution of wave directions in shallow water (Vesecky and

Stewart, 1982). Because the directional information can be calculated directly from the radar data without the need to calculate an image (Hasselmann, 1991), data from radars and altimeters on ERS–1 & 2 are being used to determine if the radar and altimeter observations can be used directly in wave forecast programs.

16.7 Important Concepts

1. Wavelength and frequency of waves are related through the dispersion relation.
2. The velocity of a wave phase can differ from the velocity at which wave energy propagates.
3. Waves in deep water are dispersive, longer wavelengths travel faster than shorter wavelengths. Waves in shallow water are not dispersive.
4. The dispersion of ocean waves has been accurately measured, and observations of dispersed waves can be used to track distant storms.
5. The shape of the sea surface results from a linear superposition of waves of all possible wavelengths or frequencies travelling in all possible directions.
6. The spectrum gives the contributions by wavelength or frequency to the variance of surface displacement.
7. Wave energy is proportional to variance of surface displacement.
8. Digital spectra are band limited, and they contain no information about waves with frequencies higher than the Nyquist frequency.
9. Waves are generated by wind. Strong winds of long duration generate the largest waves.
10. Various idealized forms of the wave spectrum generated by steady, homogeneous winds have been proposed. Two important forms are the Pierson-Moskowitz and JONSWAP spectra.
11. Observations by mariners on ships and by satellite altimeters have been used to make global maps of wave height. Wave gauges are used on platforms in shallow water and on the continental shelf to measure waves. Bottom-mounted pressure gauges are used to measure waves just offshore of beaches. And synthetic-aperture radars are used to obtain information about wave directions.

Chapter 17

Coastal Processes and Tides

In the last chapter I described waves on the sea surface. Now we can consider several special and important cases: the transformation of waves as they come ashore and break; the currents and edge waves generated by the interaction of waves with coasts; tsunamis; storm surges; and tides, especially tides along coasts.

17.1 Shoaling Waves and Coastal Processes

Waves propagating into shallow water are refracted by features on the sea floor, they eventually break on the beach where the wave breaking drives near-shore currents including long-shore and rip currents.

Shoaling Waves Wave phase and group velocities are a function of depth when the depth is less than about one-quarter wavelength in deep water. Wave period and frequency are invariant (don't change as the wave comes ashore); and this is used to compute the properties of shoaling waves. Wave height increases as wave group velocity slows. Wave length decreases. Waves change direction due to refraction. Finally, waves break if the water is sufficiently shallow; and broken waves pour water into the surf zone, creating long-shore currents.

The dispersion relation (16.3) is used to calculate wave properties as the waves propagate from deep-water offshore to shallow just outside the surf zone. Because ω is constant, (16.3) leads to:

$$\frac{L}{L_0} = \frac{c}{c_0} = \frac{\sin\alpha}{\sin\alpha_0} = \tanh\frac{2\pi d}{L} \tag{17.1}$$

where

$$L_0 = \frac{gT^2}{2\pi}, \qquad c_0 = \frac{gT}{2\pi} \tag{17.2}$$

and L is wave length, c is phase velocity, α is the angle of the crest relative to contours of constant depth, and d is water depth. The subscript 0 indicates values in deep water.

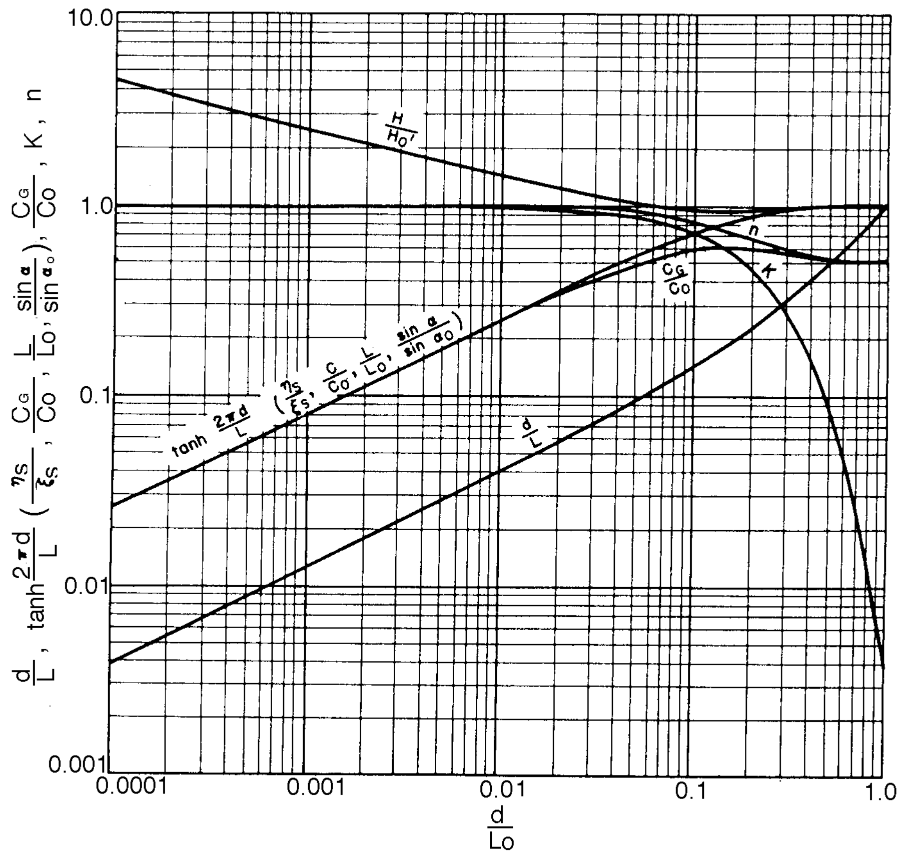


Figure 17.1 Change in wave properties as waves shoal (From Wiegel, 1964).

The quantity d/L is calculated from the solution of

$$\frac{d}{L_0} = \frac{d}{L} \tanh \frac{2\pi d}{L} \tag{17.3}$$

using an iterative technique, or from Figure 17.1 or from Table A1 of Wiegel (1964).

Because wave velocity is a function of depth in shallow water, variations in offshore water depth can focus or defocus wave energy reaching the shore. Consider the simple case of waves with deep-water crests almost parallel to a straight beach with two ridges each extending seaward from a headland (Figure 17.2). Wave group velocity is faster in the deeper water between the ridges, and the wave crests become progressively deformed as the wave propagates toward the beach. Wave energy, which propagates perpendicular to wave crests, is refracted out of the region between the headland. As a result, wave energy is focused into the headlands, and breakers there are much larger than breakers in the bay. The difference in wave height can be surprisingly large. On a calm day, breakers can be knee high shoreward of a submarine canyon at La Jolla Shores,

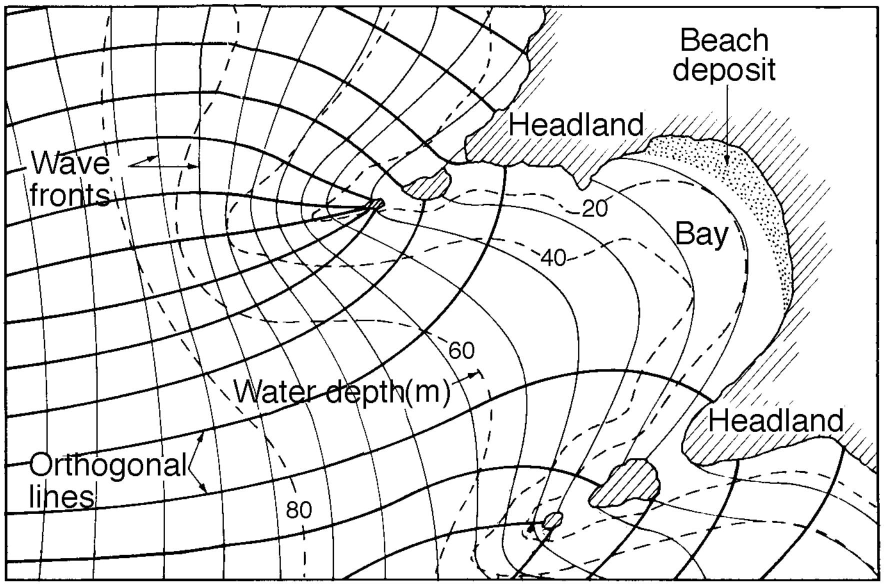


Figure 17.2 Subsea features, such as submarine canyons and ridges, offshore of coasts can greatly influence the height of breakers inshore of the features (From Thurman, 1985).

California, just south of the Scripps Institution of Oceanography. At the same time, wave just north of the canyon can be high enough to attract surfers.

Breaking Waves As waves move into shallow water, the group velocity becomes small, wave energy per square meter of sea surface increases, and nonlinear terms in the wave equations become important. These processes cause waves to steepen, with short steep crests and broad shallow troughs. When wave slope at the crest becomes sufficiently steep, the wave breaks (Figure 17.3). The shape of the breaking wave depends on the slope of the bottom, and the steepness of waves offshore (Fig. 17.4).

1. Steep waves tend to lose energy slowly as the waves moves into shallower water through water spilling down the front of the wave. These are spilling breakers.
2. Less steep waves on steep beaches tend to steepen so quickly that the crest of the wave moves much faster than the trough, and the crest, racing ahead of the trough, plunges into the trough (Figure 17.5).
3. If the beach is sufficiently steep, the wave can surge up the face of the beach without breaking in the sense that white water is formed. Or if it is formed, it is at the leading edge of the water as it surges up the beach. An extreme example would be a wave incident on a vertical breakwater.

Wave-Driven Currents Waves break in a narrow band of shallow water along the beach, the *surf zone*. After breaking, waves continues as a near-vertical wall of turbulent water called a *bore* which carries water to the beach. At first, the

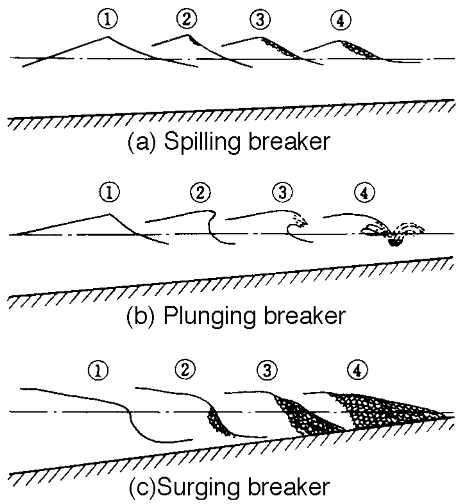


Figure 17.3 Sketch of types of breaking waves (From Horikawa, 1988).

bore surges up the beach, then retreats. The water carried by the bore is left in the shallow waters inside the surf zone.

Rip currents are produced when the water carried onshore by breaking waves returns offshore in the form of narrow swift currents currents. These narrow jets of fast-moving water are usually oriented perpendicular to the shore and spaced hundreds of meters apart along the shore (Figure 17.6). Usually there is a band of deeper water between the breaker zone and the beach, and the long-shore current runs in this channel. The strength of a rip current depends on the height and frequency of breaking waves and the strength of the onshore wind. The rip is a danger to unwary swimmers, especially poor swimmers bobbing along in the waves inside the breaker zone. They are carried along by the along-shore current until they are suddenly carried out to sea by the rip. Swimming

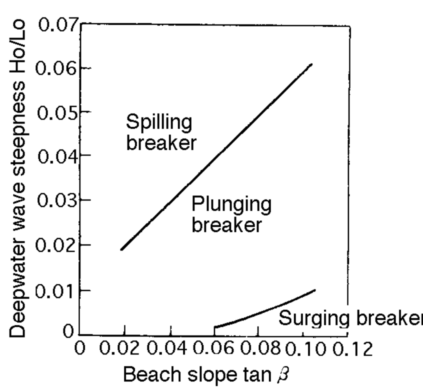


Figure 17.4 Classification of breaking waves as a function of beach steepness and wave steepness offshore (From Horikawa, 1988).

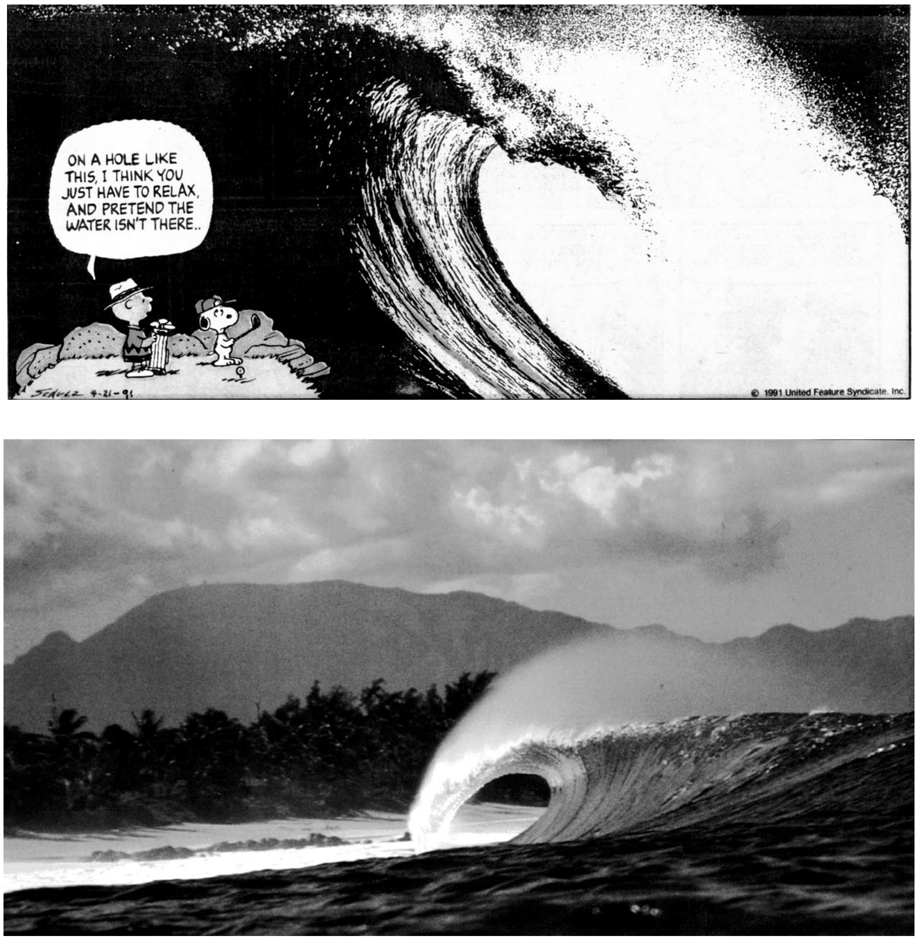


Figure 17.5 Steep, plunging breakers are the archtypical breaker. The edge of such breakers are ideal for surfing. Photo by Jeff Devine, cartoon by Schultz 4-21-91.

against the rip is futile, but swimmers can escape by swimming parallel to the beach.

Edge waves are produced by the variability of wave energy reaching shore. Waves tend to come in groups, especially when waves come from distant storms. For several minutes breakers may be smaller than average, then a few very large waves will break. The minute-to-minute variation in the height of breakers produces low-frequency variability in the along-shore current. This, in turn, drives a low-frequency wave attached to the beach, an edge wave. The waves have periods of a few minutes, a long-shore wave length of around a kilometer, and an amplitude that decays exponentially offshore (Figure 17.7).

17.2 Tsunamis

Tsunamis are low-frequency ocean waves generated by submarine earthquakes. The sudden motion of sea floor over distances of a hundred or more kilometers

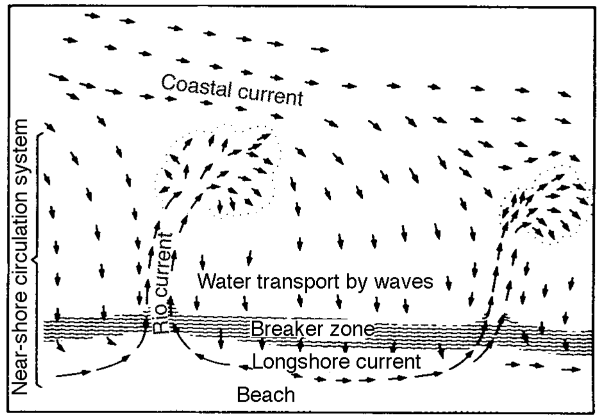


Figure 17.6 Sketch of rip currents generated by water carried to the beach by breaking waves (From Dietrich, Kalle, Kraus, & Siedler, 1980).

generates waves with periods of around 12 minutes (Figure 17.8). A quick calculation shows that such waves must be shallow-water waves, propagating at a speed of 180 m/s and having a wavelength of 130 km in water 3.6 km deep (Figure 17.9). The waves are not noticeable at sea, but after slowing on approach to the coast, and after refraction by subsea features, they can come ashore and surge to heights ten or more meters above sea level. In an extreme example, the Alaskan tsunami on 1 April 1946 destroyed the Scotch Cap lighthouse 31 m above sea level.

Shepard (1963, Chapter 4) summarized the influence of tsunamis based on his studies in the Pacific.

1. Tsunamis appear to be produced by movement (an earthquake) along a linear fault.

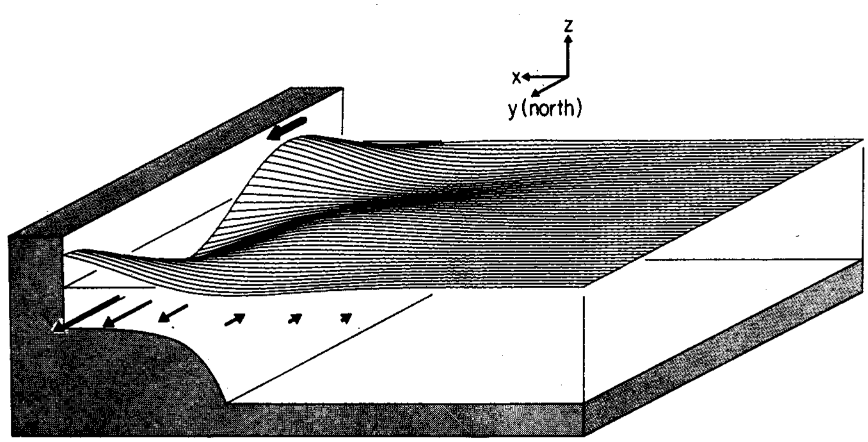


Figure 17.7 Computer-assisted sketch of an edge wave. Such waves exist in the breaker zone near the beach and on the continental shelf. (From Cutchin and Smith, 1973).

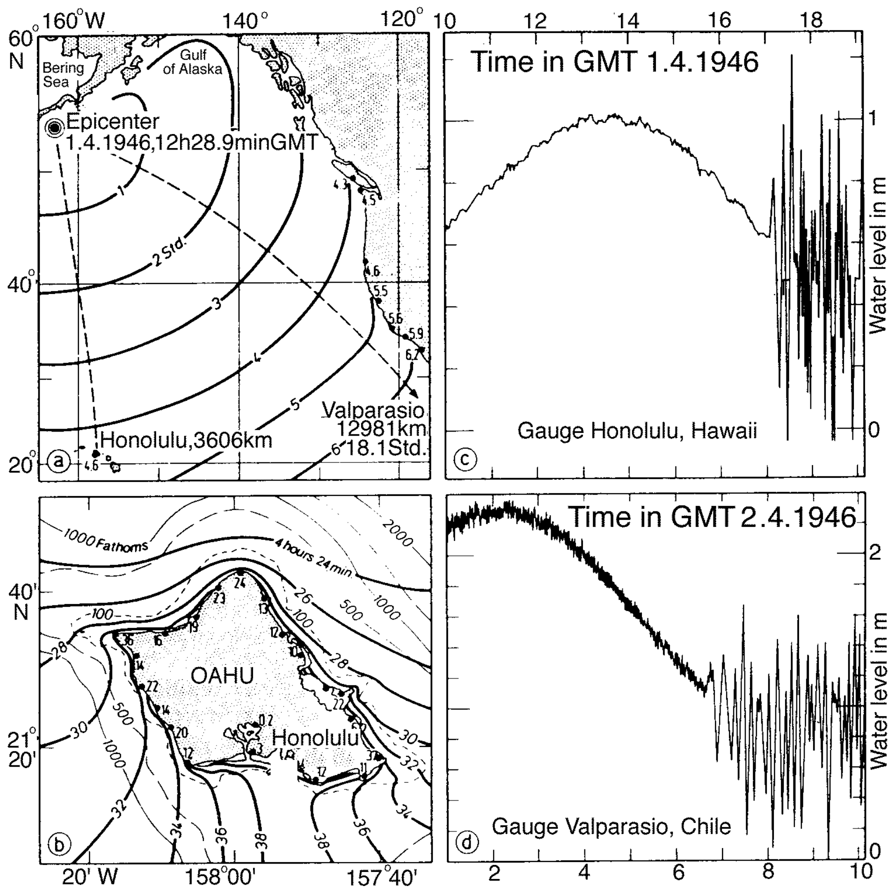


Figure 17.8 **(a)** Hourly positions of leading edge of tsunami generated by a large earthquake in the Aleutian Trench on April 1, 1946 at 12 h 58.9m GMT. **(b)** Maximum vertical extent of tsunami on Oahu Island in Hawaii and the calculated travel time in hours and minutes from the earthquake epicenter. **(c) & (d)** Tide gauge records of the tsunami at Honolulu and Valparaiso (From Dietrich, *et al.* 1980).

2. Tsunamis can travel thousands of kilometers and still do serious damage to coasts.
3. The first wave of a tsunami is not likely to be the biggest.
4. Wave amplitudes are relatively large shoreward of submarine ridges. They are relatively low shoreward of submarine valleys, provided the features extend into deep water.
5. Wave amplitudes are decreased by the presence of coral reefs bordering the coast.
6. Some bays have a funneling effect, but long estuaries attenuate waves.
7. Waves can bend around circular islands without great loss of energy, but they are onsiderably smaller on the backsides of elongated, angular islands.

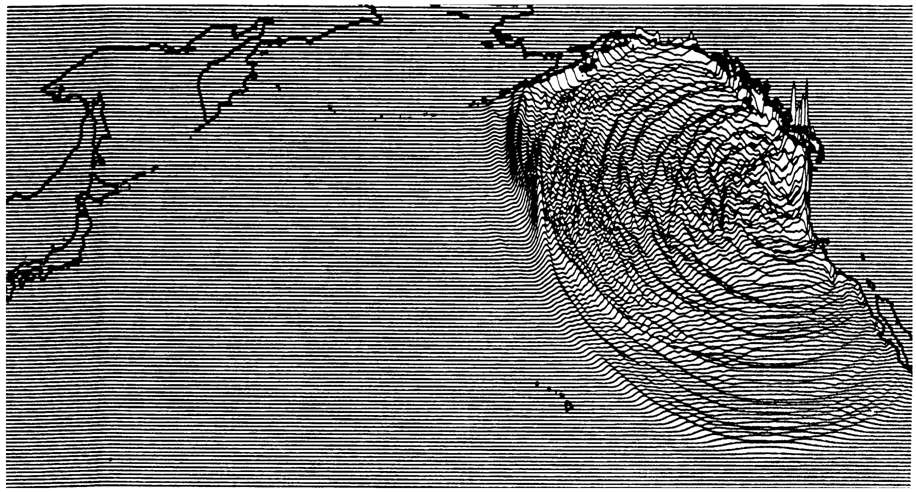


Figure 17.9 Tsunami wave height four hours after the great M9 Cascadia earthquake off the coast of Washington on 26 January 1700 calculated by a finite-element, numerical model. Maximum open-ocean wave height, about one meter, is north of Hawaii (From Satake et al 1996).

17.3 Storm Surges

Storm winds blowing over shallow, continental shelves pile water against the coast. The increase in sea level is known as a storm surge. Several processes are important:

1. Ekman transport by winds parallel to the coast transports water toward the coast causing a rise in sea level.
2. Winds blowing toward the coast push water directly toward the coast.
3. Wave run-up and other wave interactions transport water toward the coast adding to the first two processes.
4. Edge waves generated by the wind travel along the coast.
5. The low pressure inside the storm raises sea level by one centimeter for each millibar decrease in pressure through the inverted-barometer effect.
6. Finally, the storm surge adds to the tides, and high tides can change a relative weak surge into a much more dangerous one.

See Jelesnianski (1967, 1970) for a description of storm-surge models SPLASH and Sea, Lake, and Overland Surges from Hurricanes SLOSH used by the National Hurricane Center.

To a crude first approximation, wind blowing over shallow water causes a slope in the sea surface proportional to wind stress.

$$\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial x} = \frac{\tau_0}{\rho g H} \tag{17.4}$$

where ζ is sea level, x is horizontal distance, H is water depth, T_0 is wind stress at the sea surface, ρ is water density; and g is gravitational acceleration.

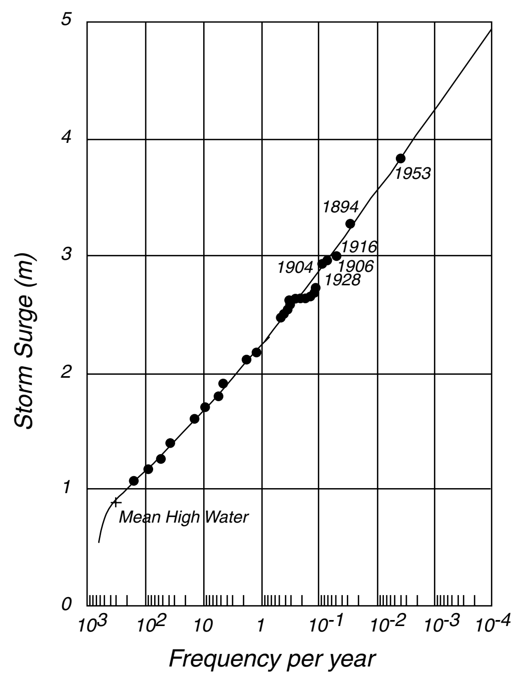


Figure 17.10 Probality (per year) density distribution of vertical height of storm surges in the Hook of Holland in the Netherlands. The distribution function is Rayleigh, and the probability of large surges is estimated by extrapolating the observed frequency of smaller, more common surges (From Wiegel, 1964).

If $x = 100$ km, $U = 40$ m/s, and $H = 20$ m, values typical of a hurricane offshore of the Texas Gulf Coast, then $T = 2.7$ Pa, and $\zeta = 1.3$ m at the shore. Figure 17.10 shows the frequency of surges at the Netherlands and a graphical method for estimating the probability of extreme events using the probability of weaker events.

17.4 Theory of Ocean Tides

Tides have been so important for commerce and science for so many thousands of years that tides have entered our everyday language: *time and tide wait for no one*, *the ebb and flow of events*, *a high-water mark*, and *turn the tide of battle.*

1. Tides produce strong currents in many parts of the ocean.Tidal currents can have speeds of up to 5 m/s in coastal waters, impeding navigation and mixing coastal waters.
2. Tidal currents generate internal waves over seamounts, the continental slope, and mid-ocean ridges. This contributes to mixing in the ocean.
3. Tidal currents can suspend bottom sediments, even in the deep ocean.
4. The weight of oceanic tides deforms the earth, producing signals over most continental areas. This deformation is the ocean-loading tide.
5. The deformation of the solid earth influence almost all precise measurements of earth.

6. Oceanic tides lag behind the tide-generating potential, producing forces that transfer angular momentum between the earth and the tide-producing body, especially the moon.
7. As a result of tidal forces, earth's rotation about it's axis slows, increasing the length of day; the rotation of the moon about earth slows, causing the moon to move slowly away from earth; and the moon's rotation about it's axis slows, causing the moon to keep the same side facing earth as the moon rotates about earth.
8. Tides influence the orbits of satellites. Hence accurate tides are needed for computing the orbit of altimetric satellites. Tides are also needed for correcting the altimetric satellite's measurements of oceanic topography.
9. Tidal forces on other planets and stars are important for understanding many aspects of solar-system dynamics and even galactic dynamics. For example, the rotation rate of Mercury, Venus, and Io resuly from tidal forces.

Mariners have known for at least four thousand years that tides are related to the phase of the moon. The exact relationship, however, is hidden behind many complicating factors, and some of the greatest scientific minds of the last four centuries have contributed to the understanding, calculation, and prediction of tides. Galileo, Descartes, Kepler, Newton, Euler, Bernoulli, Kant, Laplace, Airy, Lord Kelvin, Jeffreys, Munk and many others contributed. Some of the first computers were developed and used for computing and predicting tides: Ferrel built a tide-predicting machine in 1880 that was used by the U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey to predict nineteen tidal constituents. In 1901, Harris extended the capacity to 37 constituents.

Long standing questions have remained: What is the amplitude and phase of the tides at any place on the ocean or along the coast? What is the speed and direction of tidal currents? What is the shape of the tides on the ocean? Where is tidal energy dissipated? Answers to these simple questions are difficult, and the first, accurate, global solutions were published by LeProvost et al. (1994). The problem is hard because the tides are a self-gravitating, near-resonant, sloshing of water in a rotating, elastic, ocean basin with ridges, mountains, and submarine basins.

At coastal stations and ports the problem is much simpler. Data from a tide gauge plus the theory of tidal forcing gives an accurate description of tides at that point.

Tidal Potential Tides are calculated from the hydrodynamic equations for a self-gravitating ocean on a rotating, elastic earth. The driving force is the small change in gravity due to motion of the moon and sun relative to earth.

The small variations in gravity arise from two separate mechanisms. To see how they work, consider the rotation of the moon about earth.

1. The moon and earth rotate about the center of mass of the earth-moon system. This gives rise to a centripetal acceleration at earth's surface that

drives water away from the center of mass and toward the side of earth away from the moon.

2. At the same time, mutual gravitational attraction of mass on earth and the moon causes water to be attracted toward the moon.

If earth were an ocean planet with no land, and if the ocean were very deep, the two processes would produce a pair of bulges of water on earth, one on the side facing the moon, one on the side away from the moon. A clear derivation of the forces is given by Pugh (1987) and by Dietrich, Kalle, Krauss, and Siedler (1980). Here I follow the discussion in Pugh §3.2.

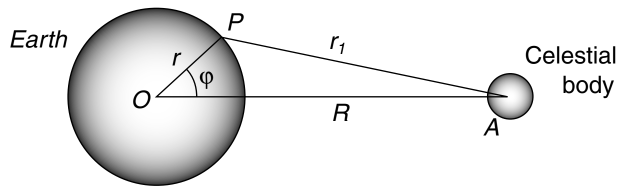


Figure 17.11 Sketch of coordinates for determining the tide-generating potential.

To calculate the amplitude and phase of the tide in the ocean, we begin by calculating the tide-generating potential. This is much simpler than calculating the forces. The tide-generating potential at earth's surface is due to the earth-moon system rotating about a common center of mass. Ignoring for now earth's rotation, the rotation of moon about earth produces a potential V_M at any point on earth's surface

$$V_M = -\frac{\gamma M}{r_1} \tag{17.5}$$

where the geometry is sketched in figure 17.11, γ is the gravitational constant, and M is the moon's mass. From the traingle OPA in the figure,

$$r_1^2 = r^2 + R^2 - 2rR\cos\varphi \tag{17.6}$$

Using this in (17.5) gives

$$V_M = -\frac{\gamma M}{R}\left\{1 - 2\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)\cos\varphi + \left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{1/2}\right\}^{-1/2} \tag{17.7}$$

$r/R \approx 1/60$, and (17.7) may be expanded in powers of r/R using Legendre polynomials (Whittaker and Watson, 1963: §15.1):

$$V_M = -\frac{\gamma M}{R}\left\{1 + \left(\frac{r}{R}\right)\cos\varphi + \left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(3\cos^2\varphi - 1) + \cdots\right\} \tag{17.8}$$

The tidal forces are calculated from the gradient of the potential, so the first term in (17.8) produces no force. The second term produces a constant force parallel to OA. This force keeps earth in orbit about the center of mass of the

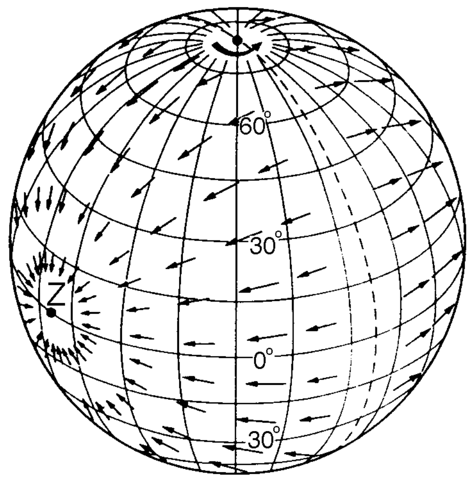


Figure 17.12 The horizontal component of the tidal force on earth when the tide-generating body is above the Equator at Z. (From Dietrich, et.al., 1980).

earth-moon system. The third term produces the tides, assuming the higher-order terms can be ignored. The tide-generating potential is therefore:

$$V = -\frac{\gamma M r^2}{2R^3}(3\cos^2\varphi - 1) \tag{17.9}$$

The tide-generating force can be decomposed into a force perpendicular to the sea surface and a horizontal force. The vertical force produces very small changes in the weight of the oceans. It is very small compared to gravity, and it can be ignored.

The horizontal component H of the force (Figure 17.12) is:

$$H = -\frac{1}{r}\frac{\partial V}{\partial \varphi} = \frac{2G}{r}\sin 2\varphi \tag{17.10}$$

where

$$G = \frac{3}{4}\gamma M\left(\frac{r^2}{R^3}\right) \tag{17.11}$$

If we now allow our ocean-covered earth to rotate, we see that the moon produces two tidal bulges that appear to rotate around earth. (To an observer on earth, the moon seems to rotate around the heavens at nearly one cycle per day). The bulges are symmetric about the earth-moon line, and moon produces high tides every 12 hours and 25.23 minutes on the equator if the moon is aove the equator. There are not exactly two high tides per day because moon is rotating about earth. Of course, the moon is above the equator only twice per lunar month, and this complicates our simple picture of the tides on an ideal ocean-covered earth. Furthermore, moon's distance from earth varies because moon's orbit is elliptical and because the elliptical orbit is not fixed. Thus R varies at with a period of once per month, once per 8.85 years, and once per 17.61 years. Because tides are larger when moon is closer in it's orbit abound earth, the lunar tides vary with these periods.

Clearly, the calculation of tides is getting more complicated than we might have thought. Before continuing on, we note that the solar tidal forces are derived in a similar way. The relative importance of the sun and the moon are nearly the same. Although the sun is much more massive than the moon, it is much further away.

$$G_{sun} = G_S = \frac{3}{4}\gamma S \left(\frac{r^2}{R_{sun}^3}\right) \tag{17.12}$$

$$G_{moon} = G_M = \frac{3}{4}\gamma M \left(\frac{r^2}{R_{moon}^3}\right) \tag{17.13}$$

$$\frac{G_S}{G_M} = 0.46051 \tag{17.14}$$

where R_{sun} is the distance to the sun, S is the mass of the sun; R_{moon} is the distance to the moon, and M is the mass of the moon.

Coordinates of Sun and Moon Before we can proceed further we need to know the position of the moon and the sun relative to the earth. An accurate description of the positions in three dimensions is very difficult, and it involves learning arcane terms and concepts from celestial mechanics. Here, I paraphrase a simplified description from Pugh. See also figure 4.1.

A natural reference system for an observer on earth is the equatorial system described at the start of Chapter 3. In this system, *declinations* of a celestial body are measured north and south of a plane which cuts the earth's equator.

> Angular distances around the plane are measured relative to a point on this celestial equator which is fixed with respect to the stars. The point chosen for this system is the *vernal equinox*, also called the 'First Point of Aries' ... The angle measured eastward, between Aries and the equatorial intersection of the meridian through a celestial object is called the *right ascension* of the object. The declination and the right ascension together define the position of the object on a celestial background ...
>
> [Another natural reference] system uses the plane of the earth's revolution around the sun as a reference. The celestial extension of this plane, which is traced by the sun's annual apparent movement, is called the *ecliptic*. Conveniently, the point on this plane which is chosen for a zero reference is also the vernal equinox, at which the sun crosses the equatorial plane from south to north near 21 March each year. Celestial objects are located by their ecliptic latitude and ecliptic longitude. The angle between the two planes, of 23.45°, is called the obliquity of the ecliptic ... —Pugh (1987).

Tidal Frequencies Now, let's allow earth to spin about its polar axis. The changing potential at a fixed geographic coordinate on earth is:

$$\cos\varphi = \sin\varphi_p \sin\delta + \cos\varphi_p \cos\delta \cos(\tau_1 - 180^\circ) \tag{17.15}$$

where φ_p is latitude at which the tidal potential is calculated, δ is declination of the moon or sun north of the equator, and τ_1 is the hour angle of the moon or sun. The *hour angle* is the longitude where the imaginary plane containing the sun or moon and earth's rotation axis crosses the Equator.

The period of the solar hour angle is a solar day of 24 hr 0 m. The period of the lunar hour angle is a lunar day of 24 hr 50.47 m.

Earth's axis of rotation is inclined 23.45° with respect to the plane of earth's orbit about the sun. This defines the ecliptic, and the sun's declination varies between $\delta = \pm 23.45^\circ$ with a period of one solar year. The orientation of earth's rotation axis precesses with respect to the stars with a period of 26 000 years. The rotation of the ecliptic plane causes δ and the vernal equinox to change slowly, and the movement called the *precession of the equinoxes*.

Earth's orbit about the sun is elliptical, with the earth in one focus. That point in the orbit where the distance between the sun and earth is a minimum is called *perigee*. The orientation of the ellipse in the ecliptic plane changes slowly with time, causing perigee to rotate with a period of 20 900 years. Therefore R_{sun} varies with this period.

The moon's orbit is also elliptical, but a description of moon's orbit is much more complicated than a description of earth's orbit. Here are the basics. The moon's orbit lies in a plane inclined at a mean angle of 5.15° relative to the plane of the ecliptic; and lunar declination varies between $\delta = 23.45 \pm 5.15^\circ$ with a period of one tropical month of 27.32 solar days. The inclination varies between 4.97°, and 5.32°. The shape or the moon's orbit also varies. The eccentricity of the moon's orbit has a mean value of 0.0549, and it varies between 0.044 and 0.067. And, perigee rotates with a perion of 8.85 years. Both processes cause variations in R_{moon}.

Note that I am a little imprecise in defining the position of the sun and the moon. Lang (1980: § 5.1.2) gives much more precise definitions.

Substituting (17.15) into (17.9) gives:

$$\begin{aligned} V = \frac{\gamma M r^2}{R^3} \frac{1}{4} \big[& \big(3\sin^2\varphi_p - 1\big)\big(3\sin^2\delta - 1\big) \\ & + 3\sin 2\varphi_p \ \sin 2\delta \ \cos\tau_1 \\ & + 3\cos^2\varphi_p \ \cos^2\delta \ \cos 2\tau_1 \big] \end{aligned} \tag{17.16}$$

Equation (17.16) separates the period of the lunar tidal potential into three terms with periods near 14 days, 24 hours, and 12 hours. Similarly the solar potential has periods near 180 days, 24 hours, and 12 hours. Thus there are three distinct groups of tidal frequencies: twice-daily, daily, and long period, having different latitudinal factors $\sin^2\theta$, $\sin 2\theta$, and $1/2(1 - 3\cos^2\theta)$, where θ is the co-latitude $(90^\circ - \varphi)$.

Table 17.1 Fundamental Tidal Frequencies

	Frequency °/hour		Period	Source
f_1	14.49205211	1	lunar day	Local mean lunar time
f_2	0.54901653	1	month	Moon's mean longitude
f_3	0.04106864	1	year	Sun's mean longitude
f_4	0.00464184	8.847	years	Longitude of Moon's perigee
f_5	-0.00220641	17.613	years	Longitude of Moon's ascending node
f_6	0.00000196	20,940	years	Longitude of sun's perigee

Doodson (1922) expanded (17.16) in a Fourier series using the cleverly chosen frequencies in Table 17.1. Other choices of fundamental frequencies are possible, for example the local, mean, solar time can be used instead of the local, mean, lunar time. Doodson's expansion, however, leads to an elegant decomposition of tidal constituents into groups with similar frequencies and spatial variability.

Using Doodson's expansion, each component of the tide has a frequency

$$f = n_1 f_1 + n_2 f_2 + n_3 f_3 + n_4 f_4 + n_5 f_5 + n_6 f_6 \tag{17.17}$$

where the integers n_i are the *Doodson numbers.* $n_1 = 1, 2, 3$ and n_2–n_6 are between -5 and $+5$. To avoid negative numbers, Doodson added five to $n_{2 \cdots 6}$. Each tidal component, sometimes called a *partial tides*, has a Doodson number. For example, the principal, twice-per-day, lunar tide has the number 255.555. Because the very long-term modulation of the tides by the change in sun's perigee is so small, the last Doodson number n_6 is uasually ignored.

If the tidal potential is expanded in Doodson's Fourier series, and if the ocean surface is in equilibrium with the tidal potential, the largest tidal constituents would have frequencies and amplitudes given in Table 17.2. The expansion shows that tides with frequencies near one or two cycles per day are split into closely spaced lines with spacing separated by a cycle per month. Each of these lines is further split into lines with spacing separated by a cycle per year (Figure 17.13). Furthermore, each of these lines is split into lines with a spacing separated by a cycle per 8.8 yr, and so on. Clearly, there are very many possible tidal components.

Doodson's expansion included 399 components, of which 100 are long period, 160 are daily, 115 are twice per day, and 14 are thrice per day. Most have very small amplitudes, and only the largest are included in Table 17.2. The largest tides were named by Sir George Darwin (1911) and the names are included in the table. Thus, for example, the principal, twice-per-day, lunar tide, which has Doodson number 255.555, is the M_2 tide, called the *M-two* tide.

17.5 Tidal Prediction

If tides in the ocean were in equilibrium with the tidal potential, tidal prediction would be easy. Unfortunately, tides are far from equilibrium and tides are not easily calculated. First, the shallow-water wave which is the tide cannot move fast enough to keep up with the sun and the moon. On the equator, the tide

Table 17.2 Principal Tidal Constituents

Tidal Species	Name	n_1	n_2	n_3	n_4	n_5	Equilibrium Amplitude† (m)	Period (hr)
Semidiurnal	$n_1 = 2$							
Principal lunar	M_2	2	0	0	0	0	0.242334	12.4206
Principal solar	S_2	2	2	-2	0	0	0.112841	12.0000
Lunar elliptic	N_2	2	-1	0	1	0	0.046398	12.6584
Lunisolar	K_2	2	2	0	0	0	0.030704	11.9673
Diurnal	$n_1 = 1$							
Lunisolar	K_1	1	1	0	0	0	0.141565	23.9344
Principal lunar	O_1	1	-1	0	0	0	0.100514	25.8194
Principal solar	P_1	1	1	-2	0	0	0.046843	24.0659
Elliptic linar	Q_1	1	-2	0	1	0	0.019256	26.8684
Long Period	$n_1 = 0$							
Fortnightly	Mf	0	2	0	0	0	0.041742	327.85
Monthly	Mm	0	1	0	-1	0	0.022026	661.31
Semiannual	Ssa	0	0	2	0	0	0.019446	4383.05

†Amplitudes from Apel (1987)

would need to propagate around the world in one day. This requires a wave speed of around 460 m/s, which is only possible in an ocean 22 km deep. Second, the continents interrupt the propagation of the wave.

We can separate the problem of tidal prediction into two parts. The first deals with the prediction of tides in ports and shallow water where tides can be measured by tide gauges. The second deals with the prediction of tides in the deep ocean where tides cannot be easily measured.

Tidal Prediction for Ports and Shallow Water Two techniques are used to predict future tides at a tide-gauge station using past observations of sea level measured at the gauge.

The Harmonic Method This is the traditional method, and it is still widely used. The method uses decades of tidal observations from a coastal tide gauge from which the amplitude and phase of each tidal constituent (the tidal harmonics) in the tide-gage record are calculated. The frequencies used in the analysis are specified in advance from the basic frequencies given in Table 17.1.

Dispite its simplicity, the technique had disadvantages compared with the response method described below.

1. More than 17.6 years of data are needed to resolve the modulation of the lunar tides.
2. Amplitude accuracy of 10^{-3} of the largest term require that at least 39 frequencies be determined. Doodson found 400 frequencies were needed for an amplitude accuracy of 10^{-4} of the largest term.
3. Non-tidal variability introduces large errors into the calculated amplidudes

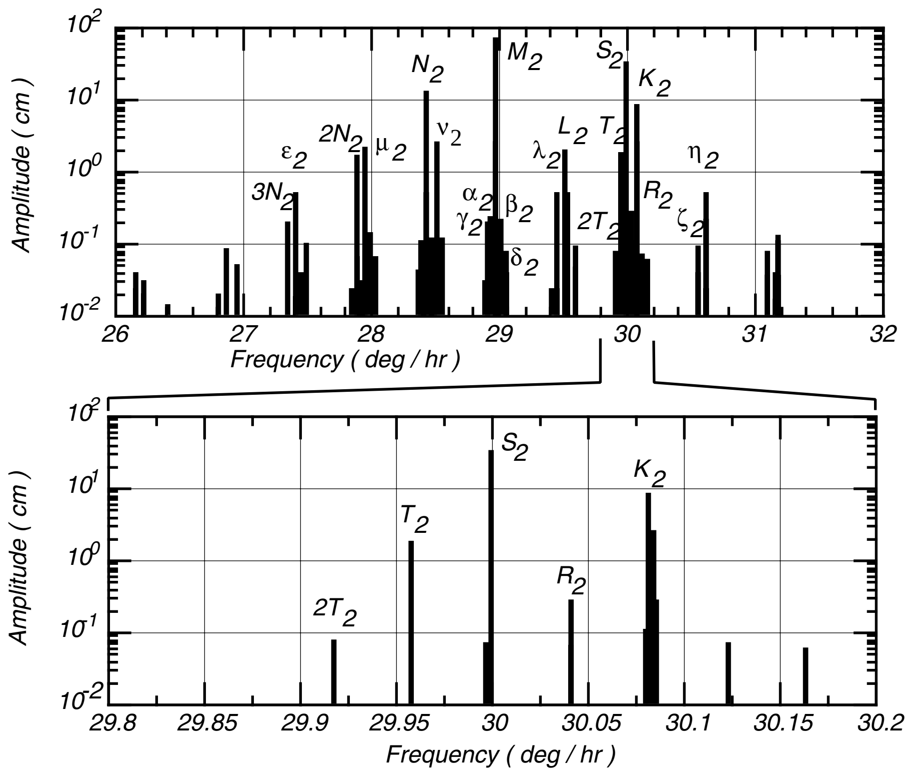


Figure 17.13 **Upper:** Spectrum of equilibrium tides with frequencies near twice per day. The spectra is split into groups separated by a cycle per month (1 deg/hr). **(Lower:** Expanded spectra of the S_2 group, showing splitting at a cycle per year (0.04 deg/hr). The finest splitting is at a cycle per 8.847 years (0.0046 deg/hr).

and phases of the weaker tidal constituents. The weaker tides have amplitudes smaller than variability at the same frequency due to other processes such as wind set up and currents near the tide gauge.

4. At many ports, the tide is non-linear, and many more tidal constituents are important. For some ports, the number of frequencies is unmanageable. When tides propagate into very shallow water, especially river estuaries, they steepen and become non-linear. This generates harmonics of the original frequencies. In extreme cases, the incoming waves steepens so much the leading edge is nearly vertical, and the wave propagates as a wall of water. This is a *tidal bore*.

The Response Method This method, developed by Munk and Cartwright (1966), calculates the relationship between the observed tide at some point and the tidal potential. The relationship is the spectral admittance between the major tidal constituents and the tidal potential at each station. The admittance is assumed to be a slowly varying function of frequency so that the admittance of the major constituents can be used for determining the response at nearby frequencies. Future tides are calculated by multiplying the tidal potential by the admittance function.

1. The technique requires only a few months of data.
2. The tidal potential is easily calculated, and a knowledge of the tidal frequencies is not needed.
3. The admittance is $Z(f) = G(f)/H(f)$. $G(f)$ and $H(f)$ are the Fourier transforms of the potential and the tide gage data, and f is frequency.
4. The admittance is inverse transformed to obtain the admittance as a function of time.
5. The technique works only if the waves propagate as linear waves.

Tidal Prediction for Deep-Water Prediction of deep-ocean tides has been much more difficult than prediction of shallow-water tides because tide gauges were seldom deployed in deep water. All this changed with the launch of Topex/Poseidon. The satellite was placed into an orbit especially designed for observing ocean tides (Parke et al. 1987); and the altimetric system was sufficiently accurate to measure many components of the tide. Data from the satellite have now been used to determine deep-ocean tides with an accuracy of ± 2 cm. For most practical purposes, the tides are now known accurately for most of the ocean.

Several approaches have led to the new knowledge of deep-water tides using altimetry.

Prediction Using Hydrodynamic Theory Purely theoretical calculations of tides are not very accurate, especially because the dissipation of tidal energy is not well known. Nevertheless, theoretical calculations provide insight into processes incluencing ocean tides. Several processes must be considered:

1. The tides in one ocean basin perturb earth's gravitational field, and the mass in the tidal bulge attracts water in other ocean basins. The self-gravitational attraction of the tides must be included.
2. The weight of the water in the tidal bulge is sufficiently great that it deforms the sea floor. The earth deforms as an elastic solid, and the deformation extends thousands of kilometers.
3. The ocean basins have a natural resonance close to the tidal frequencies. The tidal bulge is a shallow-water wave on a rotating ocean, and it propagates as a high tide rotating around the edge of the basin. Thus the tides are a nearly resonant sloshing of water in the ocean basin. The actual tide heights in deep water can be higher than the equilibrium values noted in Table 17.2.
4. Tides are dissipated by bottom friction especially in shallow seas, by the flow over seamounts and mid-ocean ridges, and by the generation of internal waves over seamounts and at the edges of continental shelves. If the tidal forcing stopped, the tides would continue sloshing in the ocean basins for several days.

5. Because the tide is a shallow-water wave everywhere, its velocity depends on depth. Tides propagate more slowly over mid-ocean ridges and shallow seas. Hence, the distance between grid points in numerical models must be proportional to depth with very close spacing on continental shelves (LeProvost et al. 1994).
6. Internal waves generated by the tides produce a small signal at the sea surface near the tidal frequencies, but not phase-locked to the potential. The noise near the frequency of the tides causes the spectral cusps in the spectrum of sea-surface elevation first seen by Munk and Cartwright (1966). The noise is due to deep-water, tidally generated, internal waves.

To reduce the computational difficulties, the theory has been supplemented at times with measurements made by tide gauges at a few sites in the deep ocean, at islands, and at well exposed coastal sites. In these cases the theory is used to interpolate between the observations. Schwiderski (1980) used the method to calculate global maps of eleven tidal constituents on a 1°by 1°grid. globally with ±10 cm accuracy.

Altimetry Plus Response Method Several years of altimeter data from Topex/ Poseidon have been used with the response method to calculate deep-sea tides almost everywhere equatorward of 66° (Ma et al. 1994). The altimeter measured sea-surface heights in geocentric coordinates at each point along the subsatellite track every 9.97 days. The temporal sampling aliased the tides into long frequencies, but the aliased periods are precisely known and the tides can be recovered (Parke et al. 1987). Because the tidal record is shorter than 8 years, the altimeter data are used with the response method to obtain predictions for a much longer time.

Recent solutions by ten different groups, have accuracy of ± 2.8 cm in deep water (Andersen, Woodworth, and Flather, 1995). Work has begun to improve knowledge of tides in shallow water.

Maps produced by this method show the essential features of the deep-ocean tides (Figure 17.14). The tide consists of a crest that rotates counterclockwise around the ocean basins in the northern hemisphere, and in the opposite direction in the southern hemisphere. Points of minimum amplitude are called *amphidromes*. Highest tides tend to be along the coast.

Altimetry Plus Numerical Models Altimeter data can be used directly with numerical models of the tides to calculate tides in all areas of the ocean from deep water all the way to the coast. Thus the technique is especially useful for determining tides near coasts and over sea-floor features where the altimeter ground track is too widely spaced to sample the tides well in space. Tide models use finite-element grids similar to the one shown in figure 15.4. Recent numerical calculations by (LeProvost et al. 1994; LeProvost, Bennett, and Cartwright, 1995) give global tides with ± 2–3 cm accuracy and full spatial resolution.

Further improvements will lead to solutions at the ultimate limits of practical accuracy, which is about ± 1–2 cm. The limit is set by noise from internal waves with tidal frequancy, and the small, long-term variations of depth of the ocean. Changing heat content of the ocean produces changes in oceanic topography of

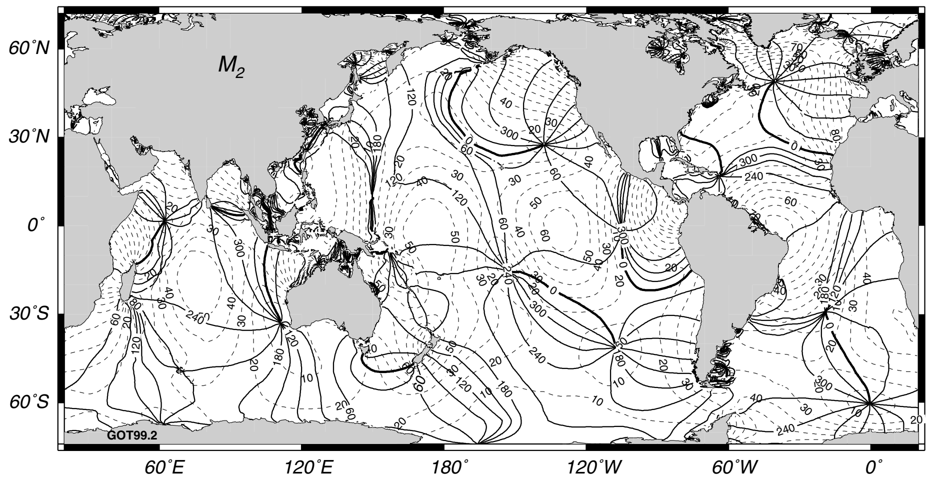


Figure 17.14 Global map of M_2 tide calculated from Topex/Poseidon observations of the height of the sea surface combined with the response method for extracting tidal information. Full lines are contours of constant tidal phase, contour interval is 30°. Dashed lins are lines of constant amplitute, contour interval is 10 cm. (From Richard Ray, NASA Goddard Space Flight Center).

a few centimeters, and this changes ever so slightly the velocity of shallow-water waves.

Tidal Dissipation Tides dissipate 3.75 ± 0.08 TW of power (Kantha, 1998), of which 3.5 TW are dissipated in the ocean, and much smaller amounts in the atmosphere and solid earth. The dissipation increases the length of day by about 2.07 milliseconds per century, it causes the semimajor axis of the moon's orbit to increase by 3.86 cm/yr, and it mixes water masses in the ocean.

The calculations of dissipation from Topex/Poseidon observations of tides are remarkably close to estimates from lunar-laser ranging, astronomical observations, and ancient eclipse records. Our knowledge of the tides is now sufficiently good that we can begin to use the information to study mixing in the ocean, which has important implications for understanding the abyssal circulation in the ocean (Munk and Wunsch, 1998).

17.6 Important Concepts

1. Waves propagating into shallow water are refracted by features of the sea floor, they eventually break on the beach where the wave breaking drives near-shore currents including long-shore currents, rip currents, and edge waves.
2. Storm surges are driven by strong winds in storms close to shore. The amplitude of the surge is a function of wind speed, the slope of the seafloor, and the propagation of the storm
3. Tides are important for navigation; they influence accurate geodetic measurements; they change the orbits and rotation of planets, moons, and stars in galaxies.

4. Tides are produced by a combination of time-varying gravitational potential of the moon and sun and the centrifugal forces generated as earth rotates about the common center of mass of the earth-moon-sun system.
5. Tides have six fundamental frequencies. The tide is the superposition of hundreds of tidal constituents, each having a frequency that is the sum and difference of five fundamental frequencies.
6. Shallow water tides are predicted using tide measurements made in ports and other locations along the coast. Tidal records of just a few months duration can be used to predict tides many years into the future.
7. Tides in deep water are calculated from altimetric measurements, especially Topex/Poseidon measurements. As a result, deep water tides are known almost everywhere with an accuracy approaching ± 2 cm.
8. The dissipation of tidal energy in the ocean transfers angular momentum from the moon to the earth, causing the day to become longer, and it mixes water masses.

References

Apel J.R. 1987. *Principles of Ocean Physics*. New York: Academic Press.

Andersen O.B., P.L. Woodworth, and R.A. Flather. 1995. Intercomparison of recent ocean tide models. *J. Geophysical Research* 100 (C12): 25,262–25,282.

Arthur R.S. 1960. A review of the calculation of ocean currents at the equator. *Deep-Sea Research* 6 (4): 287–297.

Atlas R., R.N. Hoffman, and S.C. Bloom. 1993. Surface wind velocity over the oceans. In *Atlas of satellite observations related to global change*. Edited by R. J. Gurney, J. L. Foster and C. L. Parkinson. 129–140. Cambridge: University Press.

Atlas R., R.N. Hoffman, S.C. Bloom, J.C. Jusem, and J. Ardizzone. 1996. A multiyear global surface wind velocity dataset using SSM/I wind observations. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 77 (5): 869–882.

Baker D.J. 1981. Ocean instruments and experiment design. In *Evolution of Physical Oceanography: Scientific Surveys in Honor of Henry Stommel*. Edited by B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch. 396–433. Cambridge: MIT Press.

Barnett T.P. 1981. Statistical prediction of North American air temperatures from Pacific predictors. *Monthly Weather Review* 109 (5): 1021–1041.

Barnett T.P., M. Latif, N.E. Graham, M. Flugel, S. Pazan, and W. White. 1993. ENSO and ENSO-related predictability. Part I: Prediction of equatorial Pacific sea surface temperature in a hybred coupled ocean-atmosphere model. *Journal of Climate* 6: 1545–1566.

Barnier B., L. Siefridt, and P. Marchesiello. 1995. Thermal forcing for a global ocean circulation model using a three-year climatology of ECMWF analyses. *Journal of Marine Systems* 6: 393–380.

Batchelor G.K. 1967. *An Introduction to Fluid Dynamics*. Cambridge: The University Press.

Baumgartner A., and E. Reichel. 1975. *The World Water Balance*. New York: Elsevier.

Beardsley R.C., A.G. Enriquez, C.A. Friehe, and C.A. Alessi. 1997. Intercomparison of aircraft and buoy measurements of wind speed and wind stress during SMILE. *Journal of Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology* 14: 969–977.

Bennett A.F. 1992. *Inverse Methods in Physical Oceanography*. Cambridge: The University Press.

Berlinski , D. 1996. The end of materialist science. *Forbes ASAP* (December 2, 1996): 146–160.

Binder R.C. 1949. *Fluid Mechanics*. Second ed. New York: Prentice–Hall, Inc.

Bjerknes J. 1966. The possible response of the atmospheric Hadley circulation to equatorial anomalies of ocean temperature. *Tellus* 4: 820-929.

Bjerknes J. 1972. Large-scale atmospheric response to the 1964–65 Pacific equatorial warming. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 2 (3): 212–217.

Bjerknes V. and J.W. Sandström. 1910. Dynamic Meteorology and Hydrography, Part I. Statics. Carnegie Institution of Washington DC, Publication No. 88.

Blumberg A.F., and G.L. Mellor. 1987. A description of a three-dimensional ocean circulation model. In: *Three-Dimensional Coastal Ocean Models.* Edited by N. S. Heaps. 1–16. Washington, DC: American Geophysical Union.

Bond G., H. Heinrich, W. Broecker, L. Labeyrie, J. McManus, J. Andrews, S. Huon, R. Jantschik, S. Clasen, C. Simet, K. Tedesco, M. Klas, G. Bonani, and S. Ivy. 1992. Evidence for massive discharges of icebergs into the North Atlantic ocean during the last glacial period. *Nature* 360, 245–.

Born G. H., Tapley, B. D., Ries, J. C., and Stewart, R. H. (1986). Accurate Measurement of Mean Sea Level Changes by Altimetric Satellites. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 91(C10): 11,775–11,782.

Boville B.A., and P.R. Gent. 1998. The NCAR Climate System Model, Version One. *Journal of Climate* 11 (6): 1115-1130.

Boyle E. 1996. Deep water distillation. *Nature* 379: 679–680.

Bowden K.F. 1962. Turbulence. In *The Sea Volume 1.* Edited by M. N. Hill. 802–825. New York: Interscience Publishers, John Wiley and Sons.

Broecker W.S. 1981. Geochemical tracers and ocean circulation. In *Evolution of Physical Oceanography: Scientific Surveys in Honor of Henry Stommel*. Edited by B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch. 434–461. Cambridge: MIT Press.

Broecker W.S., and T.–H. Peng. 1982. *Tracers in the Sea*. Palisades, NY: Lamont-Doherty Geological Observatory, Columbia University.

Broecker W.S. 1997. Thermohaline circulation, the Achilles heel of our climate system: Will man-made CO^2 upset the current balance? *Science* 278 (5343): 1582–1588.

Bryan K. 1969. A numerical method for the study of the world ocean. *J. Computational Physics* 4: 347–376.

Cane M.A. 1983. Oceanographic events during El Niño. *Science* 222 (4629): 1,189–1,210.

Carritt D.E., and J.H. Carpenter. 1959. The composition of sea water and the salinity-chlorinity-density problems. National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council, Report 600: 67–86.

Cess R.D., M.H. Zhang, P.Minnis, L.Corsetti, E.G. Dutton, B.W. Forgan, D.P. Garber, W.L. Gates, J.J. Hack, E.F. Harrison, X. Jing, J.T. Kiehl, C.N. Long, J.-J. Morcrette, G.L. Potter, V. Ramanathan, B. Subasilar, C.H. Whitlock, D.F. Young, and Y. Zhou. 1995. Absorption of solar radiation by clouds: Observations versus models. *Science* 267 (5197): 496–499.

Chambers D. P., Tapley, B. D., and Stewart, R. H. (1998). Measuring heat storage changes in the equatorial Pacific: A comparison between TOPEX altimetry and Tropical Atmosphere-Ocean buoys. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 103(C9): 18,591–18,597.

Charney J.G. 1955. The Gulf Stream as an inertial boundary layer. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 41 (10): 731–740.

Charnock H. 1955. Wind stress on a water surface. *Quarterly Journal Royal Meteorological Society* 81: 639–640.

Charnock H. 1987. Ocean currents and meridional transfers. Quarterly *J. the Royal Meteorological Society Q.J.R. Meteorol. Soc.* 113 (475): 3–18.

Chen D., S.E. Zebiak, A.J. Busalacchi, and M.A. Cane. 1995. An improved proceedure for El Niño forecasting: Implications for predictability. *Science* 269 (5231): 1699–1702.

Chereskin T.K., and D. Roemmich. 1991. A comparison of measured and wind-derived Ekman transport at 11°N in the Atlantic Ocean. *J. Physical Oceanography* 21 (6): 869–878.

Chelton D.B.and Freilich, M.H. 1985. Sampling errors in scatterometer and altimeter data. U.S. WOCE Planning Report Number 1: 69–84.

Chen C.–T., and F.J. Millero. 1977. Speed of sound in seawater at high pressure. *J. Acoustical Society of America* 62 (5): 1129–1135.

Chen D., S.E. Zebiak, A.J. Busalacchi, and M.A. Cane. 1995. An improved proceedure for El Niño foercasting: Implications for predictability. *Science* 269 (5231): 1699–1702.

Coakley J.A., and F.P. Bretherton. 1982. Cloud cover from high resolution scanner data: Detecting and allowing for partially filled fields of view. *J. Geophys. Research* 87 (C7): 4917–4932.

Couper A. (Ed.). 1983. *The Times Atlas of the Oceans*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Company.

Cox M.D. 1975. A baroclinic model of the world ocean: Preliminary results. In *Numerical Models of Ocean Circulation*: 107-120. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences.

Cox R.A., F. Culkin, and J.P. Riley 1967. The electrical conductivity/chlorinity relationship in natural sea-water. *Deep-Sea Research* 14: 203–220.

Cromwell T., R.B. Montgomery, and E.D. Stroup. 1954. Equatorial undercurrent in Pacific Ocean revealed by new methods. *Science* 119 (3097): 648–649.

Cushman-Roisin B. 1994. *Introduction to Geophysical Fluid Dynamics*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall.

Cutchin D.L., and R.L. Smith. 1973. Continental shelf waves: Low-frequency variations in sea level and currents over the Oregon continental shelf. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 3 (1): 73–82.

Dabberdt W.F., D.H. Lenschow, T.W. Horst, P.R. Zimmerman, S.P. Oncley, and A.C. Delany. 1993. Atmosphere-Surface exchange measurements. *Science* 260 (5113): 1472–1481.

Daley R. 1991. *Atmospheric Data Analysis*. Cambridge: The University Press.

Danabasoglu G., J.C. McWilliams, and p.R. Gent. 1994. The role of mesoscale tracer transports in the global ocean circulation. *Science* 264 (5162): 1123–1126.

Dansgaard W., and e. al. 1993. Evidence for general instability of past climate from a 250-kyr ice core record. *Nature* 364: 218–220.

Darnell W.L., Staylor, F., Gupta, S.K. & Denn, F.M. 1988. Estimation of surface insolation using sun-synchronous satellite data. *J. Climate* 1 (8): 820–835.

Darnell W.L., W.F. Staylor, S.K. Gupta, N.A. Ritchey, and A.C. Wilbur. 1992. Seasonal variation of surface radiation budget derived from International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project C1 data. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 97: 15,741–15,760.

Darwin Sir G.H. 1911. *The Tides and Kindred Phenomena in the Solar System*. 3rd ed. London: John Murray.

DaSilva A., C.C. Young, and S. Levitus. 1995. Atlas of surface marine data 1994. Vol. 1: Algorithms and proceedures. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Report.

Davis R.A. 1987. *Oceanography: An Introduction to the Marine Environment*. Dubuque: Wm. C. Brown Publishers.

Davis R.E., R. DeSzoeke, and P. Niiler. 1981. Variability in the upper ocean during MILE. Part II: Modeling the mixed layer response. *Deep-Sea Research* 28A (12): 1453–1475.

Davis R.E., D.C. Webb, L.A. Regier, and J. Dufour. 1992. The Autonomous Lagrangian Circulation Explorer (ALACE). *J. Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology* 9: 264–285.

Defant A. 1961. *Physical Oceanography*. New York: Macmillan Company.

Deser C., and M.L. Blackmon. 1993. Surface climate variations over the North Atlantic ocean during winter: 1900–1989. *J. Climate* 6 (9): 1743–1753.

Dietrich G. 1970. *Ozeanographie*. Brunswick.

Dietrich G., K. Kalle, W. Krauss, and G. Siedler. 1980. *General Oceanography.* 2nd ed. Translated by Susanne and Hans Ulrich Roll. New York: John Wiley and Sons (Wiley-Interscience).

Dittmar W. 1884. Report on researches into the composition of ocean water, collected by the HMS Challenger. *Challenger Reports, Physics and Chemistry* 1.

Danabasoglu G., J.C. McWilliams, and p.R. Gent. 1994. The role of mesoscale tracer transports in the global ocean circulation. *Science* 264 (5162): 1123–1126.

Doodson A.T. 1922. Harmonic development of the tide-generating potential. *Procceding of the Royal Society of London* A 100: 305–329.

Dorman C.E., and R.H. Bourke. 1979. Precipitation over the Pacific Ocean, 30°S to 60°N. *Monthly Weather Review* 107: 896–910.

Drazin P.G., and W.H. Reid. 1981. *Hydrodynamic Stability.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Dushaw B.D., P.F. Worcester, B.D. Cornuelle, and B.M. Howe. 1993. On equations for the speed of sound in sea water. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 93: 255–275.

Duxbury A.C., and A.B. Duxbury. 1994. *An Introduction to the World's Oceans*. Fourth ed. Dubuque, Iowa: Wm. C. Brown Publishers.

Ebbesmeyer C.C., and W.J. Ingraham. 1992. Shoe spill in the North Pacific. *EOS, Transactions of the American Geophysical Union* 73 (34): 361, 365.

Ebbesmeyer C.C., and W.J. Ingraham. 1994. Pacific toy spill fuels ocean current pathways research. *EOS Transactions of the American Geophysical Union* 75 (37): 425, 427, 430.

Ekman V.W. 1905. On the influence of the Earth's rotation on ocean currents. *Arkiv for Matematik, Astronomi, och Fysik*: 2 (11).

Ezer T., and G.L. Mellor. 1995. On the interpentadal variability of the North Atlantic Ocean: Model simulated changes in transport, meridional heat flux amd coastal sea level bettween 1955–1959 and 1970–1974. *J. Geophysical Research* 100 (C6): 10,559–10,566.

Feynman R.P., R.B. Leighton, and M. Sands. 1964. *The Feynman Lectures on Physics.* Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.

Fofonoff N.P. 1962a. Physical properties of sea–water. In *The Sea.* Edited by M. N. Hill. 3-30. New York: Interscience Publishers, John Wiley & Sons.

Fofonoff N.P. 1962b. The Dynamics of Ocean Currents. In The Sea. Edited by M. N. Hill. 323–395. New York: Interscience Publishers, John Wiley & Sons.

Fofonoff N.P., and R.C. Millard. 1983. Algorithms for computation of fundamental properties of sea water. UNESCO Technical Papers in Marine Science 44.

Friednam R.M. 1989. *Appropriating the Weather. Vilhelm Bjerknes and the Construction of a Modern Meteorology.* Ithica and London: Cornell University Press.

Friedrichs M.A.M., and M.M. Hall. 1993. Deep circulation in the tropical North Atlantic. *Journal of Marine Research* 51 (4): 697–736.

Freilich M.H., and R.S. Dunbar. 1999. The accuracy of the NSCAT 1 vector winds: Comparisons with National Data Buoy Center buoys. *Journal of Geophysical Research* submitted

Frouin R., Gautier, C. & Morcrette, J-J. 1988. Downward long wave irradiance at the ocean surface from satellite data: Methodology and in situ validation. *J. Geophys. Res.* 93 (C1): 597–619.

Fu L.–L., E.J. Christensen, C.A. Yamarone, M. Lefebvre, Y. Menard, M. Dorrer, and P. Escudier. 1994. TOPEX/POSEIDON mission overview. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,369–24,381.

Gargett A.E., and G. Holloway. 1992. Sensitivity of the GFDL ocean model to different diffusivities of heat and salt. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 22 (10): 1158–1177.

Gates W.L., A. Henderson-Sellers, G.J. Boer, C.K. Folland, A. Kitoh, B.J. McAvaney, F. Semazzi, N. Smith, A.J. Weaver, and Q.-C. Zeng. 1996. *Climate Models – Evaluation.* In Climate Change 1995. Edited by J. T. Houghton, L. G. M. Filho, B. A. Callander, N. Harris, A. Kattenberg and K. Maskell. 229–284. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Gates W.L. 1992. AMIP: The Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Project. *Bulletin American Meteorological Society* 73: 1962–1970.

Gent P.R., and J.C. McWilliams. 1990. Isopycnal mixing in ocean circulation models. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 20: 150–155.

Gleckler P.J., and B. Weare. 1997. Uncertainties in global ocean surface heat flux climatologies derived from ship observance. *Journal of Climate* 10: 2763–2781.

Gill A.E. 1982. *Atmosphere-Ocean Dynamics.* New York: Academic Press.

Gnadadesikan A. 1999. A simple predictive model for the structure of the oceanic pycnocline. *Science* 283 (5410): 2077–2079.

Goldenberg S.B., and J.J. O'Brien. 1981. *Monthly Weather Review* 109: 1190.

Goldstein S. 1965. *Modern Developments in Fluid Dynamics*: Two Volumes. New York: Dover Publications, Inc.

Gordon H.R., D.K. Clark, J.W. Brown, O.B. Brown, R.H. Evans, and W.W. Broenkow. 1983. Phytoplankton pigment concentrations in the Middle Atlantic Bight: comparison of ship determinations and CZCS estimates. *Applied Physics* 22 (1): 20-36.

Gouretski V., and K. Jancke. 1995. A consistent pre-WOCE hydrographic data set for the south Atlantic: Station data and gridded fields. WOCE Report No. 127/95.

Gregg M.C. 1987. Diapycnal mixing in the thermocline: A review. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 92 (C5): 5,249–5,289.

Gregg M.C. 1991. The study of mixing in the ocean: a brief history. *Oceanography* 4 (1): 39–45.

Hackett B., L.P. Roed, B. Gjevik, E.A. Martinsen, and L.I. Eide. 1995. A review of the Metocean Modeling Project (MOMPOP) Part 2: Model validation study. In: *Quantitative Skill Assessment for Coastal Ocean Models.* Edited by D. R. Lynch and A. M. Davies. 307–327. Washington DC: American Geophysical Union.

Haidvogel D.B., and A. Beckmann. 1998. Numerical models of the coastal ocean. In *The Sea, Volume 10.* Edited by K. H. Brink and A. R. Robinson. 457–482. New York: John Wiley and Sons, Inc.

Hall M.M., and H.L. Bryden. 1982. Direct estimates and mechanisms of ocean heat transport. *Deep-Sea Research* 29: 339–359.

Harrison D.E. 1989. On climatological monthly mean wind stress and wind stress curl fields over the world ocean. *J. Climate* 2: 57.

Harrison D.E., and N.K. Larkin. 1996. The COADS sea level pressure signal: A near-global el Nino composite and time series view, 1946-1993. *Journal of Climate* 9 (12): 3025–3055.

Hartmann D.L. 1994. *Global Physical Climatology.* Academic Press.

Hasselmann K. 1961. On the non-linear energy transfer in a gravity-wave spectrum Part 1. General theory. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics* 12 (4): 481–500.

Hasselmann K. 1963a. On the non-linear energy transfer in a gravity wave spectrum. Part 2. Conservation theorems; wave-particle analogy; irreversibility. *J. Fluid Mechanics* 15 (2): 273–281.

Hasselmann K. 1963b. On the non-linear energy transfer in a gravity wave spectrum. Part 3. Evaluation of the energy flux and swell-sea interaction for a Neumann spectrum. *J. Fluid Mech.* 15 (3): 385–398.

Hasselmann K. 1966. Feynman diagrams and interaction rules of wave-wave scattering processes. *Rev. Geophys.* 4 (1): 1–32.

Hasselmann K. 1970. Wind–driven inertial oscillations. *Geophysical Fluid Dynamics* 1: 1 463–502.

Hasselmann K., T.P. Barnett, E. Bouws, H. Carlson, D.E. Cartwright, K. Enke, J.A. Ewing, H. Gienapp, D.E. Hasselmann, P. Kruseman, A. Meerburg, P. Mller, D.J. Olbers, K. Richter, W. Sell, and H. Walden. 1973. Measurements of wind-wave growth and swell decay during the Joint North Sea Wave Project (JONSWAP). *Ergnzungsheft zur Deutschen Hydrographischen Zeitschrift Reihe* A(8) (Nr. 12): 95.

Hasselmann K., and S. Hasselmann. 1991. On the nonlinear mapping of an ocean wave spectrum into a synthetic aperture radar image spectrum and its inversion. *J. Geophysical Research* C96 10,713–10,729.

Hellerman S., and M. Rosenstein. 1983. Normal monthly windstress over the world ocean with error estimates. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 13: 1093–1104.

Hinze J.O. 1975. *Turbulence*. 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Hinzpeter H. 1980. Atmospheric radiation measurements. In *Air-Sea Interaction Instruments and Methods*. Edited by F. Dobson, L. Hasse and R. Davis. 491–507. New Tork: Plenum Press.

Hirst A.C., S.P. O'Farrell, and H.B. Gordon. 2000. Comparison of a coupled ocean-atmosphere model with and without oceanic eddy-induced advection. Part I: Oceanic spinup and control integration. *Journal of Climate* 13 (1): 139–163.

Hoffman D., and O.J. Karst. 1975. The theory of the Rayleigh distribution and some of its applications. *J. Ship Research* 19 (3): 172–191.

Holloway G. 1986. Eddies, waves, circulation, and mixing: statistical geofluid mechanics. *Annual Reviews of Fluid Mechanics* 18: 91–147.

Holloway G. 1986. Estimation of oceanic eddy transports from satellite altimetry. *Nature* 323 (6085): 243–244.

Holloway 1994. Representing eddy forcing in models. WOCE Notes 6(3): 7–9.

Hollingsworth A., D.B. Shaw, P. Lonnberg, L. Illari, and A.J. Simmons. 1986. Monitoring of observation and analysis by a data assimilation system. *Monthly Weather Review* 114: 861–879.

Horikawa K. 1988. *Nearshore Dynamics and Coastal Processes*. Tokyo: University of Tokyo Press.

Houghton J.T. 1977. *The Physics of Atmospheres*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Houghton J.T., L.G.M. Filho, B.A. Callander, N. Harris, A. Kattenberg, and K. Maskell. 1996. *Climate Change 1995: The Science of Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hoyt D.V., and K.H. Schatten. 1997. *The Role of the Sun in Climate Change*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Huffman G.J., R.F. Adler, B. Rudolf, U. Schneider, and P.R. Keehm. 1995. Global precipitation estimates based on a technique for combining satellite-based estimates, rain gauge analysis, and NWP model precipitation information. *Journal of Climate* 8: 1284–1295.

Huffman G.J., R.F. Adler, P.A. Arkin, A. Chang, R. Ferraro, A. Gruber, J. Janowiak, A. McNab, B. Rudolf, and U. Schneider. 1997. The Global Precipitation Climatology Project (GPCP) combined precipitation data set. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 78 (1): 5–20.

Ichiye T., and J. Petersen. 1963. The anomalous rainfall of the 1957–1958 winter in the equatorial central Pacific arid area. *Journal of the Meteorological Society of Japan* Series II, 41: 172–182.

International Hydrographic Bureau 1953. Limits of oceans and seas, 3rd ed. Special Report No. 53, Monte Carlo.

Isemer H.J., and L. Hasse. 1987. *The Bunker Climate Atlas of the North Atlantic*. Volume 2. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

Jelesnianski C.P. 1967. Numerical computations of storm surges with bottom stress. *Monthly Weather Review* 95 (11): 740–756.

Jelesnianski C.P. 1970. "Bottom stress time history" in linearized equations of motion for storm surges. *Monthly Weather* Review 98 (6): 462–478.

Johns E., D.R. Watts, and H.T. Rossby. 1989. A test of geostrophy in the Gulf Stream. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 94 (C3): 3211–3222.

Ji M., A. Leetma, and V. Kousky. 1996. Coupled mosel predictions of ENSO during the 1980s and the 1990s at the National Centers for Environmental Prediction. *Journal of Climate* 9 (12): 3105–3120.

Ji M., D.W. Behringer, and A. Leetmaa. 1998. An improved coupled model for ENSO prediction and implications for ocean initialization. Part II: The coupled model. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 126 (4): 1022–1034.

Johns T.C., R.E. Carnell, J.F. Crossley, J.M. Gregory, J.F.B. Mitchell, C.A. Senior, S.F.B. Trett, and R.A. Wood. 1997. The second Hadley Centre coupled ocean-atmosphere GCM: model description, spinup and validation. *Climate Dynamics* 13 (2): 103–134.

Joseph J., and H. Sender. 1958. Uber die horizontale diffusion im meere. textDeutsches Hydrographiches Zeitung 11: 49–77.

JPOTS Editorial panel 1991. *Processing of Oceanographic Station Data*. Paris: UNESCO.

Iselin C. 1936. A study of the circulation of the Western North Atlantic. *Phys. Oceanogr. and Meteor.* 6 (4): 101.

Kalnay E., M. Kanamitsu, R. Kistler, W. Collins, D. Deaven, L. Gandin, M. Iredell, S. Saha, G. White, J. Woollen, Y. Zhu, M. Chelliah, W. Ebisuzaki, W. Higgins, J. Janowiak, K.C. Mo, C. Ropelewski, J. Wang, A. Leetma, R. Reynolds, R. Jenne, and D. Joseph. 1996. The NCEP/NCAR 40–year reanalysis project. *Bulletin American Meteorological Society* 77: 437–471.

Kantha L.H. 1998. Tides–A modern perspective. *Marine Geodesy* 21: 275–297.

Kent E.C., and P.K. Taylor. 1997. Choice of a Beaufort Scale. *Journal of Atmospheric and Oceanic Technology* 14 (2): 228–242.

Kerr R.A. 1998. Models win big in forecasting El Nino. *Science* 280 (5363): 522–523.

Kiehl J.T., and K.E. Trenberth. 1996. Earth's annual global mean energy budget. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 78 (2): 197–208.

Kistler R.E., E. Kalnay, W. Collins, S. Saha, G. White, J. Woolen, M. Chelliah, and W. Ebisuzaki. 2000. The NCEP/NCAR 50-year reanalysis. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* See: http://metosrv2.umd.edu/ ekalnay/Reanalysis

Komen G.J., L. Cavaleri, M. Donelan, K. Hasselmann, S. Hasselmann, and P.A.E.M. Janssen. 1996. *Dynamics and Modelling of Ocean Waves.* 1st paperback ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Kundu P.K. 1990. *Fluid Mechanics*. San Diego: Academic Press, Inc.

Kunze E., and J.M. Toole. 1997. Tidally driven vorticity, diurnal shear, and turbulence atop Fieberling Seamount. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 27 (2): 2,663–2,693.

Lamb H. 1945. *Hydrodynamics*. 6th ed. New York: Dover.

Lang K.R. 1980. *Astrophysical Formulae: A Compendium for the Physicist and Astrophysicist*. 2nd ed. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

Langer J. 1999. Computing in physics: Are we taking it too seriously? Or not seriously enough? *Physics Today* 52 (7): 11–13.

Langmuir I. 1938. *Science* 87: 119.

Latif M., A. Sterl, E. Maier-Reimer, and M.M. Junge. 1993. Structure and predictability of the El Niño/Southern Oscillation phenomenon in a coupled ocean-atmosphere model. *Journal of Climate* 6: 700–708.

Lawrence M.G., J. Landgraf, P. Jckel, and B. Eaton. 1999. Artifacts in global atmospheric modeling: Two recent examples. textitEOS Transactions American Geophysical Union 80 (11): 123, 128.

Lean J., J. Beer, and R. Bradley. 1995. Reconstruction of solar irradiance since 1610: Implications for climate change. *Geophysical Research Letters* 22 (23): 3195–3198.

Leetma A., and A.F. Bunker. 1978. Updated charts of the mean annual wind stress, convergences in the Ekman layers and Sverdrup transports in the North Atlantic. *Journal of Marine Research* 36: 311–322.

Leetma A., J.P. McCreary, and D.W. Moore. 1981. Equatorial currents; observation and theory. In: *Evolution of Physical Oceanography*. Edited by B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch. 184–196. Cambridge: MIT Press.

LeProvost C., M.L. Genco, F. Lyard, P. Vincent, and P. Canceil. 1994. Spectroscopy of the world ocean tides from a finite element hydrodynamic model. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,777–24,797.

Levitus S. 1982. *Climatological Atlas of the World Ocean*. NOAA, Professional Paper 13.

Lewis E.L. 1980. The Practical Salinity Scale 1978 and its antecedents. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering* OE-5: 3–8.

Lionello P., H. Günther, and P.A.E.M. Janssen. 1992. Assimilation of altimeter data in a global third–generation wave model. *J. Geophysical Research* C97: 14,453–14,474.

List R.J. 1966. *Smithsonian Meteorological Tables*. 6th ed. Washington DC: The Smithsonian Institution.

Liu W. T., Katsaros, K. B., & Businger, J. A. (1979). Bulk parameterization of air-sea exchanges of heat and water vapor, including the molecular constraints at the interface. *Journal of Atmospheric Science* 36: 1722–1735.

Liu W.T. 1988. Moisture and latent heat flux variabilities in the tropical Pacific derived from satellite data. *J. Geophys. Res.* 93 (C6): 6749–6760.

Longuet-Higgins M.S. 1962. Resonant Interactions between two trains of gravity waves. *J. Fluid Mech.* 12 (3): 32–332.

Longuet-Higgins M.S., D.E. Cartwright, and N.D. Smith. 1963. Observations of the directional spectrum of sea waves using the motions of a floating buoy. In *Ocean Wave Spectra*. 111-136. New York: Prentice Hall.

Longuet-Higgins M.S., and O.M. Phillips. 1962. Phase velocity effects in tertiary wave interactions. *J. Fluid Mech.* 12 (3): 333–336.

Lowell T.V., C.J. Heusser, B.G. Andersen, P.I. Moreno, A. Houser, L.E. Heusser, C. Schlüchter, D.R. Marchant, and G.H. Denton. 1995. Interhemispheric correaltions of late Pleistocene Glacial Events. *Science* 269 (5230): 1541–1549.

Lukas R., and F. Santiago–Mandujano. 1995. Interannual variability of Pacific deep and bottom waters observed in the Hawaii Ocean Time-Series. *Deep-Sea Research* Submitted

Lukas R. 1994. HOT results show interannual variability of Pacific deep and bottom waters. *WOCE Notes* 6 (2): 1.

Lynch D.R., J.T.C. Ip, C.E. Naimie, and F.E. Werner. 1996. Comprehensive coastal circulation model with application to the Gulf of Maine. *Continental Shelf Research* 16 (7): 875–906.

Lynn R.J., and J.L. Reid. 1968. Characteristics and circulation of deep and abyssal waters. *Deep-Sea Research* 15 (5): 577–598.

MacKenzie K.V. 1981. Nine-term equation for sound speed in the ocean. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 70: 807–812.

McIntyre M.E. 1981. On the 'wave momentum' myth. *J. Fluid Mechanics* 106: 331–347.

McNally G.J., W.C. Patzert, A.D. Kirwan, and A.C. Vastano. 1983. The near-surface circulation of the North Pacific using satellite tracked drifting buoys. Journal of Geophysical Research 88(C12): 7,507–7,518.

McPhaden M.J. 1999. Genesis and evolution of the 1997-1998 El Nino. *Science* 283 (5404): 950–954.

Ma X.C., C.K. Shum, R.J. Eanes, and B.D. Tapley. 1994. Determination of ocean tides from the first year of Topex/Poseidon altimeter measurements. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,809–24,820.

Maltrud M.E., R.D. Smith, A.J. Semtner, and R.C. malone. 1998. Global eddy-resolving ocean simulations driven by 1985–1995 atmospheric winds. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 103 (C13): 30,825–30,852.

Margules M. 1906. Uber Temperaturschichtung in stationarbewegter und ruhender Luft. *Meteorologische Zeitschrift* 241–244.

Marotzke J., and J.R. Scott. 1999. Convective mixing and the thermohaline circulation. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 29 (11): 2962–2970.

Marotzke J. 2000. Abrupt climate change and thermohaline circulation: Mechanisms and predictability. *Proceedings National Academy of Sciences* 97 (4): 1347–1350.

Matthäus , W. 1969. Zur entdeckungsgeschichte des Äquatorialen Unterstroms im Atkantischen Ozean. *Beitr. Meereskde* 23: 37–70.

May D.A., M.M. Parmenter, D.S. Olszewski, and B.D. McKenzie. 1998. Operational processing of satellite sea surface temperature retrievals at the Naval Oceanographic Office. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 79 (3): 397–407.

Mellor G.L., and T. Yamada. 1982. Development of a turbulence closure model for geophysical fluid problems. *Reviews of Geophysics and Space Physics* 20 (4): 851–875.

Menard H.W., and S.M. Smith. 1966. Hypsometry of ocean basin provinces. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 71: 4305–4325.

Miles J.W. 1957. On the generation of surface waves by shear flows. *J. Fluid Mech.* 3(2) 185–204.

Millero F.J., G. Perron, and J.F. Desnoyers. 1973. Heat capacity of seawater solutions from 5°to 35°C and 0.05 to $22°/_{\circ\circ}$ chlorinity. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 78 (21): 4499–4506.

Millero F.J., and A. Poisson. 1981. International one-atmosphere equation of state of seawater.*Deep-Sea Research* 28A (6): 625–629.

Millero F.J., C.-T. Chen, A. Bradshaw, and K. Schleicher. 1980. A new high pressure equation of state for seawater. *Deep-Sea Research* 27A: 255–264.

Montgomery R.B., and E.D. Stroup. 1962. Equatorial Waters and Currents at 150°W in July–August, 1952. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins Press.

Moskowitz L. 1964. Estimates of the power spectrums for fully developed seas for wind speeds of 20 to 40 knots. *J. Geophysical Research* 69 (24): 5161–5179.

Moum J.N., and D.R. Caldwell. 1985. Local influences on shear-flow turbulence in the equatorial ocean. *Science* 230: 315–316.

Müller P. 1995. Ertel's potential vorticity theorem in physical oceanography. *Reviews of Geophysics* 33 (1): 67–97.

Munk W.H. 1950. On the wind-driven ocean circulation. *J. Meteorology* 7 (2): 79–93.

Munk W.H. 1966. Abyssal recipes. *Deep-Sea Research* 13: 707–730.

Munk W.H., G.R. Miller, F.E. Snodgrass, and N.F. Barber. 1963. Directional recording of swell from distant storms. *Philosophical Transactions Royal Society of London* 255 (1062): 505-584.

Munk W.H., and D.E. Cartwright. 1966. Tidal spectroscopy and prediction. *Philosophical Transactions Royal Society London* Series A. 259 (1105): 533–581.

Munk W.H., R.C. Spindel, A. Baggeroer, and T.G. Birdsall. 1994. The Heard Island feasibility test. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 96 (4): 2330–2342.

Munk W., P. Worcester, and C. Wunsch. 1995. *Ocean Acoustic Tomography*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Neal V.T., S. Neshyba, and W. Denner. 1969. Thermal stratification in the Arctic Ocean. *Science* 166 (3903): 373–374.

Nerem R.S., F.J. Lerch, J.A. Marshall, E.C. Pavlis, B.H. Putney, B.D. Tapley, R.J. Eanes, J.C. Ries, B.E. Schutz, C.K. Shum, M.M. Watkins, S.M. Klosko, J.C. Chan, S.B. Luthcke, G.B. Patel, N.K. Pavlis, R.G. Willianson, R.H. Rapp, B. Biancale, and F. Nouel. 1994. Gravity model improvements for Topex/ Poseidon: Joint Gravity Mosels 1 and 2. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,421–24, 447.

Nerem R. S. (1995). Global mean sea level variations from Topex/Poseidon altimeter data. *Science* 268(5211): 708–710.

Neumann G., and W.J. Pierson. 1966. *Principles of Physical Oceanography*. New Jersey: Prentice-Hall.

Newton P. 1999. A manual for planetary mamagement. *Nature* 400 (6743): 399.

Niiler P.P., R.E. Davis, and H.J. White. 1987. Water-following characteristics of a mixed layer drifter. *Deep-Sea Research* 34 (11): 1867–1881.

Niiler P.P., A.S. Sybrandy, K. Bi, P.M. Poulain, and D. Bitterman. 1995. Measurement of the water following capability of holey-sock and TRISTAR drifters. *Deep-Sea Research* 42 (11/12): 1951–1964.

NAS 1963. *Ocean Wave Spectra: Proceedings of a Conference*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc.

North G.R. & Nakamoto, S. 1989. Formalism for comparing rain estimation designs. *J. Atmos. & Oceanic Tech.* 6 (6): 985–992.

Orsi A.H., G.C. Johnson, and J.L. Bullister. 1999. Circulation, mixing, and production of Antarctic Bottom Water. *Progress in Oceanography* 43 55-109.

Open University 1989a. *Ocean Circulation*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Open University 1989b. *Seawater: Its Composition, Properties and Behaviour*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Open University 1989c. *The Ocean Basins: Their Structure and Evolution*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Open University 1989d. *Waves, Tides and Shallow Water–Processes*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Oppenheim A.V. & R.W. Schafer. 1975. *Digital Signal Processing.* Englewood Cliffs, New jersey: Prentice-Hall.

Pacanowski R., and S.G.H. Philander. 1981. Parameterization of vertical mixing in numerical models of tropical oceans. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 11: 14431451.

Pacanowski R.C., and S.M. Griffies. 1999 *MOM 3.0 Manual.* NOAA/Geophysical Fluid Dynamics Laboratory, Princeton, USA 08542.

Parke M.E., R.H. Stewart, D.L. Farless, and D.E. Cartwright. 1987. On the choice of orbits for an altimetric satellite to study ocean circulation and tides. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 92: 11,693–11,707.

Parker R.L. 1994. *Geophysical Inverse Theory.* Princeton: Princeton University Press.

Pearson F. 1990. *Map Projections: Theory and Applications.* Boca Raton, Florida: CRC Press. Inc.

Pedlosky J. 1987. *Geophysical Fluid Dynamics.* 2nd ed. Berlin: Springer Verlag.

Pedlosky J. 1996. *Ocean Circulation Theory.* Berlin: Springer–Verlag.

Peixoto J.P., and A.H. Oort. 1992. *Physics of Climate.* New York: American Institute of Physics.

Petty G.W. 1995. Frequencies and characteristics of global oceanic precipitation from shipboard present-weather reports. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 76 (9): 1593–1616.

Philander S.G.H., T. Yamagata, and R.C. Pacanowski. 1984. Unstable air-sea interactions in the tropics. *Journal of Atmospheric Research* 41: 604–613.

Philander S.G. 1990. *El Niño, La Niña, and the Southern Oscillation.* Academic Press, Inc.

Phillips , O.M. 1957. On the generation of waves by turbulent wind. *J. Fluid Mech.* 2 (5): 417–445.

Phillips O.M. 1960. On the dynamics of unsteady gravity waves of finite amplitude. Part I. The elementary interactions. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics* 9 (2): 193–217.

Phillips O.M. 1977. *The Dynamics of the upper ocean.* Second ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Pickard G.L., and W.J. Emery. 1990. *Descriptive Physical Oceanography: An Introduction.* Fifth Enlarged ed. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

Pierson W.J., and L. Moskowitz. 1964. A proposed spectral form for fully developed wind seas based on the similarity theory of S.A. Kitaigordskii. *J. Geophys. Research* 69: 5181–5190.

Pinet P.R. 1992. *Oceanography: An Introduction to Planet Oceanus.* Saint Paul: West Publishing Company.

Pond S., and G.L. Pickard. 1983. *Introductory Dynamical Oceanography.* 2nd ed. Pergamon Press.

Preston-Thomas H. 1990. The International Temperature Scale of 1990 (ITS-90). *Metrologia* 27 (1): 3–10.

Price J.F., R.A. Weller, and R. Pinkel. 1986. Diurnal cycling: Observations and models of the upper ocean response. textitJournal of Geophysical Research 91 (C7): 8,411–8,427.

Proudman J. 1916. On the motion of solids in a liquid posessing vorticity. *Proceedings Royal Society (London)* A 92: 408–424

Pugh D.T. 1987. *Tides, Surges, and Mean Sea-Level.* Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

Press W.H., S.A. Teukolsky, W.T. Vetterling, and B.P. Flannery. 1992. *Numerical Recipies in FORTRAN.* 2nd ed. Cambridge: University Press.

Rahmstorf S. 1995. Bifurcations of the Atlantic thermohaline circulation in response to changes in the hydrological cycle. *Nature* 378: 145–149.

Ralph E.A., and P.P. Niiler. 2000. Wind-driven currents in the tropical Pacific. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 29 (9): 2121–2129.

Ramanathan V., B. Subasilar, G.J. Zhang, W. Conant, R.D. Cess, J.T.Kiehl, H. Grassl, and L. Shi. 1995. Warm pool heat budget shortwave cloud forcing: A missing physics? *Science* 267 (5197): 499–503.

Rasmusson E.M., and T.H. Carpenter. 1982. Variations in tropical sea surface temperature and surface wind fields associated with the Southern Oscillation/El Niño. *Monthly Weather Review* 110: 354–384.

Rasmusson E.M., and J.M. Wallace. 1983. Meteorological Aspects of the El Niño/Southern Oscillation. *Science* 222: 1195–1202.

Reid R.O. 1948. The equatorial currents of the eastern Pacific as maintained by the stress of the wind. *Journal of Marine Research* 7 (2): 75–99.

Reynolds O. 1883. An experimental investigation of the circumstances which determine whether the motion of water will be direct or sinuous, and the law of resistance in parallel channels. *Philosophical Transactions, Royal Society London* 174: 935.

Reynolds R.W. 1988. A real–time global surface temperature analysis. *J. Climate* 1 (1): 75–86.

Reynolds R.W., and D.C. Marsico. 1993. An improved real-time global sea surface temperature analysis. *J. Climate* 6: 114–119.

Reynolds R.W., and T.M. Smith. 1994. Improved global sea surface temperature analysis using optimum interpolation. *J. Climate* 7: 929–948.

Reynolds R.W., and T.M. Smith. 1995. A high-resolution global sea surfac climatology. *J. Climate* 8 (6): 1571–1583.

Richardson E.G. 1961. *Dynamics of Real Fluids*. 2nd ed. London: Edward Arnolds.

Richardson P.L. 1981. Eddy kinetic energy in the North Atlantic from surface drifters. *J. Geophys. Res.* 88 (C7): 4355–4367.

Richardson P.L. 1993. Tracking Ocean Eddies. *American Scientist* 81: 261–271.

Rienecker M.M., R. Atlas, S.D. Schubert, and C.S. Willett. 1996. A comparison of surface wind products over the North Pacific Ocean. *J. Geophysical Research* 101 (C1): 1011–1023.

Ring Group R.H. Backus, G.R. Flierl, D.R. Kester, D.B. Olson, P.L. Richardson, A.C. Vastano, P.L. Richardson, A.C. Vastano, P.H. Wiebe, and J.H. Wormuth. 1981. Gulf Stream cold-core rings: Their physics, chemistry, and biology. Science 212 (4499): 1091-1100.

Rintoul S.R., and C. Wunsch. 1991. Mass, heat, oxygen and nutrient fluxes and budgets in the North Atlantic Ocean. *Deep-Sea Research* 38 (Supplement 1): S355–S377.

Malanotte-Rizzoli P. 1996. *Modern Approaches to Data Assimilation in Ocean Modeling*. Amsterdam: Elsevier.

Robinson A.R., J.A. Carton, C.N.K. Mooers, L.J. Walstad, E.F. Carter, M.M. Rienecker, J.A. Smith, and W.G. Leslie. 1984. A real-time dynamical forecast of ocean synoptic/mesoscale eddies. *Nature* 309: 781–783.

Robinson A.R., S.M. Glenn, M.A. Spall, L.J. Walstad, G.M. Gardner, and W.G. Leslie. 1989. Forecasting Gulf Stream meanders and rings. *EOS Transactions American Geophysical Union* 70: (45).

Roed L.P., B. Hackett, B. Gjevik, and L.I. Eide. 1995. A review of the Metocean Modeling Project (MOMPOP) Part 1: Model comparison study. In: *Quantitative Skill Assessment for Coastal Ocean Models*. Edited by D. R. Lynch and A. M. Davies. 285–305. Washington DC: American Geophysical Union.

Ropelewski C.F., and M.S. Halpert. 1987. Global and regional precipitation associated with El Niño/Southern Oscillation. *Monthly Weather Review* 115: 1606–1626.

Rossow W.B. & Schiffer, R.A. 1991. isccp Cloud Data Products. *Bull. American Meteorology Society*, 72 (1): 2–20.

Salby M.L., Hendon, H.H., Woodberry, K., and Tanaka, K. 1991. An analysis of global cloud imagery from multiple satellites. *Bull. American Meteorology Society*, 72 (2): 467–480.

Satake K., K. Shimazaki, Y. Tsuji, and K. Ueda. 1996. Time and size of a giant earthquake in Cascadia inferred from Japanese tsunami records of January 1700. *Nature* 379 (6562): 246249.

Saunders P.M. 1986. The accuracy of measurements of salinity, oxygen and temperature in the deep ocean. *J. Physical Oceanography* 16 (1): 189–195.

Schluessel P., L. Schanz, and G. Englisch. 1995. Retrieval of latent heat flux and long wave radiance at the sea surface from SSM/I and AVHRR measurements. *Advances in Space Research* 16: (10)107–(10)116.

Schmetz J. 1989. Towards a surface radiation climatology: Retrieval of downward irradiances from satellites. *Atmos. Res.* 23: 287–321.

Schmitt R.W., H. Perkins, J.D. Boyd, and M.C. Stalcup. 1987. C-SALT: An investigation of the thermohaline staircase in the western tropical North Atlantic. *Deep-Sea Research* 34 (10): 1655–1665.

Schmitt R.W., P.S. Bogden, and C.E. Dorman. 1989. Evaporation minus precipitation and density fluxes for the North Atlantic. *J. Physical Oceanography* 19: 1208–1221.

Schmitt R.W., and S.E. Wijffels. 1993. The role of the ocean in the global water cycle. *In Interactions Between Global Climate Subsystems*. Edited by G. A. McBean and M. Hantel. pp 77–84. Washington, DC: American Geophysical Union Geophysical Monograph 75.

Schmitt R.W. 1994. The ocean freshwater cycle. JSC Ocean Observing System Development Panel, Texas A&M University, College Station, Texas 40 pp..

Schmitz W.J. 1996. On the World Ocean Circulation: Volume I. Some Global Features/ North Atlantic Circulation. Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Technical Report WHOI-96-03.

Schubert S.D., R.B. Rood, and J. Pfaendtner. 1993. An assimilated dataset for Earth science applications. *Bulletin American Meteorological Society* 74 (12): 2331–2342.

Schwiderski E.W. 1980. Ocean tides. Part I: Global ocean tidal equations. *Marine Geodesy* 3: 161–217.

Schwiderski E.W. 1983. Atlas of ocean tidal charts and maps, Part I: The semidiurnal principal lunar tide M2. *Marine Geodesy* 6(3-4): 219–265.

Selby J.E.A., and R.A. McClatchey. 1975. Atmospheric transmittance from 0.25 to 28.5 mm: Computer code LOWTRAN 3. Air Force Cambridge Research Laboratories, Optical Physics Laboratory Technical Report TR-75-0255.

Semtner A.J. 1995. Modeling Ocean Circulation. *Science* 269 (5229): 1379–1385.

Semtner A.J. & R.M. Chervin 1988. A simulation of the global ocean circulation with resolved eddies. *J. Geophysical Research* 93: 15: 502–15,522 & 15,767–15,775.

Semtner A.J. & R.M. Chervin 1992. Ocean general circulation from a global eddy-resolving model. *J. Geophysical Research* 97: 5,493–5,550.

Service R.F. 1996. Rock chemistry traces ancient traders. *Science* 274 (5295): 2012–2013.

Sette O.E., and J.D. Isaacs. 1960. Symposium on "The Changing Pacific Ocean in 1957 and 1958". California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations Reports VII: 13–217.

Shamos M.H. 1995. *The Myth of Scientific Literacy*. New Brunswick: Rutger University Press.

Shepard F.P. 1963. *Submarine Geology.* 2nd ed. New York: Harper and Row.

Slingo J.M., K.R. Sperber, J.S. Boyle, J.-P. Ceron, M. Dix, B. Dugas, W. Ebisuzaki, J. Fyfe, D. Gregory, J.-F. Gueremy, J. Hack, A. Harzallah, P. Inness, A. Kitoh, W.K.-M. Lau, B. McAvaney, R. Madden, A. Matthews, T.N. Palmer, C.-K. Park, D. Randall, and N. Renno. 1995. Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Project (AMIP): Intraseasonal Oscillations in 15 Atmospheric General Circulation Models (Results From an AMIP Diagnostics Subproject). World Meteorological Organization/World Climate Research Programme, WCRP–88 WMO/TD No. 661.

Slutz R.J., S.J. Lubker, J.D. Hiscox, S.D. Woodruff, R.L. Jenne, D.H. Joseph, P.M. Steurer, and J.D. Elms. 1985: Comprehensive Ocean-Atmosphere Data Set; Release 1. NOAA Environmental Research Laboratories, Climate Research Program, Boulder, Colo., 268 pp. (NTIS PB86–105723).

Smagorinski J. 1963. General circulation experiments with primitive equations I. The basic experiment. *Monthly Weather Review* 91: 99–164.

Smith R.D., J.K. Dukowitz, and R.C. Malone. 1992. Parallel ocean general circulation modeling. *Physica D* 60: 38–.

Smith W.H.F., and D.T. Sandwell. 1994. Bathymetric prediction from dense satellite altimetry and sparse shipboard bathymetry. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (B11): 21,803–21,824.

Snodgrass F.E. 1964. Precision digital tide gauge. *Science* 146 (3641): 198-208.

Soulen R.J., and W.E. Fogle. 1997. Temperature scales below 1 kelvin. *Physics Today* 50 (8 Part 1): 36–42.

Spinrad R.W. 1996. The oceanographic text pattern: A review and comparison of introductory texts. *Oceanography* 9 (3): 194–201.

Stammer D., R. Tokmakian, A. Semtner, and C. Wunsch. 1996. How well does a 1/4 deg global circulation model simulate large-scale oceanic observations? *Journal of Geophysical Research* 101 (C10): 25,779–25,811.

Starr V.P. 1968. *Physics of Negative Viscosity Phenomena.* New York: McGraw-Hill Publishing Company.

Stern M.E. 1960. The 'salt fountain' and thermohaline convection. *Tellus* 12: 172–175.

Stewart I. 1992. Warning—handle with care! *Nature* **355**: 16–17.

Stewart R.H. 1980. Ocean wave measurement techniques. In *Air Sea Interaction, Instruments and Methods.* Edited by L. H. F. Dobson and R. Davis. 447–470. New York: Plenum Press.

Stewart R.H. 1985. *Methods of Satellite Oceanography.* University of California Press.

Stewart R.H. 1994 Predictability of Texas Rainfall Patterns on Time Scales of Six to Twelve Months: A Review. In: *Texas Climate: Past, Present and Future* Edited by Norwine et al. College of Geoscience and Maritime Studies, Texas A&M University.

Stokes G.G. 1847. On the theory of oscillatory waves. *Camb. Trans.* 8: 441–473.

Stommel H. 1948. The westward intensification of wind-driven ocean currents. *Transactions, American Geophysical Union* 29 (2): 202–206.

Stommel H. 1958. The abyssal circulation. *Deep-Sea Research* 5 (1): 80–82.

Stommel H., A.B. Arons, and A.J. Faller. 1958. Some examples of stationary flow patterns in bounded basins. *Tellus* 10 (2): 179–187.

Stommel H., and A.B. Arons. 1960. On the abyssal circulation of the world ocean—II. An idealized model of the circulation pattern and amplitude in oceanic basins. *Deep-Sea Research* 6: 217–233.

Stommel H.M., and D.W. Moore. 1989. *An Introduction to the Coriolis Force.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Strub P.T., T.K. Chereskin, P.P. Niiler, C. James, and M.D. Levine. 1997. Altimeter-derived variability of surface velocities in the California Current System 1. Evaluation of TOPEX altimeter velocity resolution. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 102 (C6): 12,727–12,748.

Sverdrup H.U. 1947. Wind-driven currents in a baroclinic ocean: with application to the equatorial currents of the eastern Pacific. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 33 (11): 318–326.

Sverdrup H.U., M.W. Johnson, and R.H. Fleming. 1942. *The Oceans: Their Physics, Chemistry, and General Biology.* Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, Inc.

SWAMP Group 1985. *Ocean Wave Modeling.* New York: Plenum Press.

Swenson K.R., and A.E. Shaw. 1990. The Argos system: Monitoring the world's environment. *Oceanography* 3 60–61.

Talley L.D. 1984. Meridional heat transport in the Pacific Ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 14 (2): 231–241.

Talley L.D., and G.C. Johnson. 1994. Deep, zonal subequatorial currents. *Science* 263 (5150): 1125–1128.

Takayabu Y.N., T. Ihuchi, M. Kachi, A. Shibata, and H. Kanzawa. 1999. Abrupt termination of the 1997-98 El Nino in response to a Madden-Julian oscillation. *Nature* 402 (6759): 279–282.

Tapley B.D., D.P. Chambers, C.K. Shum, R.J. Eanes, J.C. Ries, and R.H. Stewart. 1994a. Accuracy assessment of the large–scale dynamic ocean topography from TOPEX/POSEIDON altimetry. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,605–24,617.

Tapley B.D., J.C. Ries, G.W. Davis, R.J. Eanes, B.E. Schutz, C.K. Shum, M.M. Watkins, J.A. Marshall, R.S. Nerem, B.H. Putney, S.M. Klosko, S.B. Luthcke, D. Pavlis, R.G. Williamson, and N.P. Zelensky. 1994b. Precision orbit determination for TOPEX/POSEIDON. *J. Geophysical Research* 99 (C12): 24,383–24,404.

Taylor G.I. 1921. Experiments with rotating fluids. *Proceedings Royal Society (London)* A 100: 114–121.

Taylor V.R. 1990. Implementation of reflectance models in operational avhrr radiation budget processing. Washington, D.C.: NOAA NESDIS Technical Report 49.

Tchernia P. 1980. *Descriptive Regional Oceanography.* Pergamon Marine Series; Edited by J.C. Swallow. Oxford: Pergamon Press.

The Open University 1989. *Ocean Circulation.* Milton Keynes, England: The Open University.

Thomson D.J. 1995. The seasons, global temperature, and precession. *Science* 268 (5207): 59–68.

Thurman H.V. 1985. *Introductory Oceanography.* Fourth ed. Columbus: Charles E. Merrill Publishing Company.

Toggweiler J.R. 1994. The ocean's overturning circulation. *Physics Today* 47(11): 45–50.

Tolmazin D. 1985. *Elements of Dynamic Oceanography.* Boston: Allen & Unwin.

Tomczak M., and J.S. Godfrey. 1994. *Regional Oceanography: An Introduction.* London: Pergamon.

Trenberth K.E., and D.J. Shea. 1987. On the evolution of the Southern Oscillation. *Monthly Weather Review* 115: 3078–3096.

Trenberth K.E., Large, W.G., & Olson, J.G. 1989. The effective drag coefficient for evaluating wind stress over the oceans. *J. Climate*, 2: 1507–1516.

Trenberth K.E., J.G. Olson, and W.G. Large. 1989. A global ocean wind stress climatology based on ECMWF analyses. National Center for Atmospheric Research: Technical Note TN–338+STR.

Trenberth K.E., W.G. Large, and J.G. Olson. 1990. The mean annual cycle in global ocean wind stress. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 20 (11): 1742–1760.

Trenberth K.E., and A. Solomon. 1994. The global heat balance: heat transports in the atmosphere and ocean. *Climate Dynamics* 10 (3): 107–134.

Trenberth K.E. 1997. The use and abuse of climate models. *Nature* 386 (6621): 131–133.

Uchida H., S. Imawaki, and J.-H. Hu. 1998. Comparisons of Kuroshio surface velocities derived from satellite altimeter and drifting buoy data. *Journal of Oceanography* 54: 115–122.

Ursell F. 1950. On the theoretical form of ocean swell on a rotating earth. *Monthly Notices Roy. Astron. Soc., Geophysical Supplement* 6 (1): G1–G8.

Vesecky J.F., and R.H. Stewart. 1982. The observation of ocean surface phenomena using imagery from the Seasat synthetic aperture radar: An assessment. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 87 (C5): 3397–3430.

von Arx W.S. 1962. *An Introduction to Physical Oceanography.* Reading, Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc.

WAMDI Group S. Hasselmann, K. Hasselmann, E. Bauer, P.A.E.M. Janssen, G.J. Komen, L. Bertotti, P. Lionello, A. Guillaume, V.C. Cardone, J.A. Greenwood, M. Reistad, L. Zambresky, and J.A. Ewing. 1988. The WAM model—A third generation wave prediction model. *J. Physical Oceanography* 18: 1775–1810.

Wang X., P.H. Stone, and J. Marotzke. 1999. Global thermohaline circulation. Part 1. Sensitivity to atmospheric moisture transport. *Journal of Climate* 12 (1): 71–91.

Warren B.A. 1981. Deep circulation of the world ocean. In: *Evolution of Physical Oceanography.* Edited by B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch. 6–41. Cambridge: MIT Press.

WCRP 1995. *Proceedings of the Workshop on Global Coupled General Circulation Models.* World Meteorological Organization/World Climate Research Program, WCRP-87 (WMO/TD-No. 655).

Weaver A.J. 1995. Driving the ocean conveyor. *Nature* 378: 135–136.

Weber J.E. 1983. Steady wind- and wave-induced currents in the open ocean. *J. Physical Oceanography* 13 (3): 524–530.

Webster F. 1968. Observations of inertial-period motions in the deep sea. Reviews of Geophysics 6 (4): 473–490.

Webster P.J., and R. Lukas. 1992. TOGA COARE: The Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Response Experiment. *Bulletin American Meteorological Society* 73 (9): 1377–1416.

Weller W., and R.E. Davis. 1980. A vector measuring current meter. *Deep-Sea Research* 27: 565–582.

Weller R.A., J.P. Dean, J. Marra, J.F. Price, E.A. Francis, and D.C. Boardman. 1985. Three–dimensional flow in the upper ocean. *Science* 227: 1552–1556.

Weller R.A., and A.J. Plueddmann. 1996. Observations of the vertical structure of the oceanic boundary layer. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 101 (C4): 8,789–8,806.

West G.B. 1982. Mean Earth ellipsoid determined from Seasat 1 altimetric observations. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 87 (B7): 5538–5540.

White G. ed. 1996. WCRP Workshop on Air-Sea Flux Fields for Forcing Ocean Models and Validating GCMs. Geneva: World Meteorological Organization Report WCRP–95 & WMO/TD Number 762.

White W.B., and D.R. Cayan. 1998. Quasi-periodicity and global symmetries in interdecadal upper ocean temperature variability. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 103 (C10): 21,335–21,354.

Whitham G.B. 1974. *Linear and Nonlinear Waves.* New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Whittaker E.T., and G.N. Watson. 1963. *A Course of Modern Analysis*. 4th ed. Cambridge: University Press.

Whitworth T., and R.G. Peterson. 1985. Volume transport of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current from bottom pressure measurments. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 15 (6): 810816.

Wiegel R.L. 1964. *Oceanographical Engineering*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice Hall.

Wilson W.D. 1960. Equation for the speed of sound in sea water. *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 32 (10): 1357.

Woodruff S.D., R.J. Slutz, R.L. Jenne, and P.M. Steurer. 1987. A comprehensive ocean–atmosphere data set. *Bulletin American Meteorological Society* 68: 1239–1250.

Wooster W.S. 1960. Investigations of equatorial undercurrents. *Deep-Sea Research* 6 (4): 263–264.

Wooster W.S., A.J. Lee, and G. Dietrich. 1969. Redefinition of salinity. *Deep-Sea Research* 16 (3): 321–322.

Worthington L.V. 1981. The water masses of the World Ocean: Some results of a fine-scale census. In *Evolution of Physical Oceanography: Scientific surveys in honor of Henry Stommel*. Edited by B. A. Warren and C. Wunsch. 42–69. Cambridge: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Wunsch C. 1996. *The Ocean Circulation Inverse Problem*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Wust G. 1964. The major deep–sea expeditions and research vessels 1873–1960. *Progress in Oceanography* 2: 3–52.

Wyrtki K. 1975. El Niño-The dynamic response of the equatorial Pacific Ocean to atmospheric forcing. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 5 (4): 572–584.

Xie P., and P.A. Arkin. 1997. Global precipitation: A 17-year monthly analysis based on gauge observations, satellite estimate, and numerical model outputs. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society* 78 (1): 2539–2558.

Yan X-H, Niiler, P.P. & Stewart, R.H. 1990. Construction and accuracy analysis of images of the daily mean mixed-layer depth. Submitted to *Int. J. Remote Sensing*.

Yelland M., and P.K. Taylor. 1996. Wind stress measurements from the open ocean. *J. Physical Oceanography* 26 (4): 541–558.

Yu E.-F., R. Francois, and M.P. Bacon. 1996. Similar rates of modern and last-glacial ocean thermohaline circulation inferred from radiochemical data. *Nature* 379 (6567): 689–694.

Yu X., and M.J. McPhaden. 1999. Dynamical analysis of seasonal and interannual variability in the equatorial Pacific. *Journal of Physical Oceanography* 29 (9): 2350–2369.

Zahn R. 1994. Core correlations. *Nature* 371 (6495): 289–290.

Zeng L., and G. Levy. 1995. Space and time aliasing structure in monthly mean polar-orbiting satellite data. *J. Geophysical Research* 100 (D3): 5133–5142.